

*Conservation of this  
volume was made  
possible through the  
generous support of  
PETER WARRIAN  
and the Friends  
of the Library*

**PIMS**

PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2011 with funding from  
University of Toronto

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI  
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN  
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

miol+

12219.



a



THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS  
OF  
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND  
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER  
THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

---

ON the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.



The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,*  
*December 1857.*

---



POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN  
MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREVISA  
AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF  
THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED

BY

CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., F.L.S., ETC.,

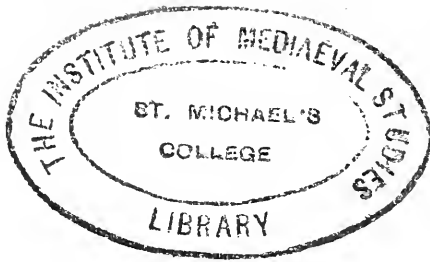
DISNEY PROFESSOR OF ARCHÆOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE; RECTOR  
OF COCKFIELD, SUFFOLK; LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE.

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S  
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:  
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

1869.



JAN 12 1950

15402

## CONTENTS.

---

	Page
INTRODUCTION - - - - -	vii
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS - - - - -	xl
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, LIBER PRIMUS, CAP. XXXIX. - - - - -	2
----- LIBER SECUNDUS - - - - -	174

---



---

INTRODUCTION.

---

DA  
25  
B8  
V.41



## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE remainder of Higden's First Book, or Map of the World, is taken up with an account of England, and this is given in much more detail than any other, occupying in fact nearly a third of the whole book (capp. xxxix.—lx.). Higden's account of England concludes his First Book.

In the thirty-ninth chapter he announces the ten divisions under which he proposes to treat of England, viz., its name, site, productions, marvels, principal divisions, adjacent islands, roads, rivers, cities, and counties. He then enlarges on the first of these, and notes that the island was originally called Albion, a name which he connects with the whiteness of its marine rocks, and afterwards Britannia, so called, according to Higden, from Brutus, the grandson of Æneas, in accordance with the Trojanising notions which held our medieval historians spell-bound.<sup>1</sup> Upon the Saxons or Angles conquering it, it obtained the name of Anglia, for which Higden gives more than one derivation,<sup>2</sup> not forgetting the jocularly pious etymology of Pope Gregory, recorded Names of England.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Lingard points out that Nennius says he extracted his history of Brutus "ex veteribus scriptis veterum nostrorum;" which, as he observes, makes it older than Geoffrey or Tyssilio. *Hist. of Eng.* c. i. p. 14, note (6th ed., 1854). Some accounts make Brutus the great grandson of Æneas. See p. 442 of this volume.

<sup>2</sup> He refers to Isid. Hisp. *Etym.* lib. xv., as deriving Anglia "ab angulo orbis." The passage does not occur in that book, and I much doubt if Isidore gives any such

derivation anywhere. But Higden's citations are so frequently inaccurate that I am compelled to say of his quotations and references generally, *Caveat lector.* (See vol. i. p. xxiii. note.) With regard to the derivation itself, Bede has led the way to it, who speaks of the native country of the Angles as "illa patria, quæ Angulus dicitur." *Hist. Eccl.* lib. i. c. 15. According to a late Italian tradition, Anglus was a son of Aseanius. *Trés de Numism. et de Glypt. Méd. coul. et cis. en Italie.* vol. i. p. 2, Paris, 1834.

in Bede's well-known story.<sup>1</sup> He refers also to Solinus (c. 22), as well as to Alfred of Beverley,<sup>2</sup> for the importance of Britain, who speak of it as in a manner "another world."

Site and dimensions.

Higden next proceeds to speak of the site and dimensions of Britain in his fortieth chapter, and begins by defining its position nearly in the words of Pliny (lib. iv. c. 30, ed. Hard.<sup>3</sup>), to whom, as well as to Bede, he also refers for the duration of the longest day in Britain.<sup>4</sup> The length and breadth of the island are set down according to the estimates of Solinus and Alfred of Beverley,<sup>5</sup> and the circumference according to that of Bede; thus giving eight hundred miles for its length from the Land's End to the extremity of Caithness; two hundred miles for its breadth, measuring from St. David's to Yarmouth; and between three and four thousand for its outline.<sup>6</sup>

Natural productions.

The natural productions of the island are enumerated in the forty-first chapter. It is to be regretted that Higden, instead of stating facts which must have come within his own knowledge, should have done little else but remand us to the classical authors Pliny and Solinus, and to earlier medieval writers, as Isidore, Bede, William of Malmesbury, Alfred of Beverley, and Henry of Huntingdon. There is little or nothing in their accounts of the animals, plants, and minerals of England to call for

<sup>1</sup> Lib. ii. c. 1. (Not lib. i., as Higden says.)

<sup>2</sup> I have failed to find the passages quoted.

<sup>3</sup> The MSS. both of the text and versions refer to lib. ii. c. 77, and this reference has been consequently allowed to stand in the edited text (p. 6). Higden does in fact quote from this book and chapter later on, p. 8, where he only gives *Plinius*.

<sup>4</sup> Pliny (lib. ii. c. 77) makes it xvii. hours, and so does his copyist, Marcianus Capella (see Hardouin's

note); but Higden makes Pliny as well as Bede (lib. i. c. 1, not c. 11) say xviii. The MSS. of Bede appear to agree in xviii.

<sup>5</sup> Solinus, c. 22. I cannot discover the citation from Alfred in his *Annals*.

<sup>6</sup> The true greatest length is about 587 miles, and the true greatest breadth about 360 miles; the outline scarcely admits of satisfactory measurement. Bede excludes the tongues of the longer promontories.



remarks here.<sup>1</sup> Higden himself remarks principally on the richness of our ores, marbles, and other minerals; of our exports of wool to Flanders, of iron and lead to Gascony, of salt to Ireland, and of white metal (so Trevisa renders *cera nivea*) to all Europe.

An enumeration of some of the marvels of England follows, which may be passed over lightly (c. xlii.). They are principally derived from Alfred of Beverley,<sup>2</sup> Giraldus Cambrensis, and William of Malmesbury. Among the marvels are recounted various petrifying springs and windy caverns, while others are of a magical or supernatural character in connexion with lakes, mountains, and caves.<sup>3</sup> In conclusion it is observed that in no country are there more bodies of saints preserved from corruption than in England, as instanced in St. Ethelreda, St. Edmund, St. Elphege, and St. Cuthbert.

In his forty-third chapter Higden gives an account of the principal parts of Britain, which are England, Wales,

Principal divisions.

<sup>1</sup> The assertion of Isidore, which however I cannot find in his *Origines*, that wolves were scarce in Britain in his time, *i.e.* early in the seventh century, is somewhat surprising, when we remember how numerous they afterwards became in the reigns of Athelstan and Edgar. In Higden's own age they were, perhaps, scarcely extinct, in spite of the vigorous war of extermination waged against them by Edward the First.

<sup>2</sup> *Alfr. Bev. Ann.* lib. i. p. 6. (Ed. Hearne.) The names of places which are given here and elsewhere, require more topographical knowledge than I can claim to identify with their modern sites in all cases. One of these is Peccum or Pectum (p. 22), for the identity of *c* and *t* in the MSS. becomes, in cases like this, very embarrassing: As MS. C. has Peckum, I had supposed in the note that some Peckham was

intended, and there are three places bearing this name in Surrey and Kent. But in Henry of Huntingdon, lib. 1. (p. 694, *Mon. Hist. Brit.*) for Peccum we have "in monte qui vocatur Pee," which strongly suggests the Peak of Derbyshire to be meant; and I have now very little doubt that this is so (see Mr. Dimock's glossary to Giraldus Cambrensis, vol. vi. p. 253). In the same place mention is made of one Cherdhole, or Sherdehoole, which only tends to mislead; but in Henry of Huntingdon the word is written Chederhole or Chedernhole, which leaves little doubt that at Cheddar in Somersetshire is to be sought the cavern described.

<sup>3</sup> The observation of Alfred that it is not clearly understood how or for what purpose Stonehenge was constructed is even now scarcely antiquated.

and Scotland. The ancient names of these he derives from three sons of Brutus; Loegria (England) from Loerinus; Cambria (Wales) from Camber; Albania (Scotland) from Albanactus. With the exception of a small extract from Bede's first book, Higden quotes no authorities in this chapter. The fountain-head however of much of what he says is no doubt Geoffrey of Monmouth. The chapter ends with a somewhat lengthy account of Offa's Dyke, which long separated England from Wales. We learn at the same time from the concluding sentence that in Higden's time Englishmen and Welshmen were found living together on both sides of the dyke, more particularly in Cheshire, Shropshire, and Herefordshire.

Adjacent islands.

He then proceeds to give some account (c. xlv.) of the principal islands adjacent to Britain, viz., the isles of Wight, Anglesey, and Man, which are described from Bede<sup>1</sup> and Giraldus Cambrensis;<sup>2</sup> a few observations about the Isle of Thanet being added from Bede.<sup>3</sup> He observes, apparently from his own knowledge, that various superstitions (as selling wind to sailors) prevailed in the Isle of Man.

The Four Royal Roads.

Higden's account of the Four great Royal Roads (c. xlv.) is more important, and has given rise to a good deal of discussion. He tells us, from Geoffrey of Monmouth, that Molmutius, king of the Britons, protected ploughs, temples of gods, and city roads by the privilege of refuge; and that in after times his son Belinus defined and reconstructed four royal roads,<sup>4</sup> which should

<sup>1</sup> Bed. *Hist. Eccl.* i. 3, ii. 9, iv. 16 (not 15, as Higden says).

<sup>2</sup> See Girald. *Cambrensis. Itin. Camb.* ii. 7, 9. *Top. Hib.* ii. 15. (*Op.* vol. vi. pp. 127, 135; vol. v. p. 97 in this series.)

<sup>3</sup> The reference is to lib. ii., which is false. Lib. 1, c. 25, seems to be intended; but Higden has added sundry absurdities, which Bede has not.

<sup>4</sup> Geoffrey does not mention the

names of the roads; his first road was probably the Foss road; "the second, there can be doubt," says Dr. Guest, "was meant for the Roman road which passed from South Wales through Monmouthshire to Gloucester, and thence to Winchester and Southampton." It is impossible to fix the identity of the others, as he thinks, beyond dispute. See *Archæological Journal*, No. 54.

have this privilege exclusively.<sup>1</sup> Higden defines these four to be, the Foss, Watling-street, Ermyngge-street, and Rykenild-street, and he gives the course of them all. Dr. Guest speaks of Higden's account of the two roads, the Watling-street and the Foss, as (with some exceptions) accurate and important, and observes that "the minute details into which he has entered, more particularly with respect to the Watling-street, are extremely valuable." About the other roads, Ermyngge-street and Rykenild-street, there is some difficulty and uncertainty, and the reader is referred to Dr. Guest's paper for a learned disquisition upon them.<sup>2</sup>

Passing lightly over his account of the courses of the three famous rivers, the Thames, the Severn, and the Humber (c. xlvi.), as well as their political significance, taken principally from Alfred of Beverley and William of Malmesbury, we arrive at his enumeration and description of the ancient cities of Britain (capp. xlvii. and xlviii.). The sources from which he derived his information are not always set down;<sup>3</sup> but some parts of his account are taken from William of Malmesbury's work, *De Pontificibus*; from the Itinerary of Giraldus, and from Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*. He quotes likewise from Geoffrey of Monmouth and Alfred of Beverley. Upon the whole these chapters contain a good deal of interesting matter, especially what relates to the changes of names which certain towns and cities underwent.<sup>4</sup> The cities and

Rivers,  
cities, and  
shires.

<sup>1</sup> The privilege was known in Norman times as *the King's peace*. Gal. Mon. lib. ii. c. 17; lib. iii. c. 5.

<sup>2</sup> It deserves attention that for *Rikenildstrete* one MS. of Higden has *Hikenildstrete*. It seems probable that Higden himself made a confusion between the Roman road called Rykeneld-street, passing through Warwickshire and Staffordshire (whose course may be seen in the map of *Britannia Romana* in

the *Monumenta Historica* of Petrie) and the British trackway or Icknield-street, passing from Old Sarum towards Bury St. Edmund's.

<sup>3</sup> For his account of Gloucester, Lincoln, and Leicester (pp. 60, 62,) see Gal. Mon. iv. 15; ix. 3; ii. 11.

<sup>4</sup> His statements, however, must not be received implicitly. Thus he makes Brutus build a city *Trinovantum*, which Lud afterwards called *Caerlud*; and the Angles,

towns described are Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, York, Edinburgh, Alclud (for whose identification the reader

still later, termed it Lundene; a form changed by the Normans into Loundres, and called in Latin Londenonia (p. 56). It may be that Trinovantum or Augusta Trinobantum occupied the site of London; this opinion has been maintained, though not without doubts, by various scholars, from C. Stephens to our own time; but it was a great mistake in Higden to suppose that London is an English name, seeing that it occurs in slightly varied forms in Tacitus, Ptolemy, Eumenius, and Ammianus Marcellinus, as well as on Roman coins of the fourth century. But I now perceive that he was misled by Geoffrey of Monmouth (iii. 20), and Alfred of Beverley (i. p. 12). His account of Canterbury (p. 56) is substantially correct (setting aside Rudhudibras and his CaerKent), but Dorovernis, not Dorobernia, is the earliest medieval or English form of the word, as coins and charters prove beyond doubt (*Numism. Chron.* vol. iv. p. 120). Dorobernia was in use A.D. 790, as appears by a charter so dated, and continued so to be till about the middle of the tenth century, when we find Cantwara occurring on coins of Edgar. "Urbs quæ nunc Cantuaria vocatur," says Lanfranc (*Will. Malm. Gest. Pont.* i. p. 207. Sav.), "antiquis temporibus ab ipsius terræ incolis Dorobernia vocabatur." At what time however it first came into use for the name of Dover it would be interesting to know. It is, of course, older than Higden, but it may be suspected to

be later than the Conquest. Florence of Worcester, at the beginning of the twelfth century, writes, "Doroberniam, id est, Cantuariorum civitatem," (*Chron. s.*, A.D. 851), as though Dorobernia was then obsolete as a name of Canterbury; he calls Dover sometimes Dovera, sometimes Dorvernia (see *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, Index), as if no other place in Kent then bore such a name. Dorobernia is used for Dover by Henry of Huntingdon, lib. i. (p. 694. B. in *Mon. Hist. Brit.*), and Alfred of Beverley (p. 120). Dover, Dofera, Dofran, and Dofra are forms which occur on coins of Ethelred II. and Canute; and we have also Dofrenn and Dofre on those of Harold I. and William I. In the 14th century it was often called Dovorria. *Dugd. Monast.* iv. pp. 530-532, ed. Lond. 1823. In the Itinerary of Antoninus Canterbury and Dover are named Durovernum and Dubris respectively; so that the medieval or English names are, in fact, only modifications of the Roman names. Again, in what Higden says of Lincoln (p. 62), it is manifest that he was not aware that in Roman times it was called Lindum, before it was changed in medieval times into Lindecolinum. It would take up too much space to pursue Higden's topography farther. One of the more important sections is that which relates to Chester, which is in good part original, though to some extent taken from Gir. Cambr. (*Itin. Cambr.* lib. ii. c. 11.) The supposed tomb of the emperor Henry IV.

may consult Higden himself<sup>1</sup>), Carlisle, Hexham, Caerleon, and Chester, besides brief allusions to a few others.<sup>2</sup>

With regard to the enumeration of the British names of towns with which the forty-seventh chapter opens, which is taken from Alfred of Beverley,<sup>3</sup> there can be little doubt that the fountain head of some of the information is the sixty-seventh chapter of Nennius.

Higden's account of the shires of England (c. xlix.) is professedly taken from Alfred of Beverley,<sup>4</sup> but there are many things in Higden of which Alfred says nothing. His enumeration moreover of the different laws which prevailed at different times and places (c. l.) is to some slight extent borrowed from the same source, though without acknowledgment. Higden would seem to have added much from some legal authority which he does not name.<sup>5</sup> The law terms which occur in the laws of

(or rather Henry V.), who is said to have assumed the name of Godescal or Godestal, is still to be seen in the south aisle of the cathedral, not far from a tomb reasonably believed to belong to Higden himself. But the whole story is full of uncertainty, as may be seen by reference to Lyson's *Magna Britannia*, in his account of Chester (vol. ii. p. 558). See also for this, and for the true burial-place of Harold II., Mr. Dimock's notes on Giraldus, *u. s.*

<sup>1</sup> In the *Monumenta Historica Britannica* (Index) and in A. K. Johnson's *Dictionary of Geography* it is identified with Dumbarton. Higden evidently inclines to Aldburgh, in Yorkshire (p. 67, where he refers to Gal. Mon. iii. 17), but thinks Bede means some place close to Carlisle, which he assuredly does not. Higden has made a confusion between the two Roman walls.

<sup>2</sup> It may be here observed that the orthography of medieval names of persons and places differs a good deal in the various MSS. of Higden; their variations have been conscientiously noticed; but the contractions which abound, and the similarity of certain letters to one another (particularly *c* and *t*, *u* and *n*) increase an editor's difficulties considerably. I am now convinced that Ebrancus, which I have edited (p. 64, &c.), following Gale, should be Ebraucus. Possibly Mevania (p. 36, where see note) should be changed into Menavia; see Hearne on Alfr. Bev., p. 154.

<sup>3</sup> *Annal*, lib. i. p. 9.

<sup>4</sup> See his *Annals*, lib. vi. p. 97.

<sup>5</sup> In the notes I had supposed that the *Chronicon* of John Brompton was the fountain-head of his account, being misled by Cave, who considers (*Hist. Lit.* s. v.) that Brompton wrote about A.D. 1198. But it

Edward the Confessor, and which are explained by Higden, vary somewhat in the different MSS., and I am happy to acknowledge the kind assistance which Dr. Bosworth has rendered me in editing the text of some of them.<sup>1</sup>

Succession  
of rulers.

The fifty-first chapter, on the succession of kingdoms in Britain, is taken, according to most MSS.,<sup>2</sup> from Alfred of Beverley. It gives an epitome of the forms of government from Brutus to Julius Cæsar, from Cæsar to Septimius Severus, thence to Gratian; and proceeds at length to describe the cessation of Roman power and the foundation and durations of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy. The history and chronology are not always accurate, but it is an interesting chapter nevertheless.<sup>3</sup>

appears that Brompton, as he is now edited, quotes Higden, so that his chronicle "seems to have taken its present form at least after the middle of the fourteenth century." Hardy, *Descript. Cat. Mater. Brit. Hist.*, vol. ii. p. 540. What now appears in Brompton, therefore, was probably copied from Higden, not *vice versa*.

<sup>1</sup> "I have," (he writes), "a great objection to conjectural readings, but I think you will be safe in reading self finde in warde, p. 94, 13, (see Note 18, B., pelffindinward). It will then read in Anglo-Saxon: In-fangen þeof self finde in warde, *i. e.*, a thief taken within his own ward or lordship; or as in your text, 'id est, infra suum [attachia-mentum] capere reum.' I think that in your MSS. the A.S. *r* is probably written *p* or *þ*, easily taken for *þ* or *p*.

"(1.) Fiht-wite and (2.) Flit-  
(3.) wite are both good compounds.

"(1.) Fiht, fyht, feoht, *e*; *f*. A fighting, from feohtan to contend, fight.

"(2.) Flit, *es*; *n*. Strife, contention, from flitan to strive, quarrel.

"(3.) Wite, *es*; *n*. A fine, a fine or penalty to the state or crown.

"All the other words are clear enough."

<sup>2</sup> Both versions however as well as MS. B., omit the reference. The words do not occur, I believe, in Alfred; the substance occurs more or less in every chronicle of England.

<sup>3</sup> It is hardly credible that Higden should mean that all the Roman emperors who were rulers of Britain, from Septimius Severus down to Gratian, were of British extraction; but I scarcely know how else to interpret his words: Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum. The usurper Gratian here meant, who died A.D. 407, was indeed a native of England (Orosius, vii. 40.), and some claim Magnus Maximus to be one also; but Higden's assertion is beyond doubt erroneous. Carausius, who, as well as Allectus, kept exclusive possession of Britain in spite of the other emperors, Dioclesian and

Higden devotes no less than six chapters to the history of episcopal sees in England. He begins by alluding to the well-known story of the three archiepiscopal sees, (London, York, and Caerleon,) and the twenty-eight episcopal sees in the time of Lucius, whose occupants were called flamens, and refers to Alfred of Beverley as his authority; but the original historian of this and of many more legendary accounts transferred to the Polychronicon is Geoffrey of Monmouth.<sup>1</sup> Higden then describes the episcopal constitutions of the Saxons, as well as the ancient regulations of the Welsh episcopate, which, till the time of Henry the Second, made no profession of subjection to any other church. Beginning with Canterbury, the principal see, he proceeds to mention the temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric in the time of Offa, and the restitution of the primacy to the archbishop of Canterbury in the time of Kenulphus. In like manner he slightly touches on the varied fortunes of the other archbishops, viz., of York and Caerleon; and proceeds to name the suffragan bishops of England and Wales in order, mentioning the changes of the sees of some of them and the extinction of others, noticing also the creation of new sees from time to time; and concludes by an enumeration of the bishoprics as they existed in his own

Maximian, was not a Briton. Again, the chronology of the departure of the Romans from Britain is false. Magnus Maximus went over with the British soldiers to Gaul against the Emperor Gratian in 383, and the Roman mint does indeed appear to have ceased in England in his reign; but there were Romans fighting in Britain towards the middle of the fifth century. (See *Mon. Hist. Brit. Chron. Abstract.*)

The account of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy is more trustworthy. Eadgar however, and not Athelstan,

“solus et primus monarchiam Angliæ tenuit” (p. 108), though Athelstan says as much of himself. (Hawkins’ *Silver Coins of England*, pp. 61, 65.) Athelstan’s conquests, moreover, are misdated by a century (p. 108); but this may be a slip or a blunder of the scribes, which however, if it be one, occurs also in the versions.

<sup>1</sup> Alf. Bev. iii. p. 32., Gal. Mon. v. c. 19. See Fuller’s dissection (or rather vivisection) of Geoffrey in his *Church Hist. of Brit.*, book i. cent. ii. § 9.

time, when thirteen bishops were subject to the archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of all England, and four were under the archbishop of York, the primate of England.

The principal authorities referred to for England are Bede and William of Malmesbury, and for Wales, Giraldus Cambrensis. He also makes a good many statements on his own authority. This part of his work has evidently cost him some labour, and it appears to be one of the most trustworthy parts of his history.<sup>1</sup>

Successive  
inhabitants  
of Britain.

Higden next enters (c. lviii.) on the subject of British ethnology, and enumerates seven tribes or peoples who successively inhabited the country or settled therein; viz., the Britons, Picts, Scots (from Ireland), Saxons or

<sup>1</sup> I have compared a good deal of it with Professor Stubbs' valuable *Registrum Sacrum Anglicanum*, and find that it commonly agrees; Higden however converts the bishopric of Leicester into a bishopric of Chester; an error arising from the name Legecestria being common to the two. Considering that Higden himself long dwelt in Chester, his blunder is the more extraordinary. That it is a blunder there can, I think, be no doubt; the following extract from a letter of Professor Stubbs will allay all misgivings. "The original authority for placing Wilfrid's *Mercian* bishopric at Leicester is the list of bishops appended to Florence of Worcester, which is of course much earlier than Florence's own time. This gives a list of the bishops of Mid-Anglia, "nomina Præsulum Leogerensium." Of these, Leofwin, sec. xi., united the 'Leogerensian' and Lindsey bishoprics into the modern diocese of Lincoln in the time of Edgar; proof that the maker of the list believed Leicester

"to be the place signified, as indeed  
"is quite certain with reference to  
"all the later bishops. Totta, Ead-  
"berht, Unwona, Werenbert, Ret-  
"hun, Aldred, and Ceoldred all sat  
"at Leicester. In 874 the Danes  
"conquered Middle Anglia, and  
"thenceforth the see was at *Dor-*  
"*chester* in Oxfordshire. I believe  
"there is no doubt about this. And  
"the statement about Wilfrid stands  
"on the same authority. I should  
"question whether Chester could  
"be regarded as a Middle Angle or  
"Mercian town in Wilfrid's time,  
"and certainly no bishop could  
"unite *Chester* and *Lindsey* without  
"including Lichfield also. The  
"confusion between *Chester* and  
"*Leicester* in the early chronicles  
"is very trying, but on this point I  
"am quite sure." William of Mal-  
mesbury also, who gives a list of the  
bishops (*Gest. Pont.* iv. p. 289,  
Sav.) clearly meant Leicester to be  
their see; *Legecestria est civitas*  
*antiqua in mediteraneis Angliæ*; but Higden as clearly meant Ches-  
ter (p. 128).



Angles, Danes, Normans, and Flandrians. His authorities are Bede, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Giraldus Cambrensis, Marianus Scotus, and Alfred of Beverley, and he also interpolates various remarks of his own.

In tacit allusion to the Trojan story about Brutus, Higden considers the Britons the first inhabitants of our island, and that they came over from Armorica four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome.<sup>1</sup>

It is remarkable that he does not consider the Romans as worthy to be reckoned among the peoples who settled amongst us, but passing them over without notice, he proceeds to say that the Picts came over from Scythia in Vespasian's time, first to Ireland, where the Scoti dwelt, and thence to the northern parts of Britain, about Caithness. Bede, from whom the account professes to be taken, probably intended Scandinavia by Scythia, but says nothing about Vespasian, and seems to place their arrival at a more remote period;<sup>2</sup> their connexion with the age of Vespasian is due to Geoffrey of Monmouth,<sup>3</sup> from whom Higden has derived other untrustworthy statements in this chapter.<sup>4</sup> Higden then quotes Giraldus

<sup>1</sup> Notwithstanding all our laborious examinations, both of literary records and of archæological monuments, we are scarcely even now able to replace the medieval figments on this subject by anything which can well be called historical. "Who were the first inhabitants of Britain, is among the unsettled questions of history," says Professor Pearson (*Early and Middle Ages of England*, c. i., London, 1861); and if the question is ever to be settled, it must be by a careful comparison of the remains of man and of the art of man found in this country with those found in other countries.

<sup>2</sup> See Bede, lib. i. c. 1., where Smith observes that the Scoti, who came after the Picts, appear to have arrived, in Bede's opinion, "ante Romanorum tempora."

<sup>3</sup> Lib. iv. c. 17.

<sup>4</sup> As that Carausius gave a settlement to the Picts in Scotland (lib. v. c. 3). Higden's speculation that we must understand the south of Scotland seems to be a castle built on air. Stukeley however persuades himself of the reality of Carausius' expedition into Scotland, which he places A.D. 290 (*Med. Hist. of Carausius*, pp. 128-138), as does also Dr. Lingard (*Hist. Engl.* c. i. p. 35). The additions to Nennius

Cambrensis (*De Instruct. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 6.) in favour of the view that the Picts are the same as the Agathyrsi, and of Gothic stock.<sup>1</sup>

He proceeds to relate the migration of some of the Scoti from Ireland under the leadership of Reuda to the district of Argyle, in the country which several centuries afterwards became known as Scotland. This Dalriadic kingdom, which is commonly dated from the beginning of the sixth century, expanded itself, according to Higden, into a dominion over the whole of Scotland in the reign of Kenneth MacAlpine, king of Scots, in the middle of the ninth century, who destroyed the Pictish kingdom of the north of Scotland.<sup>2</sup>

He next tells us how the Saxons, or as the Britons called them Germans, being invited by the Britons against the Picts and Scots, by degrees forced the Britons into Wales, and extended their own empire as far as the Scotch sea; and at length, in the reign of Egbert, were known by the common appellation of Angles or Englishmen.

The Danes, who kept invading the country from the reign of Egbert to that of the Confessor, left, according to Higden, no trace behind, and like the Picts completely died out.

---

(p. 19, ed. Stev.) connect Carausius with the river Carron in Stirlingshire, but no author of credit, so far as I know, mentions any deed of Carausius done in Scotland. I know not on what authority Dr. Lingard says that "the Caledonians were compelled to flee before his arms," unless it be the pseudo-Nennius.

<sup>1</sup>The best modern critics, according to Professor Pearson, consider *Pict* (painted) as merely the Latin rendering of *Briton*, and that the Picts are consequently not of Gothic origin; he thinks them

of the Kymric variety. Pearson, as above, c. ii. p. 17 (note). Dr. Lingard feels confident that they are the Caledonians under a new name (*Hist. Engl.* c. i. p. 39).

<sup>2</sup>On the obscurity and difficulty of the history of this event, for which Higden's authority is Giraldus, see *Penny Cyclopædia*, s. v. Scotland. According to Giraldus, the Pictish chiefs were fraudulently murdered at a banquet. His account is tinged with a mythological colouring, but may very possibly be founded on fact.

The Normans, who came in with the Conqueror, remained in possession of the soil in Higden's time, the English being still in a state of subjugation.

The Flandrians, or Flemings, are the seventh and last people, according to Higden, who settled in the island. He tells us, from Alfred of Beverley,<sup>1</sup> that King Henry I. gave them a temporary abode at Melrose in Roxburghshire, but that he afterwards removed them to Haverfordwest in Wales; and it appears that their descendants remain there to this day, being readily distinguished from the aboriginal inhabitants both by language and manners.<sup>2</sup>

Higden sums up by saying, that as the Picts and Danes had vanished, there were five nations at present living in the island, viz., the Scots in Albania or Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and English mixed in the whole island.

The fifty-ninth chapter, on the languages of the natives of Britain, is almost entirely Higden's own. The Scotch and Welsh (he observes) retain their own dialects nearly pure, as mingling but little with the other tribes; though the Pictish element may perhaps have somewhat entered into the Scotch speech. The Flemings had adopted the English language, and spoke it tolerably well. The English dialects were originally three, Southern, Midland or Mercian, and Northern or Northumbrian; being due to as many German tribes. These forms however, which extended east and west, became much corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The midland dialect partook of many northern and southern forms, so that a midlander might understand these in some degree; but a North-Englander and a South-Englander were barbarians to each other. Higden observes that one great cause of the corruption was the neglect of the English language in schools, boys being always taught to construe

Languages  
and dia-  
lects  
spoken in  
Britain.

<sup>1</sup> See lib. i. p. 10, and lib. ix. p. 147.

<sup>2</sup> Lewis, *Topogr. Dict. Wales*, vol. i. s.v. Haverfordwest. Lond. 1833.

their lessons in French, and, among the noble class, to speak French from their infancy. Trevisa inserts here an interesting passage, in which he notes a great change since Higden's time. He tells us, writing in 1385, that in all the grammar schools of England English was then taught and French laid aside;<sup>1</sup> and that gentlemen taught their sons French less than formerly. He also observes, in reference to Higden's assertion that the Anglo-Norman French is one and the same in all England, that there are as many forms of French, in France at least, as of English in England. Another cause of the debasement of our language is due, in Higden's judgment, to the affectation of the words and language of their betters by the ignorant rustics, who "franci-genated" or frenchified their talk to the utmost of their power.

Character  
of the  
English.

The sixtieth and last chapter of the first book, on the manners of the English, is mostly by Higden, who has certainly shown little disposition to paint his countrymen in too favourable colours. His bombastic and not very intelligible periods warn us that he must not be taken too literally. Among our faults he especially reckons the discontented spirit in every class, which affects to appear and to be thought above itself. Thus the yeoman affects the squire; the squire the knight; the knight the duke; the duke the king. Consequently such a variety of dress had been introduced that a man's clothes gave little indication of his degree. Gluttony, drunkenness, dishonesty, and irreligion appear to have taken deep root amongst us. The first two vices he dates more especially from the days of Harthaenut (1041-1042), whose death was occasioned thereby.

Among our better qualities he enumerates our aptitude for every kind of industry, our desire to visit foreign

---

<sup>1</sup> The authors of the change were, | of a grammar school, and his pupil,  
it seems, John Cornwaile, a master | Richard Pencrich.

parts with a view to learn, our bravery in war, and the excellent discipline of our soldiers, both horse and foot.

He observes that the southerners were more civilized and gentle than men of the north; those of middle Anglia occupying an intermediate position, socially as well as geographically.<sup>1</sup>

The Welsh Flemings, he observes from Giraldus,<sup>2</sup> had become in a manner anglicised by contact with the English; they were industrious, enterprising, and equally successful in the arts of peace and of war. They were addicted, however, to some singular superstitions, such as divining with the boiled shoulder bone of a ram, by which they both dived into futurity, and saw, as by a kind of clairvoyance, what was going on or had been performed afar off. They entertained a cordial hatred towards the Welsh.

Thus ends Higden's First Book, or Geographical Introduction to his Universal History. Of the sixty chapters of which it is composed, twenty-nine are occupied with an account of Great Britain and Ireland, twenty-two of these, all comprised in the present volume, being devoted to England alone, the country, as he tells us himself, on whose account he compiled and elaborated his chronicle. This is the only part of his introduction of which, as being to some slight extent original, the historian or antiquary can well make use;<sup>3</sup> the remainder, relating to foreign parts, being derived from other sources, and those not always the most trustworthy.

<sup>1</sup> Higden quotes from Henry of Huntingdon (lib. vi. p. 359, Sav.), the prophecy of a holy anchorite, which bears every appearance of being composed after the event. It was written, or ought to have been written, in the time of king Egelfred or Egilred, by whom he intends Ethelred the Second, who is called Egilred by Roger de Hoveden (p. 472, Sav.) and William of

Malmesbury. (*Gest. Reg.* ii. § 159, p. 255, Hardy.)

<sup>2</sup> *Itin. Cambr.* i. 11.

<sup>3</sup> It has been published by Gale, *Hist. Brit. Script.* xv. pp. 191-212. The only other portion of this volume contained in his collection are parts of lib. ii. c. 27 (nearly all), and c. 28 (a few lines); they occupy less than a folio page. See Gale, *u. s.* pp. 212, 213.

The book however, taken as a whole, is not without its value, as indicating the geographical knowledge of a writer, who in his own and in the next age was widely read and generally followed.

Higden's  
Second  
Book.  
Doctrine  
of the  
microcosm.

The second book has for its prologue (cap. i.) a comparison between man and the world. The geography of the world is properly followed by the history of the world, that is of man, who is himself the microcosm or little world. He then proceeds to point out the similarities between man and the world in their dimensions, composition, and operations. The doctrine of the microcosm is as old as Pythagoras, or at least was espoused by some of his disciples,<sup>1</sup> and found numerous adherents in after times, and has survived almost down to our own age.<sup>2</sup> Higden's application of it may be in good measure his own; at least he refers to no authority, except for slight details.<sup>3</sup> For the facts in natural history which he adduces in illustration he is indebted principally to

<sup>1</sup> See the anonymous *Life of Pythagoras* in Phot. *Bibl. Cod.* 249 (p. 440, ed. Bekk.), where we learn that man is called a little world, not only because he is composed of the four elements, but also because he possesses all the forces of the world. Higden's account is an expansion of these views.

<sup>2</sup> See a note on *Nicholas Ferrar*, pp. 239, 240, Cambridge, 1855, by my learned friend Mr. J. E. B. Mayor, to which add that Nathan Wanley wrote a book entitled *The Wonders of the Little World, or a General History of Man*, first published in 1678 (fol. London). It was re-printed with additions in the last and also in the present century. Wanley much resembles Higden in style, and he sometimes refers to the same examples. See more especially his eighth chapter (*On the*

*strange constitution and marvellous properties of some human bodies*), in which he refers to the great toe of Pyrrhus. See Higden, p. 188. Robinet, who considered certain natural objects, as the brain-stone coral, to be types of parts of man, died in the present century. See also Shakesp. *Rich. II.* Act V. sc. 5, and the notes. (Clar. Press Series).

<sup>3</sup> As St. Gregory the Great. The "Homily on the Ascension," as Higden calls it (p. 182), occurs in his *Moral. in Job*, lib. vi. vol. i. p. 190 (ed. Ben. Paris, 1705). The "Homily on Advent" (quoted at p. 184) will be found among *In Evang. Homil.* (vol. i. p. 1439). The passage of Plato to which he alludes, p. 180, is, perhaps, *Phæd.*, p. 81. E. (ed. Steph.); but if so, it is not quite accurately rendered.

Pliny,<sup>1</sup> and in a smaller degree to St. Augustine, Hugutio, Livy, and Avicenna; for the historical allusions he refers to Pliny and Seneca. On these we need not dwell; but merely observe that for the only historical facts or pretended facts in this chapter, not otherwise known, we are under obligation not to Higden, but to Trevisa, who relates some marvellous peculiarities in the constitution of one Roger Bagge, and (in the following chapter) in the conformation of a child born in Lorraine, on the eyewitness of one of his own parishioners at Berkeley, William Wayte.<sup>2</sup> But on these points, as well as on the details and speculations given by Higden respecting monstrous forms of the human species, as cyclopes, sciapodes, &c., which form the subject of his second chapter, we shall only say that he is indebted for almost all his remarks to St. Augustine and to Isidore of Seville. He does not, like Augustine, entirely repudiate the notion of the Antipodes, and cites with approbation the astronomical views of Marcius Capella on this subject.

Higden's third chapter is a rhetorical flourish on the differences between man and the world. Before his fall he had prerogatives above the rest of nature; afterwards he fell below the creatures themselves, being destitute of their natural defences, as he observes from Pliny.

The fourth and fifth chapters comprise his History of the First Age of the World,<sup>3</sup> which commences with the creation of Adam, and ends with Noah's flood. The greatest part of it is naturally taken from Scripture, but a few speculations and traditional details are added from

FIRST AGE  
OF THE  
WORLD.  
From the  
Creation of  
Adam to  
Noah's  
flood.

<sup>1</sup> Whom in one instance he misnames Trogius (p. 196). Some other of his references to Pliny are more or less erroneous (see pp. 190, 196, 198, 214, 422 notes). His capitulation of lib. vii. (see pp. 176, 178, 188, 194, 200) apparently differs a little from that now adopted; his chapters are capp. 17, 16, 15, 18,

and 10 respectively in the edition of Franzius. (Lips. 1778.)

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 195, 209.

<sup>3</sup> His division of the history of the world into six ages agrees with that of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39.), from whom he probably takes it. It was adopted by various other writers.

Pseudo-Methodius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville Hugutio Pisanus, Jerome, and Josephus, which scarcely require to be discussed in this place.

In adjusting his chronology he has made constant use of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39) and of Marianus Scotus, whom he mentions at the beginning of his *Polychronicon* (lib. i. c. 2) as one of his main authorities in this matter. From them he probably derives most or all that he knew of the patriarchal chronology followed by the Septuagint, which differs from the Hebrew text.<sup>1</sup>

SECOND  
AGE OF  
THE  
WORLD.  
From  
Noah's  
flood to the  
birth of  
Abraham.

The  
children of  
Shem.

The History of the Second Age of the World, from Noah's departure from the ark to the birth of Abraham, is comprised in the sixth, seventh, eighth, and ninth chapters. The eighth chapter, however, is in a great measure anticipatory, being occupied with an account of the rise and progress of the great empires of the ancient world generally, some of which originated in times long posterior to Abraham. Higden commences his sixth chapter with a notice of God's covenant with Noah after he came forth from the ark, as signified by the rainbow, and notes from Petrus Comestor the figurative or rather fanciful significance of its outer and inner colours.<sup>2</sup> After remarking that "secundum sanctos" there was neither rain nor rainbow before the flood, and that neither fish, flesh, nor wine were in use till after the flood, he proceeds to give a pedigree of Shem's children, noticing the differences between the chronology of the Hebrew text and that of the Septuagint, till he at length comes down to Terah and the birth of Abraham, at which point the second age terminates,

<sup>1</sup> Thus Marianus writes:—Septuaginta interpretet ante natum Seth duxerunt annos ducentos triginta, et postea annos septingentos (col. 4, ed. Bas. 1559). This is in substance, though not in words, what we have in Higden, p. 220.

<sup>2</sup> Here and elsewhere the number

of the chapters as cited by Higden does not agree with the capitulation of the *Historia Scholastica* in the edition which I have consulted, printed at Lyons in 1543; and I am inclined to believe that his copy was differently capitulated; but the trivial variations cause but little difficulty.



comprising 992<sup>1</sup> years according to the Hebrews, or 1072 according to the LXX., which leads him to discuss the cause of the diversity after Bede and Augustine.<sup>2</sup> He takes this occasion to say, following Eusebius, that from Adam to Abraham we have no history either of the Greeks or barbarians.<sup>3</sup>

Higden now takes into account the other sons of Noah and their descendants, and begins by borrowing from the spurious "Revelations" of Methodius a history of Ionichus, a son of Noah, who reigned as far as the sea Eliochoira, that is to say, as Methodius explains, the region where the sun rises, or, in other words, the Indian Ocean; his disciple Nemphrot or Nimrod ruled in Babylon among the children of Ham.<sup>4</sup> In Nimrod's time, according to Higden, following Josephus, the tower of Babel was built; and he observes in conclusion from Petrus Comestor, that Nimrod was the first founder of Nineveh as well as of Babylon, and the inventor of fire worship.

The seventh chapter, which mentions the seats of the first descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japhet, and the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Sicyon, which

The other sons of Noah, and their descendants.

Their respective seats; rise of kingdoms; their progress traced here by anticipation.

<sup>1</sup> For *ducentos* in the Latin text of the MSS. (which Trevisa also read) we should, no doubt, read *nongentos* with the Harleian translator.

<sup>2</sup> The quotations, like many others, are derived from Marianus Scotus. (coll. 49, 50.)

<sup>3</sup> The passage occurs in the author's preface to his *Chronicon* (i.e. his *Canon*), translated by St. Jerome, which is the Chronicle of Eusebius as known to Higden. (See Hieron. *Op.* t. viii. p. 57, ed. Migne, and Higden. *Polychron.*, vol. i p. 38.) It will be found at p. 32 of the Armenian version of the entire work (the second part), published by Aucher in 1818; see his

remarks, *Præf.* § v. p. xiv. Higden seems, however, to derive much of his acquaintance with Eusebius' chronicle from Marianus Scotus, who quotes it by name frequently, and more often copies it tacitly. This passage is quoted by him from Eusebius at lib. i. æt. ii. (col. 72, ed. Basil, 1559.)

<sup>4</sup> See Pseudo-Method. *Revel.* Sig. a. vii., ed. Bas. 1504. His words are (in the Latin version): Ionichus autem filius Noe tenuit introitum in Etham usque ad mare quod vocatur Eliochoira; id est, regio solis in quo solis ortus fit, et habitavit ibidem. For the very late production itself see Cave's *Hist. Lit.* §. v. Methodius.

were founded nearly contemporaneously with the first dispersion of nations, is mostly derived from St. Augustine and from Isidore of Seville, a few unimportant remarks being added from other authors. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded each other, became most notable for their progress, but Higden promises to take first into consideration the earlier kingdoms contemporary with Assyria.

Brief  
history of  
the king-  
doms con-  
temporary  
with As-  
syria ;

The eighth chapter gives an outline of the three kingdoms which arose, according to Higden, about the same time as the Assyrian monarchy, viz., those of Scythia, Sicyon, and Egypt.

of Scythia ;

For the first the longer text<sup>1</sup> gives no authority, but the latter part of the account is certainly derived from Justin. The former portion has the appearance of being to some extent borrowed from Isidore.<sup>2</sup>

of Sicyon ;

The notice of the kingdom of Sicyon is taken from Petrus Comestor,<sup>3</sup> who derives it in all likelihood from Jerome's version of the Canon of Eusebius.<sup>4</sup> There is, however, some slight variation in the number of years during which the kings are said to have reigned.<sup>5</sup> Higden in conclusion notes an imaginary discrepancy in the chronology of Dionysius Exiguus.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The shorter MSS. C. D. prefix *Willelmus* here and before §§ 4, 5, 6. William of Malmesbury is usually so cited in this work, and the only other William mentioned by Higden in his catalogue of authorities is William of Rievaulx, who may perhaps be the same as William of Newbury. (See Cave and Hardy). I do not know whence these citations from William are derived. For the last sentence, see Justin, lib. ii. c. 3., whose Zopyrion is transformed into Zephiron by Higden.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. xiii. c. 21. § 24.

<sup>3</sup> *Hist. Lib. Gen.* c. 64. (not 60, as Higden says.)

<sup>4</sup> See Hieron., *Op. t.* viii. coll. 76,

111, 281 (Migne), and Euseb., *Can.* pp. 13, 79. (Vers. Arm.)

<sup>5</sup> 967 (Arm. version) ; 962 (Jerome's version) ; 971 (Petrus and Higden).

<sup>6</sup> Dionysius says that in the 50th year of Terah, Europs, whom Higden miscalls Ceerops, was the *second* king of Sicyon, (not quod regnum Sicyoniorum *inceperit*), and that Ægialeus, the first king, reigned 52 years, *i.e.*, according to his computation, in the 28th year of Nahor. This differs from Petrus only by four years, who places him in the 24th year of Nahor. See Marianus Scotus, who follows Dionysius (coll. 69-71).

The account of the third kingdom, Egypt, is nearly of Egypt ; all derived from Eusebius, more or less blundered,<sup>1</sup> one sentence being added from Josephus.

Fourth in order, but first in time, the Assyrian king- and of the kingdom of Assyria itself. dom is described in outline. A well-chosen passage adapted from Augustine commences the section, followed by another, taken from the same chapter of Petrus, but ultimately derived from Eusebius,<sup>2</sup> which brings the history down to the death of Sardanapalus. Higden then gives in his own view the state of Assyrian affairs afterwards, and following the language of Scripture, calls Sennacherib, &c. *kings* of Assyria, whom he considers to have been *independent*, but not monarchs of the whole country (*reges potentes, quamvis non monarchæ*), of whom Sargon was the last. He goes on to say that some consider a Median monarchy over the entire East arose after the death of Sardanapalus, beginning with Arbaces, and ending with Astyages, (whom Cyrus overthrew, and so transferred the empire to Persia,) or in other words that the Assyrian kings, so called, were but Median tributaries. In saying this he seems to express his disagreement with Eusebius, who makes no more mention of an Assyrian kingdom after the death of Sardanapalus. Still giving no authority he proceeds to the end, and notices the rise of the Babylonian and Chaldean kingdoms, giving a catalogue of their kings according to his own view.<sup>3</sup>

After this he traces the Persian kings from the begin- The Persian kings.

<sup>1</sup> Jerome's version says : " Porro apud Ægyptios xvi. potestas erat, quam vocant dynastiam ; quo tempore regnabant Thebæi, qui præfuerunt Ægyptiis annis exc." (col. 108.) But Higden says (p. 260) : " Deinde Thebæi tenuerunt xvi. dynastias," which completely destroys the sense. It is not worth while to point out other errors.

<sup>2</sup> See Hier. u. s. coll. 337, 339.

<sup>3</sup> It is mostly derived from Mariannus Scotus (who refers to Josephus), but with variations of spelling (coll. 52.) Higden has Balthasar, *qui et Nabar*, (*Naban* is read in the printed text of Mariannus), but Josephus has Naboandelus (*Ant.* x. 11), writing elsewhere (*Lib.* 1. c. *Ap.* § 20) Nabonnedus. Ruffin, however, has Naboar. See the notes in Havercamp's edition, vol. i. p. 539.

ning to the end of the monarchy, professing herein to follow Giraldus;<sup>1</sup> but Eusebius seems to be the original source from which the history is mostly drawn.<sup>2</sup> He gives little besides their names, some of which are corrupt.<sup>3</sup>

Foundation and destruction of the Greek kingdoms.

Having observed that Alexander the Great absorbed the kingdom of Persia into that of Macedonia, he goes on to add that this kingdom, which lasted 636 years, was founded by Caranus, whom he erroneously calls Cranaus, and lasted till the capture and dethronement of Perseus by the Romans.<sup>4</sup> This computation nearly agrees with Eusebius.<sup>5</sup> He concludes by remarking that there were other kingdoms of Greece in Sicyon, Argos, Athens, Sparta, and Epirus, which, like Macedonia, ultimately formed part of the great empire of Rome. For this section, as well as for the following, the MSS. of the longer form of the Chronicle refer to no authority; in the shorter form reference is made in each case to William of Malmesbury.

Rise and progress of the Roman empire.

The concluding section sketches the rise and progress of the Roman empire, from the Latin, Alban, and Roman kings, to the consuls, tribunes of the people, dictators, and emperors. Tacitly following St. Jerome's version of the Canon of Eusebius, he makes Philip Senior the first Christian emperor.<sup>6</sup> He seems also to allude to the

<sup>1</sup> The *Chronographia metrica* of Giraldus may possibly be intended (see *De libris a se scriptis*, Gir. Cambr. Op., tom. i. p. 414.), but I rather suspect that *Giraldus* is an error.

<sup>2</sup> See Euseb. *Chron.* pars. 1, p. 50; pars. 2, p. 19 (ed. Auch.) for the list of kings, and Euseb. *Canon*, s. a. 1487 for what is said of Judith, and s. a. 1540 for Esther; and compare Marianus Scotus *passim*.

<sup>3</sup> He has Ermeides for Smerdis; Fogodianus for Sogdianus; to say nothing of smaller errors.

<sup>4</sup> Higden errs in saying "quem occiderunt Romani."

<sup>5</sup> He makes Caranus begin to reign 1203 years after Abraham; and Perseus' reign to end 1850 years after Abraham.

<sup>6</sup> See Euseb. *Canon*, s. a. 2261. But the words "primusque omnium ex Romanis imperatoribus Christianus fuit" have no counterpart in the Armenian version, and are probably an addition by Jerome himself. (See Aucher's note, p. 197.)

fabulous donation of Constantine to the pope at the conclusion.

The ninth chapter is devoted to the early history of Assyria, from the times of Belus, the son of Nimrod, and second founder of Babylon, and of Ninus, the son of Belus, and second founder of Nineveh. The chapter concludes with the exploits of Semiramis, wife of Ninus, who had also a son of the same name. The authorities referred to are St. Augustine, Orosius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, and Justin. It would be useless to dwell upon the history, where all is mythology and fable. Higden in the same chapter discusses the origin of pagan idolatry from Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, St. Augustine, and an Alexander who is doubtless Alexander Neckham.<sup>1</sup> He also mentions from St. Jerome a strange superstition connected with the worship of Fortune. In the course of his quotations are many things which may reasonably be questioned, but their discussion need hardly be entered upon in this place.<sup>2</sup>

The histories of Abraham and the patriarchs comprised in the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth chapters need not detain us long. The life of the former is mostly taken from Genesis, a few particulars about him being added from Josephus and Petrus Comestor. Melchisedech's history and interview with Abraham are slightly enlarged from St. Jerome and Petrus Comestor; from the latter Higden explains the meaning of Kirjath-Arba to be the City of Four.<sup>3</sup> From the same authority he tells us that the Jews give their sons names, when they are circumcised, in allusion to Abram's name being

Early  
history of  
Assyria  
up to  
the age of  
Abraham.

THIRD  
AGE OF  
THE  
WORLD.  
Lives of  
Abraham  
and of his  
children.

<sup>1</sup> See Fabricius, *Bibl. Med. et Inf. Latin.* s. v. p. 174. His *Mythologia* has not, I believe, been printed.

<sup>2</sup> As the identification of Zoroastes, king of Bactria, with Ham, and of Belus with Baal. They are

taken from Petrus Comestor, *Hist. Lib. Genes.* capp. 39, 40.

<sup>3</sup> The Rabbins and St. Jerome are the original authorities for this view, which seems contrary to the derivation given in Josh. xiv. 15. See Mr. Grove's remarks in *Smith's Dict. of the Bible*, s. v.

changed into Abraham at the time of his circumcision ; also that Keturah, Abraham's wife after Sarah's death, was Hagar under a new name.<sup>1</sup> For the other patriarchs, Isaac, Jacob, and his family, as well as Lot, Higden has scarcely anything to say which is not contained in the Old Testament,<sup>2</sup> though he sometimes prefers to refer to other books, and not to the original authority itself.

Contemporary events in Greece and Egypt.

The eleventh and twelfth chapters contain a few particulars relating to the early traditions of Greece and Egypt ; Higden regards them as real events, and, like Eusebius and others, assigns dates to their occurrence.<sup>3</sup> His remarks on Minerva and Prometheus are mostly taken from St. Augustine ; also those on the kingdom of the Argives, and on Egyptian affairs. The last are further illustrated in some slight degree from Isidore, Petrus Comestor, and Hugutio Pisanus. The myths of Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres, are related from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. It is needless to say anything of these in this place ; but it may be observed Higden's knowledge of them is not very profound.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The derivation of Ishmael's descendants, the Saracens, from Sarah (p. 292), occurs in Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2., and in Marianus Scotus, Col. 76.

<sup>2</sup> St. Augustine's remarks, if indeed they be his, quoted by Higden (p. 304), about Potiphar, arise from the misrendering, as it would seem, of the LXX. and Vulgate. The identification of Potiphar with Potipherah is very questionable, and is not mentioned with favour by Augustine, *Quest in Gen.* 136. (tom. iii. Col. 307, ed. ant. v. 1700.) But Higden appears to copy not from Augustine, but from Petrus Comestor, capp. 88 and 92.

<sup>3</sup> The events which Higden no-

ties are in several instances tacitly taken from Eusebius ; his history of Cres, for example, p. 294. Cf. Euseb. *Can.* s. a. 56, p. 37, Auch. The dates however do not always accurately correspond. Higden's date of the Ogygian deluge (p. 300) is 265 years after Abraham ; the MSS., however, vary ; in Eusebius it is eleven years earlier. See Euseb. *Chron.* s. a. 254, and Migne's notes, col. 142. Marianus Scotus places it (col. 80), 260 years after Abraham.

<sup>4</sup> Thus we have (p. 296) professedly from St. Augustine : " Ap- paruit virgo Tritonia nomine, quam Græci Minervam dicunt." The passage about Tritonia is in *De*

Higden's account of Moses (capp. xiii. and xiv.) is mostly to be found in the Pentateuch, though he prefers to derive it from secondary authorities, such as Josephus and Petrus Comestor.<sup>1</sup> There are however traditional stories mingled with the scriptural account, nearly all of which are preserved by Josephus.<sup>2</sup> In the same chapters are brief allusions to Grecian history and mythology (see summary of contents), on which we need not dwell,<sup>3</sup> for which Higden refers to Josephus,

Histories  
of Moses,

*Civit. Dei* lib. xviii. c. 8., but St. Augustine (as may be supposed) does not say that Minerva is a Greek name; this error was derived from Petrus Comestor, who doubtless was thinking of this same passage, but in ignorance of Greek wrote "apud lacum Tritonidem" "virgo apparuit, quam Græci" "Minervam dixerunt." *Hist. Gen.* c. 76. Elsewhere, when Higden professes to refer to St. Augustine, he is in reality closely copying Petrus Comestor. At p. 310, his account of Prometheus agrees almost word for word with Petrus (*Hist. Gen.* c. 86), though he refers to Aug. *C. D.* lib. xviii., meaning no doubt c. 8, which however does not contain all that Petrus says, and which Higden transfers. Probably in Higden's MS. of Petrus, the authorities were set down in the margin. Higden's reference in the same place to Isidore, lib. xiii. should be lib. xix. [c. 32.], and ought to be prefixed to the sentence beginning *Et etiam*; but here also he is really copying Comestor.

<sup>1</sup> Higden, when he refers to the Pentateuch directly, misquotes it. Thus at p. 318, and at p. 324, he refers to *Genesis*, when he should have written *Exodus*. At p. 328 *Genesis* is similarly an error for

*Exodus*; but, as most MSS. omit all reference, this false reference may not be due to Higden himself.

<sup>2</sup> As the name (Thermuth) of Pharaoh's daughter; the treading under foot of Pharaoh's crown by Moses; the war of Moses against the Ethiopians; his marriage with Tharbis, daughter of the king of Ethiopia; and a few other smaller matters (*Ant.* ii. 9, 10.) The story of Moses burning his tongue with live coals is taken from Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Exod.* c. 5.), and does not, I believe, occur in Josephus. Petrus indicates that it is derived from Hebrew sources. The story about Moses making a ring of memory and a ring of forgetfulness, also preserved by Petrus (*Hist. Lib. Exod.* c. 6), savours of an Arabian origin. See Higden, p. 322.

<sup>3</sup> For Dasaneus, which is the name by which he tells us (p. 336) that Marianus Scotus calls the Phœnician Hercules, we should perhaps read Dosenaus, as in Herold's edition of Marianus, col. 90. Eusebius, in Jerome's version, has Desinaus; in the Armenian, Desaudas; in Syn-cellus, Dibdas. See Hieron. *Op.* tom. viii. col. 182, and the notes in Migne's edition (Paris, 1846), and Euseb. *Canon. Vers. Arm.* p. 59. (Auch.)

St. Augustine, and Orosius; he has likewise tacitly incorporated some parts of the Canon of Eusebius.<sup>1</sup>

and of  
Joshua.

The history of Joshua is very briefly contained in the fifteenth chapter; with the exception of the length of his government, which is added from Josephus,<sup>2</sup> and of the confirmation of his dying covenant, by the pouring out of water, related from Petrus Comestor,<sup>3</sup> the whole may be found in the Old Testament.

History of  
other  
nations in  
their times.

The allusions to profane history and mythology are numerous, but mostly brief. Some of them are evidently taken from Eusebius, or rather from his copyist Marianus Scotus, as, for example, those relating to Erichthonius, Phenix, Cadmus, and Asterius.<sup>4</sup> He is more particular about the legends relating to Jove and Saturn, for which he refers to St. Augustine, Isidore, Eutropius, as well as to Alexander Neckham and Henricus, who may be Henry of Huntingdon. Higden himself properly points out the inconsistencies in the accounts which authors have delivered. In this chapter we have (from Isidore) an example of the rationalizing method of explaining myths, viz., in the case of Europa, which in a succeeding chapter is set forth at length.

Sacred and  
profane  
history in

In the following chapters Higden gives an account of Jewish affairs under the judges, most usually assigning

<sup>1</sup> As the building of the temple of Delphi by Erysichthon (p. 334). This is also included in the Chronicle of Marianus Scotus, cap. *Moses*, as well as the change of the name Aerea into Egypt.

<sup>2</sup> The allusion to Josephus (*Ant. Jud.* v. 1. § 29.) occurs in the midst of a sentence said to be taken from Isidore, *Etyim.* lib. v. No such passage occurs there, nor elsewhere in Isidore, so far as I know. The versions may be right in omitting all reference.

<sup>3</sup> *Hist. Lib. Jos.* c. 16, where both quotations on p. 346 will be

found. I have in vain sought for Comestor's authority for his statements, which are very positive and explicit. At p. 346. l. 5. *Petrus* and not *Genesis* (see versions) must be the true reading.

<sup>4</sup> Higden's reference to Marianus as the authority for saying that Asterius and not Jupiter is the father of Rhadamanthus and his brothers, shows that he did not consult Eusebius himself in this instance, from whom Marianus borrows. See *Euseb. Can.* s. a. 570, and Marianus Scotus, Col. 94.



one chapter to each judge in order. He also takes notice of profane history, as the events occur in the times of the government of the successive judges. The sixteenth chapter is devoted to a notice of Othniel, the first of the judges, and to mythical events in Greece and Italy supposed to be contemporary, particularly the birth of the Delian Apollo, and of the Theban Bacchus; also the introduction of letters into Greece and Phenicia by Cadmus and Phenix. These and other matters in this chapter are tacitly derived, as usual, from Eusebius, probably through Marianus Scotus. The only authors referred to in this unimportant chapter are Petrus Comestor, St. Augustine, and Isidore.

The Jewish history in the times of Ehud is related very briefly in the seventeenth chapter. The allusions to Grecian history and mythology are numerous, and mostly the same as those given in Eusebius; they are often expressed in the very words of Jerome's version. Of Hercules we have a full account at the end of the chapter, derived from Justin, Lucan, Virgil, Claudian, and others. Following St. Augustine, he considers that more heroes than one bore the name of Hercules; and mentions the opinion of some, that the word itself signifies a glorious man.

The eighteenth chapter is devoted to the explanations of the Greek mythology which have been proposed by St. Augustine and others, and to the different kinds of fables current in antiquity. Higden quotes Eusebius<sup>2</sup> as an authority for saying that mythological

<sup>1</sup> From this chapter we infer that Higden was not absolutely ignorant of Greek, or at least not ignorant of the numerical value of the Greek letters. It is curious to observe the improvement of the sentence in the later form of the chronicle. But his knowledge perhaps well nigh ended with the alphabet; he mani-

festly shows ignorance of the language in various places.

<sup>2</sup> The heading is, *Eusebius in Chronicis*. I have in vain searched the Canon of Eusebius for the passage. It is true that Eusebius places a good many of the myths in Ehud's time in the body of his chronicle.

fables were invented in Greece principally in the time of Ehud, and Augustine's opinion that they arose between the time of Joshua's death and the Trojan war. It is not necessary to say anything here of the different kinds of fables, or of the interpretations given to the different myths. Higden refers in the course of his remarks upon them to St. Augustine, Isidore, Peter Comestor,<sup>1</sup> and Alexander Neckham. He concludes with an account of Mercury and his inventions.

Events in  
the time of  
Deborah ;

The history of the judges is continued in chapter nineteen, which contains the history of Deborah (or, as Higden, in common with Petrus Comestor, writes her name, Delborah) and of Barak. He notices, from St. Augustine, the fall of the Argive kingdom, which is translated to Mycenæ, and the rise of the Laurentine monarchy in Italy. The death of Liber Pater, the reign of Midas, and the foundation of Troy, are introduced here after Eusebius, though without reference to any authority.

of Gideon ;

Higden proceeds in the twentieth chapter to notice very briefly the history of Gideon, and observes, from Josephus,<sup>2</sup> that Tyre was founded in his days. He then touches on the histories of Minos, Theseus and the Minotaur, Helen, Dædalus, his son Icarus, and his nephew Perdix, from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. This leads him to describe the various Labyrinths from Hugo Pisanus.<sup>3</sup> From the same authority he gives an account

<sup>1</sup> See p. 378. Comestor, who refers to Walafrid Strabus, strangely supposes the chorus introduced into Greece to be a kind of musical instrument. See *Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 9. The passage quoted at p. 376 occurs in c. 8 of the same book, but Comestor places the event in time of Gideon; this is not the only chronological discrepancy between Higden and Comestor. The former places the rape of Helen in the

time of Gideon, quoting the words of Comestor very closely (p. 382), who places it in the time of Jair. (*Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 11.)

<sup>2</sup> The citation is probably derived from Marianus Scotus, cap. *Gedeon*, who, copying Eusebius, refers to his *Ant. Jud.* lib. iii. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 3.

<sup>3</sup> Hugo however does but copy Isidore, lib. xv. cap. 2. § 36.

of the plague which afflicted the Athenians in consequence of their murder of Icarus and of the suicide of his daughter Erigone; and of its expiation by images oscillating in the air.<sup>1</sup>

The histories of Abimelech and Tola are briefly related in the twenty-first chapter, in which Higden introduces (after Eusebius) allusions to the battle of the Lapithæ and the Centaurs, and to the departure of Medea to Colchis. From Justin an account is given of Faunus, king of Italy, and of his wife Fatua; also of the birth of king Latinus. He concludes with an account of Vesores, who is possibly the same as Sesostris, king of Egypt, and his war with the Scythians, and thence passes to the origin and history of the Amazons, herein copying pretty closely the fourteenth and fifteenth chapters of the first book of Orosius.

After alluding to the history of Jair in his twenty-second chapter, Higden mentions (after Eusebius) the opinion of some that Carthage was now founded. He alludes also (still following the same authority,) to the war of Minos with Dædalus, and ends this short chapter with an account of the introduction of the Latin alphabet into Italy by Carmentis, mother of king Latinus, and one of the Camenæ, to which is appended a brief history of the four stages of Latinity; the whole being taken from Isidore.<sup>2</sup> Of Jephthah, the successor of Jair, Higden mentions little more than the name (c. xxiii.), but immediately passes on to mention the rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus, the first king. He then tells us, from Isidore, that the Erythrean Sibyl flourished in his reign, and gives an account of the ten Sybils, and a derivation of the word Sibylla. From St. Augustine, who places

<sup>1</sup> Hugo derives his account from Servius on Virg. *Georg.* ii. 389. See also Facciolati, *Lex.* s. v. *Oscillum*.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. i. c. 4. (not 10.), and Lib. ix. c. 1. (not 7).

The Argonautic expedition and the Trojan war.

the Erythrean Sibyl in the time of Romulus, he quotes a prophecy of hers relating to Christ. He then goes on to give an account of the Argonautic expedition and of the Trojan war, principally from Justin and Dares Phrygius. The history of the latter is pursued throughout the whole of the twenty-fourth chapter, which also relates (or rather, barely alludes to) the government of Israel by Ibzan, or, as Higden writes it, Abessa.<sup>1</sup>

Sacred and profane history in the times of the later judges, Elon, Abdon, and Sampson.

In the twenty-fifth chapter we have brief notices of Elon (Aylon. *Higden*; Ahialon, *Vulg.*), and of some variations of chronology of Josephus and Eusebius, tacitly derived from Marianus Scotus;<sup>2</sup> also of Abdon or Labdon, in the third year of whose government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. He then goes on to remark, from St. Augustine, that the Greeks on their return home from Troy met with many disasters, mentioning particularly the change of the companions of Diomedes into birds. This gives Higden an opportunity of bringing together a number of curious stories to the same effect from Varro, Pliny, St. Augustine, Apuleius, and William of Malmesbury. These need not be discussed here, entertaining as they are. He concludes with quotations from St. Augustine and Giraldus,<sup>3</sup> which incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories.

Return of the Greeks from Troy; certain miraculous accounts discussed.

Trojans' affairs.

Higden now passes on (c. xxvi.) to the affairs of the Trojans after the siege of Troy, and relates the wanderings of Eneas to Sicily and Africa after Martinus Polonus,<sup>4</sup> but expresses his doubts about the truth of his meeting with Dido, as Eneas probably lived more than three centuries before Carthage was built, if Justin and

<sup>1</sup> The Vulgate (*Jud.* xii. 8) has Abesan; Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 13) calls him Abessan.

<sup>2</sup> Marian. Scot. cap. *Achialon*, 105.

<sup>3</sup> Aug. *C.D.* lib. xviii. c. 18. and

Girald. *Cambr. Top. Hib.* ii. 19., who refers to the same passage of St. Augustine.

<sup>4</sup> Mart. Polon. *Chron.* p. 4, ed. Bas, 1559.

others are to be trusted. He then proceeds to relate, after the same Martinus, the conquests of Eneas in Italy, the foundation of Lavinium, and the death of Eneas, who was succeeded by his son Ascanius, the founder of Alba Longa. He left his kingdom to Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother, because his own son Iulus, from whom the Julian family sprang, was of too tender an age. For these events Higden appears mainly to follow Eusebius, Marianus Scotus (cap. *Samson*), and Martinus Polonus, but there is some error in the references in his MSS. (see notes.)<sup>1</sup> He then, following Eusebius, makes mention of the events in the time of Sampson, such as the escape of Ulysses from Scylla and the Sirens, and the murder of Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles, by Orestes.<sup>2</sup> He concludes by observing (after Eusebius) that some place Homer's age here, but notes the variations of ancient authors in determining the time when he flourished.

Eneas in Italy.

Age of Homer.

Our author now approaches the fabulous history of Britain. After slightly touching the history of Eli (noticing the variations in chronology between Josephus and the Septuagint), and of Ruth, and of the recovery of Troy by Hector's sons after Eusebius (who however places the event earlier) he proceeds, still following Eusebius, with the succession of the Latin kings. Silvius Posthumus, the third king, son of Eneas, and brother of Ascanius, now begins to reign, whose son Brutus, according to the British accounts, invaded Britain. The Roman account, he observes (with which

Times of Eli. Succession of Latin kings. Early history of Britain.

<sup>1</sup> I now believe that *Eutropius* is an error for *Eusebius*, whose Canon (s. a. 870) contains part of Higden's account.

<sup>2</sup> The word *Ægyptiorum* (p. 438), which perplexed me (see notes), is taken from Marianus Scotus (cap. *Samson*), who intended *regnum* or *rex* to be supplied. (In Eusebius,

however, whom he miscopies, the name occurs in the column headed *Atheniensium* [*regnum*,] s. a. 854.) But Pyrrhus was doubtless king of some part of Northern Greece, perhaps Epirus, as the later kings of Epirus claimed affinity with Achilles. See also Isidore, xv. 1. § 43.

Eusebius agrees), differs from our own respecting the father of Brutus, and then, after entering minutely into the pedigree and history of the Latin kings, he concludes that Silvius Posthumus cannot be the father of Brutus. He proceeds, however, with the history of Brutus according to Geoffrey of Monmouth,<sup>1</sup> and in due course notices his invasion of Britain, of which he became the first king, after his destruction of the giants. The British history is now slightly interrupted by a notice of Samuel and his chronology according to Josephus; but Higden soon returns to it, and notices, after Geoffrey, the reigns of Loctrinus, son of Brutus, and of his wife Guendolena, who murdered him.

History of  
Saul.

In the twenty-eighth chapter we have an account of Saul, and of the length of his reign according to Josephus; also a notice (after Eusebius) of the succession of the Latin kings, and of Codrus, the last king of Athens, which he partly derives from St. Augustine. Higden then reverts to Britain, and, following Geoffrey tacitly,<sup>2</sup> relates that Maddan succeeded his father Loctrinus, leaving two sons, Mempricius and Maulus.

Termination  
of the  
third age  
of the  
world.

With Saul's death terminates the third age of the world, from the birth of Abraham to the reign of David, and Higden notices the unimportant variation of the chronology between Isidore and Josephus.

Description  
of MSS. β.  
and γ.  
which have  
been occa-  
sionally  
collated for  
this  
volume.

In bringing the second volume of Higden to a close, I should observe that I have occasionally consulted two MSS. of Trevisa's translation, which were not made use of in the first volume.<sup>3</sup> The older of these (γ. of the notes) is Cotton MS. Tiberius D. vii. in the British Museum. In the last printed catalogue it is said to be wanting, "Desideratur;" but a note in the copy in the Museum

<sup>1</sup> *Hist. Reg. Brit.* lib. i. c. 3, et seqq. Alfred of Beverley (p. 10. et seqq.) copies his account, to whom Higden also refers.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. ii. c. 6. Geoffrey writes

Malim for Maulus; Alfred has Maulim (p. 13.)

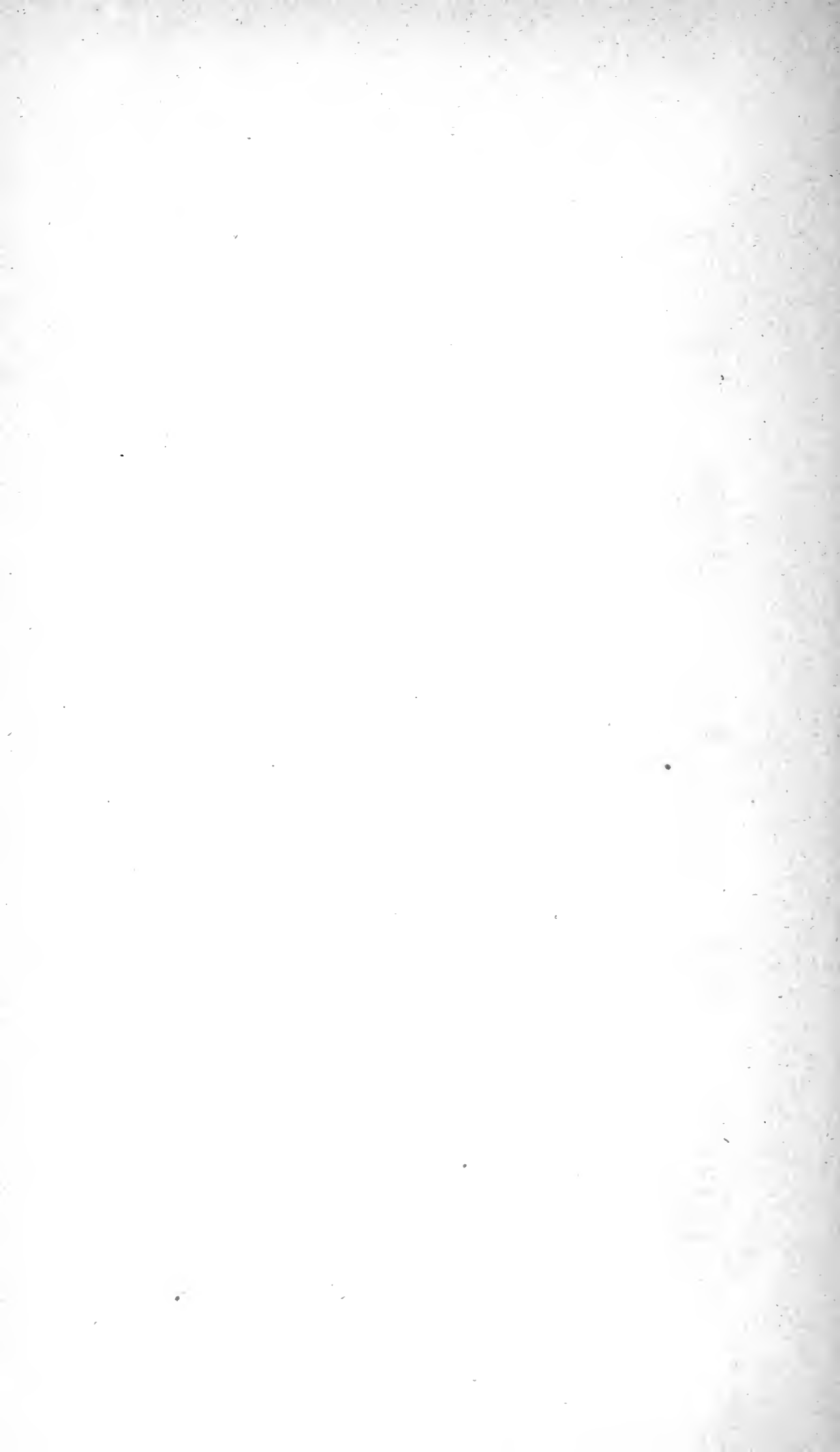
<sup>3</sup> Some corrections of the text made by their aid in vol. i. will be found in the addenda to the present volume.

says, "Restored, J. Holmes." It had been seen by T. Smith, who wrote the Catalogue of the Cotton MSS. printed at Oxford in 1696, and afterwards by the Hon. W. Burton in the following century, who annotated the copy in the British Museum. It is likewise mentioned in the Report on the Cotton MSS. after the fire, printed in 1732. The MS. is in quarto, on vellum of 296 leaves, each page containing about 37 lines, and is rubricated and slightly illuminated. It contains moreover the Dialogue of Dominus and Clericus, and Trevisa's Epistle to Lord Berkeley. It is injured by fire, though not very considerably; a few leaves however at the beginning and end are only partially legible. It would seem to be written towards the close of the fourteenth century, or rather a little later. Some extracts from it have been lately printed in Mr. Morris's *Specimens of Early English*, whose book first made me acquainted with its existence.<sup>1</sup> It differs much from the standard MS. and  $\alpha$ . in the forms of the pronouns, and preserves in some cases the true text, where they have corrupted it. The other MS. ( $\beta$  of the notes) which has been collated in cases of difficulty is MS. Harl. 1900; it has been sufficiently described in the Harleian Catalogue of 1808. It would appear to belong to the beginning of the fifteenth century.

Cockfield Rectory,  
February 13, 1869.

---

<sup>1</sup> Printed at Oxford, in 1867. See pp. 333-344; in which are contained the forty-first, forty-second, and fifty-ninth chapters of the first book. Compare pp. 13-31, and pp. 157-163 of the present volume.





## SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

---

### BOOK THE FIRST—(*continued*).

#### CAP. XXXIX.

*Great Britain or England. Various designations of the island.*

Originally called Albion, from its white rocks. Afterwards denominated Anglia by the Angles, the derivation being uncertain. Considered by some another world in itself. Charlemagne's opinion of its fertility. - - pp. 2-6.

#### CAP. XL.

*England, continued. Its site and dimensions.*

England's position defined in reference to Spain, Germany, and France. The channel fifty miles across at Boulogne. The longest day has eighteen hours. England is broadest in the middle. Richborough the first city that attracts the eye of sailors. Britain is in length eight hundred miles, in breadth two hundred, in circumference between three and four thousand. . . . - pp. 6-12.

#### CAP. XLI.

*England, continued. The richness of its natural productions.*

The climate of England more dry than that of Ireland; not more healthy. Cattle and horses abundant; also various wild animals and birds; freshwater fish in great numbers, particularly pike and eel. Fish used as food for hogs. Whales, porpoises, and seals often taken, many shell-fish also, as the pearl-mussel; others are used in dyeing. Wolves are met with in small quantity. Salt wells and hot springs also occur. Metals abundant, copper, iron, lead, tin, and silver. Marl, chalk, amber, various marbles, white and red clay for earthenware and bricks. Wool, hides, skins, iron, lead, salt, and white metal among its principal exports. England a rich and noble country, sufficient for its own needs, and indispensable to the rest of the world. - - - pp. 12-20.

## CAP. XLII.

*England, continued. The marvels therein explained.*

Britain contains hot springs, over which Minerva presides, which are splendidly decorated as baths. In Peccum (the Peak of Derbyshire?) are caverns full of mighty winds; and at Cherdhole (Cheddar?) is an endless cave under ground. At Stonehenge are marvellous stones of unknown origin and significance. Britain has several wonderful lakes; one containing sixty inhabited islands, surrounded by sixty rocks, and having sixty rivers flowing into it. Also a lake, which becomes hot or cold according as the bather desires. Other lakes with various miraculous qualities. Petrifying springs near Winchester and Bath. Prophetic fluctuations of the Dee near Chester. No salmon found in Bala lake, though abundant in the Dee. Many bodies of saints preserved in England uncorrupt, as SS. Ethelreda, Edmund king of East Anglia, Elphege, Cuthbert. - - - - pp. 22-30.

## CAP. XLIII.

*England, continued. The principal divisions of the island.*

After the time of Brutus Britain was divided into three parts: Loegria, now England; Cambria, now Wales; and Albania, now Scotland; so named from Loerinus, Camber, and Albanactus, sons of Brutus. Their limits described. Full account of Offa's dyke, which afterwards artificially separated Wales from England. - - - - pp. 30-34.

## CAP. XLIV.

*England, continued. The islands adjacent to Britain.*

The Isle of Wight described; its dimensions. The dimensions, population, and fertility of the Isle of Anglesey. The Isle of Man and its superstitions. The Isle of Thanet. - pp. 36-42.

## CAP. XLV.

*England, continued. The Royal Roads.*

Immunities attached to ploughs, temples and city roads by Molmutius, king of the Britons. King Belinus, his son, to

prevent ambiguity, defined and repaired four royal roads to be maintained in all their privileges. The Foss road; its course traced. Watling street; its course traced. Erming street; its course traced. Rikenild street; its course traced. pp. 42-47.

## CAP. XLVI.

*England, continued. The famous rivers.*

The Thames, Severn, and Humber divided the ancient kingdoms of Loegria, Cambria, and Northumbria. Course of the Thames described; it was the boundary of the kingdoms of Kent, Essex, Wessex, and Mercia. Origin of the name Sabrina, or Severn. Course and character of the river. Derivation of the name Humber. Its course and affluents. - pp. 48-52.

## CAP. XLVII.

*England, continued. The famous cities and towns.*

Enumeration of ancient British towns and their more recent appellations. Description of several of the more important cities and boroughs: London, Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, Leicester. pp. 52-62.

## CAP. XLVIII.

*England, continued. Cities and towns, continued.*

Description of York, Edinburgh, Alcluid or Aldborough, Carlisle, Hexham, Lindsey, Lindisfarn or Holy Island, Chester. pp. 62-84.

## CAP. XLIX.

*England, continued. The counties or shires.*

England contains thirty-two provinces or shires, called counties. The nine southern counties anciently governed by the law called West Saxonelaga. They are Kent, Sussex, Surrey, Hampshire, Berkshire, Wiltshire, Somersetshire, Dorsetshire, and Devonshire. The fifteen eastern and northern shires governed by the Denelaga. They are Essex, Middlesex, Suffolk, Norfolk, Hertfordshire, Huntingdonshire, Northamptonshire, Cambridgeshire, Bedfordshire, Buckinghamshire,

Leicestershire, Derbyshire, Nottinghamshire, Lincolnshire, Yorkshire, Durhamshire, Northumberland, Carlislehire with Cumberland, Applebyshire with Westmorland, Lancashire with its fifteen small shires. The eight midland and western counties governed by the Merchenelaga; viz., Oxfordshire, Warwickshire, Gloucestershire, Worcestershire, Herefordshire, Shropshire, Staffordshire, Cheshire. Explanation of the terms wapentake, hundred, cantred. Ancient extent of Northumbria. William the Conqueror's survey of the country. pp. 84-90.

## CAP. L.

*England, continued. Different kinds of laws and law terms explained.*

Laws of Molmutius; Merchenelaga; Westsaxenelaga; Dene-laga. Laws of Edward the Confessor. Explanation of various law terms therein contained. - - - pp. 90-96.

## CAP. LI.

*England, continued. The separate kingdoms and their limits.*

Line of British monarchs unbroken from Brutus to Julius Cæsar. The island tributary to Rome from his time to that of Septinius Severus. The island had kings of its own from Severus to Gratian; when the British succession failed, the Romans were sovereigns. The Picts and Scots harassing the island, the Roman soldiers were withdrawn by Magnus Maximus. The Britons invite the Saxons against the Picts. The Saxons conquer both Picts and Britons, set up kings of their own and found the Heptarchy. This lasted till Athelstan's reign, the first king of all Britain. The Danes infested the kingdom for a hundred and seventy years from the time of Ethelwolf; and held the throne thirty years. The Norman Conquest. The kingdoms of the Heptarchy briefly described. Limits and durations of the kingdoms of Kent, of the South Saxons, of the East Saxons, of the East Angles, of the West Saxons, of the Mercians, of the Northumbrians. Northumbria divided into two provinces, Deira and Bernicia, separated by the Tyne. The Mersey separated Mercia from Northumbria. pp. 96-108.

## CAP. LII.

*England, continued. The Episcopal sees.*

Three archiepiscopal and twenty-eight episcopal sees in Britain in the time of Lucius. The former were London, York, Caerleon. Augustine constituted Canterbury the principal see in place of London. Temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric. York always an archiepiscopal see, but Scotland at length ceased to be subject to its jurisdiction. In king Arthur's time this archbishopric was removed from Caerleon to St. David's. Sampson, the twenty-fourth bishop of St. David's, retired in consequence of the prevalence of the plague to Dol in Brittany; twenty-one archbishops from Sampson to the time of Henry I. Up to this time the Welsh bishops were wholly independent of the authority of any other church. From the time of Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury in the reign of Henry II., the Welsh bishops became subject to that see. Two primates now in England; the archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England; the archbishop of York, primate of England. From and after the time of the Conqueror various sees, (Dorchester, Lichfield, Thetford, Sherburn, Wells, Cornwall, and Selsey,) were translated to more important cities. The bishop of Rochester is only the chaplain of the archbishop of Canterbury, and has no diocese.

pp. 110-118.

## CAP. LIII.

*England, continued. The Western bishops.*

Foundation of the sees of Dorchester (near Oxford) and Winchester. The see of Sherburn separated from Winchester by archbishop Theodore. King Edward the Elder created the sees of Wells, Crediton, and St. German in Cornwall. Ramsbury created soon after. All these sees, except Winchester, translated to larger places by William the Conqueror.

pp. 118-122.

## CAP. LIV.

*England, continued. The Eastern bishops.*

The sees of Dunwich and Elmham founded. The former see suppressed. In the Conqueror's time Elmham transferred to Thetford. William Rufus removed the see of Thetford to Norwich. Henry I. separates Ely from the see of Lincoln.

pp. 122-124.

## CAP. LV.

*England, continued. The Midland bishops.*

Lichfield the only original see in Mercia. It was in Offa's time an archbishopric. Succession of bishops of Lichfield. Archbishop Theodore constituted three additional sees for Mercia viz., Worcester, Chester, and Lindsey. The see of Dorchester was then transferred from Wessex to Mercia. William the Conqueror removes the see of Lindsey to Lincoln.

pp. 126-130.

## CAP. LVI.

*England, continued. The Northern bishops.*

York the only original see of Northumbria. Early civil and ecclesiastical commotions have disturbed the succession of York. Aidan, bishop of Lindisfarne, in the district of Bernicia. Archbishop Theodore ordains Tunbert to the see of Hexham, Eatas to Lindisfarne, Eadhed to Ripon, Trunwyne to Whithorne in Galloway. These four sees gradually became extinct. Their history traced. Durham takes the place of Hexham and Lindisfarne in the reign of Ethelred II. The see of Carlisle founded by Henry I. - pp. 130-136.

## CAP. LVII.

*England, continued. The Number of the episcopal sees.*

The archbishop of Canterbury has four Welsh bishops and thirteen English bishops under his jurisdiction. Enumeration of these; the limits of their dioceses. The York metropolitan has only two suffragans. The archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of all England; the archbishop of York, the primate of England. The rights of either primate. This subject to be discussed more fully hereafter. - - - pp. 136-142.

## CAP. LVIII.

*England, continued. The different Tribes that peopled the country.*

The Britons the first inhabitants of the island. They came over from Armorica to the south of Britain four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome. In Vespasian's time the Picts came from Scythia to the north of Ireland, where

they found the Scots dwelling. These recommended them to settle in the north of Britain about Caithness, and promised them aid against the Britons. The Picts and Scots intermarry. The Picts said by some to be synonymous with the Agathyrsi or with the Goths. The tyrant Maximus, A.D. 383, carried them to Gaul to aid him against Gratian. Carausius, the tyrant (circa 290) gave them a dwelling-place in the south of Scotland, where they have since remained mingled with the Britons. This tract afterwards belonged to Northumbria, but was at length made by Kenneth (Macalpine), king of Scotland (circa 840), part of his own dominions. The Irish Scot-afterwards (circa 500) came over with their chief Renda to Scotland, and settled about Argyle. The Saxons or Angles assisted from Germany by the Britons against the Scots and Picts, drive the Britons themselves into Wales. In the time of Egbert, king of the Westsaxons, all the natives of England were called Angles. The Danes next invade the country and ravage it for about two hundred years; they afterwards fail. The Normans next come over with duke William. Last of all, men of Flanders sailed hither in the reign of Henry I., and settled at Haverfordwest. In Higden's time the Scots lived in Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and Angles mixed in the whole island. The Danes have vanished insensibly, but the Picts were exterminated by fraud by the Scots. - - pp. 142-156.

## CAP. LIX.

*England, continued. The languages of the natives.*

The native dialects are of the same number as the native tribes. The Scotch and Welsh being less mixed with the rest retain their dialects most uncorrupt. The Flemings of West Wales speak English fairly. The English dialects were formerly three, southern, midland, and northern; these originated with the three Germanic tribes who peopled these districts; they became corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The corruption of English is increased by two causes; the first is, that boys construe their lessons in school in French, and are taught to speak French to the neglect of their own language; the second is, that rustics endeavour to ape their betters and to appear as Frenchified as possible. The three English dialects extend east and west across the island, and consequently the inhabitant of Mid-Anglia is better able to understand a North Briton or a South Briton than these can understand each other. The Northumbrian dialect, especially in Yorkshire, is almost un-

intelligible to the southerners, who have little intercourse with their less civilised countrymen of the north, whither the Court seldom repairs. - - - - - pp 156-162.

## CAP. LX.

*England, continued. The manners of the natives.*

The Welsh Flemings brave and enterprising, apt for the arts of war and peace, English in feeling, hostile to the Welsh. Their superstitions. The southern English are of a more quiet and mild disposition than the northern; the midlanders intermediate in character. Gluttony, drunkenness, and excess of apparel, are vices especially English. Skill of the English in war; their love of travel, and wide dispersion over the world. Their industry of all kinds. Pope Eugenius' praise and blame of the nation. Higden's invectives against their fastidious and discontented spirit, ever affecting the dress and manners of those above their own station. A prophecy of a holy hermit against their vices. - - - - - pp. 164-174.

## BOOK THE SECOND.

*The History of the World down to the Destruction of the First Temple.*

## CAP. I.

*The Prologue. Man. His likeness to the World.*

A description of the countries of the world must be followed by the history of the world's actions. The great world was made for the little world, which is Man, on whom the Creator impressed the likeness of the great world. Man and the world resemble each other in three respects; in their dimensions, in their composition, and in their operations.

(1.) As from the zenith to the nadir the distance is as great as from east to west, so the height of a man from head to foot is as great as the space from the end of one extended arm to that of the other.

(2.) Secondly, in the great and little world the natural disposition is similar; its parts and members correspond to one another, and a dislocation of any part is followed by disturbance in both. The world and man are both framed on a system of adaptation and gradation. Existence, life, and



sensation are common to man and the three kingdoms of nature. They are also composed of the same four elements, fire, water, earth, and air. The very word *ἄνθρωπος* is, as it were, a tree upturned (*ἀνατροπή*), his hair being the roots, his arms and legs the branches.

(3.) In their operations both man and the world have much in common. Both develop their powers; both have their childhood, youth, and age. His energies resemble those of the elements and of the planets. As the outer world, especially in its extremities, has its miracles, so has man. In the human face, consisting of few parts, there is such diversity that of the many thousands of faces scarcely any two are alike. Various miraculous and venomous powers found in some tribes of men. Marvellous qualities found in the parts of some men's bodies. The great toe of Pyrrhus; the teeth of the son of Prusias; the eyes of Strabo and Tiberius. The mental powers of others no less marvellous. The memory of Seneca and Cineas. The manifold capacity of Cæsar. Sexual mutations and other peculiarities of physical structure and constitution of various persons. Different kinds of conception in women. - - - - - pp. 174-201.

## CAP. II.

*On human monsters.*

The Cyclopes, Sciapodes, and Antipodes. Other monstrosities, as the change of men into beasts; also the natural change of one animal into another. - - - - - pp. 202-211.

## CAP. III.

*Man's unlikeness to the world.*

Man's state before the fall; he had special prerogatives above the rest of the world; he was in perfect harmony with himself, flourishing without decay of strength, unchanging and incorruptible, with Paradise for his dwelling-place, and with God for his reward. After the fall his honours were taken from him; and he is compared to the beasts that perish. Nay, he is even inferior to them, for whereas animals have the natural defence of hide, bristles, hair, feathers, or scales, he is naked and helpless, and can of himself only weep. He is weighed down by the anxiety of life and the necessity of death. He, unlike other animals, is the enemy of his own species. He is exposed by a righteous punishment to continual wars from without and to continual wars from within. - pp. 212-218.

## CAP. IV.

*The creation of Adam.*

THE FIRST AGE OF THE WORLD.—Adam fell after the mid-day of his creation. His change of state from weal to woe. In his fifteenth year he begat Cain and his sister Calmana; and in his thirtieth Abel and his sister Delbora. Birth of Seth differently reckoned in the Hebrew text and in the Septuagint. Adam is buried in Kirjath Arba, *i.e.*, the City of Four.

Brief notices of Seth, Enos, Cainan, Mahalaleel, Jared, Enoch, Methuselah, and Lamech, with the chronological variations of the Hebrew and of the Septuagint. - - pp. 218-224.

## CAP. V.

*The posterity of Lamech.*

Lamech introduces bigamy; he is the father of Jabal, Jubal, Tubalcain, and Noema their sister. The arts of building, music, agriculture, weaving, metallurgy, and sculpture now invented or improved. Lamech accidentally shoots Cain while out hunting.

The longevity of the patriarchs not incredible. The corruption of mankind, and the birth of the giants. Adam's prophecy. The construction of the inscribed column of brick and marble, which should be proof against fire or flood. The marble column still extant in Syria. Noah and his family. The construction of the ark. The deluge. Termination of the first age of the world. Its duration variously computed.

pp. 214-236.

## CAP. VI.

*The posterity of Noah.*

THE SECOND AGE OF THE WORLD.—Noah leaves the ark. The rainbow. The symbolical significance of its colours. Before the flood was no rain or rainbow, nor use of flesh, fish, or wine. Death of Noah. His sons and their posterity. The genealogy of Shem pursued. Short notices of Arphaxad, Cainan, Salah, Heber, Phaleg, Regau (or Reu), Sarug, Nahor, and Terah, the father of Abraham, with whose birth the second age of the world terminates. Its duration differently estimated in the Hebrew and in the LXX. Observations on the discrepancy. No Greek or barbarian history before Abraham.

Ionicus, a son of Noah, reigns as far as the Indian ocean. His prophecies. Nimrod, his disciple, founds Babylon and reigns there. The tower of Babel built in the time of Nimrod, who also founds Nineveh, afterwards enlarged by Ninus, and introduces fire worship. - - - pp. 238-250.

## CAP. VII.

*Of Noah's children, and the kingdoms founded by their posterity.*

Shem's descendants occupied the south countries from the East to Phenicia. Ham's posterity extended from Sidon by the sea to the Straits of Gibraltar. Japhet's children ruled over Mid Asia, from Mount Taurus northward, and over all Europe as far as the British ocean. From the first dispersion of nations the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Sicyon commenced about the same time. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded one another, were the principal empires as regards their progress. The kingdoms which were coeval with Assyria must be treated of first. - - - - - pp. 250-258.

## CAP. VIII.

*On the kingdoms of Scythia, Sicyon, Egypt, Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome.*

The kingdom of Scythia took its rise in the time of Sarug, the ancestor of Abraham. Thanaus the first king, The river Tanais named after him. This kingdom subdued Asia, and conquered Darius, Cyrus, and Alexander.

The kingdom of Sicyon commenced in the time of Nahor, Abraham's great-grandfather, and lasted under thirty-two kings till the time of Eli. Dionysius, however, places its commencement a little later.

The kingdom of Egypt began likewise in the time of Nahor. Fifteen dynasties before Abraham. Then sixteen dynasties of Thebes. After them eighteen Diospolitan dynasties. From the time of Cambyses Egypt was under seven Persian kings. It had then ten kings of its own, till Artaxerxes Ochus re-conquered it for Persia, which held possession till the time of Alexander. The Lagidæ or Ptolemies, of whom Cleopatra, subdued by Augustus, was the last. Egypt thenceforward subject to Rome.

The kingdom of Assyria, the earliest of all, was founded by Belus, the son of Nimrod, and lasted till the reign of Sardanapalus, who died in the reign of Uzziah, king of Judah. Arbaces then transferred the kingdom of Assyria to the Medes. Assyria, however, had still governors of its own, though not monarchs, as Pul, Tiglath-Pileser, Shalmaneser, Sennacherib, Esarhaddon, Sargon. In the time of the elder Cyrus, who overthrew Astyages, the kingdom of the Medes was transferred to the Persians.

In the time of Hezekiah, king of Judah, arose the great kingdom of the Babylonians and Chaldeans, governed by seven kings, of whom Belshazzar or Nabar was the last. Cyrus slew him and joined his kingdom to his own.

The monarchy of Persia founded by Cyrus. The names of the kings. Alexander annexes Persia to Greece.

The Macedonian kingdom began under Cranaus (Caranus) in the time of Uzziah, king of Judah, and lasted till the reign of Perseus, slain by the Romans. There were other Greek kingdoms at Sicyon, Argos, Sparta, Epirus, all of which fell before the power of Rome.

The kings of Italy, of whom Janus was first, lasted till Tarquin the Proud, six being Latins, fourteen Albans, seven Romans after the foundation of the city. Consuls, tribunes of the people, and dictators successively governed the Roman State down to the time of Julius Cæsar. Thenceforward Emperors ruled. Augustus reduced the world to one monarchy. Philip Senior, the first Christian Emperor. Constantine the Great made Constantinople a second seat of empire, leaving to the Pope the dignity of the Apostolic See. When Charlemagne, king of France, became Emperor of the West, the title of Roman Emperor remained at Constantinople alone. - - - - - pp. 258-274.

## CAP. IX.

### *The empire of Ninus and Semiramis.*

Belus, son of Nimrod and king of Babylon, is succeeded by his son Ninus, who reigned over almost all Asia, except India. Abraham is born in his reign, about 1300 years before the building of Rome. Ninus builds Nineveh, subdues Zoroaster, king of Bactria, and burns his books on magic. After the death of his father Belus, he made an image of him; hence arose idolatry. Baal and Beel, which occur in various combinations, are forms of Bel, the general name for idol. Further remarks on the origin of idolatry and of the heathen gods and superstitions from Alexander Neckham, Isidore, Augustine, and Jerome. Upon the death of Ninus, who was killed by an

arrow in war, his wife Scmiramis reigns, feigning herself to be his son. She conquers Ethiopia and India. She is at last murdered by her own son Ninian. Dress and manners of the Assyrian court. - - - - pp. 274-284.

## CAP. X.

*The History of Abraham.*

THE THIRD AGE OF THE WORLD.—Abram, the son of Terah, was born two hundred and ninety-two years after the flood. He and his father migrate from Ur of the Chaldees to Haran in Mesopotamia. After Terah's death he goes to Shechem, and thence to Pentapolis, and at length descends into Egypt. He teaches the Egyptians arithmetic and astronomy. He returns from Egypt, and settles near Hebron, or Kirjath-Arba, *i.e.*, the City of Four, because the four greatest patriarchs were buried there. He pays tithes to Melchisedech, who is said to be the same as Shem. Some connect the institution of the Jubilee with Abram. His main Hagar becomes the mother of Ishmael and the Saracens. Abram and his family receive the covenant of circumcision. His name then changed to Abraham; hence the Jews give their sons names when they are circumcised. Destruction of Sodom. History of Lot and his daughters. - - - pp. 284-292.

## CAP. XI.

*History of Isaac and his family. Early history of Greece.*

Birth of Isaac; death and burial of Sarah. Abraham marries Hagar, now called Keturah. Isaac marries Rebecca. Cres reigns in Crete; he is one of the Curetes. The appearance of Minerva at the lake Tritonis; she invented spinning and other arts. Rise of the Argive kingdom under Inachus; his son Phoroneus first gave laws to the Greeks; Phegeus, his brother, invented chapels in honour of the gods. Their sister Isis, or Io, teaches the Egyptians agriculture and letters: her sistrum. The birth of Epaphus a fable, as his mother Io was in the time of Isaac, while his father Jupiter lived in the days of Joshua. The flood in Greece in the reign of Ogyges.

History of Jacob, son of Isaac by Rebecca. He serves Laban; his artfulness. Joseph, his son, is sold into Egypt to Potiphar, an eunuch. Potiphar becomes priest of Heliopolis. Death and burial of Isaac. Pharaoh's dream. Jacob comes into Egypt. pp. 294-304.

## CAP. XII.

*History of the patriarchs concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.*

Apis, third king of Argos, comes into Egypt; and is there after his death worshipped as Serapis. Apis appears annually in the form of a bull emerging from the Nile. In the reign of Argus, fourth king of Argos, corn began to be cultivated in Greece. Jacob dies, is embalmed, and afterwards buried in Hebron. Legends of Prometheus, Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres. Joseph dies, and he and his brethren, as they die, are buried in Hebron. Their bones afterwards translated to Shechem.

pp. 306-314.

## CAP. XIII.

*History of Moses.*

Moses, the son of Amram, was born in the time of the Pharaoh known as Amenophis. Pharaoh's cruelty to the Israelites; their male children cast into the Nile. Moses is saved by Thermuth, the daughter of Pharaoh. Moses brought before the king when an infant; he tramples the king's crown, on which an image of Jove is carved, under foot. His narrow escape from being killed; he then scorches his own tongue with burning coals, and is accordingly supposed to have acted in the matter of the crown in childish simplicity. Moses in process of time leads the Egyptians against the invading Ethiopians, whom he blockades in Saba, the royal city. Tharbis, the king's daughter, surrenders the city to Moses, on condition of his marrying her. Tharbis opposed his return to Egypt; but he gave her a ring of forgetfulness, and so returned. While visiting his brethren in the land of Goshen, he slew an Egyptian who had smitten an Israelite. The deed being known, he fled into the land of Midian, and married Zipporah, daughter of Jethro the priest.

Legends of Antæus, Phaeton, and Deucalion. Cecrops the first king of Athens. - - - - - pp. 314-326.

## CAP. XIV.

*History of Moses concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.*

Moses and Aaron stand before Pharaoh, who refuses to let Israel go. The plagues of Egypt. The Exodus. The miracles in

the wilderness. Moses receives the law and constructs the tabernacle. The spies are sent into Canaan, and return. The Israelites wander in the desert forty years. Death of Moses. Cecrops leaves Egypt and builds Athens. Corinth, anciently called Ephyra, built five years earlier. Io, afterwards called Isis, marries Telegonus in Egypt, by whom she has Epaphus. The temple at Delphi built by Erysichthon. Lacedæmon founded. Arcas, king of Argos, names Sicyonia Arcadia after himself. Egypt, formerly known as Aerea, receives its present name. History of Danaus and Egyptus. Legends relating to Bacchus, Mercury, and Hercules.

pp. 326-336.

#### CAP. XV.

*History of Joshua ; early history of Egypt, Greece, and Italy. Legends about Jupiter and Saturn.*

Joshua succeeds Moses ; his acts ; he governs Israel twenty-six years.

Erichthonius ; Busiris ; Phenix and Cadmus. Rape of Europa. Her children. Agenor, king of Libya, and his family. Rationalistic explanation of the legend of Europa and her brothers. Jupiter reigns in Crete ; the Cretans who show his tomb are mis-called liars by the lying Greeks, who feign him to be God of gods. History of Jupiter and Saturn considered.

Joshua, before his death, makes a covenant with the people, and confirms it by pouring water on the ground. The heathen ratified covenants with the blood of a pig. The reasons for each, and the difference between them. - - pp. 338-346.

#### CAP. XVI.

*Othniel. Early history of Greece and Phenicia.*

Chushan, king of Mesopotamia, subdues Israel. Othniel, Caleb's brother, delivers the Israelites, and becomes their judge forty years. The eight years of servitude must be reckoned as part of the forty years. Birth of Apollo, (not the Delphian Apollo, who lived earlier,) in Delos ; and of Bacchus in Thebes. Cadmus brings letters to Greece, and Phenix to Phenicia. The latter were written in vermilion. Numerical value of the Greek letters. Demeter and Danae lived at this time. Foundation of Corinth. - - - pp. 348-350.

## CAP. XVII.

*History of Ehud and Shamgar. Notices of many ancient heroes, especially Hercules.*

Ehud, a left-handed man, delivers Israel from Eglon, king of Moab. He was the son of Gera, the son of Jamin, or Geminus. Shamgar slays six hundred Philistines with a ploughshare. Notices of various events in the lives of Triptolemus, Orcus, Proserpine, Perseus, Helle, Amphion, Pelops, &c. Exploits and labours of the later Hercules. - pp. 352-362.

## CAP. XVIII.

*Explanations of the mythical narratives of antiquity.*

Myths arose principally in the time of Ehud. The fables of Esop. St. Augustine and Isidore explain away the myths of Erichthonius, Geryon, the Gorgons, and others, so as to bring out a historical sense. The different kinds of fables; those of Menander, Esop, Hesiod. The traditions relating to Mercury belong to the time of Ehud. Musical instruments then invented. Introduction of the chorus into Greece.

pp. 362-378.

## CAP. XIX.

*History of Deborah and her contemporaries.*

Deborah and Barak judged Israel forty years. Fall of the Argive and rise of the Laurentine monarchy. Mida king of Phrygia. Foundation of Troy. - - - pp. 378-380.

## CAP. XX.

*History of Gideon and his contemporaries.*

Gideon or Jerubbaal governed the Israelites forty years, counting in the years that they served Midian and Amalek. Tyre founded. History of Minos, Theseus, Dædalus, Perdix, and Icarus. The Cretan and other labyrinths. The plague at Athens consequent upon the death of Icarus and Erigone, and its remedy. Derivation of *Oscillum*. - pp. 380-386.



## CAP. XXI.

*Histories of Abimelech and Tola, and their contemporaries.*

Abimelech, son of Gideon by a concubine, slays his brethren, all except one. He judges Israel three years, and is succeeded by Tola, who remains in office twenty-three years. Battle of Lapithæ and Centaurs. Medea goes to Colchis. Faunus reigns in Italy. War of Vesores, king of Egypt, with the Scythians. The Amazons. - - pp. 388-394.

## CAP. XXII.

*History of Jair, and contemporary events.*

Jair and his thirty sons, who rule over thirty cities. After his death Israel became subject to the Philistines and Ammonites. Carthage now founded according to some. The nymph Carmentis introduces the Latin alphabet. Different stages of the Latin language. - - pp. 394-396.

## CAP. XXIII.

*History of Jephthah and his contemporaries.*

Jephthah, the son of a harlot, judged Israel six years. Rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus. The Erythrean Sibyl now delivers her prophecies concerning Christ. There were ten Sibyls in all. Derivation of the word. Succession of the kings of Athens, one of whom Demophon, aids the Greeks in the Trojan war. The Argonautic expedition. Jason's subsequent expedition to Troy, which he laid waste, and returned home, carrying off Hesione, daughter of Laomedon, king of Troy. - - - - pp. 398-406.

## CAP. XXIV.

*History of Ibzan and of the Trojan war.*

Ibzan of Bethlehem was judge of Israel seven years. Priam promises to forgive the Greeks all injuries, if his sister Hesione were restored. This being refused, the Trojan war breaks out afresh. The history of that war traced to its close. - - - - pp. 406-418.

## CAP. XXV.

*History of Elon and Abdon, and of the return of the Greeks from the Trojan war.*

Elon, of the tribe of Zebulon, judges Israel ten years. Variations of chronologers. Abdon judges Israel eight years. In the third year of his government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. The Greeks on their way home met with many troubles. The companions of Diomède were changed into birds, and haunted a temple of Diomede (who had miraculously disappeared, and was held as a god) near Mount Garganus in Apulia. Varro confirms the story by the changes of Ulysses' companions into hogs, and of certain Arcadians into wolves. Augustine heard stories of Italian witches who turned men into beasts by giving them cheese. Apuleius' account of himself. A similar account related by William of Malmesbury, in the time of Peter Damian. St. Augustine's story about Præstantius. He and Giraldus incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories. - - - - - pp. 418-430.

## CAP. XXVI.

*The wanderings of Eneas after the fall of Troy.*

Accompanied by Anchises and Ascanius he comes to Sicily, and while intending to sail to Italy is driven by a storm to Africa, where, according to the common account, he meets Dido, who falls in love with him. But there are chronological reasons against the common account, as Eneas seems to have lived three centuries before Carthage was built. Dido burns herself to death on a funeral pile. Eneas comes to Italy, allies himself with Evander, who reigned in the Palatine Mount, and in the end overcomes the Tuscans and Latins, and builds Lavinium, named after his wife, Lavinia, a daughter of king Latinus. Ascanius (or Iulus), son of Eneas by Creusa, succeeds Eneas, who fell in fighting against Mezentius; he leaves Lavinium and builds Alba Longa. He is succeeded by Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother.

In the time of Sampson, who judged Israel twenty years, occurred the events of the Odyssey. Pyrrhus is slain by Orestes. Homer now flourished, according to some. Age of Homer uncertain. - - - - - pp. 432-440.

## CAP. XXVII.

*History of Eli and his contemporaries. Early History of Britain.*

Eli presided over Israel forty years, according to Josephus and Isidore, but according to the Septuagint for twenty only. Ruth's history. The sons of Hector recover Troy. Silvius Posthumus begins to reign. Brutus, the son of Posthumus, occupies Britain. Discrepancy between the Roman and British accounts about the father of Brutus. Brutus, whose mother died in childbirth, kills his father when out hunting. Expelled from Italy into Greece, he arrives at length after various wanderings in Britain, destroys the giants, and becomes first monarch of the island, which he calls after his own name. He builds Trinovantum, now called London. He begets three sons, Loctrinus, Camber, and Albanactus; and after governing Britain for twenty-four years, dies. The kings of Sicyon come to an end.

Samuel governs Israel twelve years; his institution of the schools of the prophets. Loctrinus, son of Brutus, reigns in Britain. His wife, Guendolena, who slew him, reigns after his death for fifteen years. - - - - - pp. 440-446.

## CAP. XXVIII.

*History of Saul and his contemporaries.*

Saul reigns over Israel twenty years according to Josephus. Eneas Silvius, son of Posthumus, reigns over the Latins thirty-one years. Codrus, the last king of Athens, begins to reign. He provokes his own death in order to insure victory to his country. Change of government at Athens.

Maddan, son of Loctrinus and Guendolena, reigns in Britain forty years, and begets Mempricius and Maulus. Death of Saul and his sons. The third age of the world now concludes.

pp. 448-450.

---



## ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

---

### VOL. I.

- Introd. p. xii., notes, col. 1, l. 9. In Chester Cathedral an arched monument is still to be seen in the wall of the south aisle near the choir, which corresponds perfectly with the description quoted, and it has been recently supposed by some antiquaries, as I learn, to be the tomb of Higden. The opinion, so far as I can judge, seems to be well founded.
- Page xviii., line 13. "There was . . . facts of the case." This sentence must be cancelled, and the first three lines of the note also. Roger Frend was abbot of Chester, not in Higden's time, as my argument required, but about a century earlier.
- Page xxv., line 12, for *Jersuaelem* read *Jerusalem*.
- Page xxxii., note, col. 1, l. 18, and p. 256, note 20, for *Auroch* read *Aurochs*.
- Page 64, line 1, for *omnia* read *omnis*.
- Page 190, line 11, for *Moysis* read *Moysi* with the MSS. It had escaped me that this is the Latin form of the genitive in the Vulgate, &c.
- Page 222, line 10, sqq. Tacitly taken from Will. Malm. *Reg. Angl.*, lib. ii., p. 357 (Hardy).
- Page 224, line 3, for *speliebatur* read *sepeliebatur*.
- Page 335, line 28, for *he* read *be*.
- Pages 394-430. This metrical description of Wales is published by Mr. T. Wright among the poems of Walter Mapes, Camden Soc., 1841, to whom some old lists of his works ascribe it. Mr. Dimock, however, has shown (Pref. to Gir. Cambr., vol. vi. p. li.) that there is no reason to doubt that Higden is the author. Mr. Wright's text, which I have examined throughout, has not a single various reading of importance.

### VOL. 2.

- The erroneous and defective referenees which have been corrected in the introduction or notes are not noticed here.
- Page 6, line 5. Solinus, add cap. 22 here and at pp. 10, 14, 22.
- Page 10, line 4. After *quartodecimo*, add cap. 6.
- Page 10, line 6. After *Giraldus* add *Top. Hib.* i. 3; where also the citation at p. 12, l. 10, occurs.
- Page 10, line 7. Orosius, add lib. i. c. 2.
- Page 10, line 12. After *primo* add cap. 1; the same chapter is referred to pp. 12 (ter.), 16, 142, 150.
- Page 14, line 15. The true reference is to Plin., lib. xvii. c. 4 (al. 6).
- Page 26, line penult. After *Itinerario* add ii. 10.
- Page 38, line 4, insert semicolon after *villas*, and cancel it after *cantredis*.
- Page 48. After *Alfridus* add lib. i. p. 8, who has *rheuma* for *fleuma*.
- Page 50, line 14. After *quarto* add p. 283 (Sav.).

- Page 54, line 19. After *secundo* add p. 234 (Sav.), and p. 254 (Sav.) at p. 58, l. 10.
- Page 56, notes, col. 2, line 11, cancel C. D.
- Page 58, line 13. See *Galf. Mon.*, lib. ii. c. 10.
- Page 62, line 15. After *tertio* add p. 258 (Sav.).
- Page 64, line 6. Insert in marg. *De Edinburgh*, and at l. 14, *De Alcluid*.
- Page 66, line 15. After *Britonum* add lib. iii. c. 17.
- Page 70, line 2. The first citation from William of Malmesbury occurs lib. iii. p. 258 (Sav.); the other (l. 17) at p. 272 (Sav.).
- Page 74, line 1. After *Itinerario* add ii. 11. But little of the description of Chester is found in Giraldus; it is probably due to Higden himself.
- Page 78, line 14. See Will. Malm. *De Pont.*, lib. iv. p. 288 (Sav.).
- Page 84, line 5. After *Alfridus* add lib. vi. p. 97; and lib. vi. *passim* after *Alfridus* at p. 100, l. 2; and lib. iii. p. 32, after *Alfridus*, p. 110, l. 3.
- Page 110. After *primo*, l. 15, add p. 195 (Sav.), (in part).
- Page 130. After *tertio*, l. 17, add p. 269 (Sav.). For the other reference to William (l. 10), which I cannot find in lib. iv., compare Will. Malm. *De Pont.*, lib. i. p. 232 (Sav.); also Bed. lib. ii. c. 20.
- Page 132, line 7. After *tertio* add p. 259 (Sav.).
- Page 132, line 11. The early part occurs at Bed. lib. iv. capp. 3, 4; the latter (beginning *sed et ipse* down to *existiterat*) is mostly from c. 12; we should read, however, with Bede and Trevisa, *Ecgfrid* for *Oswy*. After this Higden begins to speak for himself; but the information is no doubt derived from William of Malmesbury (*De Pont. passim*).
- Page 134, line 5, for *post* read *primo*, see note.
- Page 144, line 12. After *Gaufridus* add lib. iv. c. 17.
- Page 146, line ult. After *Gaufridus* add lib. v. c. 3.
- Page 150, line 5. See Gir. Cambr. *De Instr. Princ.*, i. 6.
- Page 152, line 6. *Alfridus*. Compare lib. i. p. 10, and lib. ix. p. 147.
- Page 162, line 4. After *tertio* add p. 258 (Sav.).
- Page 164, line 3. Cancel *Giraldus*.
- Page 168, line 9. See Joh. Saresb. *Polyerat.*, vi. 19.
- Page 172, line 8. After *sexto* add p. 359 (Sav.).
- Page 176, line 7, for *assimulantur* read *assimilantur*.
- Page 190, line 14. See Senec. *Controv.*, lib. i. in princ. (t. iii. p. 50, Elz.).
- Page 206, l. 8. After *undecimo* add cap. 3, § 4.
- Page 220, line 1. After *Methodius* add *Div. Rev.*, Sig. a. v., Ed. 1504.
- Page 226, line 3. Tubal; Jubal, the reading of D., is correct.
- Page 226, lines 6 and 22. See Joseph. *Ant. Jud.*, lib. i. c. 2. But Petrus, whom Higden follows, has more than Josephus about Jabal.
- Page 230, lines 7 and 14. See Joseph., u. s., c. 3, § 3 and § 1. (The latter citation occurs in Petrus, cap. 1, whence Higden derives it.)
- Page 232, line 6. See Joseph., u. s., c. 2, § 3 (quoted from Marianus, col. 46, by Higden, almost word for word).
- Page 236, line 7. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., lib. 1, c. 3, § 3. For the other allusions, see Isid., lib. v., c. 39; Hieron. Op., t. viii. col. 71 (Migne); Marianus Scotus, col. 48; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vi. b.
- Page 237, line 12. Print the words in Roman character, and substitute comma for colon after *quarto*.

- Page 240, line 19. Dele *Salah* in margin.
- Page 244, lines 21 and 22. See Isid., lib. v. c. 39; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vii.
- Page 248. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., c. 4, § 3.
- Page 252, line penult. For *Britanicum* read *Britannicum*.
- Page 274, line 17. After *primo* add c. 4.
- Page 280, line 14. After *octavo* add c. 11.
- Page 290, line ult. The statement is really derived from Isid., lib. ix. c. 2, § 57.
- Page 296, lines 2 and 4. *Tritonia* and *Pallene* are preferable readings. So Augustine and Isidore (lib. viii. c. 11, § 75).
- Page 296, line 21. For *Decboræ* read *Delboræ*.
- Page 310, line 7. The true reference is to Isid. xix. c. 32; but Petrus, c. 86, is Higden's real authority, who has more than Isidore.
- Page 314, line 1. After *quinto* add c. 39.
- Page 330, line penult. After *tertio* add *cap. 1*.
- Page 334, line 16. After *primo* add *cap. 11*.
- Page 334, note, col. 1, l. 5. For *Vers.* read *Venet.*
- Page 336, line 12. See Joseph., u. s., lib. i. c. 15; but he does not give the name of Afer's daughter.
- Page 338, line 2. After *quinto* add *cap. 39*, but Isidore has 27, not 28.
- Page 340, line 18. After *quartodecimo* add *cap. 4* (pr. part).
- Page 350, line 5. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 3.
- Page 350, line penult. Demetra occurs in Jerome's version of Eusebius, and in Marianus Scotus; it is rare as a form of the ablative. See Pape, s. v.
- Page 372, line 16. See Macrobius *sup. Somn. Scip.*, lib. i. c. 2, and c. 1 for what is said of Plato and Cicero in the same extract.
- Page 374, line 13. Boethius. See *De Cons. Phil.*, lib. i., prop. finit.
- Page 384, line 6. After *quintodecimo* add *cap. 2, § 36*.
- Page 388, line 15. After *quadragesimo tertio* add *cap. 1*; and after *secundo*, p. 402, line 5, add *cap. 7*.
- Page 396, line 4. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 4.
- Page 398, line 8. After *octavo* add c. 8.
- Page 418, line 8, sqq. Tacitly copied from Marianus Scotus, col. 105.
- Page 424. After *secundo* add § 171, p. 282 (Hardy).
- Page 432, line 4. See Mart. Polon. *Libell. Chron. præfix.*, p. 4, ed. Bas. 1559. The quotation from him at p. 434, l. 5, occurs at p. 5.
- Page 434, line 1. After *octavodecimo* add *cap. 6*.

---

TREVISA'S TEXT, AS EDITED, COLLATED WITH MS. HARL. 1900 ( $\beta$ ) AND MS. COTTON. TIBER. D. VII. ( $\gamma$ ) IN CERTAIN DOUBTFUL PASSAGES.

## VOL. I.

- Page 13, note 14] *in caas*,  $\beta$ .; *on caas*,  $\gamma$ . This reading is correct.
- Page 15, note 9] *pat* is wanting in  $\beta$ . and  $\gamma$ ., and should be cancelled.

- Page 21, note 1]  $\beta$ . inserts *I* only after *þat*, and omits it before *take*;  $\gamma$ . is much burnt, but seems to have *þat y wryte in þe byggyngyng*. This reading at any rate completes the sense.
- Page 87, note 10] Read *fethery* with  $\alpha$ .; *vepery*,  $\gamma$ .
- Page 89, note 9] Read *his* with  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . Cx.
- Page 95, note 2]  $\beta$ . and  $\gamma$ . also omit *of þe tyme*, rightly.
- Page 95, note 3] Read *languages* with  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . Cx.
- Page 119, note 13] Read *to fullþ* with  $\alpha$ .  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .
- Page 155, note 1] Read *wytte is wonder* with  $\alpha$ .  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .
- Page 155, note 6] Cancel *ful* with  $\alpha$ .  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . Cx.
- Page 175, note 8] Read *þe emperere* with  $\alpha$ .  $\beta$ .; *the empery*,  $\gamma$ .
- Page 187, note 9] *osels*,  $\beta$ .; *oseles*,  $\gamma$ . This reading is correct.
- Page 187, note 10] Read *þeyz* with  $\gamma$ .
- Page 189, note 1] Read *wel faste* with  $\alpha$ .  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .
- Page 193, note 6] The words in brackets occur also in  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .
- Page 197, note 10] Omit *in* before *þilke* with  $\gamma$ .;  $\beta$ . however has it.
- Page 213, note 2] *a fulle* (*i.e.* *fullen*),  $\gamma$ . rightly; *a nalle* or *a ualle*,  $\beta$ .
- Page 227, note 2] *in*,  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .
- Page 251, note 1]  $\gamma$ . omits the sentence in brackets;  $\beta$  contains it.
- Page 277, note 7] omit the clause with  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . Cx.
- Page 303, note 3] *seyle*,  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .
- Page 347, note 9] Read *of wenches* with  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .
- Page 373, note 6] for *chirche ȝerde*,  $\beta$ . and  $\gamma$ . have *chirch hey*.
- Page 403, note 6] *segges*,  $\beta$ .
- Page 411, line 7] For *Best in* read with  $\gamma$ . *Bestial*.
- Page 419, note 15]  $\beta$ . and  $\gamma$ . agree with text.
- Page 419, note 16]  $\beta$ . and  $\gamma$ . agree with Cx.

## VOL. 2.

For this volume the readings of  $\beta$ . are given in the notes throughout; those of  $\gamma$ . are mentioned here up to p. 211, after which they also are recorded in the notes.

- Page 7, note 13] after  $\beta$ . add, and  $\gamma$ .
- Page 9, line 1] Read, with  $\gamma$ ., *clif*.
- Page 21, note 2]  $\gamma$ . agrees with text.
- Page 21, note 4] *hauncs*,  $\gamma$ .
- Page 39, line 20] *longe yn þe*,  $\gamma$ .; which adds *wel schert* after *cold*, below.
- Page 49, note 4]  $\beta$ . and  $\gamma$ . have *atwynne*, correctly.
- Page 83, line 4, *lotyng*] *lutyng*,  $\gamma$ .
- Page 83, line 14, *þere is here*] *orþ* (*erþ*,  $\beta$ .) *ys þar*,  $\gamma$ .
- Page 85, note 1]  $\beta$ . and  $\gamma$ . agree with the text.
- Page 133, note 6] With  $\gamma$ . cancel *from*.
- Page 135, note 4] With  $\gamma$ . read *Whanne Wilfredre*.
- Page 183, note 1] add, and  $\gamma$ .
- Page 207, note 7]  $\gamma$ . has *seccue*.
-



---

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN  
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

---

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN  
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

LIBER PRIMUS.

CAP. XXXIX.

*De Britannia Majori jam Anglia dicta.*<sup>1</sup>

POST insulas oceani libet Britanniam<sup>2</sup> describere,  
cujus terræ gratia hæc presens lucubrata est historia ;  
ubi dicetur:—

Incipiunt  
capitula.

- i<sup>o</sup>. De varia insulæ nuncupatione.
- ij<sup>o</sup>. De situ ejus et dimensione.<sup>3</sup>
- iiij<sup>o</sup>. De ejus prærogativis<sup>4</sup> attollendis.
- iv<sup>o</sup>. De mirabilibus in ea<sup>5</sup> stupendis.
- v<sup>o</sup>. De partibus ejus principalibus.
- vj<sup>o</sup>. De insulis collateralibus.
- vij<sup>o</sup>. De plateis ejus<sup>6</sup> regalibus.
- viiij<sup>o</sup>. De famosis fluminibus.
- ix<sup>o</sup>. De antiquis urbibus.
- x<sup>o</sup>. De provinciis et comitatibus.

<sup>1</sup> *Majori . . . dicta*] om. A.C.D. ;  
*quæ et Anglia. Beda libro primo,*  
B.

<sup>2</sup> *libet Britanniam*] Britannia  
restat, B. ; A. omits *libet*.

<sup>3</sup> *et dimensione*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *prærogativis ejus*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *ejus*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *ejus*] Added from Gale ; om.  
A.B.E.

TREVISA'S TRANSLATION.

---

*De Britannia. Capitulum tricesimum nonum.*

AFTER þe ilondes<sup>1</sup> of ocean now Bretayne schal be decreued. By cause of Bretayne alle þe trauaile of þis storie was bygonne. Þe firste poynt þat me schal telle is of þe names of þe ilond; þanne of þe stede and place of þe lengþe and brede; þe þridde of þe worþynesse of þe lond; þe ferþe of þe<sup>2</sup> mervayles and wondres þat beþ þere ynne; þe fifte of þe chief parties of þe lond. Þe sixte of ilondes þat beþ bisides þat lond; þe seuenþe of þe kynges hiȝe weies; þe eiȝtþe of famous ryueres and stremes; þe nynþe of olde citees and townes; þe tenþe of prouinces and schires; þe elleuenþe of lawes and of þe names of lawes; þe twelfþe<sup>3</sup> of kyngdoms, of boundes, and of markes by twene kyngdoms; þe þrittenþe

---

ANONYMOUS TRANSLATION OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

---

*Of Briteyne, otherwise callede Englonde. Capitulum tricesimum nonum.* MS. HARL. 2261.

AFTER the yles of the ocean hit pleasethe vs to describe f. 59. a. Briteyne, for cause of whom this presente story and cronicle was compilede. Where hit schalle be seide firste of the diuersite of names of that yle. In the secunde of the site of hit and dimencion. In the thrydde of the prerogatiues of hit to be extolde. In the iiij<sup>the</sup> of meruayles in hit to be hade in wondre. In the v<sup>the</sup> of the principalle partes in hit. In the vij<sup>the</sup> of yles colateralle to hit. In the viij<sup>the</sup> of the kynges hye weyes. In the viij<sup>the</sup> of famosse floodes. In the ix<sup>the</sup> of olde cites. In the x<sup>the</sup> of prouinces and of schires. In the xj<sup>the</sup> of lawes and of the hard wordes of hit. In the xij<sup>the</sup> of the realmes and of the merkes of theyme.

---

<sup>1</sup> *ilond*, Cx., who has various other slight alterations in this chapter.

<sup>2</sup> *þe*] om *α*.  
<sup>3</sup> *twelfe*, *α*.

xj<sup>o</sup>. De legibus legumque vocabulis.

xij<sup>o</sup>. De regnis regnorumque limitibus.

xiiij<sup>o</sup>. De episcopatibus et sedibus.

xiiij<sup>o</sup>. A quot quando<sup>1</sup> et quibus inhabitata sit gentibus.

Expliciunt capitula.

xv<sup>o</sup>. De incolarum linguis et moribus.<sup>2</sup>

*De varia insulae nuncupatione.*

Incipit historia.

PRIMITUS hæc insula vocabatur<sup>3</sup> Albion ab albis rupibus circa littora maris a longe apparentibus; tandem a Bruto eam acquirente dicta est<sup>4</sup> Britannia. Deinde a Saxonibus sive Anglis eam conquirentibus vocata est Anglia; sive ab Angela regina, clarissimi<sup>5</sup> ducis Saxonum filia, quæ<sup>6</sup> post multa tempora eam possedit;<sup>7</sup> sive, ut vult<sup>8</sup> Isidorus, Etymolog., quinto decimo, Anglia dicitur ab angulo orbis; vel secundum Bedam, libro primo,<sup>9</sup> beatus Gregorius videns Anglorum pueros Romæ<sup>10</sup> venales, alludens patriæ vocabulo ait: Vere

<sup>1</sup> *et quando*, A.

<sup>2</sup> The numbers and divisions of the chapters are not given quite uniformly in the MSS. of the text and versions.

<sup>3</sup> *Britanniæ Majori primo nomen fuit Albion*, C.D., which omit all the preceding part of the chapter.

<sup>4</sup> *dicitur*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *præclarissimi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *qui*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *possedit eam*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *ut vult*] *secundum Ysidorum*, C.D.  
<sup>9</sup> *de gestis Anglorum* added in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Romæ*] *om.* C.D.

of bisshopriches<sup>1</sup> and of bisshoppes sees; þe fourtenþe how many manere men haueþ woned and i-dwelled<sup>2</sup> in þat lond.<sup>3</sup> Þe fiftenþe<sup>4</sup> of longage,<sup>5</sup> of maneres; and vsage of men of þat lond. *De varia insulæ nuncupatione.* Firste þis ilond hiȝte<sup>6</sup> Albion, as it were þe white lond, of white rokkes aboute þe clyues of þe see þat were i-seie wide.<sup>7</sup> Aftirward Bruyt conquered þis lond and cleped hit Bretayne after his owne name; þanne Saxons oper Engliche conquered þat<sup>8</sup> lond, and cleped hit Anglia, þat is Engeland; oper it hatte Anglia, and haþ þat name of a quene þat owed þis lond þat heet Angela, and was a noble dukes douȝter of Saxouns. Opere as Isidre saiþ, Eth. 15, Anglia haþ þat name, as hit were an angul and a corner of þe world; oper, as Beda seiþ, libro primo: Seint<sup>9</sup> Gregorie seiþ<sup>10</sup> Engliche children to selle<sup>11</sup> at Rome, and he accorded to þe name of þe lond, and

TREVISA.

In the xiiij<sup>the</sup> chapitre of byschopryches, and of the scetes of þeim. In the xiiij<sup>the</sup> of how mony, what peple, and when that londe was inhabite. In the xv<sup>the</sup> of the langage of the inhabitatores of hit, and of the maneres of theyme. *Of diuersite of names of the yle of Britcayne.*<sup>12</sup> That yle was callede firste Albion, of white hylles aperenge a ferre abowte the brynkes of the see. And at the laste hit was callede Briteyne by Brute gettenge hit. After that hit was callede Englonde of the Saxones other Engliche men conquirenge hit. Other elles hit was callede Anglia, of Angela qwene and doȝhter of the nowble duke of Saxones, whiche hade that londe in possession by mony yeres. Other elles, after Ysoder, Ethi., xv<sup>o</sup> li<sup>o</sup>, Anglia, whiche is callede Englonde, toke the name of hit of an angle of the worlde: other elles, after Bede in his firste booke, blessedede Gregory seenge childer of Englonde to be sette furthe to be solde at Rome seide: Now truly thei may be callede Engliche men (Angells or Angellys men),<sup>13</sup> for the

MS. HARL.

2261

<sup>1</sup> *bisshops riches, a.*<sup>2</sup> *haue dwelled, Cx.*<sup>3</sup> *ylond, Cx.*<sup>4</sup> *fiftenþ, a.*<sup>5</sup> *langage, Cx.; longe age, MS. and a.*<sup>6</sup> *hit, a.; heyte, Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *fro ferre, Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *this, Cx.*<sup>9</sup> *Seyn, a.*<sup>10</sup> *seiȝ, a.*<sup>11</sup> *to sellynge, a.; (not Cx.)*<sup>12</sup> This is marked cap. xl. in Harl. MS.; but the capitulation is here and elsewhere brought into agreement with the Latin text.<sup>13</sup> The words in a parenthesis are inserted in a later hand.

Angli, quia vultu nitent ut angeli. Nam terræ<sup>1</sup> nobilitas in vultibus<sup>2</sup> puerorum relucebat.<sup>3</sup> *Alfridus*.<sup>4</sup> Anglia Britannica<sup>5</sup> alter orbis<sup>6</sup> appellatur; quam olim Carolus Magnus.<sup>7</sup> præ omnium bonorum copia cameram suam vocavit. *Solinus*. Ora Gallici littoris<sup>8</sup> finis foret orbis, nisi Britannia<sup>9</sup> insula nomen pene<sup>10</sup> alterius orbis mereretur.<sup>11</sup> *Alfridus*. Et<sup>12</sup> dicta est insula eo quod in salo sit posita, crebrisque undarum jactibus<sup>13</sup> adversariorumque incursibus<sup>14</sup> tundatur.

## CAP. XL.

*De situ ejus et dimensione.*

*Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo.* Hæc<sup>15</sup> Britannia clara Græcis nostrisque monumentis, Germaniæ,<sup>16</sup> Galliæ, Hispaniæ<sup>17</sup> adversa inter septentrionem<sup>18</sup> et occidentem jacet interjecto mari.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Terræ enim*, C.D.  
<sup>2</sup> So A.B.C.D., Gale; *vultu*, E.  
<sup>3</sup> *resultabat*, C.D.,  
<sup>4</sup> *Alfredus*, B.  
<sup>5</sup> So A.B.; *Britannia*, D.E., Gale.  
<sup>6</sup> *orbs*, B.  
<sup>7</sup> *Karolus*, B., Gale.  
<sup>8</sup> *Circa Galliæ litora*, B.  
<sup>9</sup> *Britannica*, A.  
<sup>10</sup> *quasi*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> The sentence slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Et*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *ictibus*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *insultibus*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *Hæc*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Germaniæ*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>17</sup> *Hispaniæ, Galliæ*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *septentrionalem*, A.

<sup>19</sup> *mare*, B.

seide : <sup>1</sup> Sopediche aungelis, for hir face <sup>2</sup> schyneþ as aungelis ; TREVISA.  
 for þe nobilte of þe lond schone <sup>3</sup> in þe children <sup>4</sup> face.  
*Alfr.* Þe Bryztische Anglia is <sup>5</sup> i-cleped þe oper world ; and  
 for greet plente of al good þe Grete Charles cleped hit his  
 owne chambre. *Solinus.* Þe egge <sup>6</sup> of þe Frensche clif <sup>7</sup> were <sup>8</sup>  
 þe ende of þe world, nere þat þe ilond of Bretayne is nyh  
 worthy to haue þe name <sup>9</sup> of anoper world. <sup>10</sup> *Alfr.* Þis ilond  
 is i-cleped insula, for hit is in salo, þat is þe see, and is  
 often i-bete wiþ dyuers cours of wateres and <sup>11</sup> stremes and  
 wiþ <sup>12</sup> wawes of þe see.

*De situ eius et dimensione. Capitulum quadragesimum.*

*Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo.*  
 This Britayne is acounted an holy <sup>13</sup> lond bothe in oure  
 stories and also in stories of Grees, and is i-sette aforn aze <sup>14</sup>  
 Germania, Gallia, Fraunce, <sup>15</sup> and Spayne bytwene þe north  
 and þe west and þe see bytwene. Þis lond is fifty myle from

where of theyme dothe ziffe grete resplendence lyke to an MS. HARL.  
 angelle ; for the nobilite of the londe schewethe in the 2261.  
 sighte of the childe. That londe of Englonde is callede —  
 as that other worlde, whom Grete Charles the kynge f. 59. b.  
 callede his chambre for þe habundaunce of plente of alle  
 goode thynges. *Solinus.* For the costes of Fraunce scholde  
 be as an ende of the worlde, but that Briteyne deseruethe  
 allemoste the name of an other worlde. *Alfr.* That londe  
 of Englonde is callede an yle, in that hit is trowblede ofte  
 with waters and with þe incurses of ennyes.

*Of the site and dimencion of hit. Capitulum quadragesimum.*

*Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo.*  
 That londe of Briteyne lyethe from the costes of Ger-  
 many, of Fraunce, and of Speyne, betwene the northe and  
 weste, departede from theyme by the see. That londe is

<sup>1</sup> Cx. inserts *They ben.*

<sup>2</sup> name face, MS.

<sup>3</sup> schoon, a.

<sup>4</sup> So also a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> So Cx. and β. ; *Anglians*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> edge, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> clyve, a.

<sup>8</sup> sholde be, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> So Cx. ; names, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *yf the ylonde of Brytayne were not, whiche is worthy to haue the name, Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> wiþ, a., Cx.

<sup>12</sup> wiþ] om. a. (not Cx.)

<sup>13</sup> a noble, Cx., and β., which seems right.

<sup>14</sup> sette agaynst, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> We should probably read or *Fraunce.*

Hæc<sup>1</sup> abest a Gessoriaco Morinorum<sup>2</sup> gentis littore proximo trajectu milium<sup>3</sup> quinquaginta. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo undecimo.*<sup>4</sup> Et quia prope sub ipso septentrionali mundi vertice jacet, lucidas æstate noctes habet; ita ut sæpe medio noctis tempore in quæstionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepusculum adhuc permaneat vespertinum, an jam advenerit<sup>5</sup> matutinum, utpote nocturno sole non longe sub terris ad orientem per plagas boreales redeunte; unde fit ut plurimæ longitudinis habeat dies in æstate, (sicut econtra noctes<sup>6</sup> in hieme,) id est horarum xvij.<sup>7</sup> Et iterum in hieme noctes sunt<sup>8</sup> horarum<sup>9</sup> xvij. et dies sex; cum tamen in Armenia, Macedonia,<sup>10</sup> Italia, cæterisque ejusdem lineæ<sup>11</sup> regionibus longissima dies sive nox sit solummodo xv. horarum æquinoctialium; brevissima vero dies sive nox novem duntaxat horas compleat. *Plinius.* In Meroe<sup>12</sup> insula, quæ caput est Æthiopum, sic fit ut longissimus dies sit duodecim<sup>13</sup> horarum æquinoctialium; Alexandriae Ægypti<sup>14</sup> xij. horarum; in Italia xv.;<sup>15</sup> in

<sup>1</sup> *Hoc, B.*

<sup>2</sup> *Normannorum, B.; Gellaria Armoricorum, C.; Gessarico Armoricorum, D.*

<sup>3</sup> *miliariorum, C.D.*

<sup>4</sup> *capitulo xi<sup>o</sup>] om. A.C.; B.D.* omit the reference. It should be *primo.*

<sup>5</sup> *adveniat, A.; evenit, B.*

<sup>6</sup> *So C.D.; longas, A.E.*

<sup>7</sup> *sicut...xvij.] Scilicet horarum*

*xviii., et noctes breves, scilicet horarum sex, B.*

<sup>8</sup> *sint, E.; habet, D.*

<sup>9</sup> *horarum] om. A.*

<sup>10</sup> *cum... Macedonia] Achaia et, C.D.*

<sup>11</sup> *ejusdem libet, B.*

<sup>12</sup> *Merore, B.*

<sup>13</sup> *duodecim sit, B.*

<sup>14</sup> *Ægypti] om. C.D.*

<sup>15</sup> *horarum added in B. and Gale.*



pe clif of þe men þat hadde Morini Gesserico, so þe chif TREVISA.  
 hadde.<sup>1</sup> *Beda, libro primo.* And for þis lond<sup>2</sup> lieþ vnder þe  
 norþ nolle<sup>3</sup> of þe world, þey<sup>4</sup> haþ liȝt and briȝt myȝtes in  
 þe somertyme, so þat ofte tyme at mydnyȝt men haueþ  
 questiouns and doute where<sup>5</sup> it be euentide or<sup>6</sup> dawenyng,  
 þat is for þat<sup>7</sup> tyme of þe ȝere þe sonne goþ<sup>8</sup> nouȝt fer  
 vnder erþe by nyght, but passeþ by þe north side and comeþ  
 sone in to þe est aȝe, and þerfore þere beþ in<sup>9</sup> somer dayes  
 ful longe of xvij.<sup>10</sup> houres long, and þe nyȝtes of sixe.<sup>11</sup> And  
 efte<sup>12</sup> in þe wynter beþ longe nyȝtes of xvij.<sup>13</sup> houres and  
 schort dayes of vi.<sup>14</sup> houres. Þey in<sup>15</sup> Armenia, Macedonia,  
 Italia, and in oper londes of þe same lyne þe lengest day and  
 þe lengest nyght also is of fiftene houres; and þere<sup>16</sup> þe  
 schorteste day oper nyȝt is of nyne houres. *Plinius.* In  
 Meroe, þat ilond is chief<sup>17</sup> of Bloomen,<sup>18</sup> þere þe lengest day is  
 of twelue houres; in Alexandria in Egipt of þrittene houres;

from the peple of Gesserike and from the brynkes in that MS. HARL.  
 cuntre in the nyeste place by l<sup>i</sup> myles. *Beda, libro primo.*  
 And for cause that londe lyethe in the northe partes of  
 the worlde, hit hathe liȝhte nyȝhtes in the somer, in so  
 moche that a question is made oftetymes abowte the myddes  
 of the nyȝhte wheþer hit be day or nay for cause of suche  
 liȝhte; for the sonne is not ferre vnder the erthe from that  
 cuntre, wherefore that cuntre hathe daies in the somer of  
 a grete lengthe, and longe nyȝhtes in the wyntere; that  
 is to say, the daies be of xvij. howres in somer, and the  
 nyȝhtes in wyntere of xvij. howres, and the day of vj.  
 howres. Sythe in Armeny, Macedony, Ytaly, and other  
 regiones of the same costes, the longeste day other nyȝhte  
 is but oonly of xv. houres equinocciale, and þe moste  
 schorte day other nyȝhte dothe complete oonly but ix. howres.  
*Plinius.* In an yle callede Meroris, whiche is as the hede  
 of men of Ethiope, where hit is that the longeste day is  
 but of xij. howres equinocciale, and at Alexandria in Egipte

<sup>1</sup> Cx. omits the last four words.  
 A space for two lines left blank  
 in a. The text seems corrupt.

<sup>2</sup> *ilond, a., Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *hede, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *hit, Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *whether, Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *euetide oper, a.*

<sup>7</sup> *the, Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *goþ, a.*

<sup>9</sup> *in þe, a.*

<sup>10</sup> *eyȝtene, a.*

<sup>11</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *after, Cx.*

<sup>13</sup> *eyȝtene, a.*

<sup>14</sup> *sixe, a.* (omitting *houres*); and  
 so Cx.

<sup>15</sup> *Also in, Cx.*

<sup>16</sup> *þere*] om. Cx.

<sup>17</sup> *chif, a.*

<sup>18</sup> *black men, Cx.*

Britannia xvij. Apud insulam Tilæ senis<sup>1</sup> mensibus æstivalibus dies habetur<sup>2</sup> continuus, et iterum senis<sup>1</sup> mensibus brumalibus nox continua. *Isidorus*, libro *quartodecimo*. Britannia intra<sup>3</sup> oceanum quasi extra orbem posita, adversa Galliis<sup>4</sup> ad prospectum Hispaniæ sita<sup>5</sup> est. *Giraldus*. Oblonga est et amplior in medio quam in extremis. *Orosius*. Britannia per longum extenditur ab austro in boream; ab euro habet Galliam,<sup>6</sup> ab austro Hispaniam,<sup>7</sup> ab aquilone Northuegiam,<sup>8</sup> ab occasu Hiberniam; cujus proximum litus transmeantibus civitas apparet quæ dicitur Rutupi<sup>9</sup> portus. *Beda*, libro *primo*. Quæ<sup>10</sup> a gente Anglorum nunc corrupte vocatur Reptacestre.<sup>11</sup> *Solinus*. Britannia octingenta millia passuum in longum<sup>12</sup> detinet,<sup>13</sup> si quis eam a Totenesio<sup>14</sup> littore usque in Calidonicum angulum metiatur. *Alfridus*.<sup>15</sup> Hoc est a loco qui Penwithstert<sup>16</sup> dicitur<sup>17</sup> xv. leugis<sup>18</sup> ultra Muchilstow<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *savis*, Gale, (twice).

<sup>2</sup> *habetur*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *inter*, A; *extra*, C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> *Gallis*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *sita*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Gallias*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Hispanias*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Northuegiam*, A.; *Norwegiam*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Ruthupi*, B.; *Rutipi*, Gale; *Rupti*, C.; *Rutuphi*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *Qui*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Repacestrius*, Gale.

<sup>12</sup> *in longum*] *longa*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *continet*, Gale (not Solinus).

<sup>14</sup> *Cathenesio*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *Alfredus*, B., and so throughout.

<sup>16</sup> *Penwithstret*, B.; *Penwithstrete*, Gale.

<sup>17</sup> *Hoc . . . dicitur*] Hoc est a *lopenwithstrete* vocato, qui situs est, C. D.

<sup>18</sup> So A.E.; *leucis*, D., Gale.

<sup>19</sup> *Michestowe*, B.C.; *Michelstawe*, A.; *Michelstowe*, D.; *Michelstowe*, Gale.

in Italia of fiftene houres ; in Bretayne of eyztene houres ; TREVISA.  
 in þe lond þat hatte<sup>1</sup> Tile alle þe sixe somer monþes is day,  
 and alle þe sixe wynter monþes is nyght. *Isidorus, libro*  
*quartodecimo.* Britayne is i-sette wiþ ynne ocean, as it  
 were wiþ oute þe world, and is i-sette aʒenst Fraunce and  
 Spayne. *Giraldus.* Bretayne is euen longe<sup>2</sup> and larger in þe  
 myddes<sup>3</sup> þan in þe endes. *Orosius.* Bretayne streccheþ in  
 lengþe out of þe souþ [into þe north, and in þe souþ]<sup>4</sup> est  
 side he<sup>5</sup> haþ Fraunce, in þe souþ Spayne, in þe norþ Norway,  
 and in þe west Hibernia, þat is Irlond. Whan schipmen  
 passiþ þe next clif of þat lond, þei seeþ a citee þat hatte  
 Rutpimouþ.<sup>6</sup> *Beda, libro primo.* Þat cite is now i-cleped  
 schortliche of Engliche men Reptacestre. *Solinus.* Bre-  
 tayne is eyzte hondred myle in lengþe, and he be i-mete<sup>7</sup>  
 fro þe clyf of Tottenys to þe angle of Calidoun. *Alfr.* Þat  
 is from þe Penwythis strete<sup>8</sup> fite[ne]<sup>9</sup> leges byʒonde  
 Mochel<sup>10</sup> Stowe in Cornwayle anon to Catenesse þat is by-  
 ʒonde Scotlonde. And Bretayne is more þan two hondred

of xiiij. howres, and in Ytaly of xv. howres, in Briteyne MS.HARI.  
 other Englonde of xviiij. howres ; and the day in somere is<sup>11</sup> 2261.  
 continually by vj. monethes in an yle callede Tile, and  
 nyzhte continually by vj. other monethes. *Isidorus, libro*  
*quarto decimo.* Briteyne is putte betwene the ocean, as  
 with owte the worlde, sette as vn to the prospecte of  
 Speyne. *Giraldus.* That londe of Englonde is longe, more  
 large in the myddes of hit then in the extremities. *Orosius.*  
 That londe of Briteyne is extendede by lengthe from the f. 60. a.  
 sowthe in to the northe, hauenge on the este to hit Fraunce,  
 on the sowthe Speyne, on the northe Norway, on the weste  
 Yrlonde, nye to the brynkes of whom a cite dothe appere  
 to men sailenge in the see, whiche is callede Rutipi portus.  
*Beda, libro primo.* Whiche cite is callede now of the peple  
 of Englonde Reptachestre. *Solinus.* Briteyne conteynethe  
 in longitude lxxx<sup>ti</sup> m<sup>l</sup> passes, what man that wylle take  
 the measure of hit from Toteneise vn to the angle of Cali-  
 donia. *Alfr.* That is from a place that is callede Pen-  
 withstrete, by xv. leukes behynde Mochillestowe in Corne-  
 waile, vn to Catenesse : hauenge in latitude moo then ij. c. m<sup>l</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> ylonde named, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> evelonge, a. ; endlonge, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> myddel, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> and he, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>6</sup> Rutpiniouþ, a.

<sup>7</sup> moten, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Penwithisstert, a. ; Penwithis-  
 tert, ß. ; Penwithstrete, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> fiftene, a. ; xv. myle, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Mjchels, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> is of vj. houres continually,  
 MS. originally ; but the cancel  
 is apparently by the first hand.

in Cornubia usque Catenesse,<sup>1</sup> quæ<sup>2</sup> est trans Scotiam. In latitudine autem<sup>3</sup> habet plus quam ducenta milia passuum a Menevia, scilicet<sup>4</sup> quæ est in extremo Walliæ, usque ad Gernemutham<sup>5</sup> in Northfolchia. *Beda*.<sup>6</sup> Exceptis duntaxat prolixioribus diversorum promunctoriorum<sup>7</sup> tractibus,<sup>8</sup> quibus efficitur ut circuitus ejus quadragies octies septuaginta<sup>9</sup> milia passuum contineat.

## CAP. XLI.

*De prerogativis*<sup>10</sup> *insulæ attollendis*.<sup>11</sup>

De anima-  
libus Bri-  
tanniæ.

*Giraldus in Topographia*. Ut<sup>12</sup> Gallia Britanniam, sic Britannia Hiberniam vincit serenitate, sed non salubritate. *Beda, libro primo*. Quia<sup>13</sup> hæc insula opima<sup>14</sup> est frugibus et arboribus, alendisque apta pecoribus ac jumentis, vineas etiam quibusdam in locis germinans, sed et<sup>15</sup> avium atque bestiarum diversi generis terra marique<sup>16</sup> ferax, fluviis piscosis atque fontibus præclara copiosis, isicio<sup>17</sup> potissime abundat et anguilla. *Wilhelmus de Pontificibus*,<sup>18</sup> *libro tertio*. Ita ut rustici projectis piscibus sues pascant. *Beda, libro primo*. Capiuntur ibi<sup>19</sup> sæpissime delphini<sup>20</sup> et vituli marini,

<sup>1</sup> *Cautenese*, A.; *usque ad*, Gale, D.

<sup>2</sup> *qui*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *vero*, C.; om. D.

<sup>4</sup> *scilicet*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Gernenutam*, B.; *Gernemudam*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *libro primo* added in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *promunctoriorum*, E.; *promunctoriorum*, Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *tractatibus*, Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *quinque*, add. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *hujus* added in A.

<sup>11</sup> *attollendis*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *Sicut*, C.D.; *Uti*, Gale.

<sup>13</sup> *Quia*] om. C.D., Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *optima*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *et*] om. Gale.

<sup>16</sup> *mari*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *ysicio*, MSS.

<sup>18</sup> *de Pontificibus*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *etiam*, C.; om. D.; *sæpissime ibi*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *delphines*, B.C.D.

myle brood from Meneuia pat is in þe vttermeste<sup>1</sup> place of<sup>2</sup> TREVISA.  
Wales anon to Gernemoutham<sup>3</sup> in Norþfolk. *Beda*. Onliche  
outake þe lengest out schetyng of dyuerse forlonde, wip þe  
whiche Britayne is al aboute eyzte and [fourty]<sup>4</sup> sipe  
seuenty þowsand paas.

*De prerogativis huius insulæ attollendis. Capitulum  
quadragesimum primum.*

*Giraldus in Topographia*.<sup>5</sup> As Fraunce passeþ Bretayne,  
so Bretayne passeþ Irlond in faire weder and nobilte, but  
nouzt in helpe. *Beda*. For þis ilond is beest and bringeþ<sup>6</sup>  
forþ trees and fruyt and reþeren<sup>7</sup> and oþer bestes, and wyn  
groweþ þere in som place. Þe lond hap plente of foules and  
of bestes of dyuers manere kynde; þe lond is plenteuous and  
þe see also. Þe lond is noble, copious, and riche of nobil  
welles and of nobil ryueres wip plente of fische; þere<sup>8</sup> is  
grete plente of small fische, of samon, and of elys.<sup>9</sup> *Wil-*  
*helmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio*. So þat cherles<sup>10</sup> in som  
place fedip sowes<sup>11</sup> with fische. *Beda, libro primo*. Þere  
beep ofte i-take dolphyns, and see calues, and baleynes,

passes from Meneuia, whiche is calle<sup>12</sup> Seynte Dauid, whiche MS. HARL.  
place is in the extremite of Wales, vn to Gernemowthe<sup>13</sup> 2261.  
whiche is in Norfolk: the circuite of whom conteyneth,  
after diuerse auctores, xli<sup>ti</sup> tymes viij<sup>the</sup> and lxx<sup>ti</sup> m<sup>l</sup> of  
passes.

*Of the prerogatives of that yle to be enhauncede. Capi-*  
*tulum quadagesimum primum.*

LYKE as Fraunce excellethe Briteyne, so in lyke wyse  
Briteyne exceedeth Yrlonde in beaute, but not in wholle-  
somnesse. *Beda, libro primo*. For that londe is moste  
plentuou in cornes and trees to be norischede, whiche is  
apte to bestes; plentuou of bryddes bothe in the see and  
londe of diuerse kyndes; habundante in waters fulle of  
fische, specially of pyke and ele. *Willelmus de Pont. libro*  
*tertio*. Where fishes be so habundante that churles fede their  
swyne with fische. *Beda, libro primo*. Fysches whiche be  
callede dolphynes be taken there oftetyms, and porpas,

<sup>1</sup> vtteste, a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> in, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Gernemutham, a.; Yarmouthe,  
Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> topicis, MS., and similarly else-  
where.

<sup>6</sup> is best to bryng forth, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> ruthor, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> So a. and Cx.; þat, MS.

<sup>9</sup> eles, a.

<sup>10</sup> the peple, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> their swyne, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> So Harl. MS.

<sup>13</sup> Yarmouth is written above the  
word in a later hand.

necnon et balænae, exceptis variorum<sup>1</sup> conchyliorum generibus, in quibus sunt et musculæ<sup>2</sup> inclusam continententes margaritam<sup>3</sup> omnis quidem coloris, id est rubicundi, purpurei, jacinthini, prasini, et<sup>4</sup> maxime candidi.<sup>5</sup> Sunt et abundantes cochleæ, quibus tinctura coccinei coloris efficitur, cujus rubor pulcherrimus nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet pluviarum injuria pallescere; sed quo vetustior, eo solet esse venustior.

De fontibus  
et lapidibus.

Habet et fontes salinarum<sup>6</sup> fontesque<sup>7</sup> calidos, et ex eis fluvios balneorum calidorum<sup>8</sup> omni ætati et<sup>9</sup> sexui per distincta loca cuique accommodos. Aqua enim, secundum Basilium, fervidam qualitatem recipit, cum per certa quædam metalla transcurrit. Hæc etiam insula venis<sup>10</sup> metallorum, æris, ferri, plumbi, stanni,<sup>11</sup> et argenti est<sup>12</sup> fœcunda. *Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo sexto.* In qua etiam insula<sup>13</sup> desub cortice soli inventum est genus terræ, quam marlam<sup>14</sup> vocant, in qua tanquam desiccante se pinguedinis nucleo, spissior,<sup>15</sup> cum spargitur, ubertas in agris reperitur. Est et ibi<sup>16</sup> aliud genus albæ cretæ,<sup>17</sup> quæ respersa fœcundat agros usque ad lxxx.<sup>18</sup> annum. *Solinus.*<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *variis*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *mustela*, B., Gale.

<sup>3</sup> *margaritas*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *et*] om. A.

<sup>5</sup> The sentence is slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *et salivarum*, Gale; *etiam fontes*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *fontesque*] *habet et fontes*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *calidorum*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *atque*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *habet . . . venas*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *stagni*, MSS. (not Gale).

<sup>12</sup> *est*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *insula*, om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *malam*, E.

<sup>15</sup> *et spissior*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *ibi*] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *greta*, C. (not D.)

<sup>18</sup> *xv.*, B.

<sup>19</sup> Title omitted in B.E.

grete fisches as hit were of whales kynde, and dyuers manere schelfische. Among þe<sup>1</sup> schelfisch beep muskles<sup>2</sup> þat haueþ wip ynne hem margery perles of alle manere colour and hewe, of rody and rede, of purpur and of blew, and specialliche and moste of whyte. Þere is also plente of schellefische þat me dyep wip reed fyn;<sup>3</sup> þe redenesse þerof is wonder fyn<sup>4</sup> and stable, and steyneþ neuere wip colde ne with hete, wip wete ne wip drie; but euere þe eldere<sup>5</sup> þe hewe is þe<sup>6</sup> fairer. Þere beep also salt welles and hote welles; þer of renneþ stremes of hote bathes i-deled<sup>7</sup> in dyuers places, acordynge for man and womman, and for alle manere age, olde and ʒonge. Basilius seiþ þat [þe water þat]<sup>8</sup> renneþ and passeþ by veynes of certayn metal takip in his cours grete hete. Þis ilond is plenteuous of veynes of metals, of bras, of iren, of leed, of tyn, of siluer also. *Plinius, libro sexto-decimo, capitulo sexto.* In þis ilond vnder þe torf of þe lond is good marl i-founde; þe þrift of þe fatnesse driep himself þeryn: so þat euere þe þickere þe felde is i-marled, þe better corn it wil bere. Þere is also anoper manere white marle, þat þe lond is þe better foure score ʒere þat þere wip is

TREVISA.

and other grete fisches, excepte diuerse kyndes of schelle fisches, as muscles, in whom margarites be founde of euery coloure, as redde of a purpulle coloure, and of the coloure of a iacinte, but moste specially white margarites. Also there be schelle fisches habundantely with whom a nowble redde coloure is made and diede. The beauteous reddenesse of whom may not appaire in eny tyme thro the heete of the sonne, neither thro the iniury of reyne, but euer the more hit is werede, and in age, hit is the moore feire in coloure. Also in that londe be welles of salte and hoote waters, and bathes conueniente to euery kynde by distinete places, for after the grete clerke Basilius water receyveth a feruente qualite when hit rennethe by diuerse metalles. Also that londe is plentuouus in mony veynes of metalles, as of brasse, of yrne, of lede, of tynne, and of syluyr. *Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitulo sexto.* Also there is founde in that yle vnder the erthe a kynde of erthe, whom men calle marle, whiche caste in to the feldes causethe grete plentuouusenes of corne. Also there is founde an other kynde of chalke, whiche dispersede in feldes makethe theym plentuouus vn to the lxxx. yere folowenge. *Solinus.* That yle

MS. HARL.

2261.

f. 60. b.

<sup>1</sup> whiche, Cx.<sup>2</sup> moskles, a.<sup>3</sup> that men dyen ther with fyn reed, Cx.<sup>4</sup> fayr, Cx.; fayn, a.<sup>5</sup> older, Cx.<sup>6</sup> þe] om. a. (not Cx.)<sup>7</sup> to deled, a.; departed, Cx.<sup>8</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

Gignit etiam<sup>1</sup> hæc insula lapidem gagatem,<sup>2</sup> cujus si decorem<sup>3</sup> requiras, nigro-gemmeus<sup>4</sup> est; si naturam, aqua ardet, oleo extinguitur; si potestatem, attritu<sup>5</sup> calefactus applicita detinet; <sup>6</sup> si beneficium, hydropicis eam potantibus confert.<sup>7</sup> *Beda.*<sup>8</sup> Incensus ab igne serpentes fugat; calefactus applicita detinet, æque<sup>9</sup> ut succinum.<sup>10</sup> *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo.* Ibi oves lanigeræ, ferarum et cervorum multitudo, sed pauci lupi. Ideoque oves ibi<sup>11</sup> tutius sine custodia in<sup>12</sup> caulis relinquuntur. *Ranulphus.* In ea quoque sunt urbes<sup>13</sup> multæ speciosæ et opulentæ, flumina magna et piscosa, nemora pecualia<sup>14</sup> spatiosa, gleba terræ mineris et salinis copiosa.<sup>15</sup> In ea quippe<sup>16</sup> sunt lapidicinæ marmoris varii, saxi rufi<sup>17</sup> et albi, mollis et solidi, calcisque<sup>18</sup> candidæ. Est etiam<sup>19</sup> ibi<sup>20</sup> argilla alba et rubea ad componendum vasa fictilia, et tegulis tingendis<sup>21</sup> velut altera Samia multum accommoda;<sup>22</sup> denique

<sup>1</sup> *et, A.*

<sup>2</sup> *gagantem, C. (not D.)*

<sup>3</sup> *colorem, C.D.*

<sup>4</sup> *nigra gemma, B.C. (not D.)*

<sup>5</sup> *attritu] om. B.*

<sup>6</sup> *si . . . æque] om. B.*

<sup>7</sup> *confer, C. (not D.)*

<sup>8</sup> *libro primo added in C.D.*

<sup>9</sup> *æque] om. A.*

<sup>10</sup> *succinctum, B.*

<sup>11</sup> *ibi] om. C. (not D.)*

<sup>12</sup> *custodia in] om. B.*

<sup>13</sup> *civitates, C.D.*

<sup>14</sup> *pecualia] feris copiosa et, C.D.; pecualia et, A., Gale.*

<sup>15</sup> *abundans, C.D.*

<sup>16</sup> *quoque, C.; quidem, D.*

<sup>17</sup> *rubi, C.*

<sup>18</sup> *calxis et, B.; candidi, MSS. (not Gale.)*

<sup>19</sup> *ibi quoque, C.D.*

<sup>20</sup> *ibi] om. A.*

<sup>21</sup> *tingendis] om. C. (not D.); Trevisa read *tegendis*.*

<sup>22</sup> *Clause abbreviated in C.D.*



i-marled. *Solinus*.<sup>1</sup> In þis ilond growep a stoon þat hatte TREVISIA.  
 gagates; ʒif me axep<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> his fairenesse, he is blak as gemmes  
 beep; [ʒif me axeth his kynde, hit brennep in water and  
 quencheþ in oyle].<sup>4</sup> ʒif he is i-froted and i-het,<sup>5</sup> he holdeþ  
 what hym neiʒheþ; ʒif me axep his goodnesse, hit heleþ  
 þe dropesy and hit be i-dronke. *Beda*. I-tend in þe fire hit  
 feseþ away serpentes; if<sup>6</sup> hit is hotter,<sup>7</sup> hit holdeþ what hym  
 neigheþ, as succinis, a stoon þat so hatte.<sup>8</sup> *Isid., libro quinto-*  
*decimo*. Þere beep schepe þat bereþ good wolle, þere beep  
 meny hertes and wylde bestes and fewe wolues; perfore þe  
 schepe beep þe more sikerliche wiþ oute [kepyng] <sup>9</sup>i-lefte in  
 þe folde.<sup>10</sup> In þis ilond also beep many citees and townes,  
 faire and noble and riche; many grete ryueres and stremes  
 wiþ grete plente of fische; many faire wodes<sup>11</sup> and grete wiþ  
 wel<sup>12</sup> many bestes tame and wylde. Þe erpe of that lond is  
 copicus of metal ore and of salt welles; of quarers<sup>13</sup> of marbel  
 of dyuers manere stones, of reed, of whyte; of nesche,<sup>14</sup> of  
 hard; of chalk<sup>15</sup> and of whyte lyme.<sup>16</sup> Þere is also white  
 cley and reed forto make of crokkes<sup>17</sup> and stenes and oper  
 vessel and brent<sup>18</sup> tyle to hele<sup>19</sup> wiþ hous and cherches as hit

gendrethe a ston that is callede iette. If thou inquire the MS. HARL.  
 beawte off hit, hit is blacke; if thou inquire the nature, 2261.  
 hit brenneþe in water, and is extincte with oyle; if thou  
 inquire the vertu of hit, that ston made hoothe with rubbenge  
 dothe attracte chaffe to hit. If thou inquire the benefite,  
 hit helpethe moche men hauenge the dropecy, drynkenge  
 hit. *Beda*. That ston made in powdre, and caste in to  
 the fire, expelleþe serpentes. *Isidorus, libro quinto de-*  
*cimo*. There be schepe plentuous in wolle, and moche dere  
 of diuerse kyndes, fewe wulphes, perfore schepe be lefte in  
 more suerte in their places. *R.* In that londe be many  
 feire citees, grete waters and fulle of fische, and plentuous  
 in wodes, where be also mynes of stones diuerse in colour,  
 redde and white, softe and harde, and white chalke. Also  
 there is white cleye and redde, where of thei make pottes

<sup>1</sup> Reference added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *yf ye wil knowe, Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *of*] om. *a.*

<sup>4</sup> Added and restored from *β.* and *Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *chauffed, Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *ʒif, a.*

<sup>7</sup> *hatt, a.*

<sup>8</sup> *Cx.* (who prints *succins*) has considerable omissions in the previous sentence.

<sup>9</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *felde, MS.*

<sup>11</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *wordes, MS.*

<sup>12</sup> *wel*] *right, Cx.*

<sup>13</sup> *quareres, a.*; *quareis, Cx.*

<sup>14</sup> *soft, Cx.*

<sup>15</sup> *chark, a.*

<sup>16</sup> *lym, a.*

<sup>17</sup> *make poties, crokkes, Cx.*

<sup>18</sup> *brand, a.*

<sup>19</sup> *couere, Cx.*; and so often.

lanam ejus zelat Flandria, coria et pelles<sup>1</sup> Normannia, ferrum et plumbum Vasconia, mineras et sales Hibernia, æra ejus nivea universa sitit Europa. *Alfridus*. Ceterum Britannia omni materia affluit, quæ pretio<sup>2</sup> ambitiosa seu usu<sup>3</sup> necessaria est ferrariis, et salinis nunquam deficit. Unde et quidam metricus in laudem<sup>4</sup> ejus sic prorupit.<sup>5</sup> *Henricus de Prærogativis Angliæ: Versus*:<sup>6</sup>

Anglia terra ferax et fertilis angulus orbis,  
 Anglia plena jocis, gens libera digna<sup>7</sup> joci ;  
 Libera gens, cui libera mens et libera lingua,  
 Sed lingua melior liberiorque<sup>8</sup> manus.

<sup>9</sup> Anglia, terrarum<sup>10</sup> decus et flos finitimarum,  
 Est<sup>11</sup> contenta sui fertilitate boni.

Externas gentes consumptis rebus egentes,  
 Quando fames lædit, recreat et reficit.

---

<sup>1</sup> *coria et pelles*, B.  
<sup>2</sup> *quæ pretio*] quod predicto, C.  
 (not D.)  
<sup>3</sup> *visu*, D. (clerical error.)  
<sup>4</sup> *et . . . laudem*] in laudes, C.D.  
<sup>5</sup> *scribitur*, C.D.  
<sup>6</sup> *de . . . Versus*] om. C.D. ; A.B.,  
 Gale omit all the reference.

<sup>7</sup> *plena*, B.  
<sup>8</sup> *liberaque*, B.  
<sup>9</sup> *Item Henricus*, A. B.  
<sup>10</sup> *terra*, A.  
<sup>11</sup> *Et*, Gale.

were in þe other Samia, þat hatte Samos also. Flaundres<sup>1</sup> TREVISA.  
louep þe wolle<sup>2</sup> of þis lond, and<sup>3</sup> Normandie<sup>4</sup> þe skynnes and  
þe velles; <sup>5</sup> Gasquyn<sup>6</sup> þe iren and þe leed; Irland þe ore and  
þe salt; [al]<sup>7</sup> Europa louep and desireþ þe white metal of  
þis lond. *Alfridus*.<sup>8</sup> Bretayne hap i-now of alle matire<sup>9</sup> þat  
þere nedep begge<sup>10</sup> and selle, oþer þat<sup>11</sup> is nedeful to manis  
vse; <sup>12</sup> þere lakkep neiþer<sup>13</sup> salt ne iren. Þefore a versifoure  
in his metre preysep the lond in þis manere: Engeland is  
good lond, fruytful of þe wolle, but<sup>14</sup> a corner; Engeland ful  
of pley, fremen well worpy to pleye; fire men, fire tonges,  
hert fire; free beep al þe leden; <sup>15</sup> here hond is more fire, more  
better<sup>16</sup> þan here tonge. Also Henricus: <sup>17</sup> Engeland hiȝt of  
lond,<sup>18</sup> floure of londes al aboute; þat londe is ful payde wip  
fruyte and corn<sup>19</sup> of his owne.<sup>20</sup>

Straunge<sup>21</sup> men þat needep,  
þat lond wel ofte releueþ.  
Whan hunger greueþ,  
þat lond alle suche men<sup>22</sup> fedeþ.

and tylestones. The wolle off whiche londe men of Flaundres MS. HARL.  
luffe gretely; and Normandy, the leder of hit and skynnes; 2261.  
Vasconia yrne and lede. Whiche Briteyne is a londe habun-  
dante in metalles, and in pleasure that is necessary to the  
lyfe of man, in to the lawde of whom a metricion seithe:  
Englonde is a plentuous londe, and an angle of the worlde.  
That londe is fulle of disportes, whiche peple is worthy to  
make disportes, the tonge of whom is goode, and the honde  
more liberalle. *Item Henricus sic.* The londe of Briteyne  
is the worschippe and floure of regiones of the costes of  
the see, whiche londe is contente with the propre fertilitie of  
hit selfe, refreschenge other straunge peple hauenge nede

<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Flaundrep*, MS.  
<sup>2</sup> *loueth wel the wulle*, Cx.  
<sup>3</sup> So *a.*; *in*, MS.  
<sup>4</sup> *Holand*, Cx.  
<sup>5</sup> *felles*, Cx.  
<sup>6</sup> *Guyan*, Cx.  
<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.  
<sup>8</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Gir.*, MS.  
<sup>9</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *manere*, MS.  
<sup>10</sup> *bye*, Cx.; *bigge*, *β*.  
<sup>11</sup> *þer*, *a*.  
<sup>12</sup> *vys*, *a*.  
<sup>13</sup> *neuere*, *a. β*.  
<sup>14</sup> *but it is*, Cx.; and similarly else-  
where.

<sup>15</sup> *ledyn*, *a.*; *lyden*, *β*.; *alle theyr*  
*thynges*, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> *and better*, Cx.

<sup>17</sup> *Hevre*, *a.*; *Hevr.*, *β*.; *Her.*, MS.  
Cx. omits the word.

<sup>18</sup> *is beauteuous* (sic) *of lond*, Cx.  
Perhaps *of lond* in the text should  
be simply cancelled.

<sup>19</sup> *good*, *a. β.* and Cx.

<sup>20</sup> From this point Trevisa seems  
to have intended verse.

<sup>21</sup> So Cx. and *β*.; *stronge*, MS.  
and *a*.

<sup>22</sup> *men siche*, *β*. The text is ca-  
priciously altered in Cx, more or less  
throughout.

Commoda terra satis mirandæ fertilitatis  
 Prosperitate viget, cum bona pacis habet.  
 Anglorum portus occasus<sup>1</sup> novit et ortus,  
 Anglica<sup>2</sup> classis habet quod loca multa<sup>3</sup> juvet;  
 Et cibus et census magis hic communis habetur,  
 Nam de more viri sunt ibi magnifici.

*Item Alfridus sic:*<sup>4</sup>

Illa quidem longe celebri splendore beata  
 Glebis,<sup>5</sup> lacte, favis supereminet insula cunctis.  
 Insula prædives, quæ toto non eget<sup>6</sup> orbe,  
 Et cuius totus indiget orbis ope;  
 Insula prædives, cuius miretur et optet  
 Delicias Salomon, Octavianus<sup>7</sup> opes.

<sup>1</sup> *occasum*, E.

<sup>2</sup> *Anglia*, A.D.

<sup>3</sup> *multa loca*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Item Alfridus sic*] So A.B. ;  
 placed after *opes* in E. ; reference  
 omitted in Gale and D.

<sup>5</sup> *Glebes*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *eguet*, E.

<sup>7</sup> So Gale and the versions ; *Octavianus*, MSS.

TREVISA.

Þat lond is good i-now,  
 Wonder moche <sup>1</sup> fruyt bereþ and corn.<sup>2</sup>  
 Þat lond is wel at ese,  
 As long as men lyueþ in 'pese.<sup>3</sup>  
 Est and west al lond  
 Knoweþ hens riȝt wel of Engelond.<sup>4</sup>  
 Here schippes fondes,  
 And ofte helpeþ meny londes ;  
 Þere mete þey[re] <sup>5</sup> money <sup>6</sup>  
 Men haueþ more <sup>7</sup> comyn alle wey.  
 For here þat craftes  
 Men wole gladliche ȝeue ȝiftes.<sup>8</sup>  
 In londe, in <sup>9</sup> stronde  
 Wel wyde men <sup>10</sup> spekeþ of Engelonde ;  
 Lond, hony, melk, chese,  
 Þis ilond schal bere the prys.<sup>11</sup>  
 Of alle londes riches <sup>12</sup> þis lond hath nede  
 to noon ;  
 Alle londes moot <sup>13</sup> seche helpe nedes of þis  
 allone.  
 Of likynge þere won  
 Wonder <sup>14</sup> myȝt Salamon.  
 Riches þat þere is an  
 ȝern <sup>15</sup> wolde Octauian.<sup>16</sup>

to þe helpe of that londe, when hungre reignethe in thaire MS. HARL.  
 cuntres. That londe is of plentuousenes to be hade in mer- 2261.  
 uayle, whiche londe dothe encrease gretely in tyme of pease  
 and of prosperite. That londe hathe also many schippes, f. 61. a.  
 whiche do helpe many places, for in that be men of grete  
 nobilite. *Item Alfridus sic.* This yle of Englonde is plen-  
 tuous, and to be enhauncede with a lawde celicalle, whiche is  
 so habundante in hit selfe that hit hathe not necessite to  
 eny other yle other place of the worlde. Whiche londe is  
 a towre of refute to alle other regiones, the delites of whom  
 Salomon desirethe, and Octauian the rychesse.

<sup>1</sup> *meche, a.*<sup>2</sup> The text must have suffered here. Cx. has : *That lond bereþ fruyt and corne good ynough*<sup>3</sup> So *a.* and Cx. ; *at ese*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *Eeste and weste in eche lond ber knowen well the hauenes of Englonde*, Cx., who has some other variations. For *hens* in text (*hānes, β.*) perhaps we should write *hauens*.<sup>5</sup> *þey]* and, Cx., perhaps rightly ; *þar mete, þar money, β.* ; *þeyre* is probably intended in MS.<sup>6</sup> *þei monay, a.*<sup>7</sup> So *a.* and Cx. : *money*, MS.<sup>8</sup> *And for to lerne men glodly yeue yeftes*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *and, a. β., Cx.*<sup>10</sup> *me, β.*<sup>11</sup> *price, a.*<sup>12</sup> *riche, a. β.*<sup>13</sup> *muste, Cx.*, with other slight variations.<sup>14</sup> *wondric, a.* ; *wondrye, β.*<sup>15</sup> *ȝern]* desire, Cx.<sup>16</sup> *Octouian, β.*

## CAP. XLII.

*De mirabilibus in ea stupendis.*<sup>1</sup>

*Solinus.* Sunt in Britannia fontes calidi opiparo<sup>2</sup> ex cultu<sup>3</sup> apparati<sup>4</sup> ad usus mortaliū, quibus fontibus præsul est numen Minervæ, in cujus æde perpetui ignes nunquam canescunt in favillas;<sup>5</sup> sed, ubi ignis tabet,<sup>6</sup> vertitur in globos saxeos. *Alfridus.*<sup>7</sup> Cum Britannia in se plura<sup>8</sup> contineat<sup>9</sup> mirabilia, quatuor tamen præ cæteris habet miranda. Primum est, quod apud Peccum<sup>10</sup> ventus egreditur de cavernis terræ tam valide ut vestes injectas ejiciat.<sup>11</sup> Secundum est, quod<sup>12</sup> apud Stanhenges juxta Sarum lapides miræ magnitudinis in modum portarum elevantur, ita ut portæ portis superpositæ videantur; nec tamen liquido<sup>13</sup> penditur qualiter aut quare ibi sunt<sup>14</sup> constructi.<sup>15</sup> Tertium est apud Cherdhole, ubi concavitas est sub terra, quam cum multi sæpe<sup>16</sup> sint<sup>17</sup> ingressi, terræ spatia et flumina videntes, nusquam<sup>18</sup> ad finem venire potuerunt. Quartum est,<sup>19</sup> quod pluvia videtur de montibus elevari

Quatuor  
præ cæteris  
mirabilia.

<sup>1</sup> C. omits title. *Demirabilibus, Anglia, D.*; *stupendis, om. B.*

<sup>2</sup> *opipario, A.B.*

<sup>3</sup> *et cultu, C.D.*

<sup>4</sup> *exculti apparatu, Solinus, c. 22.*

<sup>5</sup> *favillam, C. (not D.)*

<sup>6</sup> *tabuit, C.D.*

<sup>7</sup> *Alfridus] om. A.B.*

<sup>8</sup> *plurima plura in se, B.*; *plurima in se, D.*

<sup>9</sup> *continet, A.B., Gale.*

<sup>10</sup> *Peccum (or Pectum), A.B.D.E.,*

*Gale; Peckum, C.* This form leads us to suppose *Peckham* to be the place meant; see however the versions.

<sup>11</sup> *rejiciat, A.B., Gale; repellat, C.D.*

<sup>12</sup> *quod, added from B.*; *Gale's text is mutilated.*

<sup>13</sup> *tamen liquido] liquide, C.D.*

<sup>14</sup> *sint, C.D.*

<sup>15</sup> *constructæ, A.B.*

<sup>16</sup> *sæpe] after ingressi in Gale.*

<sup>17</sup> *sint] om. B.; sant, D.*

<sup>18</sup> *nusquam, A.*

<sup>19</sup> *est] om. C.*

*De mirabilibus in ea stupendis. Capitulum quadragesimum* TREVISA.  
*secundum.*

*Solinus.* In Brytayne beep hooté welles wel arrayed and i-hiȝt<sup>1</sup> to þe vse of mankynde. Maistresse of pilke welles is þe grete spirit of Minerua. In hire hous fuyre dureþ<sup>2</sup> alway, þat neuere chaungeþ into askes; but [þere]<sup>3</sup> þe fuyre slakeþ, it chaungeth into<sup>4</sup> stony clottes. *Alfr.* In Bretayn, beep many wondres; neuerþeles foure beep most wonderful. Þe firste is at Pectoun; þere bloweþ so strong a wynde out of chenes<sup>5</sup> of þe erpe, þat it casteþ vp aȝen cloþes þat me casteþ yn. Þe secounde is at Stonhenge by sides Salisbury; þere beep grete stones and wonder huge, and beep arered an hiȝ as hit were ȝates; [so þat þere semeþ ȝates]<sup>6</sup> i-sett vppon oper ȝates; nopeles hit is nouȝt clereliche i-knowe noper perceyued<sup>7</sup> how and wherfore þey beep so arered and so wonderlicþe i-honged. Þe þridde is at Cherdhole;<sup>8</sup> þere is grete holownesse vnder erpe; of<sup>9</sup> meny men haueþ i-walked þerynne and i-seie ryueres and stremes, but nowher konneþ þey fynd non ende. Þe ferþe is þat reyn is y-seie arered<sup>10</sup> vppon þe hilles and anon<sup>11</sup> i-spronge

*Of meruailes in hit to be hade in wondre. Capitulum* MS. HARL.  
*quadragesimum secundum.* 2261.

*Solinus.* Sythe the yle of Briteyne conteyneth in hit many thynges to be hade in meruayle, neuertheles iiij. thynges ar to be hade in meruayle in hit specially afore other thynges. The firste is at Pectun, where the wynde goethe furthe so faste that hit castethe owte clothes caste in to hit. The secounde is at Stanhenges, nye to Salisbury, where stones of a grete magnitude be exaltede in to the maner of ȝates, that thei seme as ȝates putte on ȝates, where hit can not be clerely perceyvede how and wherfore the stones were sette there. The thrydde is at Sherdehoole, where a holo place is vnder the erthe in to whom many men haue entrede, seenge waters in hit, cowthe not come to thende of hit in eny wise. The iiij<sup>the</sup> is, that reyne is seene to be eleuate from hilles, and to be diffudede anon thro the

<sup>1</sup> *adressyd*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *endureth*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> [þere] Added from Cx. and β.; α. has þe þe; where would seem the truer reading.

<sup>4</sup> *and in to*, α.

<sup>5</sup> *chynes*, α. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Added from α. β. and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *apperceyued*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Cherdhoke*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *ofte*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *reysed*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *noon*, α.

Fontes  
mirabiles.

et cito per campos<sup>1</sup> diffundi. Est etiam in ea stagnum sexaginta insulas habitabiles continens, quod<sup>2</sup> sexaginta rupibus ambitur, in quarum<sup>3</sup> qualibet aquila nidificat, et sexaginta<sup>4</sup> flumina fluunt in illud,<sup>5</sup> quorum nullum ad mare progreditur præter unum. Est ibi<sup>6</sup> stagnum muro lapideo et lateritio circumdatum, in quo frequenter lavantur homines; quibus fit lavacrum unicuique, sicut voluerit, frigidum seu<sup>7</sup> calidum.<sup>8</sup> Sunt in ea fontes salis longe a mari, quorum aquæ per totam hebdomadam salsæ sunt usque ad horam nonam<sup>9</sup> Sabbati, et tunc dulces usque ad diem Lunæ,<sup>10</sup> a quibus decoquitur sal candidum et<sup>11</sup> subtile. Est etiam<sup>12</sup> in ea stagnum cujus aqua tantam habet efficaciam, ut si totus exercitus<sup>13</sup> patriæ astaret juxta et faciem dirigeret versus<sup>14</sup> undam,<sup>15</sup> unda eos<sup>16</sup> attraheret violenter, vestibus humore madefactis;<sup>17</sup> similiter et equi traherentur; si autem facies hominum fuerint aversæ,<sup>18</sup> non nocebit<sup>19</sup> unda. Est etiam fons<sup>20</sup> in quo nec a quo fluit rivus,<sup>21</sup> et tamen in<sup>22</sup> eo capiuntur

<sup>1</sup> *diversa*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *quarum*] added from A.C.

<sup>4</sup> *insulas . . . sexaginta*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *eo*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *ibi*] in ea, C.; et ibi, B.; om. D.

<sup>7</sup> *vel*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *calidum seu frigidum*. B. Sentence slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *nonam*] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *Lunæ*] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> *et*] om. A.

<sup>12</sup> *etiam*] om. B.; autem, A.

<sup>13</sup> *populus*, A.

<sup>14</sup> *ad*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *et . . . undam*] om. D.

<sup>16</sup> *illos*, A.B.C., Gale.

<sup>17</sup> *repletis*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *aversæ*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *nocet*, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *fons*] om. E.

<sup>21</sup> *Tynus*, C.

<sup>22</sup> *in*] om. A.



aboute in þe feeldes. Also þere is a grete ponde þat con-  
 teyneþ þre score ylondes couenable for men to dwelle ynne :  
 þat pond is i-clipped<sup>1</sup> aboute wip sixe roches ; vppon  
 euerich roche is an egles nest.<sup>2</sup> And þre score ryueres  
 rennep into þat pond ; and noon of hem alle rennep into  
 þe see, but oon. Þere is a pond i-closed aboute wip a  
 wal of tyle and of stoon. In þat pond men waschep and  
 bapeth wel ofte ; and eueriche man feleth þe water hoot  
 or colde, riȝt as he wolde<sup>3</sup> hymself. Þere beep salt welles  
 fer fram þee<sup>4</sup> see, and beeth salte alle þe woke longe, forto  
 Saturday<sup>5</sup> at none ; and fresche from Saturday at none for  
 to Monday. Þe water of þese welles,<sup>6</sup> whan hit is i-sode,  
 torneþ in to smal salte, faire and white. Also þere is a  
 pond, þe water perof hap moche [wonder]<sup>7</sup> worchynge ;  
 for þeyh al an oost stood by þe pond and torned þe<sup>8</sup> face  
 thiderward, þe water wolde drawe hem violentliche toward  
 þe pond and wete al her clopes. So schulde hors be drawe  
 in þe same wise. But<sup>9</sup> ȝif þe face is a weyward<sup>10</sup> from  
 þe water, [þe water]<sup>11</sup> noyeth nouȝt. Þere is a welle þat no  
 stream rennep þerfrom,<sup>12</sup> noþer þerto, and ȝit foure manere

TREVISA.

feldes and cuntre nye to theyme. Also there is a water  
 conteynenge lx. yles inhabitable, whiche is compassede  
 abowte with lx. hilles, in eueryche of whom an egle makethe  
 a neste, and lx. waters floo in to hit, of whom there goethe  
 noon to the see but oon. Also there is a water compassede  
 with a walle of ston of tyles, where men be waschen ofte-  
 tymes, whiche is to euery man after his pleasure either  
 hote other colde. Also there be welles of salte in hit,  
 ferre from the see, the waters of whom be salte by alle  
 the weke vn to the howre of none in Seturday, and then the  
 waters be fresche ; of whiche water white salte is made and  
 subtile. Also there is a grete damme in hit, the water of  
 whom makethe moiste the clothes of men hauenge their  
 siȝhte directe to hit, and drawenge theym towarde hit,  
 thauȝhe hit were a grete hoste, the water is of suche  
 efficacite ; and if the faces of men be turnede from hit, that  
 water schalle not greve theyme. Also there is a welle in  
 whom a ryuer is not, neither a ryuer floethe from hit, in

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 61. b.

<sup>1</sup> *byclipped*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *egle his nest*, a. ; varied in Cx.<sup>3</sup> *wole*, a. ; *will*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So MS. ; *þe*, a.<sup>5</sup> *Saturdat*, a.<sup>6</sup> *þis*, a. (not Cx.)<sup>7</sup> Added from a. and Cx. ; the later omits *mochē*.<sup>8</sup> *theyr*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *And*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *be torned away*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>12</sup> *fro*, Cx.

quatuor genera piscium, et habet<sup>1</sup> fons tantum<sup>2</sup> xx.<sup>3</sup> pedes in longitudine et xx. in latitudine,<sup>4</sup> nec tamen est profundus, sed usque ad genua, ripas altas habens<sup>5</sup> ex omni parte. In regione Wenta est fovea a qua ventus flat incessanter, ita<sup>6</sup> ut nemo possit subsistere ante eam. Est etiam in ea stagnum, quod facit lignum impositum<sup>7</sup> durescere in lapidem, si per annum in eo<sup>8</sup> manserit, unde formantur ligna in cotes. Est in cacumine<sup>9</sup> montis sepulcrum, cui quilibet accedens et se dimetiens inveniet mensuræ suæ<sup>10</sup> quantitatem; et si peregrinus vel lassus aliquis<sup>11</sup> ibi flexerit<sup>12</sup> genua ad illud, nullum<sup>13</sup> illico sentiet tædium.

Alia  
mirabilia.

*Giraldus in Topographia.* Juxta monasterium Wymburnense,<sup>14</sup> quod est<sup>15</sup> non longe a<sup>16</sup> Bathonia, est nemus fruticosum;<sup>17</sup> cujus ligna, si in aquam vel in terram vicinam per annum<sup>18</sup> ceciderint, in saxum convertentur.<sup>19</sup> *Giraldus*<sup>20</sup> in *Itinerario*. Sub civitate Cestriæ currit flumen Dee, quod hodie disternat<sup>21</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *habet autem*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *centum*, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *xx.*] om. C.

<sup>4</sup> *et . . . latitudine*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *habetque ripas altas*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *ita*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *impositum*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *si ibi per annum*, &c., C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *cujusdam*, ins. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sucæ*] om. A.

<sup>11</sup> *aliquis*] om. C.D.; before *vel* in B.

<sup>12</sup> *flexerit ibi*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *multum*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Wymburicense*, B.; *Wimburnense*, A.

<sup>15</sup> *est*] om. B.

<sup>16</sup> *non longe a*] prope, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *fructuosum*, Gale.

<sup>18</sup> *per annum*] om. B.

<sup>19</sup> *convertuntur*, B.D.

<sup>20</sup> *Idem*, C.D.; *Itinere*, B.

<sup>21</sup> *dividit*, C.D.

fische bep i-take pere yme. Pat welle is but twenty foot long and twenty foot brood, and nouzt depe bot to pe kne, i-closed wijp hiȝe bankes in eueriche side. In pe contray aboute Wynchestre is a den; <sup>1</sup> out of pat den alwey blowep strong wynd, so pat no man may endure <sup>2</sup> forto stonde to fore pat den. Pere is also a pond pat torneȝ tre to iren, and hit be perynne al a ȝere; and so treen be i-schape into whetstones. <sup>3</sup> Also pere is in pe cop <sup>4</sup> of an hille a burielles; euerich man pat comeȝ and metep pat buriel, he schal fynde it euene riȝt <sup>5</sup> of his owne mette; <sup>6</sup> and ȝif a pilgryme kneleȝ <sup>7</sup> perto, anon he schal be al fresche, and of werynesse schal he fele none noye. <sup>8</sup> *Giraldus in Topographia.* Faste by pe mynistre <sup>9</sup> of Wynburney, pat is nouzt fer from Bape, is a wode pat bereȝ moche fruyt; yf pe trees of pat wode falle into a water oper grounde pat pere is nyh, and lye pere alle aȝere, pe trees torneȝ into stones. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* <sup>10</sup> Vnder pe citee of Chestre rennep pat ryuer Dee, pat now to deleȝ <sup>11</sup> Engelond and

TREVISA.

whom iiij. kyndes of fisches be taken; whiche welle hathe oonly xx<sup>ti</sup> foote in longitude, and xx<sup>ti</sup> foote in brodenes, whiche is not deipe but to the knees of a man, hauenge hye brynkes to hit on euery side. Also in the cuntre callede Wenta is a diche, from whom the wynde blawethe incessantely, in so moche that a man may not stonde afore hit. Also there is a water in that cuntre that turnethe a tre in to a ston if hit tary in pat water, where trees or woode be formede in to whettstones. Also there is a beryalle in the toppe of an hille, where euery man comynge schalle fynde his measure and quantite; and if a pilgreme, other elles a wery man, boo his knees per to hit, he schalle not fele eny disease. *Giraldus in Topographia.* Also there is a woode fulle of frute nye to the monastery of Wynneburne, not ferre from Bathe; the wodde of hit putte in to a water nye to that place by a yere be turnede in to a ston. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Also there rennethe a water vnder the cite of Chestre namede Dee, whiche di-

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> a den or a caue, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Cx. here does not substitute dure.

<sup>3</sup> westones, a.

<sup>4</sup> toppe, Cx.; c and t are almost identical in MSS., and both readings are good.

<sup>5</sup> riȝt] om. Cx., who often omits wel in similar passages.

<sup>6</sup> meete, a.; lengthe and mesure, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> kneoleȝ, a.

<sup>8</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>9</sup> mynster, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Reference added from a. and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> to deleȝ], departeth, Cx.

Angliam a Wallia,<sup>1</sup> quod<sup>2</sup> singulis mensibus, ut asserunt accolæ, vada sua solet mutare;<sup>3</sup> et utri finium<sup>4</sup> Angliæ seu Cambriæ, alveo relicto, magis<sup>5</sup> incubuerit, gentem illam<sup>6</sup> eo anno succumbere et alteram prævalere certum habent pronosticum.<sup>7</sup> Iste<sup>8</sup> fluvius Dee<sup>9</sup> de lacu cui nomen Pymbelmere<sup>10</sup> originem ducit; et cum flumen<sup>11</sup> salmonibus abundet, nusquam<sup>12</sup> tamen in lacu salmo reperitur. <sup>13</sup> *Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo*. Considerandum est quantus<sup>14</sup> divinæ<sup>15</sup> pietatis fulgor ab initio susceptæ fidei populum Anglorum illustraverit,<sup>16</sup> quod nusquam gentium in una provincia reperiuntur tot sanctorum post mortem illibata corpora, finalis incorruptionis simulacrum præferentia,<sup>17</sup> sicut patet in beatis Etheldreda, Edmundo rege, Elphego,<sup>18</sup> Cuthberto. Quod<sup>19</sup> ideo fieri credo cœlitus, ut natio extra orbem pene posita ex consideratione talis

<sup>1</sup> Transposed in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *hoc*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *permutare*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> So B.C.D.; *in utri finium*, A.; *ut si finium*, E.; *et ut finium*, Gale and D. (first hand), which is probably right.

<sup>5</sup> *magis*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> Omitted in C.

<sup>7</sup> *prænoticum*, Gale; *pronosticum est*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *Hic*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Dee*] om. C.D.; *De*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *Pymbulmere*, B.; *Pimbi'mere*, A., Gale; *Pimbelmere*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *fluvius*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *nunquam*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Willelmus . . . animetur*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *quantum*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *diem*, Gale, absurdly.

<sup>16</sup> *illustravit*, A.

<sup>17</sup> *preferenda*, Gale.

<sup>18</sup> *Alphego*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *et*, A.

Wales; þat ryuer eueriche monþe chaungeþ his foordes, as men of þe contrey telleþ, and leueþ ofte þe chanel; but where<sup>1</sup> the water drawe more toward Engelond oþer toward Wales, to what side [þat hit be, þat 3ere men of þat side]<sup>2</sup> schal haue the worse ende and be ouercome,<sup>3</sup> and men of þe oþer side schal haue þe better ende and be at here aboue. Whan þe water so chaungeþ his cours, it bodeþ suche happes. Þis ryuer Dee renneth and comeþ out of a lake þat hiȝt Pymbilmere. In þe ryuer is grete plente of samoun, neuerpeles in þe lake is neuere samoun<sup>4</sup> i-founde. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo.* Take hede how greet liȝt and briȝtnesse of Goddiss myldenesse hap by schyne<sup>5</sup> Engliche men, seþpe<sup>6</sup> þey torned first to riȝtful<sup>7</sup> byleue. So þat of<sup>8</sup> no men in oon<sup>9</sup> prouince bep i-founde so meny hool bodyes of men after hir dep in liknesse of euere lastyngge lif<sup>10</sup> þat schal be after þe day of dome, as it wel semeth in þese<sup>11</sup> holy seyntes Etheldred, Edmond the kyng, Elphege, and Cuthbert.<sup>12</sup> I trowe þat it is i-doo by special grace of God alle myȝti, for þe nacioun þat is i-sette, as it were, wiþ oute þe worlde, schulde take hede to duryngge of bodies wiþ oute corrupcioun and rotyngge, and be þe<sup>13</sup>

TREVISA.

uidethe Englonde from Wales, whiche is wonte, as hit is seide, to chaunge his furdes in euery monethe; and wheþer hit do drawe more nye to the<sup>3</sup> partes of Englonde other elles of Wales, the peple do prenosticate a falle to the peple to whom hit is more nye. Also this water callede Dee hathe his begynnenge of a water callede Pimbilmere, and this floode of Dee is habundante in salmones, and vn to this tyme presente a samon was not founde in that water from whom the water of Dee commethe. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo.* Hit is to be considerate how that diuine powere hathe lyȝhtede the peple of Englonde sythe that thei toke the feithe of Criste, where so mony seyntes be not founde in eny other prouince as in that; as of Seynte Edward, Seynte Edmunde the kyng, Elphegus, Cuthberte, and Seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery, with mony other seyntes; whiche y suppose to be causede by the inspiracion of Godde, that a nacion as putte with owte the worlde thro þe con-

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *wheþer*, a., Cx.<sup>2</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> *oversett*, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> So a. and Cx.; *is a samoun*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *be shewed vpon*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> So a.; *sith*, Cx.; *sopeliche*, MS.<sup>7</sup> *right*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> So a. and Cx.; *if*, MS.<sup>9</sup> *oo*, a.<sup>10</sup> *lif*] om. a.; *euerlastyngnes*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *þis*, a.<sup>12</sup> *Cutberd*, a., Cx.; the latter adds, *and Seynt Edward and many other*.<sup>13</sup> So a. and Cx.; *becþ*, MS.

incorruptelæ fidentius ad spem resurrectionis animetur.

CAP. XLIII.<sup>1</sup>

*De partibus insulæ principalibus.*

CÆPIT<sup>2</sup> Britannia<sup>3</sup> post Bruti primi<sup>4</sup> tempora tres habere<sup>5</sup> partes principales, scilicet, Loegriam, Cambriam, Albaniam,<sup>6</sup> quæ nunc Scotia dicitur.<sup>7</sup> Loegria a Locrino,<sup>8</sup> Bruti primogenito, denominata<sup>9</sup> hodie vulgato vocabulo Anglia dicitur, cujus limites primo fuerunt fretum Gallicanum ad ortum et<sup>10</sup> austrum. *Beda, -libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.*<sup>11</sup> Et ad aquilonem duo maris brachia altrinsecus in terram<sup>12</sup> longo spatio irrumpentia,<sup>13</sup> quamvis ad se invicem non pertingant;<sup>14</sup> quorum orientalis sinus incipit duobus ferme milibus<sup>15</sup> a monasterio Ebbircurnig<sup>16</sup> ad occidentem urbis<sup>17</sup> de Pemiltoun, et habet in se urbem Guydi;<sup>18</sup> occidentalis vero sinus habet ad dextram<sup>19</sup> sui

Leogria  
sive Anglia.

<sup>1</sup> Misnumbered 34 both in E. and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *Insula*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Cæpit Britannia*] *Brittannia*, (-iæ, D.) *insula*, C.D.; *Cæpit Britannia insula*, A., Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *primi*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *cepit habere*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Albaniam . . . dicitur*] et Scotiam, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *quæ . . . dicitur*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *Logria a Logrino*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *dicta*, C.D.; om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *ad*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *capitulo duodecimo*] om. C.; *septimo*, D. The text is correct.

<sup>12</sup> *in terram*] om. E.

<sup>13</sup> *interrumpentia*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *quamvis pertingant*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *miliaribus*, B.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Herbercurnig*, C.; *Ewircurnig*, B.; *Ebbircurnig*, A.; *Æbercurnig* (*i.e. Abercorn*), Bede. (The termination in the MSS. may either be *-ing*, or *-nig*. See 'Trevisa.)

<sup>17</sup> *urbis*] om. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *habet . . . Guydi*] *fluit in illud flumen Twede*, C.D.; *Gyndi*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *a dextra*, B.

more bolde and stedefast for to triste<sup>1</sup> on þe final arisyng of deed bodies forto laste euermore after þe day of dome. TREVISA.  
—

*De partibus Britanniae principalibus. Capitulum quadragesimum tertium.*

After þe firste Brutes<sup>2</sup> tyme þe ilond of Bretayne bygan for to haue þ[r]e<sup>3</sup> principal parties, þat beþ Loegria, and<sup>4</sup> Cambria, þat is Wales, and Albania, þat is now<sup>5</sup> Scotlond. Loegria had þat name of Locrinus [þat was Brut his sone eldest, and hatte Loegria, as hit were Locrinus]<sup>6</sup> his lond; but now Loegria hatte Engeland. Þe meeres and þe marke<sup>7</sup> were þerof somtyme þe Frensche see boþe by est and by soup. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.*<sup>8</sup> And by north tweie armes of þe see þat brekeþ fer in to þe lond, eyþer aþenst oþer. But he<sup>9</sup> recheþ nouzt to gidres; þe est arme of þilke tweyne bygynneþ aboute a tweie litel myle fram þe ministre of Ebbecuryng<sup>10</sup> in þe west side of þe citee of Penultoun; in þat arm<sup>11</sup> is<sup>12</sup> a toun, þat hatte Guydy. Þe west arme of þilke tweyne hap in þe

sideracion of that corruptele scholde be more bolde in feithe to the hope of the resurreccion. MS. HARL.  
2261.  
—

*Of the principalle partes of Briteyne. Capitulum quadragesimum tertium.* f. 62. a.

THE yle of Briteyne began to haue iij. principalle partes in hit after the firste tymes of Brute, that is to say, Loegria, whiche is callede now Englonde, takenge the name of hit of Locrinus the firste son of Brute, and Wales, and Albania that is now Scottelande. The merkes of whom were firste the see of Fraunce at the este and at the weste. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.* Also in the northe partes of that cuntre be ij. floodes brekenge vp eiche from other by a grete space, thauzhe thei towche not to gedre, the este parte of whom begynnethe allemoste by the space of ij. myles from a monastery callede Eburcuring, at the weste of a cite callede Penulton, whiche hathe in hit a cite callede Tweda. The oþer parte of the weste see begynnethe at

<sup>1</sup> *truste*, a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *Brutys*, a. (not Cx.)

<sup>3</sup> þe] So MS., a. β., and Cx.; but the correction is certain.

<sup>4</sup> and] om. a. and Cx. (Interlined in MS.)

<sup>5</sup> now is, a.

<sup>6</sup> Added from a. and Cx., who has a few deviations.

<sup>7</sup> *merkes*, Cx., which is better.

<sup>8</sup> *vicesimo*, Cx., wrongly.

<sup>9</sup> *they*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *Ebburcuring*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> So a. and Cx.; *armes*, MS.

<sup>12</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

urbem minutissimam<sup>1</sup> Alcluid, quod lingua eorum sonat petram Cluit, et ponitur juxta flumen<sup>2</sup> nominis sui Cluit.<sup>3</sup> *Ranulphus*. Volunt tamen quidam Loegriam apud flumen Humberæ terminari, nec ulterius versus boream debere extendi.<sup>4</sup>

Albania  
sive Scotia.

Secunda pars Britanniae Albania sive Scotia dicitur, ab Albanacto Bruti filio sic denominata;<sup>5</sup> extendit se a duobus<sup>6</sup> marinis brachiis praedictis usque ad mare Norguegiae<sup>7</sup> versus<sup>8</sup> aquilonem. Pars tamen austrina Albaniae,<sup>9</sup> quae est a fluvio Twydy<sup>10</sup> usque ad mare Scoticum, a Pictis quondam inhabitata, pertinuit aliquando ad regum Northimbrorum<sup>11</sup> Berniciorum;<sup>12</sup> a primis videlicet regum Angliae<sup>13</sup> temporibus usque dum rex Scotorum Kynadius,<sup>14</sup> Alpini filius, Pictos deleteret, et sic<sup>15</sup> partem illam regno Scotiae annecteret.<sup>16</sup>

Wallia quae  
et Cambria.

Tertia pars Britanniae dicitur Wallia, quae et Cambria, a Cambro Bruti filio sic dicta,<sup>17</sup> quam ex parte orientali<sup>18</sup> flumen Sabrinae<sup>19</sup> quondam sequestrabat a Loegria;<sup>20</sup> hodie tamen flumen Dee apud Cestriam in borea,

<sup>1</sup> *urbem minutissimam*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *flumen*] om. B., and space left before Cluit.

<sup>3</sup> *ponitur . . . Cluit*] et fluit in illud flumen Sulwach, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *sic denominata*] nuncupata, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *a duobus*] proprie a, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Norguegiae*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *versus*] ad, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Albaniae*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Twydi*, B.; *Tvidi*, A.; *Twede*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *Northanhinbrorum*, B.; *North-*

*anhybrorum*, Gale; *Northimbrorum*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Berniciorum*] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> *Anglorum*, C.D.; *regum Anglorum*, B., Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *Kynardus*, A.B.; *Kinadius*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *sic*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *sociaret*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *sic dicta*] nuncupatur, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *hanc ex orientis parte*, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *Sabrini*, A.

<sup>20</sup> *ab Anglia*, C.D.



riȝt<sup>1</sup> side a strong citee þat hatte Alclud,<sup>2</sup> þat in hire TREVISA.  
 longage hatte Cluitstoun, and stondeþ vpon a ryuere þat  
 hatte Cluit also. [R.]<sup>3</sup> Som men wolde mene þat Loegria  
 endeþ at Homber, and streccheþ no ȝonder<sup>4</sup> northward.  
 Þe secounde party of Bretayne hatte Albania, þat is  
 Scotlond, and haþ þat name of Albanactus Brutis<sup>5</sup> sone,  
 and streccheþ from þe tweye forsaide armes of þe see  
 norþward anon to þe see of Norway. Noþeles þe souþ  
 partie of Albania pere<sup>6</sup> Pictes woned somtyme, and lith  
 from þe water of Twyde anon to þe Scottische see; al  
 þat longed somtyme to þe kyngdom of Norþhumberlond  
 Bremencorum,<sup>7</sup> þe north side of Norþhumberlond, from þe  
 firste tyme of [Englisch kynges to þat tyme]<sup>8</sup> whanne  
 Kynadius, kyng of Scotlond, þat was Alpinus his sone,  
 dede away þe Pictes, and so ioyned þe<sup>9</sup> contry to þe  
 kyngdom of Scotlond. Þe þridde party of Bretayne is  
 Wallia,<sup>10</sup> þat hat Cambria also, and hadde þat name  
 Cambria of Camber, Brut his sone; for he was prince  
 of Wales. In þe est side<sup>11</sup> Seuerne departed somtyme  
 bytwene Engelond and Wales. [But now in þe north side  
 þe ryuer Dee at Chestre, and in þe south þe ryuer þat

the ryȝhte parte of Aleluid, a cite whiche is putte nye to MS. HARL.  
 Cluid, a floode of that name. R. Some men wille Loegria, 2261.  
 now callede Englonde, to haue an ende at the floode off  
 Humbre, and not to be extended forther towarde the northe.  
 The secunde principalle parte of Englonde was callede  
 Albania, other Scottelande, takenge the name of hit off  
 Albanactus the son of Brute, which extendethe hit from  
 the seide ij. waters to the see of Norway towarde the northe.  
 Neuerthelesse, the sowthe parte of Scotlande, whiche is  
 from the water of Twide vn to the Scottes see, was inhabite  
 somme tyme of the Pictes, whiche perteynede somme tyme  
 to þe cuntre of Northumbrelonde in the firste tymes of  
 kynges of Englonde, vn tulle that Kinadius, kyng of Scottes,  
 son to Alpinus, destroyede the Pictes, and annecte that parte  
 to the realme of Scottelande. The thrydde parte of Bri-  
 tayne is callede Wales, callede Cambria of Camber the son  
 of Brute, whom the water of Seuerne departede somme tyme  
 from Englonde, where now the floode of Dee departethe hit  
 in the northe at Chestre, and the water other floode callede

<sup>1</sup> right, a.<sup>2</sup> Alcluid, a.; Alcliud, Cx., who has Clintstone, and Chynt below.<sup>3</sup> Reference added from Cx.<sup>4</sup> ferther, Cx.<sup>5</sup> Brut his, a.; Bruytes, Cx.<sup>6</sup> where as, Cx., who varies the construction.<sup>7</sup> Brennicorum, a.; Brenycorn, Cx.<sup>8</sup> Added from a. and Cx.; a. has children for kynges.<sup>9</sup> þat, a., Cx.<sup>10</sup> Wales, Wallia, a., Cx.<sup>11</sup> side of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

et flumen Vaga apud castrum Strigulense<sup>1</sup> in austro Walliam ab Anglia secernit. Insuper et rex Offa, ad perpetuam regnorum Angliæ et Walliæ distinctionem habendam, fecit fossam perlongam,<sup>2</sup> quæ ab austro juxta Bristolliam sub montibus Walliæ<sup>3</sup> jugiter se extendit in boream, fluminaque<sup>4</sup> Sabrinae et Dee in eorum pene primordiis<sup>5</sup> transcindit,<sup>6</sup> et sic usque ad ostium fluminis Dee ultra Cestriam,<sup>7</sup> juxta castrum de Flynt,<sup>8</sup> inter collem<sup>9</sup> Carbonum et monasterium de Basingwerk,<sup>10</sup> in mare se protendit.<sup>11</sup> Hujus fossæ famosissimæ<sup>12</sup> extant adhuc vestigia, quam cum armis prætergrædi<sup>3</sup> tempore Sancti Edwardi regis cunctis Cambrigenis pœnale fuit, procurante hoc comite Haraldo,<sup>14</sup> sicut<sup>15</sup> inferius dicitur;<sup>16</sup> sed hodie<sup>15</sup> hinc inde ultra citraque fossam illam<sup>17</sup> potissime in provinciis Cestriæ, Salopiæ, Herfordiæ, Wallici cum Anglis passim sunt permixti.

<sup>1</sup> *Trigulense*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *prolongam*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *Walle*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *fluviosque*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *primordiis pene*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *transcendit*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *Cestre*, E.

<sup>8</sup> *castra deflynt*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *sub colle*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *et . . . Basingwerk*] om. C.D.; *Wasynwerc*, B.; *Wasingwerc*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *extendit*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *famosæ*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *transgredi*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Haroldo*, Gale.

<sup>15</sup> *sicut . . . hodie*] om. C. (not D.); *hodie*, om. B.

<sup>16</sup> *infra dicitur*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *prædictam*, C.D.

hatte Vaga, at þe castel of Strygeleum departeþ Engeland and Wales.]<sup>1</sup> Also kyng Offa, forto haue a distinccioun for euermore bytwene þe kyngdoms of Engeland and of Wales, made a long diche<sup>2</sup> þat streccheþ forþ oute of þe souþ side by Bristowe vnder þe hilles of Wales norþward, and passeþ þe reuers Seuarne and Dee almost at<sup>3</sup> þe hedes, and anon to þe moup of þe ryuer Dee byþonde Chestre faste by þe castle, and<sup>4</sup> renneþ forþ bytwene Colhille and þe ministre of Basyngwerc<sup>5</sup> in to þe see. Þis diche is zit in many places i-seyn. In Seint Edward his tyme Walsche men schulde not passe þat diche wiþ wepoun vpon a grete payne, and þat was at erle Harolde his procurynge, as hit is i-saide wiþ ynne.<sup>6</sup> Bot now in eiper side boþe of<sup>7</sup> þond half and on<sup>8</sup> þis half þe diche, and specialliche in þe schires of Chestre, of Schrouysbury, and of Herford in meny places becp Engliche men [and Walsche men]<sup>9</sup> i-medled to gidres.

TREVISA.

Vaga departethe Wales from Englonde in the sowthe at the castelle Strigulense. Also kyng Offa causede a longe diche to be made vñ to a perpetualle distinccion of the realmes of Englonde and of Wales, whiche extendethe hit from the sowthe nye to Bristolle, vnder the hilles of Wales, in to the northe; whiche diuidethe as the begynnenges of the waters of Seuarne and of Dee, and protendethe hit vñ to the durre of the floode of Dec behynde Chestre nye to the castelle of Flynte, betwene Coolehille and the monastery of Basingwerc. As zitte the stappes of that famos diche remayne, whiche diche to passe was a grete peyne to Walche men, beenge in armes in the tyme of kyng Edward, that erle Haraldus procurenge that, as hit schalle be expressede afterwarde, but now Walche men bene permixte with Engliche men ouer either diche, and specially in the prouinces of Chestre, of Schroppeschyre, and of Hereforde.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 62. b

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a. β.* and *Cx.*, who has *Strygelym*.

<sup>2</sup> *diche, a.*

<sup>3</sup> *to, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *it, Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *Basingwerke, β., Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *as it shal be sayd here after, Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *of] a, a., Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *a, Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> Added from *a. β.* and *Cx.* (*Walsshmen.*)

## CAP. XLIV.

*De insulis Britannice adjacentibus.*

ET<sup>1</sup> præter insulas Orcadas, quas Claudius Cæsar ad Britanniam pertinere fecerat, habet Britannia tres insulas sibi propinquas, quasi tribus Britanniae partibus<sup>2</sup> principalibus correspondentes.<sup>3</sup> Nam Loegriæ ad austrum adjacet<sup>4</sup> insula Vecta; Walliæ ad boream insula Monia, quæ Angleseya dicitur;<sup>5</sup> Scotiæ ad occasum insula Eubonia, quæ Mevania<sup>6</sup> sive Man dicitur. Omnes pene<sup>7</sup> ejusdem sunt quantitatis, de quibus hic<sup>8</sup> per ordinem. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* Insula Vecta, quam Vespasianus a Claudio missus subjugavit, protenditur ab ortu in<sup>9</sup> occasum xxx. milibus,<sup>10</sup> ab austro in boream xij. milibus,<sup>11</sup> et distat a meridiano Britanniae littore sex milibus<sup>12</sup> in oriente sui parte, et tribus milibus<sup>12</sup> in occidentali. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quintodecimo.* Hujus insulae mensura se-

De insula  
Vecta.

<sup>1</sup> *Et*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *quasi . . . partibus*] tribus partibus suis, B.

<sup>3</sup> Slightly transposed and altered in C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *adjacet ad austrum*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *dicitur*] om. E.

<sup>6</sup> *Menevia*, B.—*v* and *n* are so similar in the MSS. that it is hard to say what they read. I have followed Petrie's orthography in the

text. See *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, Index. Gale has *Menania* here, but *Mevania* below.

<sup>7</sup> *fere*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *hic*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *usque ad*, C.; *ad*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *miliaribus*, B.C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *milibus*] om. C.D.; *miliaribus*, B.; *milia*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *miliaribus*, B.C.D. (twice.)

*De insulis Britanniae adjacentibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.* TREVISA.

BRETAYNE hap þre ilondes þat beþ nygh and longeþ þerto alle wiþ oute þe ylondes Orcades, as hit were answeringe to þe pre cheef parties of Bretayne. For þe yle of Wight<sup>1</sup> longeþ and lieþ to Loegria, þat is Engelande; þe ilond Mon, þat hatte Engleseie<sup>2</sup> also, longeþ to<sup>3</sup> Wales; and þe ilond<sup>4</sup> Eubonia, þat hap tweie [opere]<sup>5</sup> names, and hatte Menauia<sup>6</sup> and Man also, longeþ<sup>7</sup> to Scotlond. And alle pese þre ilondes, Mon, Wight,<sup>8</sup> and Man, beþ almost i-lich moche and of þe same quantitie; of þe which þre al arewe now foloweþ our speche. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* Claudius sent Vespasianus, and Vespasianus wan Wighte,<sup>8</sup> and Wighte<sup>8</sup> stretcheþ oute of þe est in to þe west þritty myle long, and out of þe souþ in to þe norþ twelue myle, and is in þe est side sex<sup>9</sup> myle from þe souþ cleef<sup>10</sup> of Bretayne, and þre myle in þe west side. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quinto.*

*Of yles adiacente and nye to Briteyne.*

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.*

AND the yles excepte whom Claudius Cesar causede to perteyne to Briteyne, that londe hathe iij. yles nye to hit as corespondente to thre principalle partes of Briteyne: for the yle of Wyzhte lyethe nye to the sowthe parte of Englonde. And at the northe parte of Wales is an yle whiche is callede Monia other Anglesey, and also the yle of Man at the weste parte of Scotlande, whiche be allemoste of oon quantite, of whom hit schalle be seide by ordre. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* That yle of Wizhte, whom Vespasian sende<sup>11</sup> from Claudius did subiugate, is þrotended from the este in to the weste by xxx<sup>11</sup> myles, beenge from the sowthe in to the northe by xij. myles, and from the side of the sowthe see of Briteyne by vj. myles in the este parte of hit, and by thre myles in the weste. *Beda, libro quarto capitulo quinto decimo.* The measure of that

<sup>1</sup> *Wizt, a.*

<sup>2</sup> *Anglesia, a., Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. has *mon* before *Wales* (not *a.* or *Cx.*)

<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Engelond, MS.*

<sup>5</sup> *opere*] Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *Menauia, Cx.*; see above.

<sup>7</sup> *which longeth, Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *Wizt, a.*

<sup>9</sup> *sixe, a.*

<sup>10</sup> *clyve, a.*

<sup>11</sup> So Harl. MS.

De insula  
Monia.

cundum æstimationem Anglorum est M.CC. familiarum.  
<sup>2</sup> *Giraldus in Itinerario, libro secundo.*<sup>3</sup> Insula Monia, quæ et Angleseya, brevi maris brachio quasi duobus miliaribus separatur a Northwallia<sup>4</sup> et continet ccclxiiij. villas pro<sup>5</sup> tribus cantredis; computatur<sup>6</sup> quasi xxx. milia habens in longum<sup>7</sup> sed xij. in latum;<sup>8</sup> et dicitur cantredus, composito nomine tam<sup>9</sup> Britannica quam Hibernica lingua, tanta terræ portio, quanta centum villas continet.<sup>10</sup> In hujus insulæ laudem proverbialiter<sup>11</sup> solet dici Cambrice sic:<sup>12</sup> *Mon Mam Kymry*, quod Latine sonat *Monia mater Cambrice*; nam,<sup>13</sup> aliis terris victu deficientibus, hæc gleba præpollet adeo ut<sup>14</sup> hæc in annona,<sup>15</sup> <sup>16</sup> montes<sup>17</sup> Snawdoniæ<sup>18</sup> in pastura totius Cambriæ populo et armentis videatur<sup>19</sup> sufficere; unde et illud Virgilio aptari<sup>20</sup> sibi possit:

Et quantum<sup>21</sup> longis carpunt armenta diebus,  
 Exigua tantum gelidus ros<sup>22</sup> nocte reponit.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *miliarium*, B.

<sup>2</sup> C.D. add:—"Item libro primo, "capitulo quintodecimo. Itemque "sita est econtra [contra, D.] meriduum Australium Saxonum et "Gwessorum [Gewiseorum, D.] "interposito pelago latitudine trium "miliariorum, quod vocatur Soluente, in quo bini æstus oceani "quotidie compugnantes sibi occurrunt ultro ostium fluminis Homelea, quod per terras Jutarum, "quæ ad regiones Gowisiorum "[Gewiseorum, D.] pertinent, præfatum pelagus intrat." See Bed. lib. iv. c. 16.

<sup>3</sup> *in Itinerario, libro secundo*] om. E.

<sup>4</sup> *Saxonice Angleseye dicta*, ins. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *per*, E.

<sup>6</sup> *reputatur*, C.D.; *computantur*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *longitudine*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *xiiij. in latum*, D.; *latitudine*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *tam*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *continere solet*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *probabiliter*, E.

<sup>12</sup> *sic*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *quia*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *adeo ut*] in tantum quod, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *annouai*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *et*, ins. C. (not D.)

<sup>17</sup> *monte*, Gale.

<sup>18</sup> *Snaudoniæ*, E., Gale.

<sup>19</sup> *videntur*, C.; *videtur*, D. Probably we should read *videantur*.

<sup>20</sup> *apterai*, B.; *aptare*, E.

<sup>21</sup> *quamvis*, B.

<sup>22</sup> *legibus ros*, B.; *res*, E.; *vos*, Gale. See *Georg.* ii. 202.

<sup>23</sup> *unde . . . reponit*] om. C.D.

þe met<sup>1</sup> of þis ilond, as Engliche men gessep, is a þow- TREVISA  
 sand housholdes and two hondred. *Giraldus in Itinerario.*  
 Mon, þat hatte Angleseia also, is departed from þe<sup>2</sup> Norp  
 Wales by a schort arme of þe see, as it were tweie myle  
 broode. In Mon beep þre hondred townes þre score and  
 þre, and beep acounted for þre candredes, þat beep þre  
 hundredes. Þe ilond is, as it were, þretty myle longe  
 and twelue myle brood.<sup>3</sup> Candredus<sup>4</sup> is so moche land  
 as conteyneþ an hondred townes; þat name Cantredus is  
 i-made oon of tweie longages, of Brittische and of Irische.  
 In preisynge of this ilond Walsche men beep i-woned to  
 seie a prouerbe and an olde sawe, *Mon mam Kembry*, þat is  
 to menyng in Engliche *Mon moder of Wales*. For whan  
 opere londes lakkeþ mete, þat lond is so good þat hit semeþ  
 þat it wolde fynde corn i-now for alle þe men of Wales.  
 And so it semeþ þat þe hilles of Snowdonia<sup>5</sup> wolde fynde  
 pasture i-now for al Wales to þe bestes þerof.<sup>6</sup> Þerfore  
 Virgile is vers may be accordynge þereto :

As moche as gnawes  
 Bestes [longe]<sup>7</sup> inneþ dawes,  
 So moche eft bringeþ  
 Dew cold<sup>8</sup> in a nyȝt.

yle after the estimacion of peple of Englonde is of m'cc. MS. HARL.  
 townes<sup>9</sup> other howsholdes. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* The 2261.  
 yle of Monia, whiche otherwise callede Anglesey, is de-  
 partede from Northe Wales by ij. myles, as by a lytelle arme  
 of the see, whiche conteynethe ccc. lx. and iij. townes, and f. 63. a.  
 hit is acomptede as for thre cantredes, hauenge as xxx<sup>ti</sup>  
 myles in longitude and xij. myles in latitude; and a cantrede  
 is callede as welle in the langage of Englonde, as in the  
 langage of Irlonde, a porcion of erthe other grownde con-  
 teynenge an c. townes. In to the lawde of whom hit is  
 wonte to be seide prouerbially in Walesche, *Monia mam*<sup>10</sup>  
*Kymry*, whiche sowndethe in Engliche, *Anglesey is the*  
*moder of Wales*; for other londes wontenge vitelles that  
 cuntre is habundante, in so moche that Angleseye in corne  
 and Snawdon hilles in pasture scholde suffice as by esti-  
 macion alle the peple of Wales and alle the bestes of that

<sup>1</sup> measure, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> þe] om. a. and Cx., probably rightly.

<sup>3</sup> brood] om. Cx. (typogr. error?)

<sup>4</sup> Cantredus, ., Cx.

(but Candredes above.)

<sup>5</sup> Snawdonia, a.

<sup>6</sup> for alle the bestes of Wales, a.  
 The whole sentence is omitted in Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from a. β. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> old dewe, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> places, MS. (first hand).

<sup>10</sup> man, Harl. MS.

De insula  
Man.

In marino brachio, quod hanc insulam a Northwallia<sup>1</sup> secernit,<sup>2</sup> est vorago naves attrahens<sup>3</sup> et absorbens instar Scyllæ seu<sup>4</sup> Charybdis, nisi<sup>5</sup> pleno mari subtiliter transnavigetur.<sup>6</sup> *Ranulphus*. De mirabilibus hujus insulæ vide supra capitulo *Wallia*.<sup>7</sup> *Giraldus in Itinerario*. Tertia insula, quæ<sup>8</sup> Eubonia sive Mevania<sup>9</sup> dicitur,<sup>10</sup> inter Hibernicam<sup>11</sup> Ultoniam et Scoticas Galwodias,<sup>12</sup> quasi in umbilico maris, media jacet.<sup>13</sup> *Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono*. Hæc duas continet partes, quasi<sup>14</sup> insulas; quarum prior ad austrum et situ amplior et ubertate felicior nongentarum sexaginta familiarum est juxta<sup>15</sup> Anglorum æstimationem; secunda trecentarum et ultra spatium tenet.<sup>16</sup> *Giraldus in Topographia*. De qua quondam insula<sup>17</sup> cui regioni, Hiberniæ scilicet an<sup>18</sup> Angliæ, applicari deberet exorta contentione,<sup>19</sup> quia<sup>20</sup> venenosos vermes advectos admisit, eam Britannicæ applicandam

<sup>1</sup> *Northwallia*, Gale.

<sup>2</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *trahens*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *et*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *nisi . . . transnavigetur*] om. C.

<sup>6</sup> *navigaretur*, A.

<sup>7</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *quæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Manavia*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *sive Man*, ins. B.

<sup>11</sup> *Hiberniam*, E.

<sup>12</sup> *Galwedias*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *adjacet*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *partes quasi*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *est juxta*] secundum, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *continet*, C. (not D.)

<sup>17</sup> *insula*] om. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *vel*, C.

<sup>19</sup> *tentione*, A.

<sup>20</sup> *qui*, Gale.



In þat arme of þe see, þat departeth bytwene þis ilond Mon and Norþ Wales,<sup>1</sup> is a swelowe<sup>2</sup> þat draweþ to schippes<sup>3</sup> þat seilleþ,<sup>4</sup> and sweloweþ hem yn, as dooþ Scylla and Charybdis,<sup>5</sup> þat beþ tweie perilous places in þe see of myddel erþe; þerfore me may nouȝt seile by þis swolwe<sup>6</sup> but slyly at þe ful see. R̄. Of þe meruailles and wondres of þis ilond Mon,<sup>7</sup> loke in þe chapitres<sup>8</sup> of Wales. *Giraldus in Itinerario*. Þe þridde ilond þat hatte boþe Eubonia and Menania, þat is Man, stondeþ in þe myddes<sup>9</sup> bytwene þe Irische Hulster and þe Scottische Galewey,<sup>10</sup> as it were in þe naucl of þe see. *Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono*. Þis ilond Man conteyneþ as hit were tweie ilondes; þe firste is souþward, þe more contray and better corn lond, and conteyneþ nyne hondred houtholdes and þre score. Þe secounde conteyneþ þe space of þre hondred and moo, as Engliche men telleþ.<sup>11</sup> *Giraldus in Topographia*. Som tyme was stryf wheþer þis ilond Man<sup>12</sup> schulde ligge<sup>13</sup> to Britayne oþer to Irlond, [and]<sup>14</sup> for<sup>15</sup> venemous wormes<sup>16</sup> þat were i-brouȝt þider leued þere hit was i-demed<sup>17</sup> þat the ilond Man schulde longe to Bretayne. [R̄.]<sup>18</sup> And in þat ilond is

TREVISA.

cuntre to theire pasture. Also there is a swalo in that arme of the see whiche dothe departe Northe Wales from that yle, drawenge schippes to hit, with owte that schippemen passe hit subtilly at the fulle see. R̄. The reder of this processe may fynde of other mervayles of that cuntre in the chapitre of Wales. *Giraldus, in Itinerario*. That other yle whiche is callede Euvonia, other elles the yle of Man, is seide to be as in the mydde see betwene Vlster in Yrlonde, and the Scottes of Galaweie. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo nono*. Of whiche yle a contencion was made wheþer hit scholde perteyne to Englonde, other elles to Yrlonde, and men brouȝhte wormes and vermyn to hit, and for cause that londe suffrede the wormes to lyve, thei seide that grownde to longe to Englonde and not to Yrlonde.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> that departeth this londe and North Wales, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> swolwȝ, a.; swolow, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> draweth shippes to it, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Cx. inserts by.

<sup>5</sup> Cilla and Curibdis, MS., a., and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> swolouȝ, a.

<sup>7</sup> So a. and Cx.; Man, MS.

<sup>8</sup> chapitre, a. Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>9</sup> myddel, a., Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Galway, a.; Galleweye, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> gessȝ, a.; gesse, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Man, MS. (clerical error.)

<sup>13</sup> longe, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>15</sup> for as moche as, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> So a. and Cx.; wordes, MS.

<sup>17</sup> iugged, Cx.

<sup>18</sup> Reference added from Cx.

consuerunt. *Ranulphus*. In illa insula vigent<sup>1</sup> sortilegia,<sup>2</sup> superstitiones, atque præstigia; nam mulieres ibidem<sup>3</sup> navigaturis ventum vendunt, quasi sub tribus fili nodis inclusum; ita ut, sicut plus de vento habere voluerint, plures nodos evolvant.<sup>4</sup> Ibi frequenter ab indigenis videntur etiam<sup>5</sup> de die homines prius mortui, decapitati sive integri, juxta modum suæ mortis; ut autem alienigenæ et adventitii hoc videre possint, ponunt pedes<sup>6</sup> super pedes incolarum, et sic<sup>7</sup> videre<sup>8</sup> poterunt quod incolæ vident. *Beda, libro secundo*. Hæc insula ab initio fuit a Scotorum gente inhabitata. Thanatos<sup>9</sup> insula juxta Cantiam, a morte<sup>10</sup> serpentum sic dicta, quos dum ipsa nesciat, ejus tamen terra aliunde apportata angues interimit; cujus gleba plurimum ferax<sup>11</sup> uberem creditur benedictionem contraxisse<sup>12</sup> ab adventu<sup>13</sup> Augustini, prothodictoris Anglorum, ibidem primum<sup>14</sup> applicantis.<sup>15</sup>

De insula  
Thanatos,  
sive  
Thanet.

## CAP. XLV.

*De plateis regalibus.*

*Gaufridus*.<sup>16</sup> Statuit Molmutius<sup>17</sup> rex Britonum vicissimus tertius et primus eorum legifer,<sup>18</sup> ut aratra columnum,<sup>19</sup> templa deorum,<sup>1</sup> viæque ad civitates ducentes,<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *in en vigent*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *et*, ins. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *ibi*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *ita . . . evolvant*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *etiam*] om. A., Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *pedem*, C.; *pedes suos*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *tunc*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *videre . . . incolæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Thanates*, B.; *Thenetos*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *more*, E.

<sup>11</sup> *ferax*, B.; *ferax et*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *attractisse*, A.

<sup>13</sup> *beati*, ins. B.

<sup>14</sup> So A.C.D.; *primo*, B.; *populum* (*ppm*), E.

<sup>15</sup> So B.; *applicante*, A.E., Gale. Sentence slightly abbreviated in C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *Gaufridus*] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Molincius*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *inter cætera splendoris sui monumenta*, added in C.D., which have other slight variations.

<sup>19</sup> So MSS. and Gale; and so also below.

<sup>20</sup> *civitatesque et viæ ducentes ad eas*, C.D.

sortilege and wiccheecraft i-vised. For wommen þere sellip schipmen wynde, as it were i-closed vnder þre knottes of prede, so þat þe more wynd he wol<sup>1</sup> haue, he wil vnknette þe mo knottes.<sup>2</sup> Þere ofte by day men of þe lond seep men þat beep dede to forhonde, byheded oper hole, and what<sup>3</sup> deep þei deide. Aliens setteþ here foot vppon feet of men of þe lond [for to see such sightes as the men of that lond don].<sup>4</sup> *Beda, libro secundo.* Scottes woned first in þis ilond. Thanatos,<sup>5</sup> þat is Tenet, and is an ilond bysides Kent, and hap þat name Tanatos of dep of serpentis, for þere beep none, and þe erþe þereof sleep serpentis i-bore<sup>6</sup> in to oper londes. Þere is nobil corn lond and fruytful;<sup>7</sup> me troweþ þat<sup>8</sup> þat ilond was i-halowed and i-blessed of Seynt Austyn, þe firste doctour of Engliche men; for þere he aryued first.

TREVISA.

*De plateis regalibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.*

*Gaufridus.* Molinicius, kyng of Britouns,<sup>9</sup> was þe þridde and twenty of hem, and þe firste þat ʒaf hem lawe. He ordeyned þat<sup>10</sup> plowʒmen solowes, goddes temples,<sup>11</sup> and

β. In whiche yle wycchecraftis ys exercisede moche, for women þer be wonte to selle wynde to the schippemen commenge to that cuntre, as includede vnder thre knottes of threde, so that thei wylle vnloose the knottes lyke as thei wylle haue the wynde to blawe. *Beda, libro secundo.* That yle was inhabite firste of the Scottes. Also there is an yle nye to Kente callede Thanatos, namede so of the dethe of serpentis, the erthe of whiche yle brouʒhte in to other cuntres sleethe serpentis; whiche yle is plentuous; and mony men say that yle to haue bene blessed by Seynte Austyn, the firste doctor of Englonde londenge there firste.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Of the kynges hie weyes.*

*Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.*

*Gaufridus.* Molimicius, the xxiiij<sup>th</sup> kyng of Briteyne, and the firste maker of lawe of theyme, ordeinede that the ploes of tillers, the temples of goddes, and the weies ledenge to cites

<sup>1</sup> wil, a.; wold, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> the mo knottes he must vndo, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> wat, a.

<sup>4</sup> Added from Cx., who omits lond by typogr. error; β. has lond, but makes various blunders.

<sup>5</sup> So a. and Cx.; Thanathos, MS.

<sup>6</sup> i-bodere, a.

<sup>7</sup> fruyʒtful, a.

<sup>8</sup> hit is supposed that, Cx.; and similarly often.

<sup>9</sup> Molimicius, a.; and so bel. w.; Moliuncius, Cx., and Molyuncius below.

<sup>10</sup> þat þat, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>11</sup> MS. adds: and hiʒe temples (not a. or Cx.)

immunitate confugii gauderent, ita ut nullus reus ad aliquod istorum trium confugiens pro tuitione ab aliquo invaderetur.<sup>1</sup> Verum quia procedente tempore de viis, cum non essent certis limitibus distinctæ, orta esset<sup>2</sup> dissensio, Belinus rex,<sup>3</sup> filius Molmutii<sup>4</sup> prædicti, ad subducendum omne<sup>5</sup> ambiguum, quatuor regales vias omni privilegio munitas per insulam strui<sup>6</sup> fecit.

Fossa.

Quarum viarum prima et maxima Fossa dicitur, ab austro in boream extensa, quæ incipit ab angulo Cornubiæ apud Totenenesse,<sup>7</sup> et terminatur in fine Scotiæ apud Catenesse. *Ranulphus*. Verius tamen secundum alios incipit in Cornubia, tendensque<sup>8</sup> per Devoniam, Somersete, juxta Tettesbury,<sup>9</sup> supra Coteswold,<sup>10</sup> juxta Coventry,<sup>11</sup> usque Leircestre<sup>12</sup> procedit; indeque per vasta plana versus Neuwerk<sup>13</sup> diutius progrediens apud Lincolniam terminatur.<sup>14</sup> Secunda via principalis dicitur

Watling-  
strete.

Watlingstrete, tendens per transversum prioris viæ,

<sup>1</sup> Slightly abbreviated and transposed in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *est*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *rex*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Melimicii*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *ēē* [*esse*], B.; *omnem*, E.

<sup>6</sup> *sterni*, A.C.D., Gale.

<sup>7</sup> *Cotenesse* B. C.D. add:—"tendensque per Devoniam, Somersete, juxta Teokesbury, supra Coteswolde, juxta Coventriam, usque Leycestriam, per Lincol-

"niam usque Berwicum, tandem," &c.

<sup>8</sup> *que*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *Teukesbury*, B.; *Teokisbiri*, A.; *Tetteburium*, Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *Cotiswolde*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *Coventriam*, Gale.

<sup>12</sup> *Leycestre*, B.; *Leicestriam*, Gale.

<sup>13</sup> *Vulturum*, A.B.; *Newark*, Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *Ranulphus . . . terminatur*] om. C.D.

hiȝe weies, pat ledeþ to citees and townes, schulde haue þe fredom of socour; so pat eueriche man pat fley<sup>1</sup> to eny of þe pre for socour for<sup>2</sup> trespas pat he hadde i-doo schulde be safe<sup>3</sup> for pursuyt of alle<sup>4</sup> his enemyes. But afterward, for þe weyes were not so sette wiþ certeyn markes, þe weies were vncerteyn and strif was bygonne.<sup>5</sup> Perfore Belinus þe kyng, pat was þe forsaide Moluncius his sone, for to putte away al doute and stryf, made foure hiȝe kyng<sup>6</sup> weies i-priueleged [wiþ al priuelege]<sup>7</sup> and fredom, and þe weies streccheþ þoruȝ out<sup>8</sup> þe ilond. Þe firste and þe grettest of þe foure weies hatte Fosse, and streccheþ out of þe south in to þe norþe, and bygynneþ from þe corner of Cornewayle at Totteney<sup>9</sup> and endeþ in þe ende of Scotland at Catenesse. R. Neuerþeles more verreyliche, as oper men telleþ, Fosse bygynneþ in Cornewayle,<sup>10</sup> and passeþ forþ by Deuenshire and<sup>11</sup> by Somersete, and forþ bysides Tettebury vpon Codeswolde<sup>12</sup> bysides Couentre anon to Leycetre, and so forþ by wylde pleyne toward Newerk, and endeþ at Lyncolne. The secounde chief kynges hiȝe wey hatte Watlynge strete, and streccheþ þwart<sup>13</sup> ouer

TREVISA.

scholde ioye the immunitie of confute, so that noo man giltty fleenge to eny of these thre scholde not be borowede of eny man for his defence. And within a litelle space folowenge there was mouede a grete dissencion of the weies, in that there was noo certitude in theyme. Wherefore Belinus kyng, and son to Molimicius, causede iiij. hie weyes to be made thro Englonde, defendede and storede with grete priuelege to remove alle dubitacion. The firste of whom, and the moste, begynnethe in an angle in Cornewaile at Tottenesse, and is extendede in to the northe, and terminate in the ende of Scottelonde at Katenesse. R. Neuerthelesse that weye begynnethe more truly, after somme men, in Cornewayle, goenge by Deueshire and Somerseete, nye Tewkesbery on Cotteswolde, and from that coste to Couentre, and soe vn to Leirecestre, and so furthe thro a grete pleyne, is terminate at Lyncolne. The secounde principalle weye is callede Watlingestreete, goenge ouerthwarde the firste weye,

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> wente, Cx.<sup>2</sup> or for, Cx.<sup>3</sup> sauf, a.<sup>4</sup> al, a.<sup>5</sup> had, Cx. (who has some omissions.)<sup>6</sup> kynges, Cx. (not a.)<sup>7</sup> Added from a. and Cx. (who has priuelegys.)<sup>8</sup> thurgh, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Totenes, a.<sup>10</sup> at Totteney . . . in Cornewayle] om. Cx.<sup>11</sup> and] om. a. and Cx.<sup>12</sup> Coteswold, a.<sup>13</sup> þwat, a.; thwert, Cx.

viz.,<sup>1</sup> ab euro<sup>2</sup> austro in zephyrum septentrionalem. Incipit enim<sup>3</sup> a Dovoriam,<sup>4</sup> transiens per medium Cantiae<sup>5</sup> ultra Thamisiam<sup>6</sup> juxta Londoniam<sup>7</sup> ad occidentem Westmonasterii,<sup>8</sup> indeque procedit juxta<sup>9</sup> Sanctum Albanum ad occidentem per Dunstapulam,<sup>10</sup> per<sup>11</sup> Stretfordiam, per<sup>12</sup> Toucestre,<sup>13</sup> Wedunam<sup>13</sup> ad austrum Lilleburne,<sup>14</sup> per Atheristoun<sup>15</sup> usque ad montem Gilberti,<sup>16</sup> qui<sup>17</sup> in cō Wreken dicitur; deinde transcindit Sabrinam juxta Wrokcestre,<sup>19</sup> tendit ad Strettoun,<sup>20</sup> et inde per medium Walliae usque ad Cardigan in mari Hibernico terminatur.<sup>21</sup> Tertia via dicitur Ermingestrete,<sup>22</sup> tendens a zephyro in eorum;<sup>23</sup> et incipit a Menevia<sup>24</sup> in Westwallia, procedens usque<sup>25</sup> ad portum Hamonis,<sup>26</sup> quae modo dicitur Southamptoun.<sup>27</sup> Quarta via dicitur Rikenildstrete<sup>29</sup> tendens ab Africo<sup>30</sup> in boream vulturnalem, et incipit a Menevia praedicta, tenditque per<sup>31</sup> Wygorniam, per Wycum,<sup>32</sup> per Birmyncham,<sup>3</sup> Lichfield, Derby, Chesterfeld,<sup>34</sup> Eboracum, usque ad ostium Tynae<sup>35</sup> fluminis quod Tynmutha<sup>36</sup> dicitur.<sup>37</sup>

Ermynge-  
strete.

Rykenyld-  
strete.

<sup>1</sup> per . . . viz.] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> ab, ins. A.

<sup>3</sup> enim] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> sive *Dorobernia*, ins. C.D.,  
omitting *transiens*.

<sup>5</sup> *Cansica*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *Tamesium*, Gale; *ultra Tham-*  
*isiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Londonium*, Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *Westimonasterii*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *Westmonasterii . . . juxta*] per,  
C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Donestaple*, B.

<sup>11</sup> per] om. B.D.; *et*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *Toucestriam*, Gale.

<sup>13</sup> *Wedman*, Gale; *Wedoun*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *Lilleburum*, Gale.

<sup>15</sup> per *Atheristoun*] om. C.D.;  
*Atherston*, B.; *Atherscotiam*, Gale.

<sup>16</sup> *Monsilberti*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *quæ*, A.

<sup>18</sup> *mons*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *Wrokcestriam*, Gale.

<sup>20</sup> *Strettoniam*, Gale.

<sup>21</sup> Sentence slightly altered and  
abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *Ermingestrete*, C. (not D.),  
*Ermyngistrete*, Gale.

<sup>23</sup> *austrum*, C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *Mavonia*, Gale, and so below.

<sup>25</sup> *usque*] om. B.

<sup>26</sup> *Amonis*, A.

<sup>27</sup> *South Hamptonia*, Gale.

<sup>28</sup> Sentence abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>29</sup> *Rikenyldestrete*, B.; *Hikenil-*  
*strete*, C. (not D.)

<sup>30</sup> *Affico*, B.

<sup>31</sup> *Herford*, ins. C.D.

<sup>32</sup> *Wicum*, B.D., Gale; *Wicum et*  
*Birmingcham*, A.

<sup>33</sup> *Wyrnyngcham*, B.; *Birmyngham*,  
D., Gale.

<sup>34</sup> *Cestirfeld*, A.

<sup>35</sup> *Tyni*, B.

<sup>36</sup> *Tinemeta*, B.; *Tymmouthia*, A.;  
*Tynmutha*, D., Gale.

<sup>37</sup> Slightly altered in C.D. A few  
very trivial variations of ortho-  
graphy in the MSS. are omitted.

Fosse out of þe soup est in to þe norþ west, and bygyn-  
 nep at Douere, and passeþ by þe middel of Kent ouer  
 Themse bysides Londoun by West Westmynstre, and so forþ  
 by Seint Albon in þe west side by Donstaple,<sup>1</sup> by Stret-  
 forde,<sup>2</sup> by Toucetre, by Wedoun, by Soup Lilleburne, by  
 Atherestoun,<sup>3</sup> anon to Gilbertys hill, þat now hatte  
 Wrekene, and forþ by Seuarne, and passeþ by sides Wrok-  
 cestre, and þanne forþ to Strattoun, and forth by þe  
 myddel of Wales anon to Cartigan,<sup>4</sup> and endep at þe  
 Irische<sup>5</sup> see. Þe þridde way hatte Erimingestrete,<sup>6</sup> and  
 strecchep out of þe west northwest in to þe est souþest,  
 and byginneþ in Meneuia þat is in Seint Deuys<sup>7</sup> lond in  
 West Wales, and strecchep forþ anon to Soup Hamptoun. Þe  
 ferþe hatte Rykeneldes strete, and strecchep out of þe south  
 west in to þe norþ est, and bygynneþ in Meneuia in  
 West Wales, and strecchep forþ<sup>8</sup> by Worcestre, by Wycombe,  
 by Birmingham,<sup>9</sup> by Lichefeld, by Derby, by Chesterfilde, by  
 York, and so forþ anon to Tynemouþe.

TREVISA.

that is to say, from the sowthe este in to the northeweste; MS. HARL.  
 begynnege at Dover, and goenge thro the myddes of Kente 2261.  
 vn to Temmyse, nye to London at the weste of West-  
 mynster; goenge from thens to Seynte Albanes at the weste,  
 by Dunstaple, thro Stratforde, Toucestre, Wedunam, at  
 the sowthe of Lilleburne, thro Atheriston, to the hille of  
 Gilberte, that is callede now Wrekene; and from that hit  
 kyttethe ouer Seuarne nye to Worcestre, and so Stratton,  
 and from thens thro the myddes of Wales, and is endede  
 at Cardigan in the see of Yrlonde. The thridde principalle  
 way is callede Emyngestrete, whiche begynnethe at Seynte  
 Dauides in Westewales, goenge to Sowthe Hampton. The  
 iiij<sup>th</sup> principalle wey is callede Rikenilde<sup>10</sup> Strete, goenge  
 from Seynte Davides þro Worcestre, thro Birmicham, Liche-  
 felde, Derby, Chesterfelde, Yorke, and to the floode of Tyne  
 that is callede Tynnemowthe.

<sup>1</sup> *Donstable, a.*<sup>2</sup> *Stredfore, a.*<sup>3</sup> *Atherystoun, a.*<sup>4</sup> *Cardigan, a. ; Cardyhan, Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *Erisch, a.*<sup>6</sup> *Erimyngestrete, a. ; Erimynge-  
 strete, Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *Dauyes, a. ; David, Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *So a. ; for, MS. ; Cx. has some  
 omissions, and a few slight varia-  
 tions of orthography.*<sup>9</sup> *Birmingham, a.*<sup>10</sup> *Bikenilde, Harl. MS.*

## CAP XLVI.

*De famosis fluminibus.*<sup>1</sup>

*Alfridus.* Tria per Britanniam fluunt famosa flumina,<sup>2</sup> per quæ ex universis pene nationibus transmarina per totam insulam navigio feruntur commercia; videlicet<sup>3</sup> Thamisia, Sabrina, et Humbra,<sup>4</sup> quorum alveis per ampla ostia oceani marinum fleuma influens<sup>5</sup> et refluens tres insulæ principales provincias, quasi tria regna, disternat; id est, Loegriam, Cambriam, et<sup>6</sup> Northimbriam.<sup>7</sup> *Ranulphus.* Thamisia videtur componi a nominibus duorum fluminum, quæ<sup>8</sup> Thama et Isa.<sup>9</sup> Thama currens juxta Dorcestam<sup>10</sup> cadit in Isam; inde totus fluvius a suo exortu<sup>11</sup> usque ad mare orientale<sup>12</sup> dicitur Thamisia. <sup>13</sup>Nempe<sup>14</sup> juxta urbem Tettebury, quæ tribus milibus ad boream [Malmesburie ponitur, nascitur Thamisia ex fonticulo versus orientem decurrente]<sup>15</sup> ac plateam Fossæ transcidente, provinciasque Gloverniæ et Wyltoniæ disternante, qui secum alios fonticulos profluendo trahens apud Cirecestriam grandescit. Inde quoque versus Hamptonam tendens, per Oxoniam, per Walyngfordiam, per Radyngum, perque

<sup>1</sup> A., in place of the heading, has only "Alfredus."

<sup>2</sup> *Fluunt per Britanniam multa et ingentia flumina*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *sed præ cæteris tria famosa præcellunt fluentia, videlicet*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Humbria*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *fleuma influens*] fluens, B.; flumina, A.D.; flumen, Gale, which is probably right.

<sup>6</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Humbriam*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *sunt*, A.C., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *Ysa*, A.B.D., Gale; so throughout.

<sup>10</sup> *Dorcestriam*, A.B., Gale; *Dorcestre*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *ortu*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *orientale*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> From *Nempe . . . Merciorum* is abbreviated in C.D. as follows:—

"*Willelmus libro secundo Pontifium*.

"*ficum*. Thamisia citra Londoniam

"*octoginta miliaribus nascens*

"*juxta Teokesbury fonticulo fusus*

"*fluit per Oxoniam perque Londoniam*;

"*per quadraginta miliaria*

"*nomen suum retinet, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum Est-*

"*Saxonum quoque et Merciorum.*"

<sup>14</sup> *Nempe . . . Londoniam*] *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo*.

Thamisia juxta Teukesbury [Tookisburi, A.] fonticulo fusus fluit

per Oxoniam perque Londoniam,

A.B.

<sup>15</sup> Added from Gale. See also various readings.



*De famosis fluminibus.*

TREVISA.

*Capitulum quadragesimum sextum.*

*Alfridus.* Thre famous ryueres rennep þoruʒ Britayne ; by þe whiche þre ryueres marchaundis of byʒonde see comeþ in schippes into Bretayne wel nyh oute of alle manere naciouns and londes. Þe<sup>1</sup> þre ryueres beep Themse, Seuarne, and Humber. Þe see ebbep and flowep at þe moupes of pese<sup>2</sup> þre ryueres, and departep [þe]<sup>3</sup> þre prouinces of þe ilondes, as hit were þre kyngdoms, for to wynne ;<sup>4</sup> þe þre parties beep Loegria, Cambria, and Norphumbria, þat beep Wales, Engeland,<sup>5</sup> and Northumberlond. R.<sup>6</sup> [Dis]<sup>7</sup> name Temse<sup>8</sup> semep i-made oo name of tweye names of ryueres,<sup>9</sup> þat beep Tame and Ise. For þe ryuer Tame rennep bysides Dorchestre, and falleþ in Ise ; þefore al þe ryuer from þe first heede anon to þe est see hatte Temse. Temse bygynnep bysides Tettebury, þat is þre myle by norþ Malmesbury ; þere Temse springep of a welle and rennep estward, and passeþe þe Fosse, and departep Glowcetreschire and Wiltshire, and drawep wiþ hym meny oper welles stremes,<sup>10</sup> and wexep grete at Grecestre, and passeþ forþ þanne toward Bamptoun,<sup>11</sup> and so forþ by Oxenforde, by Walyngforde, by

*Of the famose floodes in hit.*MS. HARL.  
2261.*Capitulum quadragesimum sextum.*

*Alfridus.* Thre famose floodes floo thro Briteyne, to whom and thro whom marchandise commethe allemoste from alle naciones and regiones by schippe, whiche be Thamys, Seuarne, and Humbre, whiche waters departe three principale prouinces as thre realmes, that is to say, Englonde, Wales, and Northumbrelonde. R. Thamisia, whiche is callede Temmys, semethe to be compownde of ij. waters, whiche be callede Thamia and Isa. That streme callede Tame rennenge by Dorchestre fallethe in to Ise, þefore alle that water rennenge soe togedre is called Tammyse.

<sup>1</sup> *These*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *the*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>4</sup> *a sondre*, Cx., who probably read *atwynne*; the text seems corrupt.<sup>5</sup> *myddel Englonde, Wales*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *a.* omits R.<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.*; *these*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *Themse*, *a.*<sup>9</sup> *two riuers*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *and stremes*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *Hampton*, Cx.

Londoniam. *Willelmus*<sup>1</sup> *de Pontificibus, libro secundo.*<sup>2</sup> Apud Sandicum portum labitur in mare orientale, nomenque suum retinet ultra Londoniam per xl. miliaria, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum<sup>3</sup> et Estsaxonum,<sup>4</sup> Westsaxonum,<sup>5</sup> et Merciorum. *Ranulphus.* Sabrina fluvius Britanniae<sup>6</sup> dicitur Habren,<sup>7</sup> ab Abren, filia Estrildis, quam Guendolena regina submersit in ea, sed per corruptionem Latinae linguae<sup>8</sup> dicitur modo Sabrina. Oritur quoque in medio Walliae, transitque<sup>9</sup> primo versus orientem usque<sup>10</sup> Salopiam; inde vergit ad austrum usque ad Brugges,<sup>11</sup> Wygorniam, Gloucestriam,<sup>12</sup> et apud Bristoliam labitur in mare occidentale, fuitque terminus aliquando<sup>13</sup> Cambriae et Loegriae. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.*<sup>14</sup> Sabrina est alveus gurgite rapax, arte<sup>15</sup> piscosus, in quo<sup>16</sup> furor<sup>17</sup> voraginis seu potius vertiginis ab imo verrens<sup>18</sup> arenas conglobat in cumulum, ripasque<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A. adds generally *Malmesburiensis* in this and similar references.

<sup>2</sup> Extract transposed and altered in A.B.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Canteorum*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *etiam Saxonum*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Westsaxonum*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *Britannice*, A., which is better.

<sup>7</sup> *Abren*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *linguae*] om. C.D. (reading *Latine.*)

<sup>9</sup> *transit quoque*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *ad*, ins. A.

<sup>11</sup> *Brigges*, D.

<sup>12</sup> So written at length in A.; *Gloucestro*, E. It is often difficult to say whether the Latin or English form is intended, when the word is contracted. The Latin form has been preferred in the Latin text, when sanctioned by MS. authority. *Glavernum*, C.; *Gloverniam*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *aliquando*] added from A.B., Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *libro quarto*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *fluvius*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *arte . . . quo*] in eo, B.

<sup>17</sup> *in quo furor*] in furor, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *vergens*, C. (not D.)

<sup>19</sup> *que*] om. C.D.

Redyngge, and by Londoun. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo*.<sup>1</sup> At þe haven of Sandwhiche it falleþ into þe est see, and holdeþ his name fourty myle byþond Londoun, and departed somtyme<sup>2</sup> bytwene Kent and Essex, Westsex and Mercia ; þat is as hit were a greet deel of [myddel]<sup>3</sup> Engelonde. Seuarn is a ryuer of Bretayne, and hatte Habren [in Britoun, and haþ þat name Habren of Habren],<sup>4</sup> þat was Estrildes douzter. Guedolen þe quene drenched þis Habren þerynne ; þerfore þese<sup>5</sup> Bretouns cleped þe ryuer Habren after þe womman þat was adraynt [þerynne],<sup>6</sup> but by corrupte Latyn tonge hit hatte Sabryna, Seuarne on Englische. Seuarne byginneþ in þe myddel of Wales, and passeþ first toward þe est anon to Schroesbury, and þan torneþ souþward anon to Brigge-norþ, Wircetre, and Gloucetre, and falleþ in to þe west see besides Brystowe, and departed somtyme<sup>7</sup> bytwene Engeland and Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto*. Seuarne is swift of streme, fische craft is þere ynne, woodnesse of swolwyngge and of whirlyngge water castep vp and gadereþ to hepe grete hepes of grauel. Seuarne is ofte vppe<sup>8</sup> and

TREVISA.

*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo*. The water of Thamyse takege the originalle of hit nye to Tewkesbury of a lytelle welle, floethe by Oxforde, London, vn to the haven of Sandewiche, goenge þer in to the este see, reteynenge the nãme of hit paste London by xli<sup>th</sup> myles, whiche was somme tyme as a cause terminative of men of Kente, of Este Saxones, West Saxones, and of men of the Marches. Seuerne, a floode of Briteyne, is callede Habren, of Habren dozhter of Estrilde, whom a qwene callede Guendolena drownede in hit, but now hit is callede Sabrina, by the corrupcion of the langage of Latyn. That water of Seuerne begynnethe in the myddes of Wales, and goethe firste towarde the este vn to Schrewisbury, after that hit turnethe in to the sowthe to Brugges, Worcestre, and to Glocestre, fallenge in to the see at Bristowe, whiche was somme tyme a terme of Englonde and of Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto*. Seuerne is a perellous streme fulle of fische, in whom is such a movenge that hit turnethe vp the grauelle from the bothom of the water, and makethe theyme in a grete hepe

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> Reference added from Cx., who has *c.* (i.e. *capitulo*) for *libro*.

<sup>2</sup> *in som place*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx., who has *Britons*.

<sup>5</sup> *the*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *departeth in somme place*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *ofte aryseth*, Cx.

suas frequenter transcendit. *Ranulphus*. Humbra<sup>1</sup> quoque ab Humbro, rege Hunorum, in ea<sup>2</sup> submerso nomen sortita est,<sup>3</sup> primo ab australi parte Eboracensium<sup>4</sup> arcualiter<sup>5</sup> decurrens,<sup>6</sup> inde provinciam Lindisiensem, quæ olim ad Mercios spectabat, a reliqua plaga Northimbrana disternat; hanc autem<sup>7</sup> Humbram multum adaugent<sup>8</sup> flumen<sup>9</sup> Trent et Ouse<sup>10</sup> in eam cadens.

## CAP. XLVII.

*De antiquis urbibus.*

*Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* Regio Britanniae quondam erat civitatibus nobilissimis viginti octo<sup>11</sup> insignita,<sup>12</sup> præter castella innumera,<sup>13</sup> quæ et ipsa muris, turribus, portis, et serris erant instructa firmis-  
simis. *Alfridus*.<sup>14</sup> Civitatum nomina hæc erant: Caerlud, id est, Londonia;<sup>15</sup> Caerbranc,<sup>16</sup> id est, Eboracum; Caerkent, id est, Cantuaria; Caergorargon, id est, Wygornia; Caerlirion,<sup>17</sup> id est, Laircestria;<sup>18</sup> Caer-

<sup>1</sup> *Hambria*, B.D.<sup>2</sup> *co*, B.<sup>3</sup> *arcualiter sortita est nomen*, B.<sup>4</sup> *Eboracencium*] Eboraci, B.; urbis Eboraci, C.D.<sup>5</sup> *arcualiter*] om. B.<sup>6</sup> *decurrit*, C.D.; with other slight alterations.<sup>7</sup> *ante*, A.D.<sup>8</sup> *auget*, C.D.; *adauet*, B.<sup>9</sup> *fluvius*, C.D.<sup>10</sup> *et Ouse*] om. A.B.C.D.<sup>11</sup> *viginti octo* before *nobilissimis*, B.<sup>12</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.<sup>13</sup> *innumera*, B.<sup>14</sup> *Alfridus*] om. C.D.<sup>15</sup> *Londonium*, Gale; *Londoun*, D.<sup>16</sup> *Caerbrac*, D.<sup>17</sup> *Caerlion*, C.; *Caerleirion*, B.<sup>18</sup> *Leyrecestria*, B.; *Leircestria*, A.; *Leicestria*, D., Gale.

passep þe brynkes.<sup>1</sup> ð. Humber haþ þe name of Humber, TREVISA.  
 kyng of Hunes, for he was adreynt<sup>2</sup> þerynne, and rennep first  
 a crook out of þe south side of York, and þanne departep þe  
 prouince of Lyndeseye<sup>3</sup> þat longede somtyme to þe Merces  
 from þe oper contray Norþumberlond. Trent and Owse<sup>4</sup>  
 rennep<sup>5</sup> in to Humber, and makeþ the ryuer ful greet. *Tre-*  
*uisa.* Þe Merces were men as hit were of myddel Engeland,  
 as it is i-seide wip ynne.<sup>6</sup>

*De antiquis vrbibus. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.*

*Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* The kyngdom of Bre-  
 tayne [was]<sup>7</sup> somtyme i-hight<sup>8</sup> wip eiȝte and twenty noble  
 citees, wip oute welle<sup>9</sup> many castelles þat were wip walles, wip  
 toures, wip ȝates, wip barres, stalworþliche i-buld.<sup>10</sup> *Alfr.*<sup>11</sup>  
 Þese were þe names of þe citees :—Caerlud,<sup>12</sup> þat is, Londoun ;  
 Caerbrank, þat is, Ȝork ; Caerkent, þat is, Caunterbury ;  
 Caergorangan, þat is, Wirecestre ; Caerlirion þat is, Leycestre ;

oftetymes goenge ouer the brynkes of hit. Also that water MS. HARL.  
 callede Humbre toke the name of Humber kyng of Hunes 2261.  
 drownde in hit. Whiche renneþe<sup>13</sup> firste in the maner of  
 a bawe from the sowthe parte of Yorke to the prouince  
 Lindescience, whiche longede somme tyme to the Marches,  
 dothe diuide Northumbrelonde from that other plage ; whom  
 the floodes of Trente and of Ouse fallenge in to hit<sup>14</sup> cause  
 to be encreasede gretely thro them.

*Of the olde Cites in hit. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.*

*Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* The region of Briteyne  
 was made nowble somme tyme with xxiiij<sup>15</sup> nowble cites, ex-  
 cepte castelles innumerable, whiche were made with sure walles,  
 towres, ȝates, and lokkes. *Alfridus.* These were the names  
 of the cites :—Caerlud, London ; Caerbrane, Yorke ; Caerkente,  
 Caunterbery ; Caergorangan, Worcestre ; Caerlirion, Leirecestre ;

<sup>1</sup> *brymmes, a. ; ouerfloweth the  
 bankes, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *drowned, Cx., and so often.*

<sup>3</sup> *Lyndeseye, a.*

<sup>4</sup> *Ouse, a*

<sup>5</sup> *and rennep, MS. (not Cx.)*

<sup>6</sup> *as it shal be sayd here after, Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *Added from a. and Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *made fair, Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> *right, Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> *strongly buylded, Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> *Reference added from Cx.*

<sup>12</sup> *þat is Caerlud, MS. (not a. or  
 Cx.)*

<sup>13</sup> *Probably renenge is the true  
 reading.*

<sup>14</sup> *cause hit MS. (first hand.)*

clau, id est, Gloucestria; <sup>1</sup> Caercolden, <sup>2</sup> id est, Colcestria; Caerircei, <sup>3</sup> id est, Chichestria, quæ olim apud Saxones vocabatur Cissancestria; <sup>4</sup> Caerceri, <sup>5</sup> id est, Cirencestria; Caerguent, <sup>6</sup> id est, Wyntonia; Caergrant, <sup>7</sup> id est, Cantebrugge; <sup>8</sup> Caerleil, <sup>9</sup> id est, Lugubalia; <sup>10</sup> Caerperis, id est, Porcestria; <sup>11</sup> Caerdorm, <sup>12</sup> id est, Dorcestria; Caerludcoit, <sup>13</sup> id est, Lincolnia, <sup>14</sup> sive Lindocolinum; <sup>15</sup> Caermerthyn, <sup>16</sup> id est, urbs Merlini; Caersegment, id est, Silcestria, <sup>17</sup> quæ super Thamisis non longe a Radingo <sup>18</sup> ponitur; Caerthleon, <sup>19</sup> sive Caerlegion, <sup>20</sup> id est, Urbs Legionum, quæ post Legecestria dicebatur, sed modo Cestria dicitur; <sup>21</sup> Caerbadun, <sup>22</sup> id est, Bathonia, quæ aliquando urbs Achamanni <sup>23</sup> vocabatur; <sup>24</sup> Caerpaladour, <sup>25</sup> id est, Septonia, <sup>26</sup> quæ hodie vocatur <sup>27</sup> Shaftesbury. <sup>28</sup> *Ranulphus*. Sunt et alia urbium nomina in chronicis reperta ad intelligendum obscuriora, de quibus omnibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt dicenda. <sup>29</sup>

De Londonia.

*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo*. Londonia <sup>30</sup> est civitas super Thamisis flumen <sup>31</sup> posita, opima civium divitiis, <sup>32</sup> negotiatorum commerciis; unde fit ut quando ubique <sup>33</sup> in Anglia sit victualium caristia, <sup>34</sup> ibi minus <sup>35</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Glauccestria*, A.B.

<sup>2</sup> *Caergolden*, Gale.

<sup>3</sup> *Caerircey*, B.; *Caericey*, A.; *Caereri*, Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *Cesarschester*, B.; *Ciscancestria*, Gale.

<sup>5</sup> *Caereri*, Gale; *Caererii*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *Caerwen*, C.; *Caerwent*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *Caerirant*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *Cantebrigge*, A.; *Cantebrigia*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *Caerleyli*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Lugubralici*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Portchestre*, B.; *Porcestre*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Caerdori* (sic), D.

<sup>13</sup> *Caerludcoy*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Lidcolnum*, B.

<sup>15</sup> sive L.] om. B.; *Lindocolinum*, Gale.

<sup>16</sup> *Caermerlyn*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Selecestria*, Gale; *Silcestre*, A., and so perhaps in the other MSS. (*Silcestr*<sup>29</sup>). Higden's MSS. more commonly have the Latin form in words of this termination.

<sup>18</sup> *Redyngo*, B.; *Redingo*, A.

<sup>19</sup> *Caerleon*, C.; *Caerleoun* D.; *Caerlyon*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *Caerthlegion*, A.

<sup>21</sup> quæ . . . dicitur] om. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *Caerbadoun*, C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *Achamam*, B.

<sup>24</sup> quæ . . . vocabatur] om. C.D.

<sup>25</sup> *Caerpaladour*, Gale.

<sup>26</sup> *Septona*, B.

<sup>27</sup> vocatur after *Shaftesbury*, B.

<sup>28</sup> *Shaftisburia*, Gale; *Schaftisburi*, A.

<sup>29</sup> This passage is as follows in C.D. :—" De istarum urbium majoribus et quibusdam aliis ad cognoscendum obscurioribus hic per ordinem est dicendum."

<sup>30</sup> *London*, Gale.

<sup>31</sup> *fluviam*, C.D.

<sup>32</sup> *divitiarumque*, C.D.

<sup>33</sup> *ubique*] added from A.B.C.D., Gale.

<sup>34</sup> *carestia*, B.

<sup>35</sup> *unus*, B.

Caerclou,<sup>1</sup> pat is, Gloucestre ; Caercolden, pat is, Colchestre ; TREVISA.  
-----  
 Caerrey, pat is, Chichestre (Saxons cleped hit somtyme Cis-  
 sancestre) ; Caercery, pat is, Circetre ; Caerguent, pat is,  
 Wynchestre ; Caergrant, pat is, Cantebrigge ; Caerlile,<sup>2</sup> pat is,  
 Lugubalia and Carlile ; Caerperis, pat is, Porcetre ; Caerdrom,  
 pat is, Dorchestre ; Caerludcoit, pat is, Lyncolne<sup>3</sup> and  
 Lyncolyn ;<sup>4</sup> Caermerpyn, pat is, Merlyns citee ; Caersegent,  
 pat is, Silcetre,<sup>5</sup> and is vppon Tempse nouzt fer from  
 Redynge ; Caerthleon, pat hiȝte Caerlegioun also, and hiȝt  
 first Legecetre,<sup>6</sup> and now hatte Chestre ; Caerbadoun,<sup>7</sup> pat is,  
 Bape, and hiȝt somtyme Achamannus his citee ; Caerpaladour,  
 pat is, Septoun, pat now hatte Schaftisbury.<sup>8</sup> R̄. Opere  
 citees names beþ i-founde in cronicles ;<sup>9</sup> for vnderstondynge  
 of stories of al now arewe somewhat me schal telle.<sup>10</sup> *Wil-*  
*lelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* Londoun is a real and  
 a riche citee vppon Temse<sup>11</sup> of burgeys,<sup>12</sup> of richesse,<sup>13</sup> of  
 marchaundis, and of chaffare, and of marchaundise ; þefore  
 it is pat somtyme whanne derþe of vitailles is in al Enge-

Caerclaw, Gloucestre ; Caercolden, Colchestre ; Caerrece, Chi- MS. HARL.  
2261.  
-----  
 chestre, whiche was callede somme tyme by the Saxones Cis-  
 sanchestre ; Caerceri, Cirencestre, called now Ciciter, shortely ;  
 Caerwente, Wynchestre ; Caergraunte, Cambrige ; Ligubalia,  
 Caerliel ; Caerperis, Portechestre ; Caerdrom, Dorchestre ;  
 Caerludcoil, Lyncolne ; Caermerthyn, the cite of Merlyne ;  
 Caersegent, Silchestre, whiche [is] on Thamys nye to Radyngge ;  
 Caerthleon, other Caerlegion, that is the cite of legiones,  
 whiche was callede Legecestre, now callede Chestre ; Caer-  
 badon, Bathe, whiche was callede somme tyme the city of  
 Achamannus ; Caerpaladin, whiche, callede somme tyme Septon,  
 is callede now Shaftesbury. R̄. Also there be other names  
 of cites founde in cronicles obscure to the intellecte, of whom  
 we schalle say somme thyng by ordre. *Willelmus de Ponti-*  
*ficibus, libro secundo.* London is a nowble cite sette on  
 Thamys, hauenge in it nowble marchauntes, wherefore when  
 derthe off vitayles is in Englonde, thero thei be moste dere ;

<sup>1</sup> *Caerclon*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Caerleyl*, Cx. ; *Caerlile*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *Lyncolne and Lyncoln*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *Lyndecolyn*, Cx., which is better.<sup>5</sup> *Sisecetre*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Ligecetre*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *Cuerbathon*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *Chaftisbury*, a.<sup>9</sup> *cronykes*, a., Cx.<sup>10</sup> *of whom it shal folowe*, C.<sup>11</sup> *Temyse*, a.<sup>12</sup> *burgeyses*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *rychesses*, Cx.

vendatur,<sup>1</sup> aut forsan<sup>2</sup> vendentium compendio, aut ementium dispendio. *Gaufridus*.<sup>3</sup> Hanc urbem Brutus primus rex Britonum construxit,<sup>4</sup> primam Britanniae urbem in memoriam Trojæ amissæ, vocans eam Trinovantum,<sup>5</sup> id est, Trojam Novam.<sup>6</sup> Tandem rex Lud vocavit eam a<sup>7</sup> nomine suo<sup>8</sup> Caerlud. *Ranulphus*.<sup>9</sup> Quam ob causam indignati sunt Britones, sicut refert Gildas. Demum<sup>10</sup> Angli vocaverunt eam Lundene.<sup>11</sup> Postmodum Normanni<sup>12</sup> vocaverunt eam Loundres, quæ Latine dicitur<sup>13</sup> Londonia.<sup>14</sup>

De civitate  
Cantuariæ.

Cantuariam caput Cantiae construxit rex Rudhudibras,<sup>15</sup> filius regis Leill,<sup>16</sup> octavus,<sup>17</sup> quam vocavit Caerkent,<sup>18</sup> quæ postmodum ab Anglis dicta est<sup>19</sup> Dorobernia, quæ alia est a Dorovernia sive Dovorina supra litus maris Gallicani situata, et distante ab ista duodecim miliaribus Anglicanis; tandem Dorobernia dicta est Cantuaria.<sup>20</sup>

De Wyn-  
tonia.<sup>21</sup>

Wyntoniam urbem<sup>22</sup> constituit<sup>23</sup> rex Rudhudibras<sup>24</sup> prædictus,<sup>25</sup> quam vocavit Caerguent,<sup>26</sup> quæ postmodum ab Anglis<sup>27</sup> dicta est<sup>28</sup> Wenta sive Wynecestria,<sup>29</sup> a

<sup>1</sup> *venditur*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *forsitan*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Gaufridus*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *construxit*] added from A.B.C. D., Gale.

<sup>5</sup> *Trenonatum*, B.; *Troinovantum*, Gale.

<sup>6</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *a*] om. A.C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Lud*, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Tandem*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Londonie*, C.D.; *Lundine*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *et Francigenæ*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *sonat*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *quæ . . . Londonia*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Rudhudibrak*, B.; *Ruthudibras*, D., Gale.

<sup>16</sup> *Lull*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *regis Leill octavi*] Leil, Britonum rex octavus, C.D., which is better.

<sup>18</sup> *Kaerkent*, A.

<sup>19</sup> *est*] om. B.

<sup>20</sup> *quæ alia—Cantuaria*]. Thus in C.D.: — “Quidam tamen adhuc contendunt Doroberniam esse proprium nomen urbis Doroverniæ seu Dovorinæ quæ super Gallicanum fretum situata est; accommodum transfretandi portum præbet, et distat a Cantuaria duodecim miliaribus.”—C.D.

<sup>21</sup> In C.D. the order of the sections is changed.

<sup>22</sup> *civitatem*, B.

<sup>23</sup> *construxit*, A.B.C.D., Gale.

<sup>24</sup> *Rudhudibrac*, B.

<sup>25</sup> *prædictus*] om. B..

<sup>26</sup> *Cuerkent*, Gale; *Cuerwent*, D.

<sup>27</sup> *ab Anglis*] om. B.; Anglicis, A.

<sup>28</sup> *est*] om. B.

<sup>29</sup> *Wuucestria*, B.



lond<sup>1</sup> aboute, þere is þe lasse i-solde; vpon caas for avaun-  
tage of silleres, oper for disanauntage of beggers. *Gaufri-* TREVISA.  
*duſ.* Bruyt,<sup>2</sup> þe firſte kyng of Bretouns, bulde and arecede<sup>3</sup>  
þis citee Londoun, þe firſte citee of Bretayne, in mynde of  
þe citee of Troye, þat was loſt;<sup>4</sup> and cleped hit Troynewip<sup>5</sup>  
and Trinouantum, þat is, Newe Troye. Afterward kyng Lud  
cleped hit Caerlud after his owne name; þefore Bretouns  
hadde greet indignacioun, as Gildas telleþ. Afterward  
Engliſche men cleped þe citee Londoun, and ȝit after  
þat Normans cleped hit Loundres, and hatte in Latyn  
Londonia. Rudhudibras, kyng Leyl his ſone, was þe eiȝtþe  
[kyng]<sup>6</sup> of Bretouns; he bulde Caunterbury þe chief citee  
of Kent, and cleped hit Caerkent. Afterward Engliſche men  
cleped hit Dorobernia, þat is oper<sup>7</sup> þan þilke Douer þat is  
vpon þe clif of þe Frenſche ſee, þat<sup>8</sup> is fro þis Douer xij.<sup>9</sup>  
Engliſche myle.<sup>10</sup> Afterward þis Dorobernia was and is  
i-cleped Caunterbury. Þe ſame kyng Rudhudibras bulde  
Wyncheſtre and cleped hit [Caerguet, and afterward Engliſch  
men cleped hit]<sup>11</sup> Went and Wyncheſtre after þe name of

and the cauſe is perauenture other thro the compendiuſeneſ MS. HARL.  
of ſellers, other elles thro the diſpendy of byers. *Gaufridus.* 2261.  
Brute, the firſte kyng of Briteyne, made that cite of  
London as the firſte and principalle cite of Briteyne in to  
the memorye of Troye y-loſte, callenge hit Trinouantum,  
that is to ſaye Newe Troye. After that kyng Lud  
called hit after his name, Kaerlud, wherefore the Britones  
hadde indignacion, as Gildas reherſethe, and at the laſte  
Engliſche men called hit London. Kyng Ruthudibras,  
the ſon of kyng Leille, edifiede Caunterbury, the princi-  
palle cite in Kente, whom he callede Caerkente, whiche was  
callede afterwarde of Engliſche men Dorobernia; for there  
is an other towne in that cuntre that is callede Douernia, f. 65. a.  
other elles Douoria, whiche is Dover, ſette on the brynke  
of the ſee of Fraunce; whiche be a ſundre by xij. myles  
of Engliſche accomptenge, and Dorobernia was callede at  
the laſte Caunterbury. Kyng Ruthudibras aforeſeide  
made the cite of Wyncheſtre, whom he callede Caerwente,  
whiche was callede afterwarde Wenta by Engliſche men,

<sup>1</sup> After *Englond* in Cx. thus:—  
*comynly at London it is beſt cheep  
by cauſe of the byars and ſellars  
that ben at London.*

<sup>2</sup> *Bruyt* is, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>3</sup> *edefyed*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *deſtroyed*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Troynewyth*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Added from Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *ooþer*, a.

<sup>8</sup> *and*, a.

<sup>9</sup> *twelue*, a. (in letters).

<sup>10</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>11</sup> Added from a and Cx., who  
has *Caerguent*.

quodam Wyne Anglo ibidem pontificante,<sup>1</sup> cui tota Westsaxonica plaga subjecta fuerat.<sup>2</sup> Idem quoque<sup>3</sup> rex fecit urbem Paladour, id est, Septoniam, ubi dicunt Britones aquilam quondam prophetasse.<sup>4</sup>

De Batho-  
nia.

Bathoniam urbem sive Badonem construxit rex Britonum nonus, Bladud, nigromanticus, filius Leill;<sup>5</sup> quam ex nomine suo vocavit<sup>6</sup> Caerbadun,<sup>7</sup> quæ<sup>8</sup> post<sup>9</sup> ab Anglis vocata est Achamannia, id est, urbs Achamanni, et tandem dicta<sup>10</sup> Bathonia. *Willelmus de Pontificibus*,<sup>11</sup> libro secundo. In hac urbe calidarum balnearum<sup>12</sup> latex<sup>13</sup> emergens auctorem Julium Cæsarem habere<sup>14</sup> creditur. *Ranulphus*.<sup>15</sup> Sed Gaufridus<sup>16</sup> Monemutensis in suo Britannico libro asserit regem Bladud<sup>17</sup> hujus rei fuisse auctorem.<sup>18</sup> Forsan Willelmus,<sup>19</sup> qui Britannicum librum<sup>20</sup> non viderat, ista ex aliorum relatu aut ex propria<sup>21</sup> conjectura, sicut et quædam alia, minus scripsit exquisite. Proinde videtur magis verisimile quod licet rex Bladud hanc urbem construxerit,<sup>22</sup> non propter hoc<sup>23</sup> ipse aut Julius<sup>24</sup> hæc calida balnea construxerit; immo quod aqua originalis transiens per venas sulphureas, quibus natu-

<sup>1</sup> *pontifice*, B.

<sup>2</sup> Abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *quoque*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> The paragraph ends thus in C.D.:—"quæ nunc Septonia sive Schaftesbury nuncupatur, in provincia Dorsetensi in collis vertice situata, ubi tradunt Britones aquilam quondam vaticinia edidisse."

<sup>5</sup> *Beil*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *vocavit*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *Caerbadoun*, B.C.

<sup>8</sup> *hæc*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *postmodum*, A.D.

<sup>10</sup> *est*, added in A.B.D., Gale.

<sup>11</sup> *de Pontificibus*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *calidorum balnearum*, Gale.

<sup>13</sup> *lucus*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *habuisse*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Galfridus*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *nigromanticum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *artificem*, C.

<sup>19</sup> *Malmesburiensis*, ins. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> The remainder of this section is abbreviated in C.D., thus: "nquam inspexerat, sed ex aliorum relatu seu ex propria conjectura nonnulla crediderat; in hac re, sicut plerisque aliis, deceptus fuerat." (D. omits *crediderat*.)

<sup>21</sup> *propria*] So A.B., Gale; *prima*, E.

<sup>22</sup> *construxit*, B.

<sup>23</sup> *hoc*] om. A.

<sup>24</sup> *Cæsar*, ins. B.

oo Wyne<sup>1</sup> an Engliche man,<sup>2</sup> þat was bisschop pere. Al West Saxon was soget to hym: þe same kyng bulde Paladour, þat is, Septoun, þat now hatte Chestesbury.<sup>3</sup> Britouns telleþ þat an egle<sup>4</sup> prophecied pere somtyme. Bladud, Leil his sone, a nygromanser, was þe nynþe kyng of Bretouns; he bulde Bape, and cleped hit Caerbadoun. Engliche men cleped hit afterward Achamannys<sup>5</sup> citee, but at þe laste he is i-cleped Bathonia, þat is, Bape. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* In þis citee wellep vp and springeþ hote bapes, and me weneþ þat Iulius Cesar made pere suche bathes. R. But Gaufre Monemutensis, in his Brittische<sup>6</sup> booke, seip þat Bladud made þilke bathes. Vpon caas<sup>7</sup> William, þat<sup>8</sup> hadde nouzt i-seie þat Brittische booke, wroot so by tellynge of opere men, oper<sup>9</sup> by his owne gessynge, as he wroot oper þinges somdel vnwiseliche.<sup>10</sup> Þerfore hit semeþ more soþeliche þat Bladud made<sup>11</sup> nouzt þe hote bathes, noþer Iulius Cesar dede suche a dede, þey Bladud bulde and made þe citee; but hit accordeþ better to kyndeliche resoun, þat þe water renneþ vnder<sup>12</sup> erþe by

TREVISIA.

or Wynchestre, after an Engliche man callede Wyne beenge bischoppe there, to whom alle the weste plage of Saxones was subiecte. Also the same kyng made that cite callede Paladur, and nowe Shaftesbury, where men of Briteyne say an egle to have propheciede somme tyme. Bladud, a nigromancier, and the ix<sup>the</sup> kyng of Briteyne, son of kyng Leille, made the cite of Bathe, whom he callede after his propre name Caerbadun, and afterwarde of Engliche men Achamannia, and at laste Bathonia, other elles in Engliche Bathe. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* In that cite be bathes, of whom Iulius Cesar was seide to be auctor. R. But Gaufridus Monemetensis seithe in his booke of Briteyne that kyng Bladud was the firste auctor of theyme; and peraventure William, that see not the booke of Briteyne, seide so by the rehersenge of other men, other elles of his propre coniecture, lyke as he did wryte mony other thinges. Neverthelessse, thauzhe kyng Bladud made that cite of Bathe, the bathes scholde seme to be cause<sup>13</sup> that the water ren-

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> one Wyne, Cx.<sup>2</sup> MS. adds: *propheciede þere somtyme.* See below.<sup>3</sup> Shaftesbury, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Engliche man*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *Athamannes*, Cx. (wrongly, but misled by the identity of *c* and *t* in MSS.)<sup>6</sup> *Britons*, Cx.; and so below.<sup>7</sup> *by cause that*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> [þat] om. Cx., who does not understand the sense of the sentence.<sup>9</sup> *or, a.*<sup>10</sup> *not best aduysedly*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *made hit*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)<sup>12</sup> *in the*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *causede*, Harl. MS.

raliter calefacta<sup>1</sup> ebulliat, in urbe illa fervidas scaturigines per loca varia,<sup>2</sup> ubi scabredines<sup>3</sup> et putredines sæpe purgantur.

De Gloucestria.

Gloucestriam, sive Gloverniam, seu Claudiocestriam<sup>4</sup> construxit Claudius Cæsar in nuptiis filiae suæ, quam copulavit regi Britonum Arvirago. Hæc urbs dicta<sup>5</sup> est primo a Britonibus Caerelau a Claudio, sed<sup>6</sup> post<sup>7</sup> dicta est Gloucestria,<sup>8</sup> a Glora, duce regionis illius, et ponitur<sup>9</sup> supra Sabrinum mare<sup>10</sup> in confinio Loegriæ et Cambriæ.<sup>11</sup>

De Salopia.

Salopia urbs est in confinio<sup>12</sup> Cambriæ et Angliæ, super Sabrinam in vertice collis posita, quæ Anglice vocatur Shrobbesbury<sup>13</sup> a dumis et fruticibus in illo colle aliquando<sup>14</sup> crescentibus sic dicta, Britannice vero vocabatur Penguern, quod sonat caput abietis; et fuit aliquando caput Powisiæ<sup>15</sup> terræ, quæ se extendit per transversum mediæ Walliæ usque ad mare Hibernicum.<sup>16</sup>

De Not-hyngham.

Nothyngham<sup>17</sup> ponitur super flumen Trent,<sup>18</sup> olim<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> So A.B.; *calescam* (for *calescens* ?), E.

<sup>2</sup> *effundat*, or some such word, is required to complete the sense.

<sup>3</sup> *scabedines*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *seu Claudiocestriam*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *vocata*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *scilicet*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *postea*, A.; *postmodum*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Glaucestr*<sup>9</sup>, A.; *Gloucestrc*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *poniturque*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *mare*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *inter confinia*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Schrobbisburi*, A.; *Schrovesbury*, C.; *Shrevesbury*, B.; *Schrobbesburia*, Gale; *Schrobbusbury*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *aliquando* before *in*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *Powise*, A.

<sup>16</sup> Abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Notingham*, A., Gale.

<sup>18</sup> *Trente*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *olim*] om. B.; *sed olim*, C.D.

veynes of brymstone,<sup>1</sup> and so is i-hatte<sup>2</sup> kyndeliche in pat TREVISIA.  
 cours, and springeþ vp in dyuers places of þe citee. And so  
 pere beþ hote bathes, þat wascheþ of teteres,<sup>3</sup> oper sores  
 and scabbes. *Trevisa.* Þey me myzt by craft make hote  
 bathes for to dure long i-now, þis accordeþ wel to resoun and  
 to filosofie þat treteþ of hote welles and bapes, þat beþ in  
 dyuerse londes, þeiþ þe water of þis bathe be more troubyly  
 and heuyere of smelle and of sauour þan opere hote bathes  
 þat I haue i-seie at Akene<sup>4</sup> in Almayne, and at Egges in  
 Sauoy. [Þe bapes in Egges]<sup>5</sup> beþ as feire and as clere as  
 eny cold welle stream. I haue assaied, and i-bathed þerynne.<sup>6</sup>  
 R. Claudius Cesar maried his douzter to Aruiragus, kyng of  
 Britouns. Þis Claudius Cesar bulde Gloucetre in þe weddyng  
 of his douzter; Britouns cleped þis citee first after Claudius  
 his name, but afterward it was i-cleped Glowcetre, after oon  
 Glora, þat was duke of þat contray, and stondeþ vpon  
 Seuarn in þe marche of Engelond and of Wales. Schroys-  
 bury is a citee vpon Seuarn in þe marche of Engelond and  
 of Wales, i-sette vpon þe coppe<sup>7</sup> of an hille, and hatte  
 Schroisbury of schrobbes and fruyt þat grewe somtyme on  
 þat hille. Britouns cleped hit somtyme Pengwern, þat is, þe  
 heed of a faire tree. Schroysbury was somtyme þe hede of  
 Powyse,<sup>8</sup> þat streccheþ forþ thwart ouer þe myddel of Wales  
 anon to þe<sup>9</sup> Irische see. Notyngham stondeþ vpon Trent,

nenge there thro the veynes of sulphur is made hote natu- MS. HARL.  
 rally by that whiche causethe those bathes to be hote, 2261.  
 where scabbes and corrupcion be healede oftetyms. Claudius  
 Cesar made that cite callede Gloucestre, other Claudiocestre,  
 in the tyme of weddenge of his dozhter, whom he mariede  
 to Aruiragus kyng of Britones. That cite was callede  
 firste of Britones Caerclau, by Claudius afterwarde callede  
 Gloucestre, of Glora duke of that region, whiche is sette  
 ouer the water of Seuerne in costes of Englonde and of  
 Wales. Shrewsbury is a cite sette in the toppe of an hille  
 on Seuerne, in the costes of Englonde and of Wales,  
 callede somme tyme Schrobbsbury, of busches and trees  
 with frute groenge in that hille somme tyme, whiche is f. 65. b.  
 callede also Pengwern, whiche sowndethe as the hedde of  
 a firre tre, whiche was also somme tyme the principalle  
 place of Powislonde, extendenge hit ouerthwarde the  
 myddes of Wales vn to the see of Yrlonde. Notyngham

<sup>1</sup> Cx. adds, and *sulphure.*

<sup>2</sup> *made hote*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *tetres, a.*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Okene, a.*; *Akon*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Added from *a.*; *whiche been*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *toppe*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Powisy, a.*

<sup>9</sup> *þe*] om. *a.*

vocabatur Snotingham, quod sonat mansio spelun-  
carum ; quas Dani, ut ferunt, ibidem perendinantes  
excavarunt desub saxo.<sup>1</sup>

De Lin-  
colnia.

Lincolnia caput est provinciæ Lyndisiæ ;<sup>2</sup> primo  
vocabatur Caerludcoit, deinde Lindecolinum.<sup>3</sup> A quo  
primo constructa fuerit incertum habetur, nisi forsā<sup>4</sup>  
rex Lud eam fundaverit; quod etiam nominis inter-  
pretatio videtur sonare, nam Britannice Caer sonat *civi-*  
*tatem*, Coit<sup>5</sup> *silvam*; inde<sup>6</sup> videtur dici Caerludcoit  
quasi urbs nemorosa<sup>7</sup> Lud.<sup>8</sup>

De Leyr-  
cestria.

Leicestriam construxit rex Britonum decimus, Leir,  
filius Bladud, quasi in meditullio Loegriæ, super annem  
Soram et super Fossam viam regalem.<sup>9</sup>

#### CAP. XLVIII.

De  
Eboraco.

*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* Eboracum<sup>10</sup>  
urbs est ampla ex utraque parte amnis Ouse constructa,  
Romanæ elegantiae præferens indicium,<sup>11</sup> quousque rex  
Angliæ Conquæstor Willelmus illam cum adjacente

<sup>1</sup> *quas . . . saxo*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Lindisey*, A.; *Lindeseye*, B.;  
*Lindeseie*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *Lindcolun*, B.; *Lindecolnium*,  
Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *forsan*] forte, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Coith*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *inde*] om. A.

<sup>7</sup> *Lud*] om. A.

<sup>8</sup> *vel urbs nemoris Lud*, ins. C.  
Sentence otherwise slightly abbre-  
viated in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> Slightly transposed and abbre-  
viated in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Eboracus*, B.D., Gale.

<sup>11</sup> *judicium*, Gale.

and somtyme heet Snotyngham, þat is, þe woning of dennes, for þe Danes dwelled þere somtyme, and were i-logged,<sup>1</sup> as me telleþ, and i-digged<sup>2</sup> dennes and caues vnder hard rokkes and stones.<sup>3</sup> R. Lyncolne is chief of þe prouince<sup>4</sup> of Lyndeseie, and heet somtyme Caerludcoit, and afterward Lyndecolyn. Hit is vncerteyn who bulde first þis citee, but 3if it were kyng Lud. And so hit semeþ by menyng of þe name; for caer is Brittisshe, and is to menyng *a citee*; coit is *a wode*. And so hit semeþ þat Caerludcoit is to menyng Lud his wode toun.<sup>5</sup> Kyng Leyre was Bladud his sone, and bulde Leycestre, as it were in myddel Engelond, vppon þe ryuer [Sor]<sup>6</sup> and vppon Fos þe kynges hiȝe weie.<sup>7</sup>

TREVISA.

*Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.*

*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* York is a grete citee in eiper side of þe water of Ouse, þat semed as faire as Rome, forto þat<sup>8</sup> the kyng of Engelond William Conquerour hadde wiþ brennyng of<sup>9</sup> fuyre defouled it and þe contrey

is sette on the water of Trente, callede somme tyme Snotyngham, that sowndethe the mansion of dennes, whom the Danes made there of ston as hit is seide. Lincolne is the chiefe place of the province of Lyndesey, callede firste Caerludcoite, after that Lincolne; the edificacion of whiche cite is not to be hade in certitude withowte that kyng Ludde made hit, as the interpretacion of the name semethe to sownde, for caer, after the langage of Britones, sowndethe *a cite*, and coyte, *a woode*, wherefore Caerludcoit is seide as the cite fulle of wood of Ludd. Leir, the x<sup>th</sup>e kyng of Britones, son to kyng Bladud, made the cite of Leirestre as in the mydelle place of Englonde on the water of Sore, and on the hieweye and diche of the kyng.

MS. HARL.

2261.

*Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.*

*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* The cite of Yorke is large, and edifiede on either side of Owse, as after the cite of Rome, vn tulle that William Conquerour deformede hit thro

<sup>1</sup> *i-logged*, a.; clause omitted in Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *i-digged*] digged, a.

<sup>3</sup> Cx. adds, *and dwellyd there*.

<sup>4</sup> So a. and Cx.; *prophecie*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Lud is wolde his toun*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> Added from Cx., who however has *Sos* (typ. error?).

<sup>7</sup> *hiȝ way*, a.

<sup>8</sup> *unto the tyme that*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *and*, a., Cx.

regione incendio deformaret; ita ut, si modo<sup>1</sup> eam viderit peregrinus, ingemiscat; si vetus incola, non agnoscat. *Gaufridus*. Hanc urbem construxit Ebrancus rex Britonum quintus, vocans eam ex<sup>2</sup> nomine suo Caerbrank.<sup>3</sup> Fecit quoque idem rex alias duas urbes insignes,<sup>4</sup> unam in Albania, quæ dicitur Edenburgh;<sup>5</sup> aliam versus Albaniam<sup>6</sup> in finibus Loegriæ, quæ dicitur Alcluid.<sup>7</sup> *Ranulphus*. Est autem Edenburghum,<sup>8</sup> urbs<sup>9</sup> in Pictorum terra inter flumen Twydi<sup>10</sup> et mare Scoticum posita,<sup>11</sup> quæ quondam vocabatur<sup>12</sup> castrum puellarum. Postea<sup>13</sup> tamen dicta est Edenburgh<sup>14</sup> ab Edan, rege Pictorum, qui ibidem<sup>15</sup> regnavit tempore Egfridi regis Northimbrorum.<sup>16 17</sup>

Alcluit,<sup>18</sup> urbs quondam insignis, nunc cunctis Angligenis<sup>19</sup> pene est incognita;<sup>20</sup> nam<sup>21</sup> sub tempore Britonum, Pictorum, et Anglorum usque adventum Dacorum urbs erat celebris.<sup>22</sup> Tandem circa annum gratiæ DCCCLXX. vastantibus Danis<sup>23</sup> partes North-

<sup>1</sup> nunc, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> ex] om. C.

<sup>3</sup> *Caerbranc*, A.B.; *Caerbrac*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *urbes insignes*] civitates, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> So E. apparently, which has *Edenburgh*; *Edenbrugh*, B.; *Edenburgh*, A.; *Endenburgh*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *versus Albaniam*] in borealibus, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Alcluyt*, B.; *Alcluit*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *Ranulphus* . . . *Edenburghum*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *in Albania ad orientalem plagam*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Twede*, C.D.; *Twidi*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *situata*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *dicebatur*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *Postmodum*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *Edenborwh*, A.

<sup>15</sup> *ibi*. B.

<sup>16</sup> *Northanhimbrorum*, B.

<sup>17</sup> C.D., which otherwise slightly vary the section, add: *sicut patet in Historia Bedæ*.

<sup>18</sup> *Alcluit*, B.; *Alcluid*, D, Gale.

<sup>19</sup> *exceptis paucis historicis*, ins. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *ignota*, A.B., Gale.

<sup>21</sup> *erat enim*, C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *celebris et famosa*, C.D.

<sup>23</sup> So MSS. and Gale; though *Dacorum* precedes.



aboute ; so þat a pilgrym wolde now wepe, and he seigh<sup>1</sup> it, TREVISA.  
 ȝif he knewe hit ar he wente out.<sup>2</sup> *Gaufridus.* Ebrankus,  
 þe fifte kyng of Britouns, bulde York,<sup>3</sup> and cleped hit after  
 his owne name Caerbrank.<sup>4</sup> He bulde also tweie opere noble  
 citees, [one]<sup>5</sup> in Scotlond þat hatte Edynborgh ;<sup>6</sup> and  
 anoper toward Scotlond, in þe endes of Engeland, þat hatte  
 Alclud.<sup>7</sup> R̄. Edyngboruȝ is a citee in þe lond of Pictes by-  
 twene þe ryuere of Twyde and þe Scottische see, and heet  
 somtyme þe Castelle of Maydens, and was i-cleped aftir-  
 ward Edyngborgh,<sup>8</sup> of Edan, kyng of Pictes, þat regned  
 pere ynne Egfrides tyme, kyng of Norphumberlond. Alcluid  
 was somtyme a noble citee, and is now wel nyh vnknowe to  
 alle Englische men. [For under þe Britouns and Pictes and  
 Englisshe men]<sup>9</sup> it was a noble citee anon to þe comyng of  
 þe Danes ; but afterward aboute þe ȝere of oure Lord eizte  
 hondred þre score and ten it was destroyed, whan þe Danes  
 destroyed þe cuntrees<sup>10</sup> of Norphumberlond. But in what

brennenge ; and if a man scholde see hit now, considrenge what MS. HARL.  
 that cite was a fore tyme, hit scholde move hym to be soory. 2261.  
*Gaufridus.* Ebrancus, the v<sup>th</sup> kyng of Briteyne, made that  
 cite of Yorke, whom he namede Caerbranc. Also that same  
 kyng made ij. other nowble cites ; oone was in Scottelonde,  
 whiche is callede Edengborouȝh, that other cite was in the  
 costes of Englonde, towarde Scottelonde, whiche was callede  
 Alcluid. R̄. Edengborouȝh is a cite in the londe of  
 Pictes, betweene the water of Twide and the Scottes see,  
 whiche was callede somme tyme the Castelle of Maidenens,  
 after that it was callede Edyngborough, of Edan kyng of  
 Pictes, whiche reignede there in the tyme of Egfride  
 kyng of Northumbrelonde. Alcluid was somme tyme a  
 nowble cite, now beenge vnknowen allemoste of alle  
 Englische men, whiche was a nowble cite in the tyme of  
 Britones, of Pictes, vn to the commenge of Danes in to this  
 londe of Englonde ; and at the laste, abowte the yere of f. 66. a.  
 grace ix<sup>c</sup>. lxx<sup>ti</sup> yere, the Danes, destroyenge the costes of  
 Northumbrelonde, destroyed that cite of Alcluid. Of

<sup>1</sup> sawe, Cx., and so usually.  
<sup>2</sup> ar he wente out] to fore, Cx.  
<sup>3</sup> ȝork, a.  
<sup>4</sup> Caerebrank, a.  
<sup>5</sup> Added from Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Edenburgh, a. ; and so below.  
<sup>7</sup> Alcluid, a. ; Alclind, Cx.  
<sup>8</sup> Edynborough, a.  
<sup>9</sup> Added from a. and Cx.  
<sup>10</sup> contrayes, a.

imbranas destructa est et<sup>1</sup> illa.<sup>2</sup> Quo autem in loco Britanniae illa fuerat constructa,<sup>3</sup> varii sunt auctores. Nam Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, dicit illam fuisse constructam ad occidentalem sinum illius marini brachii, quod olim separabat Pictos a Britannis; ubi vallum Severi, sive murus ille famosus, ad occidentem terminatur. Et sic videtur, secundum ipsum,<sup>4</sup> quod non multum distet<sup>5</sup> a Lugubalia,<sup>6</sup> id est, Caerliel;<sup>7</sup> quia et ipsa ad finem illius muri ponitur. Volunt alii historici quod urbs Alcluit<sup>8</sup> sit illa, quae modo vocatur Aldeburgh,<sup>9</sup> quod sonat villam veterem, quae ponitur juxta flumen Ouse, non longe a Burgebrigge,<sup>10</sup> quae distat ab Eboraco xv. miliaribus ad occidentem; et hoc videtur probari<sup>11</sup> ex dictis Gaufridi de gestis Britonum, qui scribit<sup>12</sup> Elidurum regem Britonum, dum apud Alcluit<sup>13</sup> causa venatici solatii perendinaret, reperisse fratrem suum Archgallonem in vicino nemore Calaterio<sup>14</sup> aberrantem. Constat autem quod nemus Calaterium,<sup>15</sup> quod Anglice Caltrees<sup>16</sup> dicitur, attingit

<sup>1</sup> *urbs*, ins. C.

<sup>2</sup> C.D. add: *ut murorum reliquiae vix patescant.* After this C.D. read as follows:— "*Beda, libro primo, capitulo quadragesimo primo.* Sonat autem Alcluid Britannice idem quam *petra cluid*; poniturque urbs illa juxta flumen nominis illius quod dicitur Clud ad occidentalem sinum illius marini brachii quod olim separabat Pictos a Britannis. Videtur hodie quod fluvius ille dictus olim Cluid modo vocetur Sulwach, qui fluit in illud marinum brachium praedictum, quod ab occidente distinguit hodie Scotos ab Anglis. Habuitque urbs Alcluid non longe a se nemus Calatherium [Caletherum, D.], sicut patet in vita Britannici regis Eliduri. Quod quidem nemus vocatur hodie Ingelwode, quod sonant *silva Anglorum*; nemus quidem prolixum incipiens ad occidentem ab urbe Lugubaliae, quae [quod, D.] est Caerleill, se extendit in immensum versus

" orientem, habens ab austro murum illum famosum Romani operis quod Thurlewall dicitur, ab aquilone vero marinum brachium praedictum; et sic videtur quod urbs illa Alclud posita fuerat in borealibus finibus Anglorum non longe ab urbe Lugubaliae. Inde decepti sunt multi; putantes Alcluid, cum non appareret, esse hodie urbem Lugubaliae."

<sup>3</sup> *loco in Britannia sita fuerit*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *secundum ipse (sic) videtur*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *distat*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *Lugubralia*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Carliel*, A.; *Kaerleil*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Acluit*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Aldburgh*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Burghbrig*, B.; *Burghbrigge*, A., Gale.

<sup>11</sup> *p<sup>o</sup>re*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *scripsit*, A.

<sup>13</sup> *urbem Alcluid*, Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *Collaterio*, A. (which has *oberrantem*), B.

<sup>15</sup> *quod . . . Calaterium*] *Collaterium nemus*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *So A.B., Gale; Saltrees*, E.

place of Britayne þat citee Alcluid was i-bulde, auctors TREVISA.  
 telleþ dyuersliche. Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo,  
 seiþ þat it was i-buld by west þat arme of þe see þat de-  
 parted<sup>1</sup> bytwene Pictes and Britouns somtyme. Þere  
 Seuerus his famous [walle]<sup>2</sup> endep westward: and so it  
 semeþ by hym, þat [hit]<sup>3</sup> is nouzt fer from Caerlel, for þat  
 cite is i-sette at þe ende of þe<sup>4</sup> wal. Opere writers of  
 stories writeþ þat þe citee Alcluid is þat citee þat now hatte  
 A[1]deburghe,<sup>5</sup> þat is to menynge, an olde toun, and stondeþ  
 yppon þe ryuer Ouse, nouzt fer from Borgh-brigge, þat is  
 fiftene myle westwarde out of York. And hit semeþ þat he  
 preueþ þat by Gaufridus, in<sup>6</sup> his book of dedes of Britouns.  
 He writeþ þat Elidurus, kyng of Britouns, was i-logged at  
 þe citee Alcluid, bycause of solas of<sup>7</sup> huntynge, and fonde  
 his broper Archgalon<sup>8</sup> maskynge in a wode nyh þere beside,  
 þat hatte Calatery, but þat wode Calaterye, þat hatte Caltres  
 an<sup>9</sup> Engliche,<sup>10</sup> recheþ almost to York, and streccheþ toward

whiche cite be diuerse opiniones, after diuerse auctores, in MS. HARL.  
 what parte of Briteyne that cite was edifiede. For Bede 2261.  
 seithe, libro primo, capitulo xij<sup>o</sup>, that cite to be edifiede at  
 the weste parte of an arme of the see, whiche departede  
 somme tyme the Pictes from Britones, where the famos  
 walle was terminate at the weste; and so hit semethe after  
 Bede that hit was not ferre from Caerliel, for hit is putte  
 also at the ende of that walle. Also other writers of  
 stories reherse and wille that the cite of Alcluid be that  
 towne whiche is callede now Aldelburghe, whiche sownedethe  
 an olde towne, whiche is sette nye to the floode of Ouse,  
 not ferre from Burbrugge, whiche is from Yorke by xv.  
 myles at the weste of hit. And this position semethe to  
 be probable of the dietes of Gaufride in his boke of the  
 gestes of Britones, whiche affermeth þat<sup>11</sup> Elidurus, kyng  
 of Britones, taryenge at Alcluid for solace to hunte,  
 founde his broder Archgallo errante in a woode callede  
 Calaterium, whiche woode is callede in Engliche Caltrees,

<sup>1</sup> *departeth*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Added from Cx., who has *welle*.

<sup>3</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *that*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Aldburch*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> So a. and Cx.; *and*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *solace and*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Agalon*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *in*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *Engelshe*, a.

<sup>11</sup> This word is interlineated in red.

pene Eboracum, et inde versus zephyrum extenditur juxta Aldeburgh<sup>1</sup> in longum spatio viginti miliarium. Cujus nemoris plurima pars hodie succisis arbusculis ad culturam redigitur.<sup>2</sup> Hic dijudicet prudens lector quid de Alcluit<sup>3</sup> sit tenendum.

De urbe  
Caerliel.

Caerliell<sup>4</sup> urbs est in finibus Anglorum borealium versus zephyrum septentrionalem, quæ alio nomine Lugubalia<sup>5</sup> dicitur, quam<sup>6</sup> condidit septimus rex Britonum Leill. *Ranulphus*.<sup>7</sup> Habetque hæc urbs<sup>8</sup> in se aliquam partem illius muri famosi, qui trans-

<sup>1</sup> So A., Gale ; and probably also B.E., which may however intend a Latin form, using contractions.

<sup>2</sup> After *redigitur*, Gale adds :  
‘ Volunt alii ut Alcluid sit urbs  
“ illa, quæ modo vocatur Burgan,  
“ in borealibus finibus Westmer-  
lond juxta Comberlond, super  
“ flumen Edene sita, cujus adhuc  
“ miranda apparent vestigia.” See  
the versions.

<sup>3</sup> *Acluid*, B.

<sup>4</sup> So E. apparently (*Caerliell*) or perhaps *Caerliellia*; *Caerliel*, A; *Caerleil*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Luguba*, A.; *Lugubralia*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *hanc*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Ranulphus*] Added from  
A.B.C.D., Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *urbs hæc*, A.B., Gale.

þe north by Aldeburgh,<sup>1</sup> in lengþe þe space of twenty myle. TREVISA.  
 Þe moste dele of þat wode is nowe i-þrowe adoun, and þe  
 lond i-teled.<sup>2</sup> Opere wol mene þat Alcluid was þat citee þat  
 now hatte Burgham,<sup>3</sup> in þe norþ contray of Westmerland,  
 faste by Comberlond, and stondeþ vpon þe ryuer Edene.  
 Þe citee is þere ʒitt wonderliche i-sene. Here a wys re-  
 dere demep, as hym semep, where Alcluid was i-buld.<sup>4</sup>  
*Trevisa.*<sup>5</sup> Þis semep nouʒt wel hard to assoille, ʒif me takeþ  
 hede þat many townes bereþ oon name, as Carthago<sup>6</sup> in  
 Affrica and Carthago<sup>6</sup> in Spayne; Newport in Wales and  
 Newport in þe parsche<sup>7</sup> of Berkeley; Wottoun vndir Hegge<sup>8</sup>  
 and Wottoun-basset; Wilke-warre and Wilke-spayne and  
 Wilke<sup>9</sup> in þe parische of Berkeley. And tweie schire townes  
 eiper hatte Hamptoun; Souþhamptoun and Norþhamptoun.  
 So it semep by þe stories, þat oon Alcluid was in Yorkschire,  
 anoþer in Westmerlond, and oon faste by in þe riʒt side of  
 þe west arme of þe see, þat departep Engeland and Scotlond;  
 but þat Alcluid was a wel<sup>10</sup> stronge citee, as Beda seip; and  
 þat citee stondeþ faste by a ryuer þat hatte Cluid;<sup>11</sup> and þere  
 is non suche ryuer in ʒorkschire, noþer in Westmorelond, as  
 men of þe contray telleþ me. Som men telleþ þat þe ryuere  
 Cluid hatte now Sulwache; [Sulwach]<sup>12</sup> is but fyue myle fro  
 Caerlile. R. Caerleel is a citee in þe contre of Norþ Enge-  
 lond toward þe norþ west, and hap anoþer name and hatte  
 Lugubal. Leyle, þe seuenþe kyng of Britouns, bulde Caerleel.  
 [In þis citee is somewhat of þat famous wal þat- passeþ

nye to Yorke, and is extendede also nye to Aldel- MS. HARL.  
 burgh, in longitude by the space of xx<sup>ti</sup> myles, of whiche 2261.  
 woode a grete parte is kytte downe to brenne, and  
 for other thynges necessary. Other men wille that Al-  
 cluid be that citee whiche is callede now Burgham, in  
 the northe partes of Westemerlonde, nye to Cumbir-  
 londe, sette on the floode of Eden, of whom mervellous  
 stappes appere ʒitte. Wherefore y counselle that a  
 prudente lector iuge what weye is to be holden of that  
 citee off Alcluid. Caerliel is a citee in the northe partes of  
 Englonde, towarde the northeweste, whiche was callede  
 otherwise Ligubalia, whom Leil the vij<sup>th</sup> kyng of Britones  
 did make. R. That citee hadde parte of that famos walle

<sup>1</sup> After *Aldeburgh*, MS. and *a.* (not Cx.) add, by a clerical error of repetition, *þat is to menyngē.*

<sup>2</sup> *y-tylled*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Burcham*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Cx. thus re-writes the sentence: *Dame ye now where it is bylled.*

<sup>5</sup> Reference added from Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *Cartago*, MSS. and Cx.; and so below.

<sup>7</sup> *parisshe*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *EGge*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *Wikwarre, Wykpayn, and Wik,* *a.* and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *right*, Cx.; and so often.

<sup>11</sup> *Cluid*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

cindit Northimbriam.<sup>1</sup> *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* In qua<sup>2</sup> urbe manet adhuc ex lapideis fornicibus triclinium concameratum, quod nulla unquam tempestatum contumelia aut ignium flamma valuit labefactare. In vicina quoque plaga<sup>3</sup> apud Cumberlond<sup>4</sup> legitur adhuc in fronte triclinii sic inscriptum,<sup>5</sup> *Marii victorie.* Quod quid sit hæsito, nisi forsitan pars Cumbrorum olim his locis insederit,<sup>6</sup> cum fuissent a Mario consule Italia pulsi.<sup>7</sup> *Ranulphus.*<sup>8</sup> Sed probabilius videtur, quod ibi fiatmentio de Mario rege Britonum filio Arviragi, qui illis in locis Rodericum<sup>9</sup> regem Pictorum devicerat, sicut testatur Gaufridus in suo Britannico libro, quem Willelmus Malmesburiensis nusquam viderat.<sup>10</sup>

De Hagustaldensi ecclesia.

Hagustaldensis<sup>11</sup> ecclesia est locus<sup>12</sup> lxxx. miliaribus<sup>13</sup> ab Eboraco ad zephyrum borealem<sup>14</sup> disparatus, ut vult Willelmus<sup>15</sup> libro tertio de Pontificibus. Locus ille ab olim ad episcopum Eboracensem pertinuit, ubi quondam fuerunt<sup>16</sup> artificiosa ædificia, Romano more cocleata,<sup>17</sup> qualia citra Alpes vix uspiam visebantur.<sup>18</sup> Et vocatur hodie locus ille Hestoldesham.<sup>19</sup> *Beda,*

<sup>1</sup> *Northumbriam, A.; Angliam, C.D.*

<sup>2</sup> *hac, C.D.*

<sup>3</sup> *labefactare... plaga, om. B.*

<sup>4</sup> *Cumbirlond, A.*

<sup>5</sup> *sic inscriptum] om. C.D.*

<sup>6</sup> *insederit, A.C.; insedisset, B.*

<sup>7</sup> *expulsi, B.*

<sup>8</sup> *Ranulphus] om. C.D.*

<sup>9</sup> *Rodericum, B.; Vodricum, Gale.*

<sup>10</sup> *sicut... viderat] om. C.*

<sup>11</sup> *Willielmus, libro tertio Pontificum, prefixed in C.D., which omit ut... Pontificibus.*

<sup>12</sup> *Hagultaldensis (Hagrotaldensis, B.) etiam locus est, A.B.*

<sup>13</sup> *miliariorum, C.*

<sup>14</sup> *borealem] om. D.*

<sup>15</sup> *Malmesburiensis, ins. A.*

<sup>16</sup> *fuerant, B.*

<sup>17</sup> *occeolata, C. (not D.)*

<sup>18</sup> *Slightly contracted in C.D.*

<sup>19</sup> *sive Hexilsham, ins. B.; sive Heghlisham, D., Gale; Estoldesham (only), A.*

Northumberlond. *Willelmus de Pontificibus.*]<sup>1</sup> In þis citee is a pre chambred hous i-made of font<sup>2</sup> stoones, þat myȝt neuere<sup>3</sup> be destroyed wip tempest of wedir noþer wip brennyng of fuyre. Also in þe contray faste by in Westmerlond, in þe frount of a pre chambred place, is i-write in þis manere, *Marii victoria.* What þis writinge is to mene, som dele I doute; but it<sup>4</sup> were so þat som of þe Combres leie<sup>5</sup> pere somtyme, whan þe consul Marius hadde i-putte hem out of Itali. R.<sup>6</sup> But it semet more probable,<sup>7</sup> þat þat is i-write in mynde of Marius, kyng of Britouns, þat was Aruiragus his sone. Þis Marius ouercome in þat place Rodryk, kyng of Pictes,<sup>8</sup> so seiþ Gaufridus in his Brittische booke. William Malmesbury seiþ neuere þat book. At Hagustaldes chirche is a place foure score myle out of York norþ-westward; þe place is, as it were, destroyed; so seiþ Willelmus, libro tertio de Pontificibus; þat place longede somtyme to þe bisshopriche of York. Pere were somtyme buldes<sup>9</sup> wip vice<sup>10</sup> arches and fontes<sup>11</sup> in þe manere of Rome. Suche buldyng was nowhere [i-seie]<sup>12</sup> on þis half Alpes, but pere vnneþe. Now þat place hatte Hestoldesham and Heglisham

TREVISIA.

whiche diuidethe Northumbrelonde. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* In whiche cite a threfolde chambre remainethe ȝitte, that can not be defiled with fire, other elles with eny other tempeste, in whom a wrytunge is conteynede of the victory of Marius. R. Whiche semethe to be probably that theke mencion is made there of Marius kyng of Britones, son to Aruiragus, whiche overcome Roderike the kyng of Pictes in those costes, as Gaufride rehersethe in his boke of Briteyne, whom William Malmesbury hathe not seen. The chirche of Haugustaldens is a place beenge from Yorke by lxxx. myles, at the northe weste of hit, whiche place longede somme tyme to the bisshope of Yorke, where ryalle edifienges were some tyme, after the edifienge of Rome, whiche edifienges haue not be seen of eny man a this side Alpes, but in that place, whiche is callede nowe Estoldesham. *Beda, libro*

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 66. b.

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>2</sup> *vawte*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *neuere myzte*, *a.*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *but yf it*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *leyze*, *a.*<sup>6</sup> Reference added from *a.*<sup>7</sup> *better*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Britouns*, MS.<sup>9</sup> *houses*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *vys*, *a.*<sup>11</sup> *voutes*, Cx., who has large omissions here.<sup>12</sup> Added from *a.*

*libro tertio, capitulo primo.*<sup>1</sup> Et est locus ille juxta murum longum<sup>2</sup> Romani operis ad boream.<sup>3</sup> *Ranulphus.*<sup>4</sup> Est autem<sup>5</sup> differentia inter provinciam Lindisfarorum<sup>6</sup> et ecclesiam Lyndyfarnensem.<sup>7</sup> Nam provincia Lindisfarorum<sup>8</sup> est idem quod Lindeseya,<sup>9</sup> quæ jacet<sup>10</sup> ad orientem Lincolnæ, cujus ipsa caput est;<sup>11</sup> de qua dicit Beda, libro quarto, capitulo [undecimo, quod Sexvulphus erat ibidem primus episcopus; sed ecclesia Lindifarnensis secundum Bedam, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio],<sup>12</sup> idem est quod illa insula quæ dicitur Halielond,<sup>13</sup> in<sup>14</sup> fluvio Twydi,<sup>15</sup> prope Berewycum.<sup>16</sup> Et sic colligitur ex dictis Bedæ, quod in illo famoso marino brachio,<sup>17</sup> in quod fluit amnis Tvidi,<sup>18</sup> quod hodie ab oriente separat Anglos a Scotis, sunt tres insulæ; scilicet, Mailros, quod modo<sup>19</sup> dicitur Meuros;<sup>20</sup> inde superius versus occidentem<sup>21</sup> est Lindifarnensis ecclesia, id est, Halielond.<sup>22</sup> <sup>23</sup>Inde<sup>24</sup> ascendendo ponitur insula Farnæ, quæ est Farnyelond.<sup>25</sup> Inde ascendendo per duo<sup>26</sup> miliaria ponitur<sup>27</sup> urbs regia super ripam Tvidi,<sup>28</sup> quondam dicta<sup>29</sup> Bebbanburgh, <sup>30</sup>id est, urbs Bebbæ;<sup>31</sup> hodie dicitur Bamburgh,<sup>32</sup> castrum habens fortissimum.

<sup>1</sup> C.D. omits reference to Bede.

<sup>2</sup> *longum*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *borealem*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *etiam*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Lindisfororum*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *Lindifarnensem*, A.B.; *Lindisfarnensem*, Gale, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Lindesfororum*, A.; *Lindifarorum*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *Lindiseia*, A., Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *est*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *cujus . . . est*] om. C.D.; *est caput*, B.

<sup>12</sup> Added from A.B., but thus in C.D.:—"undecimo ibidem fuerat primus episcopus Sexwulfus. Ecclesia autem Lindisfarnensis secundum Bedam, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio." The references are to lib. iv. c. 12 and c. 27.

<sup>13</sup> *Holielande*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *in . . . Berewycum*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Twidi*, A.

<sup>16</sup> *Berwicum*, Gale.

<sup>17</sup> *brachio marino*, A.B.

<sup>18</sup> *Twede*, C.D.; *Twidi*, A.; *Twidy*; B.

<sup>19</sup> *hodie*, C.

<sup>20</sup> This passage is slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.; *Meawres*, B.

<sup>21</sup> *superius . . . occidentem*] ascendendo per miliarium, C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *quæ Halielond dicitur*, C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *Inde . . . Farnyelond*] om. B.C. D. (inserted in margin of A.)

<sup>24</sup> *vero*, B.

<sup>25</sup> *Farnyelond*, A.

<sup>26</sup> *novem*, C.D.

<sup>27</sup> *proponitur*, B.

<sup>28</sup> *fluminis quæ*, ins. C.D.

<sup>29</sup> *dicbatur*, C.D.

<sup>30</sup> *id . . . Bamburgh*] quæ hodie vocatur Bamburgh, C.D.

<sup>31</sup> *quæ*, ins. B.

<sup>32</sup> *Bamburgh*, B.



also. Beda, libro tertio, capitulo primo, seip þat þat place [is]<sup>1</sup> TREVISA.  
 faste by þe long wal of þe work of Rome in þe norþ half. B.<sup>2</sup> —  
 þere is difference bytwene þe prouince of Lyndefar and [and  
 þe chirche of Lyndefarne; for þe prouynce of Lyndiffar and]<sup>3</sup>  
 Lyndeseie is al oon, and lyeþ by est Lyncolne; and Lyn-  
 coln is þe heed perof. Of þe whiche seip Beda, libro quarto,  
 capitulo undecimo, þat Sexvulphus was first bisshop þere. Bote  
 Beda seip, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio, þat Lynde-  
 farn<sup>4</sup> chirche is an ilond, þat hatte Halyelond, in þe ryuer  
 Twede,<sup>5</sup> nyh Berwyk. And so hit is i-gadered of Beda his  
 sawes, [þat Twyde rennep into the famous arm of]<sup>6</sup> þe see þat<sup>7</sup>  
 departeþ Englische men and Scottes in þe est half. And in þe<sup>8</sup>  
 arme beþ þre ilondes, þat beþ Mailros, þat now hatte Mewros;<sup>9</sup>  
 þanne aboue toward þe west is Lyndefarnen chirche þat hatte  
 Halielond;<sup>10</sup> þanne vpward aboue þat is þe ilond Farne, and  
 hatte also Farnyelond; þanne vpward tweie myle aboue þat  
 is a real citee vpon þe brynke of Twyde, þat somtyme  
 hiȝt Bebanborgh, þat is, Bebbe is<sup>11</sup> cite, and now hatte

*tertio, capitulo primo.* And that place is nye to the fa- MS. HARL.  
 mose walle at the northe parte. Also there is difference 2261.  
 betwene the prouince of Lindesey and the chirche Lindis-  
 farnens. For the prouince of Lyndesey liethe at the este  
 of Lincolne, whiche is chiefe cite to that prouince, of  
 whom Beda spekethe, libro iiij<sup>to</sup>, capitulo xi<sup>o</sup>, where Sex-  
 vulphus was firste bischoppe. But the chirche Lindifarn-  
 ence, after Bede, libro iiij<sup>to</sup> capitulo [x]xiiij<sup>o</sup>, is an yle  
 whiche is callede the Holylonde, in the water of Twide,  
 nye to Berewike: wherefore hit may be collecte of the  
 seyenge of Bede, that there be iij. yles in that famose  
 arme of the see in whom the water of Twide floethe,  
 whiche departethe now of the este parte Englische men  
 from Scottes. The firste yle, somme tyme callede Maylros,  
 is callede now Meuros. Then from that towarde the weste  
 is the chirche of Lindisfarnence in Halielonde. Also there  
 is an yle whiche is callede Farnelonde. Also there a cite  
 longenge somme tyme to the kynge, sette on the brynke  
 off Twide, within the space of ij. myles, callede somme tyme  
 Bembanburgh, that is to say the cite of Bebbe, callede  
 now Banburghe, hauenge a stronge castelle in hit.

<sup>1</sup> The verb is absent from MSS. and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Reference added from Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx

<sup>4</sup> *Lyndiffarn, a.*

<sup>5</sup> *Twyde, a.; Thwede, Cx.* (who has *next*).

<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *that now, Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *þat, a., Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> *Meuros, a., Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> *Haly ylonde, Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> *Bobbes, Cx.*

De urbe  
Legionum.

*Giraldus in Itinerario.* Urbs<sup>1</sup> Legionum duplex est, quæ Britannice vocatur Caerlegion vel Caerleon; <sup>2</sup> una est in Demetia,<sup>3</sup> id est, Southwallia, quæ dicitur Caeruse,<sup>4</sup> ubi, Usca flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorgantiam, a Belino rege Britonum quondam constructa; metropolis fuit Demetiæ.<sup>5</sup> Postmodum tempore Claudii Cæsaris dicta est Urbs Legionum,<sup>6</sup> quando ad instantiam Genuissæ<sup>7</sup> reginæ, Vespasiano et Arvirago concordatis, missæ sunt aliquæ legiones Romanæ in Hiberniam. Urbs hæc<sup>8</sup> authentica,<sup>9</sup> ac per Romanos muris coctilibus circumdata, ubi multa adhuc pristinae nobilitatis apparent vestigia; palatia scilicet immensa, turris gigantea, thermæ insignes, templorum reliquiæ, et<sup>10</sup> loca theatralia egregiis muris partim extantibus pene clausa; et tam intra quam extra murorum ambitum ædificia subterranea, aquarum ductus,<sup>11</sup> hypogæique<sup>12</sup> meatus; stuphas quoque videas ibidem miro artificio consertas, lateralibus<sup>13</sup> quibusdam angustiis spiraculi vice<sup>14</sup> occulte<sup>15</sup> calorem exhalantibus. In qua urbe tres olim egregiæ fuerant

<sup>1</sup> C.D. begins this section as follows:—"Caerleon, seu Caerlegion, seu Caeruse, ubi Usca flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorgantiam, constituta est a Belino rege Britonum, quæ multo tempore Caeruse appellata, metropolis fuit Demetiæ in South Wallia" (D., however, reading: "Caerlion, seu Caerthleon. seu Caerlegion, seu Caeruse," &c.)

<sup>2</sup> *Caerlion*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Domosia*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Caerush*, B.; *Caerult*, Gale.

<sup>5</sup> *Domotia*, B.

<sup>6</sup> Transposed in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Gemissæ*, Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *hæc*] antiqua et, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *autentica* or *auctentica*, MSS.

<sup>10</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *aqueductus*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *ipogeiue*, A.B.; *hippogeiue*. E.

<sup>13</sup> *lateribus*, A.

<sup>14</sup> So Gale; *viis*, MSS.

<sup>15</sup> So A.B.C.D.; *occulto*, E.

Bamborgh,<sup>1</sup> and hath a wel strong castel.<sup>2</sup> *Giraldus in* TREVISA.  
*Itinere.* Tweye citees pere beep, eiper hatte Caerlegioun  
 and Caerleoun also ; oon is Demecia in Soup Wales, þat hatte  
 Caerusk also ; pere þe ryuer Vsque<sup>3</sup> falleþ in to Seurn see,<sup>4</sup>  
 faste by Glammorgon. Bellinus, kyng of Britouns, somtyme  
 bulde þat citee ; and somtyme was þe chief cite of Demecia<sup>5</sup>  
 in Soup Wales.<sup>6</sup> Afterward in Claudius Cesar his tyme hit  
 was i-cleped þe Citee of Legiouns. Whan at þe prayer of  
 Genuis þe queene, Vespasianus<sup>7</sup> and Aruiragus were accorded,  
 and legiouns of Rome were i-sende in to Irlond, þo was  
 Caerleon a noble citee and of grete auctorite, and by þe  
 Romayns realliche i-walled aboute wip walles of brent<sup>8</sup> tile.  
 Grete nobilite<sup>9</sup> þat was pere in olde tyme is pere zit in  
 meny places i-sene, as þe grete palys,<sup>10</sup> geant<sup>11</sup> his tour, noble  
 bathes, releef of þe temples, places of theatres, þat were  
 places hiþe and real to stonde and sytte ynne and byholde  
 aboute. Þe places were realliche i-closed wip real walles þat  
 zit somdel stondeþ wel nyh cloos. And wip ynne þe walles  
 and wipoute is greet buldyng vnder erþe, water condites and  
 weies vnder erþe and stues also þou schalt see wonderliche  
 i-made wip streite side weies of breþyng, þat wonderliche  
 castep vp hete. In þis cite were somtyme þre noble chirches ;

*Giraldus, in Itinerario.* There be ij. cites of legiones, MS. HARL.  
 oon was callede Caerlegion or Caerlyon, oon is in 2261.  
 Sowthe Wales, whiche is callede Caerhuth, whiche beenge  
 at the water callede Usca, is so namede, fallenge into the  
 water of Seurne nye to Glomorgan, edifiede somme  
 tyme of Belinus, kyng of Englonde, whiche was the  
 chiefe cite off Sowthe Wales. After that hit was  
 callede the Cite off Legiones, when legiones of the  
 Romanes were sende to Yrlonde at the instance of a  
 qwene, callede Genuissa,<sup>12</sup> a concorde made betwene Ves-  
 pacian and Aruiragus. That was a nowble cite, and  
 wallede welle, where nowble stappes appere zitte, grete  
 palice, a gigantes towre, and mony edifienges vnder the  
 erthe as welle withowte the walles as within. In whiche  
 cite were thre ryalle chirches, oon was of Iulius the f. 67. a.

<sup>1</sup> *Bamborw*, a.

<sup>2</sup> The previous sentence has several slight variations in Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Usk*, a.

<sup>4</sup> *see*] om. Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Domecia*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>6</sup> MS. (not a. or Cx.) adds : þat hatte Caerusk.

<sup>7</sup> *Vaspasianus*, MSS. an6 Cx. (who has *Genyus*.)

<sup>8</sup> *brand*, a.

<sup>9</sup> *nobley*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *palayses*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *gyant*, a.

<sup>12</sup> *Gemissa*, Harl. MS.

ecclesiæ, una Julii Martyris, virginum choro venustata; alia<sup>1</sup> beati Aaron,<sup>2</sup> præclaro canonicorum ordine nobilitata; tertia vero metropolitana sede<sup>3</sup> totius Cambriæ fuit insignita, de<sup>4</sup> qua postmodum usque Meneviam sedes illa est translata. Hoc in loco Amphibalus<sup>5</sup> doctor<sup>6</sup> Albani extitit<sup>7</sup> oriundus. Hic magni Arthuri, si fas sit credere, magnam<sup>8</sup> curiam legati adiere<sup>9</sup> Romani. *Ranulphus*.<sup>10</sup> Est et alia Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, ubi et præsens<sup>11</sup> chronica fuit<sup>12</sup> elaborata, sicut per capitales hujus primi libri apices clarius<sup>13</sup> patet.<sup>14</sup> Urbs quidem in

<sup>1</sup> *alia*] et altera, C.D.  
<sup>2</sup> *Aaro*, B.  
<sup>3</sup> *sede*] om. C. (not D.)  
<sup>4</sup> *a*, B.D.  
<sup>5</sup> *Ambhibalus*, E.  
<sup>6</sup> *beati*, B.  
<sup>7</sup> *fuçrat*, B.  
<sup>8</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D., which have *famosam*.

<sup>9</sup> *adgere*, B.‡  
<sup>10</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.  
<sup>11</sup> *hic*, B.  
<sup>12</sup> *fit*, B.  
<sup>13</sup> *clarius*] om. B.  
<sup>14</sup> *ubi . . . patet*] om. C. D. omits only *sicut . . . patet*.

oon was of Seynt Iulius þe martir, i-hiȝt wiþ a grete<sup>1</sup> companye of virgyns; þat oþer was of Seint Aaron, þat was of þe ordre of blak chanouns; þat chirche was wiþ hym<sup>2</sup> nobelie i-hiȝt;<sup>3</sup> þe pridde chirehe was þe chief moderchirche of al Wales, and þe chief sete;<sup>4</sup> but aftirward þe chief see was i-torned out of þat citee in to Meneuia, þat is, Seint Dauyes lond in West Wales. In þis Caerleon [was]<sup>5</sup> Amphibalus i-bore, þat tauȝt Seint Albon. Þere þe messangers of Rome come to þe grete Arthurus curt,<sup>6</sup> ȝif it is leefful for to trowe. *Trevisa.* ȝif Gerald<sup>7</sup> was in doute where<sup>8</sup> it were leefful for to trowe þis<sup>9</sup> oþer noo, it was nouȝt ful greet reedy-nesse to write hit in his bookes; as som men wolde wene. For it is a wonder sweuene i-mette for to write a long storie, to haue euermore in mynde, and euere haue doute ȝif it be amys byleue. ȝif alle his bookes were suche, what lore were peryuue, and nameliche while hit makeþ non euidens for neiþer<sup>10</sup> side, noþer telleþ what hym<sup>11</sup> meueþ so<sup>12</sup> for to seie?<sup>13</sup> R.<sup>14</sup> Þere is anoþer Citee of Legiouns; þere þis cronicle was by<sup>15</sup>-trauailed, as it is cleerliche i-knowe by þe firste lettres of þe chapitres of þis first book.<sup>16</sup> *Trevisa.* Þis<sup>17</sup> is to vnderstondynge in þe Latyn writynge and nouȝt in þis Engliche writynge; for it was nouȝt þe same þat made it in Latyn, and torned it into Englisshe in þe same place þat it was i-made first in Latyn. Þe heed lettres of þe chapitres of þis firste book i-write arewe as the chapitres stondeþ he speleþ þis Latyn resoun: Presentem croniam compilauit frater Ranulphus Cestrensis monachus. Þis Latyn resoun is to menynge an Engliche: Broþer Ranulf,<sup>18</sup> monk of Chestre, compiled and made þis present cronicle.<sup>19</sup> R. Þe

TREVISA.

Martir, made feire with a company of virgynes. An other MS. HARL. 2261. was of blessedde Aaron, made nowble with the clere ordre of canons. The thridde chirche was made nowble with the seete of the metropolitan of alle Wales, whiche was translate afterwarde to Meneuia, whiche is callede nowe Seynte Daud. R. Also there is an other Cite of Legiones,

<sup>1</sup> and ther in a grete, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> hem, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> adourned, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> see, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Added from Cx.

<sup>6</sup> court, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Giraldus, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> wheþer, a.

<sup>9</sup> þis] hit, a., Cx.

<sup>10</sup> neiþer] noþer, a.

<sup>11</sup> So a. and Cx.; by, MS.

<sup>12</sup> so] soþ, MS. (not Cx.)

<sup>13</sup> The extract from Trevisa is a good deal varied in Cx., where it makes but little sense.

<sup>14</sup> Reference added from Cx.

<sup>15</sup> be, a.

<sup>16</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>17</sup> That, Cx.

<sup>18</sup> Ranulph, a.; Ranulphus, Cx.

<sup>19</sup> cronike, a., Cx. The extract from Trevisa is much varied in Cx.

confinio<sup>1</sup> Angliæ ad prospectum<sup>2</sup> Cambriæ, inter duo marina brachia,<sup>3</sup> Dee et Mercee,<sup>4</sup> situata; quæ tempore<sup>5</sup> Britonum caput fuit et metropolis Venedotiæ, id est, <sup>6</sup>Norwalliæ; <sup>7</sup>cujus <sup>8</sup>fundator ignoratur. Nam intuitenti fundamenta lapidum<sup>9</sup> enormium videtur potius Romano seu giganteo labore, quam Britannico sudore fundata extitisse. Hæc aliquando vocata est<sup>10</sup> Britannie Caerthleon,<sup>11</sup> Latine Legecestria; nunc autem<sup>12</sup> dicta<sup>13</sup> est Cestria, sive<sup>14</sup> Urbs Legionum; eo quod ibidem hiemarent legiones militares, quas Julius Cæsar ad subjugandam Hiberniam,<sup>15</sup> et postmodum<sup>16</sup> Claudius Cæsar ad subigendas<sup>17</sup> Orcades insulas inde transmiserat. Urbs itaque ista, quicquid de ea Willelmus Malmesbury<sup>18</sup> ad aliorum relatum somniaverit, omni genere<sup>19</sup> victualium<sup>20</sup> abundat, farris, carnis,<sup>21</sup> piscis, potissime salmonis optimi<sup>22</sup> copiosa;<sup>23</sup> mercimonia varia recipit et refundit. Quippe quæ<sup>24</sup> in suis confiniis salinas habet mineras et metalla. In hac<sup>25</sup> urbe per Northimbros<sup>26</sup> et Danos vicissim conquassata,<sup>27</sup> sed tandem per Elfredam<sup>28</sup> Merciorum dominam egregie<sup>29</sup> reparata et adaucta,<sup>30</sup> sunt viæ subterraneæ, lapideo opere

<sup>1</sup> *confinibus*, A.  
<sup>2</sup> *in prospectu*, C.  
<sup>3</sup> *brachia*] om. E.; *brachia sive duo flumina*, C.; *inter duo flumina*, D.  
<sup>4</sup> *Mersee*, B.D.  
<sup>5</sup> *partim*, B.  
<sup>6</sup> *Northcalliæ*, A.B.  
<sup>7</sup> *sicut alia urbs legionum quondam fuit Demetiæ. Urbs alia jacet desolata, ista substat reformata; illius conditor fuit Belinus*, ins. C.D.  
<sup>8</sup> *istius*, C.D.  
<sup>9</sup> *in muris*, ins. C.D.  
<sup>10</sup> *est*] om. B.D.  
<sup>11</sup> *Caerleon*, C.; *Caerlion*, B.; *Kaerleon*, D.  
<sup>12</sup> *vero*, C.D.  
<sup>13</sup> *dicta*] om. C. (not D.); *dicta est*, om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *etiam*, C.D.  
<sup>15</sup> *miserat*, ins. C.D.  
<sup>16</sup> *etiam*, C.D.  
<sup>17</sup> *subjugandam*, A.  
<sup>18</sup> *de Malu[esbury]*, B.  
<sup>19</sup> *omnium generum*, C (not D.)  
<sup>20</sup> *copia*, ins. C. (not D.)  
<sup>21</sup> *carnium*, C.D.  
<sup>22</sup> *optimi*] om. B.  
<sup>23</sup> *copia*, B.  
<sup>24</sup> *et*, C. (not D.)  
<sup>25</sup> *quoque*, ins. C.D.  
<sup>26</sup> *Northumbros*, A.; *Northanhimbros*, B.  
<sup>27</sup> *quassata*, C.D.  
<sup>28</sup> *Elfledam*, C.; *Elfledam*, A.B. D.; *Elphedam*, Gale.  
<sup>29</sup> *nobiliter*, C.D.  
<sup>30</sup> *aucta*, C. (not D.)

citee of legiouns, þat is, Chestre, stondeþ in þe marche of Engeland toward Wales, bytwene tweie armes of þe see þat hadde Dee and Merse. Þis citee in tyme of Britouns was heed and chief citee of al Venedocia, þat is, Norþ<sup>1</sup> Wales. Þe foundour of þis citee is vnknowe, for who þat seep þe fundamentis of þe grete stones wolde raper wene þat it were Romayns work, oþer work of geauntes, þan work<sup>2</sup> i-made by settinge of Bretouns. Þis citee somtyme in Brittische speche heet Caerleon,<sup>3</sup> Legecestria in<sup>4</sup> Latyn, and hadde now Cestria in Latyn, and Chestren in Englisshe, and þe Citee of Legiouns [also. For þere lay a wynter þe legiouns]<sup>5</sup> of knyȝtes þat Iulius Cesar sente for to wynne Irlound; and afterward Clawdius Cesar sente legiouns out of þat citee ffor to wynne þe ilondes þat hadde Orcades. What euere William Malmesbury by tellynge of opere men mette of þis citee, þis citee hap plente of lyflode, of corn, of flesche, and of fische, and specialliche of pris salmoun.<sup>6</sup> Þat<sup>7</sup> citee fongep grete marchaundise, and sendep out also. Also nygh þis citee beep salt welles, metal, and oor. Norphumbres destroyed þis citee somtyme; but afterward Elfreda, lady of Mercia, bulde it aȝe and made it wel<sup>8</sup> more. In þis citee beep weies vnder

TREVISA.

—

callede Chestre, where this cronicle presente was laborede, in the coste of Wales betwene ij. armes of the see whiche be callede Dye and Meresie, whiche was the chiefe cite of Northe Wales in the tyme of Britones, the firste founder of whom is not knowen. For hit scholde seme to a man beholdenge the fundacion of hit that werke to be rather of the labor of gigantes, other Romanes, then of Britones. That cite was callede somme tyme in the langage of Britones, Caerelyon, in Latyn Legecestria, and hit is callede now Chestre, other the Cite of Legionis, in that the legiones of knyȝhtes tariede þer in wynter, whom Iulius Cesar sende to Yrlonde to subdue hit to hym. This cite habundethe in euery kynde of vitelles, thauȝhe William Malmesbury dreamede in other wise, as in corne, flesche, fische, and specially in salmones, whiche cite receyvethe and sendethe from it diuerse marchandise, whiche hadde nye to hit waters of salte and metalles. That cite, somme tyme destroyede by men of Northumbrelonde, but reedificate by Elfreda, lady of the marches. hadde vnder the erthe voltes to be meruailede thro the

MS. HARL.  
2261.

—

<sup>1</sup> in north, Cx.<sup>2</sup> were, Cx. (typ. error.)<sup>3</sup> Caerchleon, a.<sup>4</sup> a, Cx.<sup>5</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>6</sup> prise samoun, a.; pris of samon, Cx.<sup>7</sup> This, Cx.<sup>8</sup> moche, Cx.

mirabiliter testudinatae, triclinia concamerata, insculpti lapides pergrandes antiquorum nomina praeferentes. Numismata quoque,<sup>1</sup> Julii Caesaris aliorumque illustrium inscriptione insignita, aliquando<sup>2</sup> sunt effossa. Haec<sup>3</sup> est urbs quam rex<sup>4</sup> Northimbrorum Ethelfridus<sup>5</sup> contrivit, occidens juxta eam duo pene milia monachorum Bangorensis monasterii.<sup>6</sup> Haec est inquam urbs ad quam venit aliquando rex Edgarus cum septem subregulis;<sup>7</sup> in cujus urbis laudem metricus quidam sic prorupit:—

Versus de  
Cestria.

Cestria de castro nomen quasi Castria sumpsit,

Incertum cujus hanc manus ediderit.<sup>8</sup>

Haec Legecestria tunc est dicta, vel<sup>9</sup> Urbs Legionum,

Anglis et Cambris nunc manet urbs celebris.

In muris pendent lapides<sup>10</sup> velut Herculis actus,

Agger et augetur tutior<sup>11</sup> ut maneat.

<sup>1</sup> *Numismata quoque*] So A. Gale;  
*Hic et numismata*, C.D.; *numisma*, E

<sup>2</sup> *quandoque*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Ista*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Northanhimbrorum Egfridus*, B.

<sup>5</sup> Transposed in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *de monasterio Bangorensi*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> Abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *ediderint*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *vel*] om. A.

<sup>10</sup> *lapide*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *tutior*] So A.B.C.D.; *tutius*, E.



erpe, wip vawtes of stoonwerk<sup>1</sup> wonderliche i-wrouz̄t, þre TREVISA.  
chambres workes, greet stoones i-graued wip olde men<sup>2</sup> names  
pere ynne. Pere is also Iulius Cesar his money wonderliche  
in ston<sup>3</sup> i-graued,<sup>4</sup> and opere noble mennes also wip þe  
wrytunge aboute. Þis is þe citee þat<sup>5</sup> Ethelfride, kyng of  
Norphumber,<sup>6</sup> destroyed; and slogh pere<sup>7</sup> faste by nygh two  
þowsand monkes of þe mynistre of Bangor. Þis is þe citee  
þat kyng Edgar com to som tyme wip seuene kynges þat were  
suget to hym. A metrer brekep out in þis manere in preis-  
yunge of þis citee :—

Chestre, Casteltoun as he<sup>7</sup> were,  
Name takeþ of a castel :<sup>8</sup>  
Hit is vnknowe  
What man bulde<sup>9</sup> þis citee now ;  
Tho Legecestrias þes<sup>10</sup>  
Heet<sup>11</sup> now toun of legiones.  
Now Walsche and Engliche  
Holdeþ þis toun of greet<sup>12</sup> prys.  
Stones on þe walle  
Semep work Hercules alle ;  
Pere long wip myght  
To dure þat hep is i-hižt.

werke of ston, and other grete ston<sup>3</sup> conteynenge the MS. HARL.  
names and pryntes of Iulius Cesar, and of other nowble 2261.  
men. That is the cite whom kyng Elfride contriuede,  
sleenge in hit allemoste ij<sup>m</sup>. monkes of the famos<sup>3</sup> monas-  
tery of Bangor. That is the cite also to whom kyng  
Edgare come somme tyme with other vij. litelle kynges ; in  
to the lawde of whom a metricion seythe in this wise.  
That cite of Chestre toke the name of hit of a castelle  
callede Cestria, as Castria, the firste founder of whom is  
not hade in certitude ; callede somme tyme Legecestria,  
other elles the cite of legiones ; whiche is now a nowble  
cite, bothe to Engliche men and to Walsche men ; in  
the walles of whiche cite ston<sup>3</sup> honge lyke to the actes f. 67. b.  
of Hercules ; where dowble voltes be vnder the erthe ; and

<sup>1</sup> with vawtes and stonewerke, Cx.,  
who has *chambred* below.

<sup>2</sup> So also *a.* ; *mennes*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *in ston<sup>3</sup>*] These words ought  
to be cancelled, but Trevisa perhaps  
misunderstood the Latin. Cx.  
changes *money* into *name*.

<sup>4</sup> MS. and *a.* (not Cx.) add by  
clerical error from above : *wip olde  
men names*.

<sup>5</sup> So *a.* and Cx. ; *of*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *Northumberland*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *a, a.* ; *it*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> We should probably add : *that  
is there ; metri gratia*.

<sup>9</sup> *bude, a.*

<sup>10</sup> *Legecestria chers*, Cx. (*quid* ?)

<sup>11</sup> *Hett, a.*

<sup>12</sup> *a greet, a.*

Saxula Saxonica superextant addita magnis,

Concava testudo bina latet sub humo.

Mineras<sup>1</sup> profert salinas proxima tellus,

Quas spargit multis gentibus occiduis.

Carnibus et farre, sic piscibus affluit urbs hæc ;

Merces et classes advehit<sup>2</sup> unda mare.<sup>3</sup>

Henrici quarti, Godescalli<sup>4</sup> Cæsaris olim,

Regis et Harald<sup>5</sup> pulvis habetur ibi.

Mars et Mercurius, Bacchus,<sup>6</sup> Venus, atque Laverna,

Proteus et Pluto regna tenent inibi.

<sup>1</sup> *Minetas*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *affluit*, E.

<sup>3</sup> Perhaps for *mare*, which the MSS. and Gale have, we should read *maris*. This indeed seems to

be the reading of D., which has been corrected from *mar.* to *mar* *ē*.

<sup>4</sup> *Godescilli*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Araldi*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *et*, B.

TREVISA.

Saxon smal<sup>1</sup> stones  
 Set vppon greet beep attones.<sup>2</sup>  
 There vnder grounde  
 Lotynge double vault<sup>3</sup> is i-founde.  
 Þat helpeth wip sondes  
 Meny men of westene<sup>4</sup> londes.  
 Fisch, flesche, and corn low  
 Þis cite toun hap i-now.  
 Schippes and chaffare  
 See water bringeþ i-now þare.  
 Godescalle pere is,  
 Þat was emperour or<sup>5</sup> þis,  
 And þe ferþe Henry kyng,  
 Pere is here riȝtene<sup>6</sup> dwellynge.  
 Of kyng Haralde  
 Poudre pere ȝit is halde,<sup>7</sup>  
 Bacchus<sup>8</sup> and Mercurius, Mars and Venus,  
 also Lauerna,<sup>9</sup>

Proteus<sup>10</sup> and Pluto regneþ pere [in]<sup>11</sup> þe towne.

*Trevisa.* God woot what þis is to mene, but poetes<sup>12</sup> in here<sup>13</sup> manere of speche feyneth as þey euerich kynde crafte and leuynge hadde a dyuersite<sup>14</sup> god, euerich from oþer; and so they feyneþ<sup>15</sup> a god of bataille and of fiȝtynge, and clepeþ hym Mars; also þey feyneþ a god of couetise of richesse and marchaundise, and clepeþ<sup>16</sup> hym Mercurius; and so Bacchus þei clepeþ god of wyn; Venus, god of fairnesse and of loue; Lauerna, god of þefte and of robberie; Proteus,<sup>10</sup> god of falshede and of gyle; and Pluto, god of helle. And so hit semeþ þat þis vers wolde mene þat þese feyned<sup>17</sup> goddes regneþ and beep i-serued in Chestre; Mars wip fiȝting and cokkyng; Mercurius wip couetise of richesse and of marchandyse; Bacchus wip grete drinkynge; Venus wip loue nouȝt ful wys;<sup>18</sup> Lauerna wip þefte and robberye; Proteus<sup>10</sup>

also kyng Henry the iiij<sup>th</sup>e, Godescallus somme tyme MS. HARL.  
 Cesar, and kyng Haralde were beryede. There Mars, 2261.  
 Mercurius, Venus, Proteus,<sup>9</sup> and Pluto have gouernaile.

<sup>1</sup> *smale*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *at ones*, a.

<sup>3</sup> *vauwt*, a.; *vout*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *westren*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *ar*, a.; *er*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *erthe is there righten*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *i-halde*, a., Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Bacus*, MS.; *Bachus*, a., Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Possibly we should read *Lauerne*; but even so, the metre limps.

<sup>10</sup> *Protheus*, MSS. and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> Added from Cx.

<sup>12</sup> So a.; *portes*, MS.

<sup>13</sup> So a.; *his*, MS.

<sup>14</sup> *diuerse*, Cx.; probably rightly.

<sup>15</sup> *feyned*, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> *called* Cx.

<sup>17</sup> *forsayd*, Cx.

<sup>18</sup> *nouȝt ful wys*] lewdly, Cx.

Ejus gens sequitur multum mores<sup>1</sup> Babylonis,  
 Quæ dum plus poterit, plus solet esse ferox.

## CAP. XLIX.

*De provinciis et comitatibus.*<sup>2</sup>

*Alfridus.*<sup>3</sup> Notandum quod<sup>4</sup> Anglia continet triginta  
 duas<sup>5</sup> shiras, id est, provincias, quæ hodie dicuntur comi-  
 Comitatus. tatus, exceptis Cornubia et insulis. Nomina comitatum  
 sunt ista: Kent, Southsex, Southereie,<sup>6</sup> Hamptshire, Bar-  
 rokshire,<sup>7</sup> quæ sic denominatur a quadam nuda quercu  
 in foresta de Wyndesora,<sup>8</sup> ad quam solebant provinciales  
 convenire in tractatibus habendis.<sup>9</sup> Item<sup>10</sup> Wyltshire,<sup>11</sup>  
 quæ quondam dicebatur provincia Severiana,<sup>12</sup> Somersete,  
 Dorset, Doevenshire, sive<sup>13</sup> Doonia.<sup>14</sup> Hæ novem pro-  
 vinciaæ australes prædictæ, quatenus flumen Thamisiæ eas  
 secernit a reliqua Anglia, judicabantur olim illa lege quæ  
 vocatur<sup>15</sup> Westsaxenelaga.<sup>16</sup> Sed<sup>17</sup> Estsex,<sup>18</sup> Midelsex,<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *mores multum*, B.<sup>2</sup> *Angliæ*, ins. A.<sup>3</sup> *Alfridus*] Transposed in C.  
(not D.), Gale; om. B.<sup>4</sup> *Notandum quod*] om. C.<sup>5</sup> *duas*] om. B.<sup>6</sup> So E. and Gale; *Sotherey*,  
C.B.; *Sowthirie*, A.; *Southercy*, D.<sup>7</sup> *Barkschire*, A.B.; *Barocschire*,  
D.<sup>8</sup> *Wyndisora*, A.<sup>9</sup> *in tractatibus habendis*] Added  
in the margin of C. in another ink;  
absent from D.<sup>10</sup> *Item*] In, E.; om. C.D.<sup>11</sup> *Wilteschira*, A.<sup>12</sup> *Somerana*, B.<sup>13</sup> *sive*] Added from A.B.D. and  
Gale; *seu Devoniam*, C.; *sive De-*  
*voniam*, B.; *sive Doronia*, Gale.<sup>14</sup> *Deevoneschire* (*Devenischire*,  
D.), *sive Doronia*, A.D.<sup>15</sup> *quæ vocatur*] om. B.<sup>16</sup> *West Saxenelaga*, B.; *West-*  
*saxenelaga*, D.<sup>17</sup> *Sed*] om. C.D.<sup>18</sup> *est Sex*, B.; *et*, ins. A.<sup>19</sup> *Middelsexe*, D.

wip falshede and gyle. þan is Pluto not vnserued, god of TREVISIA.  
helle. R.

þere Babilon lore,  
More myȝt haþ, truþe<sup>1</sup> þe more.

*De schiris Angliæ, siue prouinciis. Capitulum quadra-  
gesimum nonum.*

TAKE hede þat<sup>2</sup> Engeland conteyneþ two and þritti schires and prouinces, þat now beþ i-cleped erldoms, outake Cornewayle and ilondes<sup>3</sup> *Alfridus*. These beþ þe names of þe erldoms and schires: Kent, Souþsex, Souþeray, Hampschire, Barkschire, þat haþ þat name of a baar ook þat is in þe forest of Wyndesore; for at þat bare ook men of þat schire were i-wont come to gidres and make here tretys, and þere take hir counsail, and rede.<sup>4</sup> Also Wiltshire, þat hiȝte<sup>5</sup> somtyme þe prouince of Semeran, Somersete, Dorsete, Deuenschire, þat hatte Deuonia in Latyn. Þese nyne south schires, as<sup>6</sup> Temse departeþ hem from þe oper dele of Engeland, were<sup>7</sup> somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by þat lawe þat hatte Westsaxoun<sup>8</sup> lawe.<sup>9</sup> Estsex, Myddelsex,

The peple of whom folowe moche men of Babilon in MS. HARL.  
condicion of maneres, whiche is moste cruelle where 2261.  
that hit may do moste.

*Of the schires other prouinces of Englonde. Capitulum  
quadragesimum nonum.*

HIT is to be attended that Englonde conteynethe xxxxiij<sup>ti</sup> schires other provinces, Cornewaile excepte and other yles. *Alfridus*. These be the names of the schires, Kente, Southesex, Sutherey, Hampteschire, Barrokeschire, takege that name of hit of a bare oke in the foreste of Wyndeshore, where men of that province were wonte to mete for a tretys to be made betwene partes; also Wildeschire, that was callede somme tyme the province of Seuerne, Somersete, Dorsete, Deuenschire. These ix. sowthe prouinces aforescide, thauȝhe Thamys departethe theyme, thei were iuggede somme tyme by the lawe of the Weste Saxones, whiche is callede Westesaxenelaga. But Estesex,

<sup>1</sup> *trouthe*, Cx. The text seems corrupt; possibly *crouþe* (i.e. *crow-eth*) may be the true reading.

<sup>2</sup> So *a.*; þan, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *the ilondes*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *reed*, *a.*; *aduys*, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

<sup>5</sup> *heet*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> So *a.*; *nyne schires be souþ*, *as*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *which were*, Cx., who omits *as* above.

<sup>8</sup> *Westsaxene*, *a.*

<sup>9</sup> *by the West Saxon lawe*, Cx.

Southfolk, Northfolk, Herfortshire,<sup>1</sup> Huntyndoushire, Northamptounshire,<sup>2</sup> Cantebruggeshire,<sup>3</sup> Bedfordshire, Bukkinghamshire,<sup>4</sup> Leicestreshire,<sup>5</sup> Derbyshire, Nottinghamshire, Lincolnshire, **3**orkshire,<sup>6</sup> Duremshire,<sup>7</sup> Northumberlond, Caerlielshire cum Cumberlond,<sup>8</sup> Appelbyshire cum Westmerlond, Lancastreshire, quæ continet quinque modicas shiras; istæ quindecim provinciæ prædictæ orientales et boreales judicabantur olim lege illa, quæ vocabatur Denelaga. Sed Oxenfortshire,<sup>9</sup> Warewykshire,<sup>10</sup> Gloucestreshire, Wyrcestreshire, Herefordshire, Salopshire, Staffordshire, Chestershire,<sup>11</sup> istæ octo shiræ mediterranæ et occidentales judicabantur olim lege Marcia, quæ Anglice Merchenelaga<sup>12</sup> vocabatur. Est ergo sciendum quod provincia Eboraci solummodo<sup>13</sup> se extendit hodie ab arcu Humbrae<sup>14</sup> fluminis usque ad flumen Teyse.<sup>15</sup> Et tamen sunt in ea viginti duo hundredi, id est, wapentakes.<sup>16</sup> Hundredus autem<sup>17</sup> Latine, sive cantredus Wallice et Hibernice, continet centum villas. Wapentak<sup>18</sup> Anglice idem<sup>19</sup> est quod<sup>20</sup> *arma capere*, eo quod in primo adventu novi domini sole-

<sup>1</sup> *Herfortshire*] om. B.; *Hertfordschire*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *Norhamtounschire*, D. In this MS. the order of the counties is different.

<sup>3</sup> *Cantbrigyschire*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Bukynghamschire*, B.; *Bokinhamshchire*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Leycestreschire*, B.; *Laicestreschire*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *3*orhschire, A.B.; *Eboracschire*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *Duremshchire*] The rest of this chapter varies much in C.D. The paragraphs and sentences are so much transposed and altered, that it is almost impossible to collate it.

<sup>8</sup> *Northumberlond... Cumberlond*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *Oxenfordschire*, A.B.

<sup>10</sup> *Warwikschire*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Cestreschire*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Marchenelaga*, A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *solomodo*, E.

<sup>14</sup> *Humbria*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *Tese*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *wapintakes*, A.

<sup>17</sup> *cnim*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *vero*, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *id*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *quod*] om. B.

Southfolk, Norpfolk, Hertfordschire, Huntyngdounschire, Norphamptonschire, Cantebryggeschire,<sup>1</sup> [Bcdefordschire]<sup>2</sup> Bokynghamschire, Leycestreschire, Derbyschire, Notynghamschire, Lyncolneschire, **Ȝ**orkschire, Duramschire, Northumberlond, Carlleschire wip Comberlond, Appelbyschire wip Westmerlond, Lancastreschire, pat conteyneþ fyue litel schires; þese fiftene norþ and est schires were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe, pat hatte Denelawe. But Oxenfordeschire, Warwykschire, Glowcetreschire, Worcestereschire, Herfordschire,<sup>3</sup> Schropschire, Staffordschire, Chestreschire, þese eiȝte myddel and west schires were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe pat hatte Mercia in Latyn, and Mercheyne lawe in Englisshe. It is to wetynge<sup>4</sup> pat **Ȝ**orkschire now streccheþ onlich from þe bowe of the ryuer of Humber anon to þe ryuer of<sup>5</sup> Teyse; and ȝit in **Ȝ**orkschire beep two and twenty hondredes. Hundred and candred is al oon; candred is oo word i-made of Walsche and of Irische, and is to menyng, a contray pat conteyneþ an hondred townes, and is also in Englische i-cleped wepentake; for somtyme in þe comynge of a newe lorde tenauntes were i-wont to ȝilde

TREVISA.

Middelsex, Sowthefolke, Northefolke, Hertefordeschire, Huntyngdonschire, Northamptoneschire, Cambriggeschire, Bedfordeschire, Bukkynghamschire, Leicestreschire, Derbyschire, Notynghamschire, Lyncolneschire, Yorkeschire, Dircnteschire, Northumbrelande, Caerlielschire, Cumbirlande, Appelbischire, with Westmerlande, Lancastreschire, whiche containethe in hit v. other schires. These xv. schires afore seide of the este and of the northe were iuggede somme tyme by a lawe whiche was callede Danelaga. But Oxfordeeschire, Warwickeschire, Gloucestreschire, Wircestreschire, Herdefordeschire, Shropschire, Stafordeschire, and Chestreschire,—these viij. mydelleschires and weste were iuggede somme tyme by the lawe of marches, whiche was callede in Englische Merchenelaga. Also hit is to be attendede that the prouince of Yorke extendethe hit oonly now from the arche of the floode of Humbre vn to the floode of Teyse; neuerthelesse there be in hit xxij<sup>ti</sup> hondredes, whiche be callede wapentakes, for a hundrede in Latyn, other elles a tancrede in Walesche other Yrische, conteyneth a c. townes. A wapentake in Englische is seide to take wepens; for tenauntes were wonte to yelde

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Cambriggeshyre*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>3</sup> *Herefordschire*, *a.*; *Herfordshire*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *wete*, Cx., and so often.<sup>5</sup> *of*] om. *a.*; clause varied in Cx.

bant tenentes reddere arma sua pro homagio. Dureshire<sup>1</sup> se extendit a fluvio<sup>2</sup> These<sup>3</sup> usque ad flumen Tyne. Northumberland proprie sumendo, se extendit a flumine Tyne<sup>4</sup> usque ad flumen Twyde,<sup>5</sup> quod est principium Scotiæ. Si igitur plaga Northimbrana, quæ fuit olim ab Humbera usque ad Twedam, hodie pro<sup>6</sup> unica provincia seu comitatu,<sup>7</sup> sicut antiquitus computetur, tunc sunt in Anglia solummodo viginti duo shiræ. Si autem plaga Northimbrana dividatur in sex provincias prædictas, quæ sunt Everkshire,<sup>8</sup> Dureshire,<sup>9</sup> Northumberland, Caerlielsshire, Appelbyshire,<sup>10</sup> Lancastreshire,<sup>11</sup> tunc sunt in Anglia præter Cornubiam et insulas triginta sex shiræ,<sup>12</sup> provinciæ, sive comitatus. Quas omnes fecit Willelmus<sup>13</sup> Conquæstor.

<sup>1</sup> *Duresmeschire*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *flumine*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Tese*, B. ; *Thes*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Tyri*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Twede*, B. ; *Twide*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *pro*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *comitatus*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Everwikshire* altered to *Wer-*

*wickschire*, A. ; *Everwikshire*, B., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *Duresmeschire*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Appelbischire*, A.B.

<sup>11</sup> *Loncastreschire*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *shires*, E., and so above (once)

<sup>13</sup> *rex*, B.



vp hire wepene instede of homage. Duramschire strecchep TREVISA.  
 from þe ryuer Teyse<sup>1</sup> anon to þe ryuere Tyne. And for to  
 speke propurliche of Norphumberlond, Norphumberlond  
 strecchep from þe ryuere of Tyne anon to þe ryuere of Twede,  
 þat is þe<sup>2</sup> bygynnyng of Scotlond. Þan 3if the contrey of  
 Norphomberlond, þat was somtyme from Humber anon to  
 Twede, be now accounted for oon schire and oon erldom, as  
 it was somtyme, þan beþ in Engelond but two and pritty  
 schires, but 3if þe contry of Norphumberlond be<sup>3</sup> departed  
 in þe sixe forsaiðe<sup>4</sup> schires, þat beþ Euerwykschire, Du-  
 ramschire, Norphumberlond, Carlelschire, Appelbyschire,  
 Lancastreschire, þanne beþ in Engelond sixe and pritty  
 schires wipoute Cornewayle and also wipoute þe ilondes.  
 Kyng William þe Conquerour made alle þis prouince and  
 schires be descryved<sup>5</sup> and i-mete. Þan were i-founde sixe  
 and pritty schires<sup>6</sup> and an half,<sup>7</sup> and townes<sup>8</sup> two and fifty  
 þowsand and foure score; parische chirches fyue and forty  
 þowsand and tweyne; kny3tes fees sixty þowsand and  
 fiftene. Þerof<sup>9</sup> men of religioun hap ei3te and twenty  
 þowsand and fiftene kny3tes fees.<sup>10</sup> But now wodes [beþ]<sup>11</sup>  
 i-hewe adoun and newe telynge<sup>12</sup> lond i-made moche more  
 þan was þoo, and meny townes i-bulde, and so þere beþ now  
 in Engelond meny moo hides<sup>13</sup> and townes þan were in þat

theire wepens for an homage in the firste commenge of MS. HARL.  
 newe lordes. Duremschire extendethe hit from the floode 2261.  
 of Teyse to the floode of Tyne. Northumbrelonde pro-  
 prely extendethe hit from the floode of Tyne to the floode  
 of Twede, whiche is the begynnenge of Scotlonde. And  
 if the plage of Northumbrelonde, which was somme tyme  
 from Humber vn to Twede, be accomptede as for oon pro-  
 uince other schire, as hit was wonte, then there be in En-  
 gloude oonly xxxij<sup>ti</sup> schires. And if that plage of North-  
 umbrelonde be diuidede into vj. provinces, whiche be  
 Euerwikschire, Duremschire, Northumbrelonde, Carliel-  
 schire, Appelbeschire, Lancastreschire, then there be in  
 Englonde xxxvj<sup>ti</sup> schires, except yles perteynenge to that  
 londe, and also Cornewaile. Whiche alle William Conque-

<sup>1</sup> *Theyse, a.*

<sup>2</sup> *in the, Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *is, a. (not Cx.)*

<sup>4</sup> *forsaiðe*] om. Cx., probably  
 rightly.

<sup>5</sup> *So a. and Cx. (who has these  
 prouynces); destroyed, MS.*

<sup>6</sup> Text of the following clauses  
 as in a; more than thirty words

are repeated without sense in MS.  
 in various places.

<sup>7</sup> *and half a schire, a. and Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *and schire townes, MS.*

<sup>9</sup> *Wherof, Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> Some words repeated in MS.

<sup>11</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *tylienge, a.*

<sup>13</sup> *vyllages, Cx., who varies the  
 sentence considerably.*

describi, et per hydās<sup>1</sup> seu carucatas dimetiri, et inventi sunt comitatus triginta sex et dimidium; villæ vero quinquaginta duo milia et octoginta,<sup>2</sup> ecclesiæ parochiales quadraginta quinque milia duo, feoda militum 60,015, de quibus religiosi habent 28,015<sup>3</sup> feoda;<sup>4</sup> sed, hodie, nemoribus succisis novalibusque procisis,<sup>5</sup> multo plures sunt hidæ et villæ quam tunc erant.

## CAP. L.

*De legibus legumque vocabulis.*<sup>6</sup>

SANCIVIT<sup>7</sup> primum<sup>8</sup> leges in Britannia Dunwallo Molmutius, cujus leges Molmutinæ<sup>9</sup> dicebantur, usque

<sup>1</sup> *hidās*, A.

<sup>2</sup> 62080, D.

<sup>3</sup> So A.B., Gale, and the versions; 19,015, E.

<sup>4</sup> *de . . . feoda*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *novalibusque procisis*] *pascuisque ædificatis*, C.; *pascuisque præcisis*, B.D.

<sup>6</sup> *De legum conditoribus*, C.; *De legibus et earum interpretationibus*, D. This chapter, for which Higden gives no authorities, is almost en-

tirely taken from the *Chronicon* of John Brompton (pp. 956, 957, in Twysden's *Hist. Angl. Script.* x. Lond. 1652), whose readings are sometimes quoted. As usual the readings of C.D. agree better with the original.

<sup>7</sup> *Sanciit*, A.; *Edidit*, C.D., after *Britannia*.

<sup>8</sup> *primo*, A.B.

<sup>9</sup> *Molmutianæ*, C. (not D.); *Molmutinæ*, B.

tyme. *Trevisa*.<sup>1</sup> Hit is wondre why Alfred summeth the schires of Engelond somdel as a man þat mette; for Alfrede telleþ þe som of schires in þis manere: Þere beþ in Engelond sixe and þretty schires wipoute Conewayle and wipoute þe ylondes. Why seiþ he nouzt in þis manere: Þere beþ in Engelond sixe schires wip Cornwayle, and þretty oper schires wipoute þe ilondes? Eyper manere summyng is as vnredy as oper. For to make a redy somme it schulde be i-write in þis manere: In Engelond beþ seuen and þretty schires, and so is Cornwayle acounted wip þe opere schires; and þat is skilful. For Cornwayle is a schere of Engelond; for, as he seiþ, Cornwaile is in þis Bretayne hym self, as it is aleide<sup>2</sup> in þe fourþe chapitre of þis firste book. Ðan hit is in oon of þe chief parties of þis Bretayne, þat beþ Engelond, Wales, and Scotlond. But Cornwayle is nouzt in Wales, for pere is a grete see bytwene; noþer in Scotlonde, for pere beþ many hondred myle bytwene. Ðan Cornwayle is in Engelond, and is departed in hundredes, and is i-ruled by þe lawe of Engelond, and holdeþ schire and schire dayes, as opere schires doop. 3if Alfrede seiþ nay in þat, he wot nouzt what he maffleþ.

TREVISA,  
—

*De legibus legumque vocabulis. Capitulum quinquagesimum.*

DUNWALLO, þat hete Moluntius<sup>3</sup> also, made þe<sup>4</sup> firste lawes in Bretayne, the whiche lawes were i-cleped Moluntius his lawes,

---

rour, kyng of Englonde, causede to be describete, and the hides and carucates of londes to be measurede; in which londe xxxv<sup>ti</sup> schires were founde and dimid., li<sup>ti</sup> m. and lxxx. townes, and xl<sup>ti</sup> and v. m. peresche chirches and tweyne, lx. m. fees of knyghtes and xv., of whom religious men have xxvij<sup>ti</sup> m. and xv. fees; but now, woodes kytte downe and made arable londe, there be mony moo townes and hides of londe then were in that tyme.

MS. HARL.  
2261.  
—

*Of lawes and the wordes of lawes. Capitulum quinquagesimum.*

Dunwallo Molimicius ordeynede firste lawes in Briteyne, the lawes of whom were callede Molimitine, obseruede and

---

<sup>1</sup> The remainder of the chapter appears thus in Cx., who omits Trevisa's name:—"And whereas a fore is wreton that Cornuayll is not sette amonge the shires of England, it may stonde amonge them wel ynough. For it is neyther in Wales ne in Scotland, but is

" in England, and ioyneth to Deuensshire. And so may ther beu  
" acompted in Englonde xxxvij. shires  
" and a half with the other shires."

<sup>2</sup> aleyd, a.

<sup>3</sup> Moliuncius, Cx., and so below.

<sup>4</sup> þe] om. a., Cx.

ad tempora Willelmi Conquæstoris satis celebres. Inter quæ<sup>1</sup> statuit, ut civitates et templa deorum, viæque ad illa ducentes, ac<sup>2</sup> aratra colonum<sup>3</sup> immunitate confugii gauderent. Deinde Marcia regina Britonum, uxor Gwitelini<sup>4</sup> regis, a qua provincia Merciorum putatur denominata, legem edidit discretione et justitia<sup>5</sup> plenam, quæ lex Marcia vocabatur.<sup>6</sup> Has duas leges Gildas historicus transtulit de Britannico in Latinum, et rex Aluredus postmodum de Latino<sup>7</sup> in Saxonicum, quæ Merchenelaga<sup>8</sup> dicebatur.<sup>9</sup> Ipse quoque Aluredus legem Anglice conscriptam superadjecit, quæ Westsexenelaga<sup>10</sup> vocabatur.<sup>11</sup> Tandem Danis in hac<sup>12</sup> terra dominantibus, tertia lex emanavit, quæ Dane-laga<sup>13</sup> dicebatur. Ex his tribus legibus Sanctus Edwardus tertius unam legem communem edidit, quæ leges Edwardi usque hodie vocantur.<sup>14</sup> De quibus nonnulla vocabula adhuc frequentata cum eorum a

<sup>1</sup> *quis*, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *et*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *colunum*] So all the MSS. and Gale; also Brompton. So also above, p. 42, but the reading has probably sprung from a compendious mode of writing.

<sup>4</sup> So D. distinctly (omitting *regis*); *Guentilini*, C.; *Gintelini*, Gale.

<sup>5</sup> *legem*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *vocatur*, C.D.; *dicebatur*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *de Latino*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Merchenelaga*, B.C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *vocabatur*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Westsexonelaga*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *Ipse . . . vocabatur*] om. B.; *vocatur*, C. (not D.)

<sup>12</sup> *huc*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Danelaga*, A.

<sup>14</sup> *usque hodie* before *leges* in B.

and were solempne<sup>1</sup> anon to William Conquerour his tyme. TREVISIA.  
 Moluntius ordeynede among his lawes, þat citees, temples,  
 and weies þat ledeþ perto, and plowh men solowes schulde  
 haue priuelege and fredom forto saue alle men þat wolde  
 flee perto for socour and refute.<sup>2</sup> Þan aftirward Marcia,  
 queene of Bretouns, þat was Guytelynus þe kynges wyf, of  
 hire þe prouince hadde þe name Mercia, as som men troweþ.  
 Sche<sup>3</sup> made a lawe ful of riȝt and<sup>4</sup> of wit and resoun, and  
 was i-cleped Merchene lawe. Gildas, þat wroot stories of  
 Bretouns, turnede þese tweie lawes out of Bretoun speche  
 in to Latyn, and afterward kyng Alredes<sup>5</sup> turned alle in fere<sup>6</sup>  
 out of Latyn in to Saxon speche, and<sup>7</sup> was i-cleped alle  
 in fere Merchene lawe. Also the same kyng Alredus wroot  
 in Englische, and putte to anoper lawe, þat heet West Sexene  
 lawe. Þanne afterward Danes were lordes in þis lond, and  
 so com<sup>9</sup> forþ the þridde lawe þat heet Dane lawe. Of þese  
 þre lawes Seynt Edward þe þridde<sup>10</sup> made oon comyn lawe, þat  
 ȝit hatte<sup>11</sup> Seint Edwardes lawe. I<sup>12</sup> holde hit be worthy<sup>13</sup>

kepede welle vn to the tyme of William Conquerour. MS. HARL.  
 Amonge whom he made a statute that cites, temples of 2261.  
 goddes, weies ledenge to theyme, and the ploes of tillers of  
 londe, scholde ioy imunitie of confute. After that Marcia,  
 qwene of Britones, wife to kyng Gvitylne, of whom the  
 prouince of the marches be trawede to have taken their  
 name, made a law full of ryȝhtenousenes and of descresion,  
 whiche was callede the lawe of the Marches. Gildas, the  
 writer of storyes, did translate those ij. lawes from the  
 langage of Britones in to Latyne. And kyng Alurede f. 68. b.  
 did translate hit from Latyn in to the speche of Saxones,  
 whiche lawe was callede Merchengelaga. Also kyng  
 Alurede caste to that lawe writen in Englische whiche  
 was callede Weste Saxon lawe. Then after that, the  
 Danes reignenge in that londe, the thridde lawe began,  
 whiche was callede Danelaga. Kyng Edward the thridde  
 made oon commune lawe of those three lawes, whiche be  
 callede vn to this tyme presente the lawes of Seynte Ed-

<sup>1</sup> were solompnly (sic) obserued  
 unto, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> refuge, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> He, a.

<sup>4</sup> and] om. a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Aluredus, a. and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> in fere] om. Cx., and also  
 below.

<sup>7</sup> and]. Here and above the sense  
 requires þat.

<sup>8</sup> Aluredus, a. and Cx.

<sup>9</sup> cam, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> the confessour, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> So a. ; hadde, MS.

<sup>12</sup> I] Iche, a.

<sup>13</sup> it wel don, Cx.

explicationibus<sup>1</sup> hic<sup>2</sup> inserere dignum duxi: Mundbriche<sup>3</sup> id est, læsio majestatis; Gallice, blemur de honur.<sup>4</sup> Burgbriche,<sup>5</sup> id est, læsio libertatis aut septi; Gallice, blemure de court ou de clos. Grithbruche,<sup>6</sup> id est, fractio pacis. Miskennigh,<sup>7</sup> id est, variatio loquelæ in curia. Sheauwyngh,<sup>8</sup> propositio mercimonii; Gallice, despleyure<sup>9</sup> de marchaundise. Ham-soken<sup>10</sup> vel Hamfare,<sup>11</sup> id est, insultus factus in domo. Forstalling,<sup>12</sup> id est, coactio vel obsistentia facta in<sup>13</sup> strata regia. Frithsoken,<sup>14</sup> id est, tutatio<sup>15</sup> in jurisdictione; Gallice, seurte<sup>16</sup> en defence. Infangthef<sup>17</sup> pelfinde in ward,<sup>18</sup> id est, infra suum<sup>19</sup> capere reum; Gallice, dedeinz<sup>20</sup> le soen<sup>21</sup> attachement de laroun.<sup>22</sup> Saka,<sup>23</sup> id est, jurisdictio; Gallice, courte justice, forfet ou achesoun.<sup>24</sup> Soka, id est, secta curiæ. Ex inde<sup>25</sup> dicitur Sokne;<sup>26</sup> sed sokne aliquando dicitur interpellatio majoris audientiæ. Wergelthef, id est, solte<sup>27</sup> de laroun eschape.<sup>28</sup> Theam,<sup>29</sup> id est, laudare auctorem; Gallice, reuoucher<sup>30</sup> garaunt. Et quandoque dicitur sequela nativorum. Fihtwite,<sup>31</sup> id est, ferir<sup>32</sup> per melle.<sup>33</sup> Wardwyte, id est, sursise<sup>34</sup> de garde. Blodwyte,<sup>35</sup> id est, amerciamentum pro effusione san-

<sup>1</sup> *expositionibus*, B., Gale.

<sup>2</sup> *hic*] om. C.

<sup>3</sup> All these words are written in large characters and underlined with red in B.

<sup>4</sup> *blesmure de honure*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *Burbriche*, D., Brompton.

<sup>6</sup> *Grythbriche*, A., Gale, Br.

<sup>7</sup> So E. apparently; *Miskennyng*, B.; *Miskennig*, A., Gale, Br.; *Miskernig*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Sheuweng*, B.; *Schewing*, Gale; *Seauwynng*, A.; *Schewing*, D.; *Scheauwynng*, Br.

<sup>9</sup> *depleyuer de marchaundis*, A.; *displegure*, Gale; *despleier*, D.; *despliaunce*, Br.

<sup>10</sup> *Hamsokne*, A., Gale; *Hamsokin*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *Hemfare*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *Forstawing*, Gale; *Foristalle*, D.; *Forstall*, Br.

<sup>13</sup> *in*] om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *Frithsokne*, A., Gale.

<sup>15</sup> *facta*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *surte en defens*, A.; *suet on defense*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Infangthef*, A.

<sup>18</sup> *pelfindinward*, B.; *pelfunde in ward*, D.; *thelfind*, Br. The true reading is probably *Infangenþeof self finde in ward*. See *Introduction*.

<sup>19</sup> *attachiumentum* should be added from Brompton.

<sup>20</sup> So A.B.D., Gale; *deinz*, E.

<sup>21</sup> *soun*, B.; *seon*, Gale.

<sup>22</sup> *laron*, A., Gale; *larron*, D.

<sup>23</sup> *Sake*, B.

<sup>24</sup> *acheson*, A.; *achesun*, Gale; *jurisdictum de court ou achesun*, D.

<sup>25</sup> *Et deinde*, A.; *Et inde*, Gale.

<sup>26</sup> *Soken*, A. Sentence altered in D.

<sup>27</sup> *solte*] om. B.

<sup>28</sup> *escape*, B.

<sup>29</sup> *Theam*, B.

<sup>30</sup> So B.C.D.; *reuoch garant*, A.; *revocher garant*, Gale.; *reneche*, E.

<sup>31</sup> *Frithwite*, B.; *Fightwit*, D.; *Fyghtwyt*, A., Gale.; *Flitwithe*, Br., which is probably right.

<sup>32</sup> *ferer*, A.

<sup>33</sup> *molle*, C. (not D.); *medlie*, Br.

<sup>34</sup> *fursis*, B.

<sup>35</sup> *Blodwite*, B.; *Blodwit*, Gale.

to write here and expowne meny termes of pese lawes. TREVISIA.  
 Mundbreche,<sup>1</sup> hertynge of honour and of worschepe ;<sup>2</sup> a<sup>3</sup> —  
 Frensche, blesmure<sup>4</sup> de honoure. Burghbreche ;<sup>5</sup> a Frensche,  
 blesmure de court, ou de cloys. Grythbruche, [brekyngge]<sup>6</sup> of  
 pees. Miskenyngge, chaunginge of speche in court. Schewyngge,  
 settinge forþ of marchaundise ; a Frensche, despleur<sup>7</sup> de  
 marchaundise. Hamsokene oper Hamfare, a rese i-made in  
 hous. Forstallyngge, wrong oper let i-doo in þe kynges hiþe  
 weie. Fryth sokene ; in Frensche, suerte<sup>8</sup> in diffens.  
 Infantif<sup>9</sup> pelfynde inward ; a Frensche, dedeyns le soen  
 atachment de laroun.<sup>10</sup> Sake ; [a Frensche, court justice  
 forfet ou achesoun. Soka],<sup>11</sup> sute of court, and perof comeþ  
 Sokene,<sup>12</sup> but Sokene operwhile is forto aske lawe in þe  
 gretter court. Wergiltif,<sup>13</sup> solte de laroun<sup>14</sup> eschape. Theam,  
 Frensche, reuouche garant ; and somtyme Theam is i-cleped  
 þe sewte of bonde men. Fightyngge wyte, amersement for  
 fightyngge, ferir melle. Wardwhite, forfise de garde. Blodwyte,  
 mersement for schedyngge of blood. Cultwyte,<sup>15</sup> amendes for

warde, mony wordes of whiche lawe nede an exposicion, MS. HARL.  
 as Mundebriche, hurte of maieste, in Frenche, Blesmur de 2261.  
 honour ; Burbriche, a hurte of liberte, in Frenche, Blesmur  
 de court, ou de clos ; Grithbriche, a brekenge of peace ;  
 Muskenning, diuersite other chaungenge of speche in courte ;  
 Scheauwyngge, sette furthe of marchandise, in Frenche,  
 displevir de marchandise ; Hamsokne or Hamfare, þat is,  
 a fray made in an howse ; Forstallyngge, constreynenge made  
 in the kynges strete. Frith sokne, suerte in a iurisdiction,  
 in Frenche, surte en defence. Infanthef pelfynde inwarde,  
 that is to say, to take a gilty man within his lordeschippe,  
 in Frenche, dedeins le soen atachement de laron. Saca, a  
 iurisdiction, in Frenche, court iustice. Soka, a sute of the  
 courte, where of Sokne is seyde. But Sokne is seide other-  
 while an interpellacion of a moore grete audience. Werk-  
 elthef, that is to say, solte de laron eschamp. Thean, that  
 is, to lawde the auctor, in Frenche, reuouche graunte ; whiche  
 is callede otherwhile a sequele of natife men. Blodewitte,  
 a merciamente for effusion of bloode. Hittewite, amendes

<sup>1</sup> *Myndebruche*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *of worschippe and of honour*, a.

<sup>3</sup> *in*, Cx., everywhere.

<sup>4</sup> *bleschur*, Cx., and so below.

<sup>5</sup> *Burchbruch*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *brekyngge*] Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *displeix*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *surte*, a.

<sup>9</sup> *Infangthef*, a. ; which is the more usual form. Cx. has some omissions here, and further on.

<sup>10</sup> *laroun eschape*, MS. (not a.)

<sup>11</sup> Added from a.

<sup>12</sup> *Sokne*, a.

<sup>13</sup> *Wergelthef*, a.

<sup>14</sup> *laroun*, a.

<sup>15</sup> *Gultwite*, Cx.

guinis. Flitwite,<sup>1</sup> id est, emenda proveniens pro<sup>2</sup> contentione. Leyrwyte,<sup>3</sup> id est<sup>4</sup> emenda<sup>5</sup> pro corruptione nativæ.<sup>6</sup> Gultwyte,<sup>7</sup> id est, emenda pro transgressione Scot, id est, symbolum ad opus ballivorum domini.<sup>8</sup> Hidage vel<sup>9</sup> Taillage,<sup>10</sup> id est, tallagium<sup>11</sup> de hidis terrarum. Danegelt,<sup>12</sup> id est, tallagium datum Danis, id est iij. denarios<sup>13</sup> de qualibet bovata terræ. Wapentak et hundrede<sup>14</sup> idem sunt, quia<sup>15</sup> procinctus centum villarum solebat reddere arma in adventu domini. Lestage, id est, consuetudo exacta in nundinis et mercatis. Stalage, id est, exactio pro statione in plateis tempore nundinarum.<sup>16</sup>

## CAP. LI.

*De regnis regnorumque limitibus.*

*Alfridus.*<sup>17</sup> Inconcussa stetit apud Britones insulæ monarchia, a primo scilicet Bruto usque ad Julium Cæsarem;<sup>18</sup> a quo<sup>19</sup> Julio usque ad Severum hæc insula Romanis fuit<sup>20</sup> vectigalis et subacta. Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque<sup>21</sup> usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum; deficiente Britonum successione, Romani in ea regnaverunt.<sup>22</sup> Romanis tandem<sup>23</sup> propter itineris

<sup>1</sup> *Flitwite*, Br., which is probably right; *Fightwit*, D., which has *Fightwit* however under the other head.

<sup>2</sup> *ex*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *Lethirwite*, B.; *Letherwithe*, Br.

<sup>4</sup> *id est*] Added from B., Gale.

<sup>5</sup> *proveniens*, ins. A.

<sup>6</sup> *nativo*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Giltwite*, D.; *Giltwithe*, Br.

<sup>8</sup> *regis*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *vel Taillage*] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *talage*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *tallagium*, Gale, *talliagium*, D.; and so below.

<sup>12</sup> *Danegeld*, A.

<sup>13</sup> *ijj. denarios* after *terræ* in B.

<sup>14</sup> *hundred*, A.; *hundredus*, C.D., Gale.

<sup>15</sup> *quasi*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> The latter part of this chapter varies verbally, but is the same in substance in C.D.; a few very trivial variations of orthography in the MSS. are not noticed.

<sup>17</sup> B. omits reference.

<sup>18</sup> Transposed and altered in C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *quidem*, add. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *fuit Romanis*, B.

<sup>21</sup> *quoque*] om. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> Gale adds: *viz., a tempore Julii Cæsaris per cccclxx. annos ferme.*

<sup>23</sup> *tamen*, C. (not D.)



trespas. Scot, a gaderynge in work of baylifes. Flittwyte, amendes i-doo for chydyng. Leyrewite,<sup>1</sup> amendes for lig-gyng by a bond womman. Hydage, taylage of hydes of lond. Danegeld,<sup>2</sup> taylage i-zeue to þe Danes, þat was þre pans of eueriche<sup>3</sup> bouata terræ, þat is, of eueriche oxeland. A wepentake and an hondred is al oon, for þe contry of an hondred townes were i-woned to zilde vppe wepene<sup>4</sup> in þe comyng of þe lord. Lastage,<sup>5</sup> custom i-chalanged in chepynges and in feyres. Stalage, custom for stondyng in stretes in feyre tyme.

TREVISA.

*De regnis regnorumque limitibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.*

The kyngdom of Bretayne stood wipoute departyng hool and alle oon kyngdom to þe Britouns fram þe firste Bruyt anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme; [and fro Iulius Cesar his tyme]<sup>6</sup> to Seuerus his tyme þis lond was vnder tribute to þe Romayns. Neuerþeles kynges þey hadde of þe same ilond. From Seuerus anon to þe laste<sup>7</sup> prince Gratian, successoures of Bretouns faillede, and Romaynes reignede in Bretayne. [Afterward þe Romanys lefte of þe regnyng in Britayne],<sup>8</sup>

commenge for stryvenge. Leirwite, that is to say, amendes MS. HARL. 2261. commenge for the corrupcion of a woman natife. Gultewite, an amendes for a transgression. Scot, that is the paymente of a certeyne money to the vtilite of the lorde. Hidage other talage, that is to say, tallage of the hides of the londe. Danegelde, a tallage ziffen to the Danes of iij<sup>d</sup>. Wapentake and hundrede be the same as the precinete of an c. townes, whiche were wonte to yelde there weppens in the firste commenge of theire lorde. Lestage, that is a thyng required in feires. Stallage, an exaccion for stondenge in the hie weies in tyme of feires.

*Of realmes and of the merkes of theyme. Capitulum f. 69. a. quinquagesimum primum.*

The monarchy of the yle of Briteyne stode inconcussede from the firste Brute to Iulius Cesar; whiche yle paiede a tribute to the Romanes from the tyme of Iulius vn to the tyme of Seuerus; the succession of Britones faylunge Romanes reignede in hit. At the laste, the Romanes

<sup>1</sup> So a.; *Leyrwe*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> So a.; *Danagild*, MS.; *Daneheld*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *euericha*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *towneswepene*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Lestage*, a., Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Added from Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So a. and Cx.; *same*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

longitudinem seu propter inevitabiles aliunde occupationes<sup>1</sup> regnare desistentibus, Scoti<sup>2</sup> et Picti Britanniam, omni armato milite per abductionem Maximi tyranni<sup>3</sup> vacuatam,<sup>4</sup> diutius affligerunt; quousque Saxones a Britonibus invitati contra Pictos regem Hibernicum Gurmundum cum Pictis suis et<sup>5</sup> ipsos Britones cum Caretico rege suo de Loegria expulsos usque ad<sup>6</sup> Cambriam profugassent.<sup>7</sup> Sicque Saxones<sup>9</sup> victores effecti, prout quæque provincia potentior erat, reges proprios sibi<sup>10</sup> constituentes, terram Angliæ<sup>11</sup> in septem regna<sup>12</sup> diviserunt; quæ tamen postmodum successive in unam monarchiam sub principe Adelstano<sup>13</sup> coierunt.<sup>14</sup> Dani tamen a diebus Adewolphi,<sup>15</sup> patris Aluredi, usque ad tempora Sancti<sup>16</sup> Edwardi tertii per centum septuaginta circiter annos, terram hanc jugiter infestaverunt, sed<sup>17</sup> per triginta annos in ea continue regnaverunt. Post Danos<sup>18</sup> vero Sanctus Edwardus tertius viginti tribus<sup>19</sup> annis et paulo plus,<sup>20</sup> et post eum Haroldus<sup>21</sup> novem mensibus regnum tenuit. Post quos Normanni in ea usque hodie præ sederunt. Quod<sup>22</sup> quamdiu tenebunt in posterum, novit ille qui nihil ignorat. *Ranulphus.*<sup>23</sup> De septem vero regnis prædictis eorumque limitibus quando incepe-

<sup>1</sup> *tandem*, add. C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> Here and elsewhere the MSS. vary between *Scoti* and *Scotti*.

<sup>3</sup> *abductionem . . . tyranni*] Maximum tyrannum, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *evacuatam*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *regem . . . et*] auxilio eorundem Pictorum regisque Gurmundi Hibernici, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *in*, B., Gale.

<sup>7</sup> *Loegria . . . profugassent*] Northimbria et in mediterranea Anglia expulsos usque in Walliam detrusissent, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Sique*, B.; *Sic*, Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *Angli*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sibi*] om. B.C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Angliam*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *successive*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Athelstano*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *postmodum . . . coierunt*] paulatim defecerunt donec rex Saxonum Adelstanus, cæteris particulis in unum contractis, unica gauderet monarchia, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Athelwulfi*, Gale; *Ethelwulfi*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *regis*, Gale.

<sup>17</sup> *et*, add. C. (not D.)

<sup>18</sup> *Post Danos*] postmodum, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> 30, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *et paulo plus*] om. C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *Haraldus*, B.D.

<sup>22</sup> *Quam*, C. (not D.)

<sup>23</sup> C.D. omit reference.

for it was fer from [Rome],<sup>1</sup> oper for greet besynesse pat TREVISA.  
 pey hadde in oper side. Panne Scottes and Pictes by  
 mysledynge of Maximus þe tyraunt pursued Bretayne, and  
 werred þerynne wiþ greet strengþe of men of armes longe  
 tyme, for to þe Saxones come at þe prayenge of [þe]<sup>1</sup>  
 Britouns aʒenst þe Pictes, and putte out Gurmund the Irische  
 kyng wiþ his Pictes, and þe Britouns also wiþ here kyng,  
 þat heet Carecticus,<sup>2</sup> and drof hem out of Engelond in to  
 Wales. And so þe Saxons were victors, and eueriche  
 prouince, as he was strengere, made hem kynges; and so  
 þey deled Engelond in seuene kyngdoms.<sup>3</sup> Neuerpeles  
 afterward þese seuene kyngdoms eueriche after oper come  
 alle in to oon kyngdom al hool vnder þe prince Adelstone.  
 Neuerpeles þe Danes pursewed þis lond from Athelwolf his  
 tyme, þat was Alrudes<sup>4</sup> fader, to the pridde Seint Ed-  
 wardes<sup>5</sup> tyme, aboute an hundred ʒere þre score and ten;  
 but he reigned þerynne continualliche pritty ʒere. After  
 þe Danes þe pridde Seynt Edward regned þere ynne þre and  
 twenty ʒere and a litelwhat<sup>6</sup> more. And after hym Harald  
 helde þe kyngdom nyne monþes. And after hem Normans  
 haueþ i-regned þerynne anon to þis tyme; but how longe  
 they scholde holde he woot [þat]<sup>7</sup> no þing vnknoweþ. R.  
 Of þe forsaide kyngdoms seuene, of here merkes, meres, and

levenge to reigne in hit, what for the longitude of trauaile MS. HARL.  
 and what for other ocupaciones ineuitable, Scottes and 2261.  
 Pictes wastede that londe of Briteyne with a grete hoste,  
 tyll that the Saxones beenge victores chasede the Pictes  
 and Scottes in to Wales. And then euery prouince after  
 their powere made to theyme kynges, diuidenge the grownde  
 of Englonde in to vij. realmes, whiche come alle afterwarde  
 by succession in to oon monarchye in the tyme of kynge  
 Athelstan. The Danes trowblede that londe gretely from  
 the tyme of Athelwulphus, fader to kynge Alurede, vn to  
 the tymes of Seynte Edward the thrydde, by a c. lx. and  
 x. yeres, reignenge by xxx<sup>ti</sup> yeres continually in hit.  
 Seynte Edward the thrydde regnede after the Danes xxij<sup>ti</sup>  
 yere and more, and Haralde after hym by ix. monethes.  
 After whom Normannes regnede in hit vn to oure tymes,  
 God knowethe how longe that schalle continue. R. Of  
 whiche vij. realmes aforeseide, and of the merkes of theyme,

1 Added from *a.* and Cx.

2 *Carecticus*, Cx.

3 Sentence varied in Cx.

4 *Aluredes*, *a.*

5 *Edward his*, *a.*

6 *what*] om. Cx.

7 Added from *a.*; construction varied in Cx., who has a few trivial alterations in some of the following sentences.

rint,<sup>1</sup> quantumve<sup>2</sup> duraverint<sup>3</sup> aliqua breviter hic perstringam. *Alfridus*.<sup>4</sup> Primum regnum fuit Cantuariorum, ab australi oceano usque ad flumen<sup>5</sup> Thamisiæ protensum. In quo primus Hengistus<sup>6</sup> sub anno Domini secundum Dionysium CCCCLV.<sup>7</sup> regnare cœpit, et duravit regnum illud per annos<sup>8</sup> cccclxviii.<sup>9</sup> sub regulis quindecim; donec, Baldredo<sup>10</sup> expulso, Egbertus<sup>11</sup> rex Westsaxonum illud regnum suo annexerit imperio.<sup>12</sup> Secundum regnum fuit Southsaxoniam, habens ab oriente Cantiam,<sup>13</sup> ab austro mare et<sup>14</sup> Vectam insulam, ab occidente Hampteshire,<sup>15</sup> ab aquilone Southreyam;<sup>16</sup> in quo primus Elle, cum tribus filiis suis, tricesimo<sup>17</sup> ab adventu Anglorum anno cœpit regnare. Quod quidem regnum cito post in aliorum jura<sup>18</sup> transivit. Tertium regnum fuit Estsaxoniam, habens ab oriente mare,<sup>19</sup> ab occidente pagum Londoniam, ab austro Thamisiam, ab aquilone Southfolk;<sup>20</sup> cujus loci<sup>21</sup> reges a primo Sabberto<sup>22</sup> usque ad tempora Dacorum per decem reges<sup>23</sup> fere sub<sup>24</sup> aliis regibus parebant; frequentius tamen et diutius regibus Merciorum<sup>25</sup> subjacebant; donec rex Westsaxonum Egbertus regnum illud suo annexerit imperio. Quartum

<sup>1</sup> *incepterunt*, B.D., Gale.

<sup>2</sup> *quantumque*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *duraverunt*, B.D., Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *Alfridus*] om. C.D.; *Alfredus*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *finem*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *primum Engistus*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *lv.*, B. (error of scribe.)

<sup>8</sup> *per annos*] om. E.

<sup>9</sup> *cccclviii.*, Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *Bladredo*, C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *Eggebertus*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *regno*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Ousiam*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *ad*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *Hamptunshire*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *Southiam*, B.; *Southeram*, Gale.

<sup>17</sup> *xxx.* after *Anglorum*, B.

<sup>18</sup> So A.B.C.D.; *cito post* after *jura*, B.; *regna*, E.

<sup>19</sup> *Gallicum mare*, Gale.

<sup>20</sup> *Sowtfolk*, B.

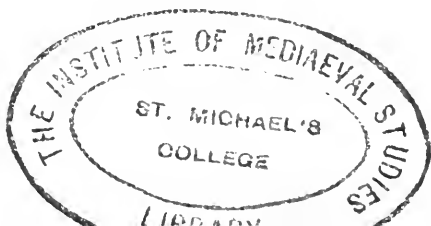
<sup>21</sup> *loci*] om. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *Saberto*, A.B.C.D., Gale.

<sup>23</sup> *regulos*, C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *semper*, C.D.

<sup>25</sup> *Marceorum*, A.



bondes, whan þey bygonne and how longe þey durede here I schal somewhat schortliche telle. *Alfridus*. Þe firste kyngdom was þe kyngdom of Kent, þat strecchep from þe est ocean anon to þe ryuer of Temse. Þere reigned þe firste Hengistus, and bygan to reigne by Denys acountes þe 3ere of oure Lord foure hondred and fife and fifty. Þat kyngdom durede þre hondred 3ere þre score and ei3te vnder fiftene kynges, for to þat Baldred was i-putte out. And<sup>1</sup> Eggebert, kyng of Westsaxons, ioyned þat kyngdom to his owne. Þe secounde kyngdom was of Soupsaxon, þat hadde in þe est side Kent, in þe souþ þe see and þe yle of Wi3t, in þe west Hampschire, and in þe norþ Souperay. Þere Ella regnede first wip his þre sones, and bygan to reigne þe 3ere after þe comynge of Angles euen pritty; but þat kyngdom wipynne a schort tyme passede into opere kyngdoms. Þe þridde kyngdom was of Estsaxon, and hadde in þe est side þe see, and in þe west þe contray of Londoun, in þe souþ Temse, in þe north Sopfolk. Þe kynges of this contray Estsaxon from þe firste Sabertes tyme anon to þe tyme of Danes, ten kynges, were somdel sugette to opere kynges; nopeles oft-este and lengeste þey were vnder þe kynges of Mercia forto þat tyme whan Egebert kyng, kyng of Wessaxoun, ioyned

TREVISA.

when thei began, and how longe thei haue indurede, y schalle towche in parte. *Alfridus*. The firste realme was of men of Cavnturbery, protendede from the sowthe ocean vn to the floode of Thamys, in whom Hengiste roignede firste in the yere of oure Lorde God, after Dionysius, cecc. lv. yere, and that realme durede by ccc. lxxvij. yere vnder xv. lytelle kynges, vntil, Baldredus<sup>2</sup> expulsede, Egbertus kyng of Westesaxones added that realme to his impire. The secounde realme was of Sowthesex, hauenge on the este to hit Kente, of the sowthe the see and the yle of Wi3hte, at the weste Hampteschire, at the northe Southeray, in whom Elle with his thre childer began to reigne firste in the xxx<sup>ii</sup> yere from the commenge of Engliche men, whiche realme wente soone after in to other realmes. The thrydde realme was of Estesex, hauenge on the este to hit the see of Fraunce, on the weste the cite of London, on the sowthe Thamys, on the northe to hit, Southefolke. The kynges of whiche place from the firste Seberte vn to the tyme of Danes, by x. kynges, were obediente to other kynges, moste specially to the kynges of þe Marches, vn til that Egberte, kyng of Westesaxones, subduede hit to his impyre.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 69 b.

<sup>1</sup> And] So a. and Cx. ; of, MS. | <sup>2</sup> Haldredus, Harl. MS.

regnum fuit Estanglorum, comprehendens<sup>1</sup> Northfolk et Southfolk, habens<sup>2</sup> ad orientem et aquilonem mare,<sup>3</sup> ad circium<sup>4</sup> Cantebreggshire,<sup>5</sup> ad occidentem Fossam Sancti Edmundi et Hertefordshire,<sup>6</sup> ad austrum Essex.<sup>7</sup> Et duravit<sup>8</sup> hoc regnum sub duodecim regulis donec, occiso rege Edmundo, Dani utrumque regnum Estangliæ<sup>9</sup> et Estsaxonum sibi usurparent.<sup>10</sup> Quibus postmodum<sup>11</sup> Danis<sup>12</sup> aut fugatis<sup>13</sup> aut subactis, rex Edwardus senior ambo illa regna suo annexuit<sup>14</sup> imperio. Quintum regnum fuit Westsaxonum, omnium regnorum durabilius, habens ab oriente Southsaxoniam, ab aquilone Thamisiæ,<sup>15</sup> ab austro et occidente<sup>16</sup> oceanum. In quo cœpit regnare Cerdicus<sup>17</sup> cum filio suo<sup>18</sup> Kynrico,<sup>19</sup> anno Domini secundum Dionysium DXIX<sup>o</sup>, ab adventu<sup>20</sup> Anglorum lxxj<sup>o</sup>.; in quod<sup>21</sup> regnum cætera<sup>22</sup> regna transierunt.<sup>23</sup> Sextum regnum fuit Merciorum cæteris regnis<sup>24</sup> magis spatiosum, cujus limites fuerunt ad occasum flumen<sup>25</sup> Dee, juxta Cestriam,<sup>26</sup> et flumen Sabrinæ juxta Salopiam usque<sup>27</sup> Bristolliam; ad ortum vero<sup>28</sup> mare orientale,<sup>29</sup> ad

<sup>1</sup> *contineus*, C.D.; *apprehendens*, B.  
<sup>2</sup> *habensque*, C.D.  
<sup>3</sup> *mare*] oceanum, C.D.  
<sup>4</sup> *circuitum*, Gale.  
<sup>5</sup> *Cantbrigschire*, B.  
<sup>6</sup> *Hertthfordschire*, B.  
<sup>7</sup> *Estsex*, B.; *Estsaxoniam*, C.D.  
<sup>8</sup> *cucurrîtque*, C.; *curritque*, D.  
<sup>9</sup> *Est Anglorum*, Gale, C.D.; *Est Angl*, A.B.  
<sup>10</sup> *usurparunt*, C.D.  
<sup>11</sup> *tamen*, C.D.  
<sup>12</sup> *Danis postmodum*, B.  
<sup>13</sup> *aut fugatis*] affugatis, B.  
<sup>14</sup> *subjunxit*, C.; *adjunxit*, D.; *annexit*, B.  
<sup>15</sup> *flumen Thamisiæ*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *mare oceanum*, C.D. After *oceanum* Gale adds, *viz.*, *usque ad ultimum finem Cornubiæ*.  
<sup>17</sup> *Cordicus*, Gale.  
<sup>18</sup> *quo . . . suo*] om. B.  
<sup>19</sup> *Henrico*, C. (not D.)  
<sup>20</sup> *vero*, add. C.D.  
<sup>21</sup> *quod quidem*, D.  
<sup>22</sup> *certa*, B.  
<sup>23</sup> *paulative* (sic) *coierunt*, C.D. (with other slight variations.)  
<sup>24</sup> *regnis*] om. C.D.  
<sup>25</sup> *flumen*] om. C.D.  
<sup>26</sup> *Legecestriam*, C.D.  
<sup>27</sup> *usque ad*, A.  
<sup>28</sup> *vero*] om. C.D.  
<sup>29</sup> *occidentale*, C. (not D.)

pat kyngdom to his owne. Þe fourþe kyngdom was of Est Angles, and conteynede Norþfolk and Souþfolk, and hap<sup>1</sup> in þe est side<sup>2</sup> and in þe norþ þe see, in þe norþ-west Cantebriggeshire,<sup>3</sup> in þe west Seynt Edmond his dicke, and Hertfordschire, and in þe souþ Essex. Þis kyngdom durede vnder twelue kynges,<sup>4</sup> forto that tyme whan kyng Edmond was i-slawe, and þe Danes wrongfulliche took boþe the kyngdoms of Est Angles and of Est Saxon. Afterward þe Danes were i-putte and i-dryue away, oper i-made sogett. And þe elder kyng Edward ioynede boþe þese kyngdoms to his owne. Þe fifte kyngdom was of Westsaxon, and durede lengeste of alle þese kyngdoms, and hadde in þe est<sup>5</sup> side Souþsaxon, in þe norþ Temse, in þe souþ and west þe see of oceane. In þat kyngdom reigned Cerdik wif his sone Kenrik, and bygan to regne þe 3ere of oure Lord fife hondred and nyntene, and after þe comynge of Angles þre score 3ere and enleuene,<sup>6</sup> so seiþ Denys. Þe opere kyngdoms passede into þis kyngdom. Þe sixte kyngdom was of Mercia, and was grettest of al. Þe merkes and þe meres þerof were in þe west side þe ryuer Dee faste by Chestre, and Seuarne faste by Schreisbury<sup>7</sup> and anon to Brestowe ; in

TREVISA.

The iiij<sup>th</sup> realme was of Este Engliche men, comprehendenge Northefolke and Southefolke, hauenge at the este to hit and on the northe the see, at the weste the dyche of Seynte Edmunde and Hertefordschire, at the sowthe Estesex ; and this realme durede vnder xij. kynges, vn tyl Seynte Edmunde sleyne, the Danes vsurpede the realme of Estenglonde, and also of Estesex ; whom kyng Edwarde the senior put to his realme, the Danes other put to flizhte other subacte. The v<sup>th</sup> realme was of Westesaxones, moste durable of alle realmes, hauenge on the este to hit Sowthesex, on the northe Thamys, on the sowthe and weste the oceane. In whom Cerdicus began to reigne with Kymricus his son, after Dionysius, the yere of oure Lorde God v<sup>c</sup>. xix. yere, from the commenge of Engliche men lxxj. yere. In to whom opere realmes wente. The sexte realme was of the Marches, more large then other realmes. The merkes of whom were, at the weste, the floode of Dee nye to Chestre, and the floode of Seuarne nye to Shrewesbury vn to Bristowe, at the este the

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> *had, a.*  
<sup>2</sup> *So a. ; in west side, MS. (w being erased.)*  
<sup>3</sup> *Cambrigeshire, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *So Cx. ; kyngdoms, MS.*  
<sup>5</sup> *So Cx. ; west, MS. (first hand.)*  
<sup>6</sup> *eleaene, a.*  
<sup>7</sup> *Schrouesbury, a.*

austrum flumen Thamisiæ usque Londoniam; ab aquilone<sup>1</sup> flumen Humberæ, descendendo occidentaliter<sup>2</sup> usque ad flumen Merse,<sup>3</sup> quousque juxta<sup>4</sup> cornu Wyrallia<sup>5</sup> descendat in mare occidentale. In hoc pago regnavit<sup>6</sup> primo Penda, filius Wybbæ,<sup>7</sup> anno Domini secundum Dionysium DCXXVI<sup>0</sup>, ab adventu Anglorum clxxv<sup>0</sup>,<sup>8</sup> stetitque hoc regnum sub regibus xvij. per annos circiter cclxij. usque ad ultimum Colwulfum;<sup>9</sup> cui Dani, expulso Burdredo rege, regnum illud<sup>10</sup> tradiderant custodiendum. Verum<sup>11</sup> rex Westsaxonum Edwardus senior, expulsis Danis, regnum Merciorum suo annexuit imperio. Erat tamen hoc regnum in sui primordio in tres partes divisum; scilicet in Occidentales Mercios, in<sup>12</sup> Mediterraneos, et in<sup>13</sup> Orientales Mercios. Septimum regnum fuit Northimbrorum;<sup>14</sup> cujus limites fuerunt ab ortu et occasu oceanus; ab austro flumen Humberæ,<sup>15</sup> descendendo versus occidentem,<sup>16</sup> per fines comitatum Nottingham<sup>17</sup> et Derbeye<sup>18</sup> usque ad flumen de<sup>19</sup> Mersee; ab<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ad aquilonem vero*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *descendendo occidentaliter*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Mersee*, B., Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *quousque ad*, B.; *juxta*, om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Wirallia*, A.B.D.; *Wirhallia*, Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *regnavit*] regnare cepit, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Wible*, A.B.D.

<sup>8</sup> 185, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Colwulfum*, A.; *Colwulfum*, D.; *Colwulfum*, Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *illud*] om. C.D.; *illum*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *Iterum*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *in*] om. B.C.

<sup>13</sup> *in*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Northamimbrorum*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *Humberia*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *versus occidentem*] om. A.

<sup>17</sup> *Notyngham*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *Derbeie*, B.; *Derbi*, A.; *Derbie*, D.

<sup>19</sup> *de*] om. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *ad*, D.



þe est þe est see, in þe souþ Temse anon to Londoun; in þe norþ þe ryuer of<sup>1</sup> Humber. And so westward and dounward anon to þe ryuer Mersee anon to þe<sup>2</sup> corner<sup>3</sup> of Wyreale;<sup>4</sup> þere Humber falleþ in to þe west see. Penda, Wibbes sone, regned first in þis kyngdom þe 3ere of oure Lorde sexe hondred and sixe and twenty, so seiþ Denys, and from þe comynge of Angles an hondred 3ere þre score and fiftene. Þis kyngdom durede vnder ei3tene kynges aboute a two hondred 3ere, þre score and fiftene,<sup>5</sup> anon to þe laste Colwulf; [to þe whiche Colwulf]<sup>6</sup> þe Danes bytook þat kyngdom to kepe, whan Burdred þe kyng was i-putte out. But<sup>7</sup> þe elder Edward þe kyng putte out Danes and ioynede þe kyngdom<sup>8</sup> of Mercia to his owne kyngdom; nopeles at þe bygynnyng þis<sup>9</sup> kyngdom of Mercia was i-deled aþre, in West Mercia, in Myddel Mercia, and Est Mercia. Þe seueneþe kyngdom was Norphamhymbrorum, þat is, þe kyngdom of Norphumberlond. Þe meres and þe<sup>10</sup> merkes þerof<sup>11</sup> were by west and by est þe see of ocean, by souþ þe ryuer of Humber, and so downward toward þe west by þe endes of þe schires of Notyngam and of Derby

TREVISA.

este<sup>12</sup> see, at the sowthe the floode of Thamys vn to London, on the northe the water of Humbre, goenge after the weste vn to the water of Mercie vn to the ende of Wirhalle, where hit descendethe in to the Weste see. Penda, the son of Wibbe, reignede firste in those costes, after Dionysius, in the yere off oure Lorde vj<sup>c</sup>. xvj., and from the commenge of Engliche men a c. yere lxxv., whiche realme contynuede vnder xvij. kynges abowte ij<sup>c</sup>. yere lx. and ij., vn to the laste Colwulphus; whiche expulsede, the Danes made Burdredus kyng of hit. That realme was diuidede in to thre partes in the firste begynnenge, that is to say, in to the Weste Marches, in to the Myddelle Marches, and in to the Este Marches. The vij<sup>th</sup>e realme was of Northumbrelonde, the merkes of whom were, on the este and on the weste, the ocean; on the sowthe, the water of Humbre; descendenge towarde the weste by the costes of the schires of Notyngam and of Derby vn to the water

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> of] om. a. and Cx.<sup>2</sup> þe] om. a.<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; ryuer, MS.<sup>4</sup> Wirhal, Cx.<sup>5</sup> about two clxij., Cx.<sup>6</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>7</sup> So a. and Cx.; by, MS.<sup>8</sup> MS. (not a. or Cx.) adds to kepe.<sup>9</sup> þis] MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>10</sup> þe] om. a.<sup>11</sup> So a. and Cx.; of þe, MS.<sup>12</sup> weste, Harl. MS.

aquilone autem<sup>1</sup> mare Scoticum, quod Scotice dicitur Forth, Britannice Werid,<sup>2</sup> Anglice Scottisshsee.<sup>3</sup> Hoc autem regnum Northimbrorum<sup>4</sup> primitus<sup>5</sup> divisum fuit in duas provincias; in Deiram<sup>6</sup> ad austrum, et in<sup>7</sup> Berniciam ad aquilonem; quæ duo regna flumen<sup>8</sup> Tyne<sup>9</sup> tunc temporis diviserat.<sup>10</sup> Nam regnum Deiorum a fluvio<sup>11</sup> Humbriæ usque ad flumen Tyne<sup>12</sup> extendebatur; regnum vero Berniciorum a flumine Tyne usque ad mare Scoticum prædictum<sup>13</sup> porrigebatur, etiam quando Picti ibidem morabantur, sicut patet<sup>14</sup> per Bedam, libro tertio, capitulo secundo,<sup>15</sup> ubi dicit quod<sup>16</sup> Ninian<sup>17</sup> vir sanctus convertit australes.<sup>18</sup> In Bernicia coepit primus<sup>19</sup> regnare Ida, anno gratiæ,<sup>20</sup> secundum Dionysium, DXLVII<sup>o</sup>. In Deira vero<sup>21</sup> rex Elle, anno gratiæ<sup>22</sup> DXLIX<sup>o</sup>. Quæ<sup>23</sup> duo regna sub duobus regibus, ut præmittitur, interdum divisa quandoque sub uno rege redintegrata cucurrerunt<sup>24</sup> sub Anglis regibus<sup>25</sup> quasi<sup>26</sup> viginti per annos cccxxj. Demum,<sup>27</sup> Osbricto<sup>28</sup> et Elle<sup>29</sup> nono anno regni sui per

<sup>1</sup> *vero*, C.D.; the latter has *ad aquilonem*.

<sup>2</sup> *Werith*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Scotischsee*, A.B.; *Scottisse*, D.; *sicut Scotice*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *Northunhimbrorum*, B.; om. D

<sup>5</sup> *Northimbrorum primitus*] primo, C. (not D., but omits *North*.)

<sup>6</sup> *in Deiram*] Deiram scilicet, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *in*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *flumen*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *Tine*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *dividebat*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *flumine*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Tine*, A.

<sup>13</sup> *prædictum*] ubi nunc est villa Sancti Johannis, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *etiam...patet*] C.D. thus: Quod autem austrina pars Albanæ, quæ est infra Twedam et mare Scoticum prædictum, continens Galwediam

et Lodoveiam, tunc pertinuit ad regnum Berniciorum et Pictis ibidem commorantibus patet, &c.

<sup>15</sup> *primo*, C.D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 4.

<sup>16</sup> *ubi dicit quod*] primo; sic scribentem, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Ninianus*, A.

<sup>18</sup> *Pictos*, &c., ins. C.D.; *australes*, &c., A., Gale.

<sup>19</sup> *primo*, A.; *primum*, Gale.

<sup>20</sup> *gratiæ*] om. B.

<sup>21</sup> *vero*] om. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *gratiæ*] om. B.

<sup>23</sup> *Hæc*, C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *concurrerent*, B.

<sup>25</sup> *regibus Anglis*, B.

<sup>26</sup> *circiter*, C.D.

<sup>27</sup> *Dehinc*, C.D.

<sup>28</sup> *Esbricto*, B.

<sup>29</sup> So A.D., Gale; *Ello*, E.

anon to þe ryuere of Merce,<sup>1</sup> and by norþe þe Scottische see, þat hatte Forþe in Scotisse, Wered<sup>2</sup> in Brittisse, þe Scottische see in Engelse. Þis kyngdom of Norþhumberlond was first i-deled in tweie prouinces; þat oon was þe souþside, and hete Deira; and þat oþer was þe norþside, and hete Brenicia, as it were tweyne kyngdoms. And þe ryuer Tyne departed þese tweyne kyngdoms þat tyme. For þe kyngdom of Deyra tillede<sup>3</sup> and streiþte from þe ryuer of Humber anon to þe ryuere of Tyne. Þe kyngdom of Brenicia tillede from Tyne<sup>4</sup> to þe Scottische see. And whan Pictes wonede þerynne, as Beda seiþ, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, þat Ninian, þat holy man, conuertede men of þe souþside. Ida þe kyng reigned [þere first and began to reigne]<sup>5</sup> þe [z]ere<sup>6</sup> of oure Lord fyue hondred and seuen and forty, so seiþ Dyones.<sup>7</sup> In Deyra reignede kyng<sup>8</sup> Elle, þe zere of oure Lord fyue hondred and nyne and forty. Þese tweie kyngdoms were oþer while, as hit is i-seide, y-deled bytwene tweye kynges, and somtym al hool vnder oo kyng, and durede as it were vnder twenty Engelse kynges pre hondred ze[re]<sup>9</sup> and oon and twenty. At þe laste Osbrutus and Elle were i-slawe in þe nynþe zere of here

TREVISA.

of Mersee; of the northe, the Scottes see, callede by the langage of theyme Forth, in Briteyne langage Werid, in Engelse Scotthisse. That realme of Northehumbrelonde was diuidede at the firste tyme in to ij. prouinces, in to Deira at the sowthe, and in to Bernicia at the northe; whiche ij. realmes the water of Tyne diuidede in that tyme. For that realme callede Deira was extendede from the floode of Humbre vn to the water of Tyne. That other parte callede Bernicia was extendede from the water of Tyne to the Scottes see when the Pictes dwellede there, as hit is schewede by Bede, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, where he seithe that Ninian the holy man conuertede the sowerne Pictes. Hida began to reigne firste in Bernicia, after Dionysius, the yere of grace v<sup>c</sup>. xlviij<sup>ti</sup>; and kynge Elle began to reigne in Deira, after Dionysius, in the yere of grace v<sup>c</sup>. xlix.: whiche realmes continuede otherwhile vnder oon kynge, otherwhile vnder tweyne, as vnder xx<sup>ti</sup> kynges as by ccc. yere xxj<sup>ti</sup>. At the laste, Osbrutus and Elle sleyne

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Mersee, a., Cx.*<sup>2</sup> *Weryd, a.; Werid, Cx.*<sup>3</sup> *and tillede, MS. Sentence varied in Cx.*<sup>4</sup> *So a. and Cx.; Tyme, MS.*<sup>5</sup> *Added from a. and Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *zere, a.*<sup>7</sup> *Dionys, a.*<sup>8</sup> *þe kyng, a., Cx.*<sup>9</sup> *zere, a.*

Danos occisis, Northumbria<sup>1</sup> vacavit sine rege octo annis. Extunc<sup>2</sup> Dani regnaverunt in ea triginta sex<sup>3</sup> annis, usque ad monarchiam regis Adelstani,<sup>4</sup> qui sub anno Domini DCCCXXVII<sup>o</sup>, subactis Danis, Wallanis<sup>5</sup> et Scotis<sup>6</sup> regibus, solus et primus<sup>7</sup> monarchiam Angliæ tenuit. Quod autem fluvius<sup>8</sup> de Mersee fuerat<sup>9</sup> aliquotiens<sup>10</sup> terminus et limes Merciorum et Northimbrorum<sup>11</sup> patet dupliciter;<sup>12</sup> primo per significationem<sup>13</sup> vocabuli, nam<sup>14</sup> Mersee<sup>15</sup> Anglice sonat terminans mare, quia<sup>16</sup> disternabat unum regnum ab alio.<sup>17</sup> Item in chronicis Henrici<sup>18</sup> et Alfridi habetur, quod rex Edwardus senior firmavit castrum apud Mamcestre in terra<sup>19</sup> Northimbrorum;<sup>20</sup> sed constat quod urbs Mamcestre<sup>21</sup> vix distat tribus miliaribus a fluvio<sup>22</sup> de Mersee.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> terra, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Et tunc*, Gale.

<sup>3</sup> *septem*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Athelstani*, B. ; *Ethelstani*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Wallis*, Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *Danis . . . Scotis*] Scotorum et Wallanorum, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *omnium*, add. C.D. (with slight variations.)

<sup>8</sup> *a fluvio*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *fuit*, Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *fuerat aliquotiens*] fuit, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Northanhumbrorum*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *dupliciter*] om. D.

<sup>13</sup> *interpretationem*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *nam*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Mersee*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *quod*, E.

<sup>17</sup> *quia . . . alio*] Latine, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *Henrici de Huntyngdon*, C.D. ; *Henre et Alfre*, A.

<sup>19</sup> *in terra*] om. B.

<sup>20</sup> *Northanhumbrorum*, B.

<sup>21</sup> *Mamcestriæ*, B., Gale ; *Mamcestre*, D.

<sup>22</sup> *flumine*, A.B.

<sup>23</sup> The latter part of the sentence slightly altered in C.D., which add *cujus castri vestigia adhuc exstant*.

kyngdom ; þe Danes slowh hem ; and Norphumberlonde was voyde wipoute kyng eiȝte ȝere. Þanne afterward þe Danes reigned in Norphumberlond sixe and þretty ȝere anoon to þe oonyng<sup>1</sup> of þe kyngdome of Athelstone ; he made sugett þe<sup>2</sup> kynges Danys and Scottische and Walsche, and regned first al on in Engelond, and helde þe kyngdom of Engelond hool and al oon kyngdom. Þat was þe ȝere of oure Lorde eyȝte hondred and seuene and twenty. Þat ryuer of Mercie<sup>3</sup> was somtyme þe marke and mere bytwene þe kyngdom of Mercia and þe kyngdom of Norphumberlond. Þat may be i-schewed in tweie maneres ; first by þe propurte of þis word Mersec, þat is as moche to mene, as a se<sup>4</sup> þat is a bound and a mere ; for he departeþ oon kyngdom from anoper. Also it is i-write in cronikes of Henry and of Alfrede, þat kyng Edward þe Eldere fastened a castel at Mamcestre<sup>5</sup> in Norphumberlond ; but þat citee Mamcestre is from þe ryuer of Mersee scarsliche þre myle.

TREVISA.

---

by Danes in the ix<sup>th</sup> year of their reigne, Northumbrelonde was vacante of a kyng vij<sup>th</sup> yeres. And from that tyme the Danes reignede in hit xxxvij<sup>th</sup> yeres, vn to the monarchy off kyng Athelstan, whiche obteynede the monarchy of all Englonde in the yere of oure Lorde viijc· xxvij., subduenge the kynges of Danes, of Wales, and of Scottes. That the water of Mersee was somme tyme the terme other the merke of the marches of Northumbrelonde, hit may be schewede by ij. maneres ; firste by the significacion of the name, for Mersee in Engliche soundeþ as a see terminatiue, for hit distermineþ oon realme from an other. Also hit is hade in the cronicles of Henricus and Alfride, that kyng Edwarde the senior sette the castelle at Mamcestre in the londe of Northumbrelonde, whiche cite is from the water of Mersee but by iij. myles.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *to onyng, a.*<sup>2</sup> *So a. and Cx. ; to þe, MS.*<sup>3</sup> *Merse, a.*<sup>4</sup> *ase, a. ; a see, Cx. ; asse, MS.*<sup>5</sup> *Mauncestre, Cx.*

## CAP. LII.

*De episcopatibus et sedibus.*

*Alfridus*.<sup>1</sup> Sedes archiepiscoporum in Britannia<sup>2</sup> tres fuerunt tempore Lucii, regis Britonum Christiani primi; videlicet apud Londoniam; apud<sup>3</sup> Eboracum; apud Caerusc, Urbem Legionum in Glamorgantia;<sup>4</sup> quibus tunc subjecti fuerant<sup>5</sup> xxviiij. episcopi, flamines tunc vocati; videlicet Londoniensi metropolitano Cornubia et tota Loegria usque ad flumen Humbræ; Eboracensi vero tota terra Northimbrana ab arcu Humbræ fluminis cum tota<sup>6</sup> Albania; Urbi Legionum subjacuit tota Cambria, septem tunc episcopis, nunc vero<sup>7</sup> quatuor suffraganeis insignita, quam flumen Sabrinæ tunc<sup>8</sup> secernebat a Loegria. *Willelmus de Pontificibus*,<sup>9</sup> libro primo. Sed temporibus<sup>10</sup> Saxonum,<sup>11</sup> quamvis<sup>12</sup> beatus Gregorius privilegium archiepiscopale Londoniæ<sup>13</sup> concesserit,<sup>14</sup> Augustinus tamen ab eo missus,<sup>15</sup> sedulitate hospitis sui regis

<sup>1</sup> *Alfridus*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *in Britannica* after *fuerunt* in B.

<sup>3</sup> *apud*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> Sentence altered and transposed in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *erant*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *reliqua parte Albania*, C.D. (with other slighter variations.)

<sup>7</sup> *autem*, C.; an erasure in D.

<sup>8</sup> *tunc*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *de Pontificibus*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *tempore*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *temporibus Saxonum*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *licet*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Londonio*, Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *concesserat*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *ab eo missus*] om. C.D.

*De episcopatibus et sedibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum TREVISA. secundum.*

*Alfridus.* Lucius was þe first Cristene kyng of Britons.<sup>1</sup> In his tyme were þre archebisshoppes sees in Bretayne; oon was at Londoun; anoper at York; and þe þridde at Caerrusk,<sup>2</sup> þe Cite of Legiouns in Glomorgan.<sup>3</sup> Þat citee hatte now Caerleon. To þese þre archebisshoppes sees were suget eyzte and twenti bisshoppis, and were i-cleped flamynes. To þe archebisshoppes see of Londoun was sugett Cornwaile and al myddel Engelond anon to Humber; to 3ork al Norþhumberlond from þe bowe of Humber wip all Scotlond; to Caerleon all Wales. Þere were in Wales seuene bisshoppes, and now beep but foure. Þo Seuarne departe<sup>4</sup> Engelond and Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo.*<sup>5</sup> But in Saxones tyme, þey Seint Gregorie hadde i-graunted Londoun þe priuilege of þe archebisshoppes see, neuerþeles Seynt Austyn þat was i-sent in to Engelond by Seint Gregorie tordned þe archebisshoppes see out of Londoun vnto<sup>6</sup> Caunterbury, after Seint Gregories day

*Of the byshoperyches and seetes. Capitulum quinquagesimum secundum.*

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Alfridus.* There were thre seetes of archebyschoppes in Englonde in the tyme of Lucius, kyng of Briteyne, firste kyng y-baptizede, that is to say, at London, at Yorke, and at Caerhurrt,<sup>7</sup> the Cite of Legiones in Glomorgan; to whom xxviii<sup>ti</sup> bischoppes were subiecte, callede flamines. And to the metropolitan of London alle the cuntre of Cornewaile and alle Englonde was subiecte vn to the floode of Humbre. Alle Northumbrelonde, from the water of Humbre, with alle Scottelande, was subiecte to tharchebisshop of Yorke; and alle Wales was subiecte to the byshoppe of the Cite of Legiones, where that tyme were vij. bischoppes, and now Wales is made nowble with iiij. suffraganes, whom the floode of Seuarne dividede that tyme from Englonde. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo.* But thawzhe blessedde Gregory grawntede thro his priuilege the seete of tharchebisshoppe to be at London; neuertheles Seynte Austyn, sende from hym in to Englonde, after the dethe of Blessede Gregory caused tharchebisshoppe seete to be removede from London to Canterbury, thro helpe of

<sup>1</sup> the first kyng cristend of the Brytons, Cx.; who has a few other trivial alterations below.

<sup>2</sup> Caerusk, a.

<sup>3</sup> Glamorgan, a., Cx.

<sup>4</sup> departed, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Added from a.

<sup>6</sup> into, a.

<sup>7</sup> Doubtless an error for Caerhusc.

Ethelberti, civiumque Cantuariensium caritate captus, metropolitanam<sup>1</sup> sedem<sup>2</sup> post mortem Gregorii ad Cantuariam transtulit, ubi usque hodie permansit; nisi quod medio tempore Offa rex Merciorum, Cantuaritis<sup>3</sup> infensus,<sup>4</sup> honorem primatus ab eis tulit, et Lichefeldensem episcopum Aldulphum, annuente Adriano papa muneribus fortassis inclinato, archiepiscopali pallio pro tempore suo insignivit.<sup>5</sup> Quod tamen<sup>6</sup> sub Kenulpho rege restitutum est.<sup>7</sup> Eboracensis honor<sup>8</sup> ab initio usque hodie ibidem duravit, quamvis Albania processu temporis ab ejus subjectione se subtraxerit.<sup>9</sup> *Giraldus, in*<sup>10</sup> *Itinerario, libro secundo.*<sup>11</sup> Ab Urbe autem Legionum usque ad Meneviam, quæ est ad occidentem Demetiæ supra Hibernicum<sup>12</sup> mare sita, translata est sedes metropolitana, tempore<sup>13</sup> Sancti David sub<sup>14</sup> Arthuro rege; a cujus tempore usque ad Sampsonem archiepiscopum, sederunt xxiiij. archiepiscopi. Tandem ingruente per Cambriam flava peste, quam ictericiam vocant, Sampson episcopus<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *metropolitanatum*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *sedem*] om. B.; *tamen*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Cantuâr*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *infestus*, C.D.; *offensus*, B.

<sup>5</sup> So A.B.D.; *insignit*, E.; *decoravit*, Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *tandem*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Cantuaricæ*, add. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *vero honor*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *subtraxit*, Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *in*] Added from B. and Gale. The reference is to lib. ii. c. 1. Trevisa's reference is incorrect.

<sup>11</sup> C.D. omit reference, and *autem*.

<sup>12</sup> *Hibernicæ*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *sub tempore*, A.

<sup>14</sup> *ab*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *archiepiscopus*, C. (not D.)



at þe prayer of kyng Athelberd and þe<sup>1</sup> citezeins and burgeys<sup>2</sup> of Caunterbury. Þere þe archebisshoppes see hap endured<sup>3</sup> forto<sup>4</sup> now. Sauc þat in þe mene tyme Offa, kyng of Mercia, was wroop wiþ men of Caunterbury, and byname hem þat worschippe, and worschipped Aldulf, bisshop of Lichefeld, wiþ þe archebisshoppes pal by assent of Adrian þe pope vpon caas by ʒiftes i-sent. Neuerþeles vnder Kenulph þe kyng it was restored to Caunterbury aʒen. Þe worschippe of þe see of ʒork hap i-dured þere alwey and dureth ʒit; þey Scotlond be wiþdrawe from his subiection<sup>5</sup> by passyng of tyme. *Giraldus in Itin., libro primo.* Þe archebisshoppis see was i-torned out of Caerleoun in to Meneuia, þat is in þe west side of Demecia, vpon þe Irische see, in Seint Dauyes<sup>6</sup> tyme vnder kyng Arthur.<sup>7</sup> From<sup>8</sup> Seint Dauyes<sup>6</sup> tyme to Sampson þe archebisshoppes tyme were in Meneuia archebisshoppis þre and twenty. Afterward fel a pestilence in to al Wales of þe ʒelowe yuel<sup>9</sup> þat is i-cleped þe iaundys, and þan Sampson þe archebisshop took wiþ hym þe palle, and wente

TREVISA.

kyng Ethelberte and of the citesynnes of Canterbury, where hit remanethe to this tyme presente. But that a certeyn season folowenge, kyng Offa, contrarius to men of Canterbury, removede the honor of the primate from theym, thro the priuilege graunted by Adrian the pope, vn to the chirche of Lichefelde, as for his tyme; whiche honor was restorede ageyne in the tyme of kyng Kenulphus. The honor of the chirche off Yorke hathe contynuede there from the begynnenge of hit vn to this tyme presente; thauʒhe Scottelonde withdrewede hit from the subieccion of hit in processe of tyme. *Giraldus in Itinerario, libro secundo.* The seete of the metropolitan was translate from the Cite of Legiones vn to Meneuia, at the weste of Sowthe Wales, sette on the see of Yrlonde, in the tyme of Seynte Dauid, vnder kynge Arthure; from the tyme of whom vn to the tyme of Sampson the bisshop xiiij<sup>a</sup> archebisshoppes were þer. At the laste an infirmitie reignenge in Wales, whiche was callede the iawndres, Sampson the bischoppe, takenge with hym the palle, wente

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> þe] om. a., Cx.<sup>2</sup> burgesyes, Cx.<sup>3</sup> i-dured, a.; dured, Cx.<sup>4</sup> vnto, Cx.<sup>5</sup> So Cx; suggestioun, MS.<sup>6</sup> Dauids, Cx. (twice).<sup>7</sup> MS. (not Cx.) adds by a clerical error (see below), *Meneuia now hatte*, and no more.<sup>8</sup> So a. and Cx.; form, MS.<sup>9</sup> euel, a.

sumpto secum<sup>1</sup> pallio Armoricam Britanniam adiit, ac sedi<sup>2</sup> Dolensi praesedit; a quo tempore<sup>3</sup> usque ad dies<sup>4</sup> Henrici primi Angliæ<sup>5</sup> regis sederunt apud Meneviam, quæ Sancti David dicitur, xxi. episcopi vel propter ignaviam vel propter<sup>6</sup> paupertatem pallio carentes; semper tamen usque tunc episcopi Walliæ a Menevensi fuerunt consecrati, et ipse similiter ab aliis Walliæ episcopis tanquam a suffraganeis fuerat consecratus, nulla penitus<sup>7</sup> alteri ecclesiæ facta professione vel subjectione. Cæteri vero succedentes episcopi, regio urgente mandato, Cantuariæ consecrationem accipiunt;<sup>8</sup> in cujus investituræ et subjectionis signum Bonifacius archiepiscopus<sup>9</sup> Cantuariensis, tempore Henrici secundi<sup>10</sup> crucis legatione fungens, in singulis ecclesiis cathedralibus Cambriæ primus omnium Cantuariensium archiepiscoporum<sup>11</sup> missam solemniter celebravit. *Ranulphus*.<sup>12</sup> Sed<sup>13</sup> hodie in tota Anglia solummodo duo sunt primates Cantuariensis et Eboracensis; Cantuariensi<sup>14</sup> tredecim in Anglia et quatuor in Wallia episcopi sunt subjecti; Eboracensis vero duos duntaxat habet<sup>15</sup> suffraganeos,

<sup>1</sup> *secum*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *sede*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *tempore*] om. A.

<sup>4</sup> *tempora*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Anglorum*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *ignaviam vel propter*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *nulla penitus*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *suscipiunt*, C.D. ; *recipiunt*, A.B., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *archiepiscopus*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sancta*, add. A.

<sup>11</sup> *episcoporum*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. B.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Sed*] Ita igitur, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Cantuariensi*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>15</sup> *habet hodie*, C.D. ; E. omits *habet*.

in to Bretayne Armorica,<sup>1</sup> þe oper Bretayne, and was bisshop of Dolensis. From þat tyme to þe firste kyng Henries tyme kyng of Engelond were at Meneuia, þat hatte Seint Dauyes, oon and twenty bisshoppes alle wip oute palle, wheþer it were for vnkunynge oper for pouert. Neuerpeles<sup>2</sup> alwey forto þat tyme þe bisshoppes of Wales were i-sacred of þe bisshop of Meneuia of Seint Dauyes; and þe bisshop of Meneuia was i-sacred of þe bisshoppes of Wales<sup>3</sup> as of his owne suffragans,<sup>4</sup> and made non professioun noþer subiection<sup>5</sup> to non oper chirche. Oper bisshoppes þat come afterward were i-sacred at Caunterbury by compellynge of þe kynges heste. In tokenynge<sup>6</sup> of þat sacrynge and subiection Bonefas, archebisshop of Caunterbury, þat was legat of þe croys, song in euery cathedral cherche of Wales, solempneliche a masse. He was þe firste archebisshop of Caunterbury þat so dede in Wales, and þat was i-do in þe secounde kyng Henries tyme. R. But now beþ but tweie primates in al Engelond, of Caunterbury, and of **Z**ork. To þat<sup>7</sup> primat of Caunterbury beþ sugette þrittene bisshoppes in Engelond, and foure in Wales. Þe primat of **Z**ork hap but tweie suffragans in

TREVISA.

to Briteyne Armorike, from whiche tyme vn to the daies of kyng Henry the first, kyng of Englonde of that name, xxj<sup>ti</sup> bisshoppes kepede residence at Meneuia, wontenge a palle, other for slawethe, other for pouerte. Neuertheles vn to that tyme the byschesopes of Wales were wonte to be consecrate of the bisshop of Meneuia, whiche is callede Seynte David, and that bisshop of other suffraganes of Wales, noo profession other subieccion made to eny other chirche. But other bischoppes succedenge receyvede consecracion of the bisshop of Canterbury, thro the commaundemente of the kyng. In the inuestiture of whom, in a signe of subieccion, Bonefacius, archebisshop of Canterbury, in the tyme of kyng Heurye secunde, firste of alle byschoppes of Caunterbery songe masse solenly in euery cathedrale chirche of Wales. R. But now in this tyme there be only ij. primates in Englonde, whiche be of Caunterbery and of Yorke. Caunterbery hathe xiiij. bischopes in Englonde subieete to hit, and iiij. bischoppes in Wales. And Yorke hathe but ij. suffraganes subieete to

MS. HARL.  
2261.  
f. 71. a.

<sup>1</sup> *Armonica*, MS. ; *Armonyca*, Cx. | <sup>5</sup> So Cx. ; *suggestioun*, MS., and so below (not Cx.)  
<sup>2</sup> *Notheles*, a. ; *Netheles*, Cx.  
<sup>3</sup> *Wales were*, MS. (not Cx.) | <sup>6</sup> *tokyn*, a., Cx.  
<sup>4</sup> *suffragans*, Cx. ; *suffrages*, MS. | <sup>7</sup> *þe*, a., Cx.

scilicet Caerduliensem<sup>1</sup> et Dunelmensem. De quorum omnium successivis sedium<sup>2</sup> institutionibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt tangenda; ubi est advertendum<sup>3</sup> quod in primitiva Anglorum ecclesia præsules in locis humilibus, tanquam<sup>4</sup> contemplationi et devotioni<sup>5</sup> aptis,<sup>6</sup> sedes suas statuerunt. Sed tempore Willelmi Conquæstoris<sup>7</sup> ex canonum decreto edictum est, ut episcopi<sup>8</sup> de villulis ad urbes transirent.<sup>9</sup> Unde factum est ut Dorcestrensis sedes<sup>10</sup> ad Lincolniam migraret, Lichefeldensis<sup>11</sup> ad Cestriam, Thedfordensis<sup>12</sup> ad Northwycum,<sup>13</sup> Shireburnensis<sup>14</sup> ad Sarum,<sup>15</sup> Wellensis ad Bathoniam,<sup>16</sup> Cornubiensis ad Excestriam,<sup>17</sup> Selesiensis<sup>18</sup> ad Cicestriam.

De episcopis australibus.

Roffensis itaque præsul, qui parochiam non habet, sed capellanus est archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, ab initio suæ institutionis per Cantuariensem Augustinum<sup>19</sup> factæ usque ad dies nostros nusquam sedem mutavit; Cicestrensis vero, qui solis Southsaxonibus et<sup>20</sup> Vectæ

<sup>1</sup> *Cardiliensem*, Gale.

<sup>2</sup> Slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *ubi . . . advertendum*] Advertendum est tamen ad notitiam dicendorum, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *utpote*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *et devotioni*] om. C.D.; transposed in B.

<sup>6</sup> *aptis*] congruis, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Willelmi Conquæstoris*] regis Willelmi primi, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *episcopi*] sedes episcoporum, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *migrarent*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sedes*] om. C.D., having *Dorcestre*.

<sup>11</sup> *Lichefelde*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Thetford*, A.; *Thedeforde*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *Norwicum*, B., Gale.; *Norwicum, Remesburiensis et*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Shirburne*, A.; *Remesburiensis et Schireburn*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Salesburiam*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Cridiensis et*, add. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> So A.B.D., Gale; *Excestram*, E.

<sup>18</sup> *Clesiensis*, B.; *Silesiensis*, D.

<sup>19</sup> *Aug. Cant.*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *et*] om. B.

Engelond, þat beþ þe bisshoppis of Caerlile and of Duram. TREVISA.  
 Of alle þe[se]<sup>1</sup> sees and of chaungynge of here places now  
 arewe schal somewhat<sup>2</sup> be sehewed: here take hede, þat in  
 þe bygynnyng of holy chirehe in Engelond bisshoppes  
 ordeyned hire sees in lowe places and symple, þat were  
 couenable for contemplacioun, for bedes,<sup>3</sup> and deuocioun,  
 but in William Conquerours tyme by dome of lawe canoun  
 it was i-ordeyned þat bisshoppes schulde come out of smal  
 townes in to grete citees. Þerfore it was þat þe see of Dor-  
 chestre was i-chaunged to Lyneolne, Lichefeld to Chestre,  
 Thedford to Norþwiche, Schirborne to Salisbury, Welles  
 to Bathe, Cornwayne to Exeetre, and Selesey to Chychestre.  
*De episcopis australibus.* Þe bisshopp [of Rouchestre]<sup>4</sup>  
 hap non persche<sup>5</sup> chirehe, but he is þe archebisshoppes  
 chapeleyn of Canterbury. Seppe þat<sup>6</sup> þe<sup>7</sup> see was first  
 i-ordeyned by Seint Austyn, archebisshop of Canterbury,  
 ʒit hiderto hit chaungeþ neuere his place.<sup>8</sup> Chichestre  
 hap vnder hym onliche Souþsex and the Ile of Wight, and

it oonly, whiche be suffraganes of Carduliense and of Durem, MS. HARL.  
 of the successiue institueions of whom somme thynges ar  
 to be seide here by ordre. Where fore hit is to be aduer- 2261.  
 tede that bischoppes, in the primitiue chirehe of Englonde,  
 were wonte to haue theire seetes in meke places, apte to  
 contemplacion and deuocioun, but hit was commaundede by  
 a decrete of canon, in the tyme of William Conquerour,  
 that the seetes of bischoppes scholde be translate from  
 townes to cites. Where hit was hade that the sete of Dor-  
 chestre was chaungede to Lyncoln, and of Lichefelde to  
 Chestre, of Tedforde to Norwiche, of Shirburne to Exeestre,  
 of Seliense to Chichestre. *Of the bischoppes of the Sowthe.*<sup>9</sup>  
 The bischoppe of Rochestre, whiche hathe noo peresche,  
 but [is] chapelayn of tharchebisshop of Caunterbury, from  
 the begynenge of the institueion made by Seynte Austyn  
 bishop of Canterbury, chaungede not the seete of hit vn to  
 oure daies. The bischop of Chieestre, whiche hathe gou- f. 71. b.  
 naile oonly of the Sowthe Saxones and the yle of Wiʒhte,

<sup>1</sup> þese, a.; thyse, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> somewhat schal, a.

<sup>3</sup> prayers, Cx., who varies the sentence.

<sup>4</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> parysche, a. and Cx., who omits chirehe.

<sup>6</sup> þat] om. Cx.

<sup>7</sup> þe] om. a.

<sup>8</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>9</sup> This is wrongly numbered Cap. 52 in Harl. MS.; the division of the chapter having been already made conformably to the Latin text.

insulæ præsidet, primo apud Selysei,<sup>1</sup> quod sonat<sup>2</sup> insula vituli marini, tempore Theodori archiepiscopi sedem habuit, et a primo Wylfrido<sup>3</sup> usque ad ultimum Stigandum trecentis triginta tribus annis sub viginti episcopis ibidem duravit. Tandem Stigandus, edicto regis Willelmi<sup>4</sup> Conquæstoris, sedem<sup>5</sup> Seleise<sup>6</sup> transtulit ad Cicestriam.<sup>7</sup>

## CAP. LIII.

*De episcopis occidentalibus.*

*Willelmus.*<sup>8</sup> Memorandum est quod tota<sup>9</sup> Westsaxonica provincia unicum ab initio usque adventum<sup>10</sup> Theodori habuit episcopum.<sup>11</sup> Primus autem Birinus, largiente rege Westsaxonum Kyngislo<sup>12</sup> sedem statuit apud Dorcestriam,<sup>13</sup> villam<sup>14</sup> humilem, ad austrum Oxoniæ juxta Walingford,<sup>15</sup> inter collapsus<sup>16</sup> duorum fluminum Thamisiæ et Thamæ<sup>17</sup> sitam. Byrino autem defuncto, Kenwalcus<sup>18</sup> rex<sup>19</sup> statuit sedem<sup>20</sup> apud Wyntoniam; sicut et pater suus<sup>21</sup> aliquando<sup>22</sup> proposuerat, ubi Agilbertus<sup>23</sup> natione Gallus<sup>24</sup> præsedet primus toti provinciæ Westsaxoniciæ.<sup>25</sup> Ex quo tempore urbs et sedes Dor-

<sup>1</sup> *Silesey*, B.; *Seilse*, A.; *Celesie*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *interpretatur*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Wilfrido*, B., Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *Willelmi regis*, B.

<sup>5</sup> Added from A.C.D., Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *Seleyse*, B.

<sup>7</sup> So D., Gale; *Cicestram*, A.E.

<sup>8</sup> *Willelmus*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Memorandum . . . . tota*] Tota autem, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *ad adventum*, B., Gale.

<sup>11</sup> *antistitem*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Kingiffò*, A.B.; *Kingislo*, Gale; *Kingulfo*, D.

<sup>13</sup> So Gale; *Dorcestam*, A.E.; *Dorcestr*<sup>2</sup>, D.

<sup>14</sup> *villam quidem*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *juxta Walingford*] om. C.D.; *Walingforth*, A.

<sup>16</sup> *statuit . . . collapsus*] *lapsus*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Ysæ*, Gale.

<sup>18</sup> *Kenwalkus*, B.; *Kenewalcus*, D.

<sup>19</sup> *rex*] om. B.; *Westsaxonum*, ins. D.

<sup>20</sup> *sedem statuit*, B.

<sup>21</sup> *pater suus Kingulfus*, D.

<sup>22</sup> *aliquando fecisse*, B., Gale.

<sup>23</sup> *Gilbertus*, Gale.

<sup>24</sup> *Gallicus*, B.

<sup>25</sup> Sentence altered and slightly abbreviated in C.D.

hadde his see first in Seleseie in Theodor þe archebisshoppes tyme. And þe see<sup>1</sup> durede pere þre hondred 3ere and þre and þretty vnder tweynty bisshoppes from þe firste Wilfrede to þe laste Stigande; [but at þe laste Stygand]<sup>2</sup> at þe heste of kyng William Conquerour chaunged þe se from Seleseye to Chichestre. TREVISA.  
—

*De episcopis occidentalibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum tertium.*

*Willelmus.* Haue mynde þat alle þe prouince of Westsaxon hadde alwey oon bisshop from þe bygynnyng anoon to Theodores comyng.<sup>3</sup> By graunt of Kingislus,<sup>4</sup> kyng of West Saxon, þe firste Birinus ordeyned a cee at Dorchestre, þat is a symple toun by souþ Oxenforde by sides Walyngforde, bytwene þe fallyng to gidres of Temse and of Tame. Whan Birinus was deed, Kenwalkus þe kyng ordeyned a see at Wynchestre, as his fader hadde i-þoʒt.<sup>5</sup> Pere Gilbert,<sup>6</sup> a Frensche man, was first bisshop of al þe prouince of Westsaxon. From þat tyme þe<sup>7</sup> citee and þe see of Dorchestre

---

kepede somme tyme residence at Selesey, in the tyme of MS. HARL  
Theodorus tharchebishop, where hit contynuede vnder 2261.  
xx<sup>ti</sup> bischoppes from the firste, Wilfridus, vn to the laste,  
Stigandus, by ccc.xxxiiij<sup>ti</sup> yere. At the laste Stigandus,  
thro the commaundement of William Conqueroure, did translate that seete of Selesey to Chichestre.

*Of the bischoppes of the weste. Capitulum quinquagesimum tertium.*

HIT is to be hade in memory that alle the prouince of Weste Saxones had oon bisshop from þe begynnenge vn to the tyme of Theodorus. Birinus, the firste bisshop in that prouince, sette the seete at Dorchestre, a meke place, thro the graunte of Kyngelfus, kyng of Weste Saxones; whiche seete was at the sowthe of Oxforde, nye to Walyngforde, betwene the metenge of ij. floodes, Tham and Yce. That byschop Byryne dedde, Kewacus kyng ordeynede that seete to be at Wynchestre, lyke as his fader proposede to have doen somme tyme, where Agilbertus, borne in Fraunce, hadde gouernaile firste on alle the province of Weste Saxones. From whiche tyme the cite and seete of Dor-

<sup>1</sup> cee, a.

<sup>2</sup> Added from a. (not in Cx.); but þat has been changed to at.

<sup>3</sup> time, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> kyng Islo, MS., Cx.

<sup>5</sup> purposed, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Agilbert, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> þat þe, MS.; not a. or Cx.

cestriensis pertinuit ad provinciam Merciorum, eo quod urbs illa<sup>1</sup> sita sit infra Thamisiam, qui fluvius disterminat Mercios a Westsaxonibus.<sup>2</sup> Post Agilbertum de Wyntonia expulsum præsedit Wyne, natione Anglus; a quo putant quidam urbem Wyntoniam denominatam fore Wynecestria,<sup>3</sup> quasi<sup>4</sup> Cestria, id est, urbs<sup>5</sup> Wynæ.<sup>6</sup> Ipso tandem expulso, successit Leutherius<sup>7</sup> nepos Agilberti prædicti; post quem Hedda<sup>8</sup> aliquandiu sedem<sup>9</sup> tenuit. Quo defuncto, Theodorus archiepiscopus duos præsules ad provinciam Westsaxonum ordinavit;<sup>10</sup> Danielelem<sup>11</sup> apud Wentam,<sup>12</sup> cui<sup>13</sup> subjecti fuerant duo pagi Southrey<sup>14</sup> et Southamptonshire;<sup>15</sup> Aldelmu quoque ad sedem Shireburne ordinavit, cui tunc subjacerunt sex pagi,<sup>17</sup> Barrocensis, Wyltonensis, Somersetensis, Dorsetensis, Dovoniensis et Cornubiensis. Deinde, tempore Edwardi senioris ad has duas<sup>18</sup> additæ

<sup>1</sup> *hæc*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *quæ ex parte austrina Merciam disterminat a West Saxonibus*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Wincheschestre*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *quia*, E.

<sup>5</sup> So MSS. distinctly, and Gale. The construction requires *acensati*res.

<sup>6</sup> Abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Eleutherius*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *Edda*, C.; *Eata*, D.; *aliquandiu Hedda*, B.; *Hedda*, om. E.

<sup>9</sup> *locum*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *ordinavit*] eo quod ampla esset deputavit, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *videlicet*, add. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Wyntoniam*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *cui tunc*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Sowthereie et Southanteschire*, A.

<sup>15</sup> *Hampton*, C.; *Hamptonia*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *Chern*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *scilicet*, ins. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *sedes*, add. C.D.; *sedes* after *tres*, A., Gale.



perteyned and longede to þe prouince of Mercia; for þat citee stondeþ wip ynne Temse; and Temse departeþ bytwene Mercia and Westsaxoun. After þat Agelberd<sup>1</sup> was i-putte out of Wynchestre, þat þo heet Wyntoun. Wyn<sup>2</sup> of Engliche nacioun was bisshop pere;<sup>3</sup> som<sup>4</sup> men weneþ þat þat<sup>5</sup> citee haþ þe name of þis Wyn, and hatte Wynechestre, as it were Wyne is citee. At þe laste he was putte<sup>6</sup> out and after hym come Leutherius, þe forseide Agilbertus neuewe. After Leutherius Hedda a while was bisshop pere. Whan he was dede, Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned tweye bisshoppes to þe prouince of Westsaxon; Danyel at Wynchestre, to hym were sugettes<sup>7</sup> tweie contrees Souperay and Souphampshire; Aldelyn<sup>8</sup> at Schireborne, to hym were sugettes sixe contrayes, Barrokschire,<sup>9</sup> Wiltshire, Somersete, Dorchestreschire, Deuenschire, and Cornewayle. *Trevisa*.<sup>10</sup> Afterward me<sup>11</sup> semeþ by þis lawe<sup>12</sup> þat Westsaxon conteyned Souperay, Souphampshire, Barrokschire, Wiltshire, Somersede, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornwayle.<sup>13</sup> *Willelmus*. Afterward in elder Edwardes tyme to þe[se]<sup>14</sup> tweye

TREVISA.

chestre pertenede to the prouince of the Marches, in so moche that cite was sette within Thanys, whiche floode departede the Marches from the Weste Saxones. And after Agilberte expulsede from Wynchestre, Wyne, a Englysche man, was byschop þer, of whom somme men frawe that cite to have taken name, for Wynechestre sowndethe as the cite of Wyne. Whiche expulsed at the laste, Leutherius, newewe to the forseide Agilberte, succedede þer, after whom Hedda succedede. Whiche dedde, Theodorus archebisshop ordeynede to that prouince of Weste Saxones ij. byschoppes, ordeynenge Daniel, byschop at Wynchestre, to whom ij. cuntrees were subiecte, Sowtheray and Sowthamptonshire. And Aldelme at the seete of Schirbourn, to whom vj. cuntrees were subiecte, Barrokschire, Wiltshire, Somersete, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornewaile. Vn to whiche ij. seetes other iij. seetes were addede in the tyme [of] Edwarde the senior, kynge of Englonde,

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> *Agilbert*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Wyne*, a.<sup>3</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.<sup>4</sup> *whan som*, MS. (first hand.)<sup>5</sup> *þe*, a., Cx.<sup>6</sup> *i-put*, a.<sup>7</sup> *sugett*, a.<sup>8</sup> *Adelin*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *Barkshire*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> Reference added from Cx.<sup>11</sup> *it*, a.<sup>12</sup> *sawe*, a.; *it seemeth by this that*, &c., Cx.<sup>13</sup> Names slightly varied in Cx.<sup>14</sup> *þese*, a., Cx.

sunt aliæ tres edicto Formosi papæ; videlicet Wellensis, cui subjacuit Someresete; Cridiensis, cui subjacuit Dovonia,<sup>1</sup> et Cornubiensis, apud Sanctum Petroclum<sup>2</sup> seu Sanctum Germanum, cui subjacuit Cornubia. Nec multo post sexta sedes posita<sup>3</sup> apud Ramysbury,<sup>4</sup> cui subjacuit pagus Wiltonensis. Postremo edicto Willelmi regis Conquæstoris,<sup>5</sup> omnes hæ sedes, excepta Wyntonia,<sup>6</sup> de viculis<sup>7</sup> ad urbes sunt translatae; nam Shireburne et Ramesbury<sup>8</sup> transierunt ad Saresbury,<sup>9</sup> cui usque hodie subjacent pagus<sup>10</sup> Barrocensis,<sup>11</sup> Wyltonensis et Dorsetensis<sup>12</sup> provinciæ;<sup>13</sup> Wellensis quoque sedes transiit ad Bathoniam, cui usque hodie<sup>14</sup> pagus subjacet<sup>15</sup> de<sup>16</sup> Somersete;<sup>17</sup> Cridiensis, et<sup>18</sup> Cornubiensis migraverunt<sup>19</sup> ad Excestriam,<sup>20</sup> cui<sup>21</sup> subjacent<sup>22</sup> Dovonia et Cornubia.

## CAP. LIV.

*De orientalibus episcopis.*<sup>3</sup>

*Willelmus.*<sup>24</sup> Observatum est quod<sup>25</sup> Estsaxones<sup>26</sup> ab initio usque modo semper<sup>27</sup> paruerunt<sup>28</sup> Londoniensi præsuli,<sup>29</sup> sed provinciæ Estanglorum, quæ continet

<sup>1</sup> So A.E.; *Devonia*, D. Gale; and so below.

<sup>2</sup> So A.B.E., Gale; *Patroclum*, D., which is probably right.

<sup>3</sup> *est*] So A.B.C.D., Gale; om. E.

<sup>4</sup> *Rammishbury*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *Conquæstoris*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Wintonia*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *villulis*, C. (not D.); *villis*, Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *Rammishburi*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *Salz*, B.; *Salesburi*, D.; *Sarum*, Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *pagi*, B., Gale.

<sup>11</sup> *et*, add. A.B.

<sup>12</sup> *subjacent...Dorsetensis*] subjacet Barrocensis et Wiltonensis provincia, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *et Dorsetensis provinciæ*] om. A.B. (E. has *Dosetensis*, but *Dorsetensis* above.

<sup>14</sup> *hodie*] added from C.D., Gale.

<sup>15</sup> *subjacent*, A.B.

<sup>16</sup> *de*] om. A.B.

<sup>17</sup> *pagus...Somersete*] *hodie subjacent duo pagi Somersete et Dorsete*, A.C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>19</sup> *transierunt*, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> So D. Gale; *Excesttram*, A.E.

<sup>21</sup> *usque hodie*, add. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *subjacet*, B.D.

<sup>23</sup> *episcopis orientalibus*, B.

<sup>24</sup> *Willelmus*] om. C.D.

<sup>25</sup> *Observatum...quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>26</sup> *West Saxones*, B.

<sup>27</sup> *semper*] om. A.

<sup>28</sup> *pervenerunt*, B.

<sup>29</sup> *episcopo*, C.D.

sees þre<sup>1</sup> opere sees were i-ordeyned by heste<sup>2</sup> of Formosus TREVISA. þe pope. Þe<sup>3</sup> cees were i-ordeyned at Welles for Somersete, at Crittoun<sup>4</sup> for Deuenschire, and at Seint German for Cornewayle. Noȝt ful longe afterward þe sixte see was i-sette at Ramysbury for Wiltshire. At þe laste by heste<sup>5</sup> of kyng William Conquerour alle þese sees saue Wynchestre were<sup>6</sup> i-torned and i-chaunged out of smal townes in to grete citees. For Schirborne and Ramysbury were i-torned to Salisbury. Now to pat see is sugett Barokschire, Wiltshire, and Dorsett. Þe see of Welles was i-torned to Bape. Þerto is now sugett al Somersete. Þe sees of Critton<sup>7</sup> and of Cornewayle were i-chaunged to Exceetre. Þerto is sugett Deuenschire and Cornwayle.

*De orientalibus episcopis. Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.*

*Willelmus.*<sup>8</sup> Hit is i-knowe pat þe Estsaxons alwey from þe bygynnyng for to now were sogettis<sup>9</sup> to þe bisshop of Londoun. But þe prouince of Est Angles, pat conteyneþ

thro the precepte of Formosus the pope, that is to say, MS. HARL. 2261. at Welles, to whom Somersete was subiecte; of Cridense, to whom Deuenschire was subiecte; and of Cornubiense, at Seynte Patroclus other Germanus, to whom alle Cornewaile was subiecte. And within a shorte space folowenge the vi<sup>th</sup>e seete was at Ramisbury, to whom Willeschire was subiecte. At the laste alle these seetes were remouede from townes to eites, thro commaundement of William Conqueroure, the seete of Wynchestre excepte. For the seetes of Shirborne and of Ramisbury were chaungede to Salisbury, to whom Barokshire, Willeschire, and the prouinces of Dorsette be subiecte. And the seete of Welles was chaungede vn to Bathe, to whom Somerset is subiecte. The seetes of Cridence and of Cornubiense were remouede to Exceetre, to whom Deuenschire and Cornewaile be subiecte.

*Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.*

HIT is to be attended that the Este Saxones were obediende from the begynnege vn to this tyme presente to the bisshop of London. But a byschop, Felix by name,

<sup>1</sup> oper þre opere, MS. ; thre other, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> commaundment, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> þre, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Crettoun, a. ; Krijton, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> So a. ; beheste, MS.

<sup>6</sup> was, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>7</sup> Cryttoun, a. ; Kyrton, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Reference added from Cx.

<sup>9</sup> subget, Cx.

Northfolk et Southfolc,<sup>1</sup> præfuit primo<sup>2</sup> apud urbem Domik<sup>3</sup> unicus episcopus Felix quidam Burgundus septendecim annis. Post quem Thomas quinque annis. Post quem Bonefacius septendecim<sup>4</sup> annis. Deinde Bisi per Theodorum institutus,<sup>5</sup> quousque prospera<sup>6</sup> valetudo permetteret, provinciam solus rexit. Post quem duo episcopi, per centum quadraginta tres annos, usque ad tempora Egberti, regis Westsaxonum,<sup>7</sup> provinciam illam rexerunt; unus apud Domuc,<sup>8</sup> alter apud<sup>9</sup> Elmham.<sup>10</sup> Post dies<sup>11</sup> tamen Ludcani regis Merciorum mansit tantum una sedes apud Elmham,<sup>12</sup> usque ad quintum annum Willelmi Conquæstoris; quando Herfastus vicesimus tertius orientalium episcopus sedem suam Helmhamensem<sup>13</sup> transtulit ad Thedfordiam.<sup>14</sup> At successor ejus Herebertus Losinga,<sup>15</sup> licentia regis Willelmi<sup>16</sup> Rufi, sedem Thedfordensem transtulit ad<sup>17</sup> Norwicum; sedem autem Heliensem,<sup>18</sup> quæ huic de prope<sup>19</sup> est, rex Henricus primus nono regni sui anno instituit, subjecta ad hoc<sup>20</sup> provincia Cantebrugge,<sup>21</sup> quæ prius fuerat pars episcopatus Lincolniensis; in cujus rei compensationem dedit Henricus rex<sup>22</sup> episcopo Lincolniensi regiam urbem suam<sup>23</sup> de Spaldyng.<sup>24</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Northfolchiam et Southfolch ia m*  
D.

<sup>2</sup> *primus*, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *Donmic*, A.C.; *Donwic*, B.;  
*Donwik*, D.; *Dommic*, Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *quindecim*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *instructus*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *valitudo prospera*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Etsaxonum*, Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *Domnuc*, A.C., Gale; *Donwic*,  
B.; *Donwik*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *apud*, added from D., Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *Elingham*, B.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Postea*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Elingham*, B.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Elmhamensem*, A.B., Gale;  
*Elinghammensem*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *Tedford*, Gale.

<sup>15</sup> *Losinga*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Willelmi regis*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *ad*] om. B.

<sup>18</sup> *Eliensem*, A.B.

<sup>19</sup> *hinc de prope*] Lincolniensi, B.;  
huic prope, A.

<sup>20</sup> *hæc*, D.

<sup>21</sup> *Cantebrigia*, D.

<sup>22</sup> *rex*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>23</sup> *suam*] om. C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *Spaldwik*, B.D.

Norþfolk and Souþfolk, hadde oon bisshop at Denwiche.<sup>1</sup> TREVISA.  
 Þe bisshop heet Felix, and was of Burgoyne ; and was bisshop  
 seuentene zere. After hym Thomas was bisshop fyue zere.  
 After hym Bonafas<sup>2</sup> seuentene<sup>3</sup> zere. Þanne Besy after-  
 ward was i-ordeyned by Theodorus, and rulede þe prouince,  
 while he myzte endure by hym selue allone. After hym  
 anon to Egebertus tyme, kyng of Westsaxons, an hondred  
 and þre and fourty [zere],<sup>4</sup> tweie bisshoppes rulede þat pro-  
 uince, oon at Donwyk and anoper at Elyngham.<sup>5</sup> Noþeles  
 after Ludecans tyme, kyng of Mercia, lefte and was onliche<sup>6</sup>  
 oon see at Elyngham anon to þe fifte zere of William  
 Conquerour, whan Herfastus þe þridde and twenty bisshop of  
 Esterne<sup>7</sup> chaungede þe<sup>8</sup> see from [Elyngham to]<sup>9</sup> Thetford,  
 [and his successor Herebetus Losinga chaungede þe see  
 from Thetford]<sup>10</sup> into Norþwhiche, by leue of kyng William  
 þe Rede. [þe]<sup>10</sup> see of Ely, þat is nygh þerto, þe firste kyng  
 Henry ordeyned þe nynþe zere of his reynunge, and made  
 suget þerto Cantebriggeshire, þat was rapen<sup>11</sup> a party of þe  
 bisshopriche of Lyncolne. And for quytyng þerof he zaf  
 to þe bisshop of Lyncolne a real citee þat hatte<sup>12</sup> Spaldyng.

borne in Burguyn, was firste bisshop ad Dommie, a citee MS. HARL.  
 of the prouince of Este Engliche men by xvij. yere ; after 2261.  
 whom Thomas was v. yere, after hym Bonifacius xvij. yere ;  
 after whom Besy, institute by Theodorus, gouernede that  
 prouince allon while he was in heale. After whom ij. by-  
 schopes reignede c.xliij yere, gouernenge the prouince vn to  
 the tymes of Egberte, kyng of Weste Saxones, oon of  
 theym at Dommie, that other at Elyngham, vn to the v<sup>the</sup>  
 yere of William Conquerour, when Herfastus, the xxiiij<sup>th</sup>  
 bisshop of the este, did translate the seete of Hely to Ted-  
 forde. And Herebertus Losinga, his successor, remouede  
 that seete from Tedforde to Norwiche, thro licence of Wil-  
 liam Rufus. Kyng Henry the firste ordeynede that seete  
 of Hely the ix<sup>th</sup> yere of his reigne, subduede to hit the  
 prouince of Cantebrigge, whiche pertenede a fore that tyme  
 of he zafe to the bisshop of Lincolne the towne of Spal-  
 denge.

<sup>1</sup> *Donwyk, a.*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *Boniface*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So *a.* ; *xvij.*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> Added from the Latin text ;  
absent also in Cx.

<sup>5</sup> The last clause as in Cx. ; MS.  
and *a.* have repetitions by clerical  
error from above.

<sup>6</sup> Probably we should read : *was  
left onliche*. Cx. agrees with text.

<sup>7</sup> *þe Estrene, a.*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *his, a.*

<sup>9</sup> Added from *a.* (not in Cx.)

<sup>10</sup> *þe*] added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *to fore*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *a good town callyd*. Cx.

## CAP. LV.

*De episcopis Merciorum.*<sup>1</sup>

*Willelmus.*<sup>2</sup> Notandum est hic<sup>3</sup> solerter, quod<sup>4</sup> sicut Merciorum imperium pro tempore fuerat semper amplissimum, ita et in plures episcopatus divisum; præsertim animositate regis Offæ, qui quadraginta annis imperans Mercii, transtulit ad Lichefeldiam honorem Cantuariæ<sup>5</sup> metropolitanum, annuente ad hoc<sup>6</sup> papa Adriano.<sup>7</sup> Igitur provinciæ Merciorum et Lindisfarorum primis annis Christianitatis, tempore regis Wolfarii,<sup>8</sup> unicus fuit episcopus apud Lichefeldiam; Duyna<sup>9</sup> primus, Celath secundus, ambo Scoti.<sup>10</sup> Post quos tertius Trunhere,<sup>11</sup> quartus Jarumannus,<sup>12</sup> quintus Cedda. Sed tempore<sup>13</sup> Etheldredi<sup>14</sup> fratris Wolferi,<sup>15</sup> Cedda mortuo, substituit Theodorus archiepiscopus<sup>16</sup> Wynfridum diaconum<sup>17</sup> Ceddæ; quem tamen postmodum ratione cujusdam inobedienciæ deposuit, substituens<sup>18</sup> Sexwolfum<sup>19</sup> abbatem de Medehamstede,<sup>20</sup> quod nunc de Burgo dicitur.<sup>21</sup> Sed post quartum<sup>22</sup> Sexwolfi annum ordinavit Theodorus provinciæ Merciorum

<sup>1</sup> *seu Mediterraneorum*, add. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Willelmus*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *hic*] quod, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Notandum... quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Cantuariæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *ad hoc*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> C.D. add—"eo quod Cantuaritis infestus fuerat quos et vastaverat." The whole passage is slightly transposed in these MSS.

<sup>8</sup> *Wlferi*, B.; *Wlfarii*, A.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Duina*, A.B.D., Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *ambo Scoti*] Arabo Scottus, C. (not D.); ambo Seottici, A.

<sup>11</sup> *Trunhere*, A.D., Gale.

<sup>12</sup> *Jarimannus*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *regis*, add. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Ethelredi*, B.D., Gale.

<sup>15</sup> *Wlferi*, B.D., Gale; *Wulferi*, A.

<sup>16</sup> *archipræsul*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *diaconum*] qui quondam diaconus fuerat, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *substituens*] eoque deposito substituit Theodorus, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *Sexwlfi*, D. (which has also *Medehamstede*), and so below.

<sup>20</sup> *Medehamstede*, D.

<sup>21</sup> *quod est de burgo*, C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *Post quartum vero*, C.D.

*De episcopis Merciorum. Capitulum quinquagesimum quintum.*

TREVISA.

*Willelmus.* Here take hede þat as þe kyngdom of Mercia was alwey grettest for þe tyme, so it was -i-deled in mo bisshopriches, and<sup>1</sup> specialliche by grete herte of kyng Offa, þat<sup>2</sup> was fourty þere kyng of Mercia. He chaunged þe archebisshoppes see from Caunterbury to Lychfelde<sup>3</sup> by assent of Adrian þe pope. Þan þe prouince of Mercia and of Lindiffare<sup>4</sup> in þe firste bygynnyng of here Cristendom in kyng Wulfrans tyme hadde oon bisshop atte Lichefelde. Þe firste bisshoppe þat was þere heet Dwyna; þe secounde heet Celath; and were boþe Scottes. After hem þe þridde Trumphere; þe ferþe heet Iarminannus;<sup>5</sup> þe fiftē Chedde. But in Ethelfredes<sup>6</sup> tyme, þat was Wolfer his broþer, whanne Chedde was dede, Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned [Wynfrede, Cheddes dekene. Neuerþeles he put hym doun<sup>7</sup> after þat, for he was vnþuxum in som poynt, and<sup>8</sup> ordeynede þere Sexwulf abbot of Medhamstede, þat hatte Burgh. But after Sexwulf his ferþe þere Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned]<sup>9</sup> fyue bisshoppes in þe prouince of

*Of the bischoppes of the Marches. Willelmus.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

HIT is to be attendede, that like as the impire of the Marches was moste large, so hit was diuided in to moste bischopes. And specially in the tyme of kyng Offa,<sup>11</sup> whiche reignenge in the Marches by xl. yere, transferrede the honor from Caunterbery to the chirche of Lyneolne, Adrian the pope grawntenge that priuilege. Where there was oon bisshop oonly, at Lichefelde, to the prouinee of Marches and of Lyndesfarne,<sup>10</sup> in the firste yeres of Cristianite, in the tyme of kyng Wulfarius; Duina was firste, Celat the secunde, bothe Scottes, Trunhere the thrydde, Iarumannus the iiij<sup>the</sup>, Cedda the v<sup>the</sup>. But Theodorus archebisshop, after the deathe of Seynte Chadde, ordeynede Wynfrede, dekyn of Seynte Chadde, in the tyme of Ethelrede, brother of Wulferus, whiche was deposede for cause of a certeyne inobediency, makenge Sexwulphus byschop þer, abbot of Medehamstede, whiche is callede now Petrusborough. But after the iiij<sup>the</sup> yere of Sexwulphus, Theodorus, tharchebisshop, ordeinede v. byschoppes to

<sup>1</sup> and of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>2</sup> whiche, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Lichefeld, a.<sup>4</sup> Lydefar, Cx.<sup>5</sup> So MS. corruptly; *Germuannus*, Cx.*Edelfredes*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> apud Hymdoun, a.; apud Hymdon, Cx.<sup>8</sup> So a; he, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>10</sup> *Lindeseye*. MS. (first hand.)<sup>11</sup> of Offa, Harl. MS., by a clerical error, it is to be hoped.

quinque episcopos; scilicet<sup>1</sup> Bosel ad Wygorniam,<sup>2</sup> Cudwynum ad Lichefeldiam, Sexwolfum<sup>3</sup> prædictum ad Legecestriam,<sup>4</sup> quæ nunc Cestria<sup>5</sup> dicitur; Ethelwynum ad Lindeseyam apud urbem Sedeneyam;<sup>6</sup> Eatam<sup>7</sup> quoque monachum de monasterio Hildæ apud Whiteby<sup>8</sup> sumptum,<sup>9</sup> ordinavit ad Dorcestriam<sup>10</sup> juxta Oxoniam, quæ et<sup>11</sup> Dorkinga tunc dicebatur.<sup>12</sup> Et sic sedes<sup>13</sup> Dorcestrensis, quæ tempore Sancti Birini<sup>14</sup> spectabat ad Westsaxonicos, a tempore Theodori archiepiscopi spectabat ad Mercios.<sup>15</sup> Ipse quoque Sexwolfus episcopus,<sup>16</sup> Cantia per regem Merciorum Etheldredum<sup>17</sup> vastata, Puctam Roffensem episcopum de Cantia venientem ordinavit primum Herfordiæ episcopum.<sup>18</sup> Sexwolfo tandem defuncto, successit Hedda apud Lichefeld,<sup>19</sup> et<sup>20</sup> Wylfridus de Northimbria diu profugatus successit apud Legecestriam,<sup>21</sup> quæ modo Cestria dicitur. Post duos tamen annos, defuncto rege Northumbrorum<sup>22</sup> Alfrido, Wylfridus<sup>23</sup> ad propriam sedem Hagustaldensem rediit; et sic Hedda ambas parochias, scilicet Legecestriam et Lichefeld, tenuit.<sup>24</sup> Post quem<sup>25</sup> Albinus<sup>26</sup> et Wor.<sup>27</sup> Post quem tres successerunt; scilicet,<sup>28</sup> Totta apud Legecestriam; Wytta<sup>29</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *scilicet*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Wigorniam*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Sexwolfum*, B.D.

<sup>4</sup> So E., at length; *Legecestre*, A.; *Logecestre*, B.

<sup>5</sup> So D., at length; *Cestre*, A.; *Cestr*<sup>o</sup>, E.; but *Cestria* at length just below.

<sup>6</sup> *Sideniam*, B.; *Sidenciam*, A.D., Gale.

<sup>7</sup> *Ethlam*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Witebi*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *pucl. . . sumptum*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> So A., Gale; *Dorcestam*, E.

<sup>11</sup> *tunc Dorkinga*, B.; *etiam et*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *tunc dicebatur*] dicitur, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *sedes*] om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *Sancti Birini*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *spectabat ad Mercios*] pertinuit ad provinciam Merciorum, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *episcopus*] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Ethelredum*, D.

<sup>18</sup> *ordinavit . . . episcopum*] Herefordensem episcopum fecit, B.

<sup>19</sup> So E. and A. (*Lichefelde*), though

they have the Latin form elsewhere; this inconstancy often renders the contractions ambiguous; *Lich*<sup>o</sup>. D.

<sup>20</sup> " et apud Legecestriam Wilfridus, de Northimbria recenter expulsus; sed vi hostilitatis ingruente ejectus, Wilfridus ad priorem sedem suam Hagustaldensem, Alfrido rege jam defuncto, reversus est." C. (and D. nearly.)

<sup>21</sup> *Logecestriam*, B.

<sup>22</sup> So A., at length; *Northimbr*, E. (which is ambiguous); *Northanhumborum*, B.; *Northumbria*, Gale.

<sup>23</sup> *Wylfridus*, B.

<sup>24</sup> *rexit*, C.D.

<sup>25</sup> *Et post eum*, C.D.

<sup>26</sup> *Alwinus*, C.D.

<sup>27</sup> *et Wor*] qui et Wor, Gale; qui et Wor vocabatur, C.D.

<sup>28</sup> *Post . . . scilicet*] Eoque defuncto, tres facti sunt episcopi, C.D.

<sup>29</sup> *Witta*, C.D.



Mercia. And so he ordeyned Bosel at Wircetre, Cudwyn at Lichefelde, þe forseide Sexwulf at Chestre, Ethelwyn<sup>1</sup> at Lyndeseie at þe citee Sidenia. And he took Eata, monk of þe abbay of Hilde at Whitby, and made hym bisshop of Dorchestre þat longed to Mercia<sup>2</sup> bysides Oxenforde. Þo þis Dorchestre heet Dorkynge, and so þe see of Dorchestre þat [longed to West Saxon in Seynt Byrynes tyme],<sup>3</sup> longed to Mercia from Þeodorus<sup>4</sup> þe archebisshoppes tyme. Also when Ethelberd,<sup>5</sup> kyng of Mercia, hadde destroyed Kent, þe<sup>6</sup> bisshop Sexwulf took Pictas, bisshop of Rouchestre, þat come out of Kent, and made hym first bisshop of Herforde.<sup>7</sup> At þe laste, whan Sexwulf was dede, Hedda was bisshop of Lichefelde after hym; and Wilfrede flemede oute of Northumberlonde was bisshop at<sup>8</sup> Chestre. Noþeles after two ȝere Alfred kyng of Norþhumberlond deide, and Wilfrede tornede aȝen<sup>9</sup> to his owne see of Haugustalden. And so Hedda hylde<sup>10</sup> boþe bisshopriches of Lichefelde and of Chestre. After him<sup>11</sup> come Albyne, þat heet Wor also. And

TREVISA.

the prouince of the Marches, that is to say, Bosel at Wircetre, Cudwyne at Lichefelde, Sexwulphus at Chestre, Ethelwyne at Lindesey, at a cite callede Sedencia. Takege also Eata, monke of the monastery of Seynte Hilda at Whitby, made hym byschop at Dorchestre, nye to Oxforde, whiche was callede that tyme Dorkynga. And so the seete of Dorchestre, whiche pertenede to the Weste Saxones in the tyme of Seynte Biryne, longede to the Marches from the tyme of Theodorus tharchebischop. Sexwulphus dedde, Hedda succeeded at Lychefelde; and Wilfride, chasede from Northumbrelonde, succedede at Legecestre, now namede Chestre; neuerthelesse Alfride, the kyng of Northumbrelonde, dedde within the space of ij. yere foloenge, Wilfride returnede to his propre seete Haugustaldense; and so Hedda was bischop bothe of Lichefelde and of Chestre. After whom Albinus other Wor. After whom thre succeded, that

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Edelwyn*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *þat longed to Mercia*] om. *a.* and Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>4</sup> *Theodorus*, *a.*<sup>5</sup> *Ethelred*, *a.*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *this*, *β.*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *Rouchestre Herforde*, MS. The former word is *very slightly* expuncted in *a.*, which would lead usto suspect, as do many other things, that the standard MS. may have been copied from *a.*, or that both are copies of the same MS. The text of *β.* and Cx. is correct.<sup>8</sup> *of*, *β.*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *aȝe*, *a.*<sup>10</sup> *hulde*, *a.*<sup>11</sup> *hem*, MS. (not *a.*, *β.* or Cx.)

apud Lichefeld; Eata<sup>1</sup> adhuc in Dorcestria<sup>2</sup> remanente, cujus sedem eo defuncto præsules Lindisienses<sup>3</sup> per trecentos quinquaginta quatuor annos tenuerunt; donec Remigius, licentia regis Willelmi primi, sedem transferret ad Lincolniam.<sup>4</sup> Sed<sup>5</sup> tempore regis Edgari Leofwynus præsul<sup>6</sup> conjunxit ambas parochias Cestrensiarum et Lindisfarorum,<sup>7</sup> quoad ipse viveret.

## CAP. LVI.

*De episcopis Northimbranis.*<sup>8</sup>

*Willelmus, libro quarto de Pontificibus, capitulo undecimo.*<sup>9</sup> Apud Eboracum unica sedes primo fuit pro tota<sup>10</sup> provincia Northimbrana,<sup>11</sup> quam Paulinus primus a Dorobernensi<sup>12</sup> Justo ordinatus septem annis tenuit. Deinde, occiso rege Northimbranorum<sup>13</sup> Edwyno, turbatisque rebus,<sup>14</sup> recessit Paulinus navigio ad partes Cantiae unde primo venerat,<sup>15</sup> sumpto secum pallio. *Willelmus, libro tertio.*<sup>16</sup> Sicque cessavit prae-

<sup>1</sup> *Eatta*, B.<sup>2</sup> *apud Dorcestriam*, B.; *in Dorcestre*, D.<sup>3</sup> *Lindeyenses*, B.<sup>4</sup> C.D. add:—"quæ tunc caput erat Lindeseie."<sup>5</sup> *Tamen*, C.D.<sup>6</sup> *Legecestricæ*, add. C.D.<sup>7</sup> The passage is slightly altered in C.D.<sup>8</sup> *Northanhumbranis*, B.; *Northumbrensibus*, D.<sup>9</sup> *libro . . . undecimo*] om. B., Gale.<sup>10</sup> *per totam*, Gale.<sup>11</sup> *Genti Northimbranae unica sedes primitus fuit apud Eboracum*, C.D.<sup>12</sup> *episcopo*, add. C.D.<sup>13</sup> *Northimbranorum*] om. C.D. Northanhumbrorum, B.; Northumbriae, Gale; North, A.E.<sup>14</sup> *publicis*, add. C. (not D.)<sup>15</sup> *unde primo venerat*] om. C.D.<sup>16</sup> C.D. omit reference.

after hym come the<sup>1</sup> bisshoppis Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichefelde, and Eata was  $\zeta$ it at Dorchestre. After his deth bisshoppes of Lyndeseye helde his<sup>2</sup> see pre hondred  $\zeta$ ere and foure and fifty, for to Remigius chaungede pe see to Lyncolne by leue of pe firste kyng William: but in kyng Edgar his tyme bisshop<sup>3</sup> Leofwynus ioynede bope bisshopriches [to gideres]<sup>4</sup> of Chestre and of<sup>5</sup> Lyndeseie,<sup>6</sup> while his lif durede.

TREVISA.

*De episcopis Northumbranis, Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.*

*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo.*  
At York was oon see for alle pe prouince of Northumberlond. Paulinus hulde first pat see, and was i-ordeyned of pe bisshop<sup>7</sup> of Caunterbury, and hylde pat see of  $\zeta$ ork seuene  $\zeta$ ere. Afterward whan kyng Edwyn was i-slawe, and pinges were destourbed, Paulynus wente pennes by water wey in to Kent, whennes he com first, and toke wip hym pe<sup>8</sup> palle. *Willelmus, libro tertio.* And so pe bisshopriche of  $\zeta$ ork<sup>9</sup> cesede

is to say, Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichefelde, Eata re-  
maynenge at Dorchestre; the seete of whom bischoppes of  
Lindeseye occupiede by ccc.liiiij<sup>u</sup> yere, vn tyll that Remi-  
gius transferrede that seete to Lincolne, in the tyme of  
kyng William the firste. But Leofwinus byshop, con-  
ioinede bothe the chirches of Chestre and Lindesey to gedre  
in the tyme of kyng Edgare, while he lyvede.

MS. HARL.  
2261.  
f. 73. a.

*Of the Bischopes of Northumberlonde. Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.*

*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo.*  
Oon seete was firste at Yorke, for alle the prouince off Northumbrelonde, whom Paulinus occupiede firste by the space of vij. yere. After that Edwinus, kyng of Northumbrelonde, sleyne, Paulinus toke schippe and saylede to Kente, from whens he come, takenge the palle with hym. *Willelmus, libro tertio.* And so the bischopperiche of

<sup>1</sup> pre, a.<sup>2</sup> the, Cx.<sup>3</sup> bishop of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>4</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> of] om. a.<sup>6</sup> Lyndefare, a.<sup>7</sup> So MSS. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> So a. and Cx.; pat, MS.<sup>9</sup> So a. and Cx.; York the bisshopriche, MS.

sulatus Eboracensis xxx. annis, usus vero pallii cessavit<sup>1</sup> ibidem cxxv. annis, donec Egbertus episcopus et frater regis terræ<sup>2</sup> auctoritate papali pallium recuperaret.<sup>3</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>4</sup> Regnante interim Sancto Oswaldo præfuit Aidanus Scoticus<sup>5</sup> apud Bernicios;<sup>6</sup> post quem Finanus; post quem Colmannus. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio*.<sup>7</sup> Quo tandem ad Scotiam indignanter<sup>8</sup> recedente, eo quod<sup>9</sup> illegitima Paschæ observatione per Wyfridum fuerat redargutus,<sup>4</sup> tricesimo<sup>10</sup> post recessum Paulini anno Wilfridus ad sedem Eboracensem institutus est.<sup>11</sup> *Beda, libro quarto*.<sup>12</sup> Sed<sup>13</sup> ipso circa suam consecrationem<sup>14</sup> apud Gallias diutius demorante,<sup>15</sup> ad instigationem quartadecimanorum<sup>16</sup> Cedda de monasterio suo Lestingensi sumptus, annuente rege Oswy, subintrusus est. Quo tandem post triennium per Theodorum archipræsulem amoto, et<sup>17</sup> ad provinciam Merciorum assignato, Wilfridus per Theodorum restitutus est; sed et ipse<sup>18</sup> tandem propter quasdam similtates inter ipsum et regem Oswy<sup>19</sup> exortas, post decimum officii sui annum, cooperante et corrupto Theodoro, a sede sua expulsus est; ordina-

<sup>1</sup> *vacavit*, C.D., slightly transposed.

<sup>2</sup> *terræ*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *recuperavit*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ranulphus . . . redargutus*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Scottis*, B.; *Scotus*, Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *Berwicios*, B.

<sup>7</sup> B. omits reference.

<sup>8</sup> *indignante*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *quod de*, Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *igitur*, add. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> C.D. omit reference.

<sup>13</sup> This passage, as far as *Tunbertum apud Hagustaldensem*, is contracted in C.D. to "Sed ipso post "decimum officii sui annum expulso, Theodorus Dorobernensis "episcopus ex regis Oswy con-niventia ordinavit Bosam apud "Eboracum."

<sup>14</sup> *consecrationem suam*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *immorante*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *quandam dessimanorum*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>18</sup> *ipso*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *discordias*, ins. B.

pritty ȝere, and þe vse of þe palle secede<sup>1</sup> pere an hondred and fyue and fifty<sup>2</sup> ȝere, for to þat Egbert the bisshop, þat was þe kynges broþer of þe lond, recouered it by auctorite of þe pope. R. So among,<sup>3</sup> whan Seint Oswolde regnede, Aidanus,<sup>4</sup> a Scot, was bisshop in Brenicia, þat is þe norþside of Norþhumberlond; after hym Fynanus;<sup>5</sup> after hym Salmannus. *Willelmus, ubi supra.* At þe laste he wente to Scotlonde wiþ grete indingnacioun, for Wilfrede vndertook hym for he hylde vnlawfulliche Esterday; pritty ȝere after þat Paulinus was agoo<sup>6</sup> from Wilfrede was i-made bisshop of York. *Beda, libro quarto.* But [while]<sup>7</sup> he dwellede longe in Fraunce aboute his sacrynge, at exitynge of quartadecimanorum, þat were þey þat helde Esterday þe xiiij<sup>e</sup><sup>8</sup> day of þe mone, Chedde was i-take out of his abbay of Lestyng, and wrongfulliche i-put to<sup>9</sup> þe see of York by assent of kyng Oswy. But pre ȝere afterward Theodorus the archebisshop dede hym away, and assignede hym to þe prouince of Mercia, and restored Wilfrede to þe see of York. But afterwarde Wilfrede, bycause of wrethe þat was arered<sup>10</sup> bytwene hym and kyng Egfred, was i-putte oute of his see by help of Theodorus<sup>11</sup> þe archebisshop þat was corupt wiþ som manere mede;

TREVISA.

Yorke seasede xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere, and the vse of the palle seasede there by a c. xxv<sup>ti</sup> yere vn tyl þat bischoppe Egberte, brother to the kyng of that londe, recurede the palle thro auctorite of the pope. R. After that, Seynte Oswalde reignenge, Aidanus, a Scotte, hade gouernaile in Bernicia, after whom Finanus,<sup>12</sup> and after hym Colmannus. *Willelmus ubi supra.* Whiche goenge in to Scotlonde, as for indignacion, in that he was reprovede by Wilfride of vnlawefulle kepenge of Estur, Wilfride was restorede to the seete of Yorke after the departenge of Paulinus, in the xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere. *Beda, libro quarto.* But Wilfride taryenge in Fraunce abowte his consecracion, Seynte Chadde was taken and made bischoppe þer, thro helpe of kyng Oswy; whiche, remouede with in the space of thre yere by Theodorus tharchebisshop, was made bischop of the Marches, and Wilfride was restorede to hit ageyne. Whiche Wilfride was expulsede with in the space of x. yere foloenge, Theodorus tharchebisshoppe cooperante and corrupte, for cause of conten-

MS. HARL.  
226i.<sup>1</sup> *cesede, a.*<sup>2</sup> *cxv. yere, Cx.*<sup>3</sup> *So among] om. Cx.*<sup>4</sup> *So Cx.; Adrianus, MS.; Aidanus, a.*<sup>5</sup> *Finianus, Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *goon, Cx.; ago, β.* The text is a little corrupt, probably ȝork shouldbe added after *from*, or *from* cancelled.<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.*<sup>8</sup> *So Cx.; fourþe, MS. and a.*<sup>9</sup> *in to, Cx.*<sup>10</sup> *arered] om., Cx.*<sup>11</sup> *So a. and Cx.; Odorus, MS.*<sup>12</sup> *Sinanus, Harl. MS.*

vitque tunc Theodorus ad regis instantiam Bosam apud Eboracum, Tunbertum<sup>1</sup> apud Hagustaldensem ecclesiam, Eatam<sup>2</sup> ad<sup>3</sup> Lindisfarnensem ecclesiam,<sup>4</sup> quæ est Halyelond,<sup>5</sup> in flumine<sup>6</sup> Twydi;<sup>7</sup> quam sedem<sup>8</sup> Aidanus post<sup>9</sup> fundaverat, Eadhedum<sup>10</sup> vero de Lyndesy<sup>11</sup> reversum præfecit<sup>12</sup> Ripensi<sup>13</sup> ecclesiæ, ubi<sup>14</sup> Wyldfridus quondam abbas fuerat. Trunwynum<sup>15</sup> autem<sup>16</sup> destinavit ad terram Pictorum in finibus Anglorum juxta Scotiam, in loco qui Candida Casa,<sup>17</sup> seu Whiterne,<sup>18</sup> dicitur; ubi<sup>19</sup> Sanctus Ninianus Brito<sup>20</sup>

Sedes Candidæ Casæ, Hagustaldensis, et Lisfarnensis demum extinctæ.

primus fundator et doctor extiterat. Sed hæ<sup>21</sup> omnes sedes, excepta Eboracensi, paulatim defecerunt. Nam sedes Candidæ Casæ, quæ tunc ad Anglos spectabat, aliquot annis sub decem episcopis durabat;<sup>22</sup> donec depopulatione Pictorum<sup>23</sup> a ditone Anglorum omnino deficeret. Hagustaldensis vero et Lyndisfarnensis<sup>24</sup> sedes, quæ vicissim unica erat sub novem episcopis, nonaginta ferme annis usque adventum Dacorum duravit. Quo in tempore sub Hyngwar<sup>25</sup> et Hubba Ardulphus episcopus diu cum corpore Cuthberti<sup>26</sup> vagabatur, usque ad dies Aluredi regis Westsaxonum,

<sup>1</sup> *Thunbertum*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Eatan*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *apud*, Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *ecclesiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Haly Eland*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *fluvio*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Twydæ*, B.; *Tvidi*, A.; *Twede*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Sanctus*, ins. C.D.; adding *Scotus*.

<sup>9</sup> *primo*, C.D., Gale; *primus*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Eathedum*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Lindesey*, B.; *ad Lindeseiam*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Theodorus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Riponensi*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *ubi*] in qua, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Trumwinum*, A.

<sup>16</sup> *vero*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Canditasa*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *Hwytherne*, C.; *Witerne*, A.; *Witherne*, D.

<sup>19</sup> *ubi*] om. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *Brito*] om. B.; *natione Brito*, D.

<sup>21</sup> *hæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *duravit*, B.C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *depulsatis Pictis*, C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *Lindisfarnensis*, B.

<sup>25</sup> *Hungar*, B.; *Hingar*, A., Gale (who omits *sub*.)

<sup>26</sup> *diu* after *Cuthberti* in A.

pat was i-doo after þat Wilfrede hadde i-be bisshop of York ten ȝere; þan at þe instaunce of þe kyng Theodorus made Bosam bisshop of York and Cuthbert<sup>1</sup> at Hagustalde chirche, and Eata at Lyndefar chirche þat hatte Haly Eland<sup>2</sup> in þe ryuer of Twede. Aydanus foundede first þat sec, and Theodorus made Eadhedus<sup>3</sup> bisshop of Rypoun þat was i-come aȝen out of Lyndeseie; Wilfrede<sup>4</sup> hadde be abbot of Ripoun. Theodorus sende Trunwynus to þe lond of Pictes in þe endes of Engelond faste by Scotlond in a place þat hatte Candida Casa and Whyterne<sup>5</sup> also. þere Seint Ninian, a Bretoun, was first foundour and doctour; but alle þese sees outake York faillede litell and litel; for þe see of Candida Casa, and þat is Galeway, þat longede þoo to Engelond, durede meny ȝeres vnder ten bisshoppes for to þat he was oute of power [by destroyenge of þe Pictes. þe sees of Hagustald and of Lyndefare was bytymes al oon under nyne bisshoppis]<sup>6</sup> aboute a foure score ȝere and ten, and durede anon to þe comynge of þe Danes. In þat tym vnder Hungar and Hubba, Ardulf þe bisshop ȝede longe aboute wiþ Seynt Cuthberd his body anon to kyng Alured his tyme, kyng of West Saxon, whan<sup>7</sup> þe see of Lyndefare was i-sette at Kun-

TREVISA.

cion movede betwene hym and kyng Egfride; and then Theodorus ordeinede, at the instance of the kyng, Bosa at Yorke, Tunbertus<sup>8</sup> at the chirche Haugustaldense, Eata at the chirche Lindisfarn, whiche is in the Holielönde, in the floode of Twide; whiche sete Aidanus the bisshop foundede firste, sendenge Trumwyne to the londe of Pictes, in the costes of Englonde nye to Scotlonde, in to a place whiche is callede Witerne, where Seynte Ninian otherwise callede of commune peple Seynte Ronyon, was firste founder and doctour; but alle these seetes, Yorke excepte, faylede by succession. For the seete of Witerne, whiche longede þat tyme to Engliche men [indurede] by certeyne yeres, vnder x. bischoppes, vn tille that [by] the depopulacion of the Pictes [hit] faillede vtterly from the lordeschippe of Engliche men; and the seetes of Haugustaldens and Lindisfarne, whiche beenge otherwhile oon indurede allemoste xc. yere, vnder ix. bischoppes, vnder the commenge of Danes. But in the tyme of Hinguar and Hubba, Ardulphus the bisshop was vagante longe with þe body of Seynte Cuthberte, vn to the tyme of Aluredus, kyng of Weste Saxones, when the seete of

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Cumbert*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Holy Ylond*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Etheldredus*, MS.<sup>4</sup> Probably we should read *where Wilfrede*.<sup>5</sup> So *a.*, Cx.; *Whitne*, MS.<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>7</sup> *and*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> So Harl. MS.

quando sedes Lindisfarnensis<sup>1</sup> apud Kunegestriam,<sup>2</sup> sive Cuningesburgham<sup>3</sup> ponebatur;<sup>4</sup> qui locus<sup>5</sup> hodie dicitur<sup>6</sup> Ubbeford<sup>7</sup> super Twedam. Tandem septimo-decimo anno regis Egelredi,<sup>8</sup> filii Edgari, sedes illa usque Dunelmiam<sup>9</sup> translata<sup>10</sup> est, et<sup>11</sup> corpus Cudberti<sup>12</sup> ibidem reconditum<sup>13</sup> per Edmundum episcopum.<sup>14</sup> Ex tunc omnino defecit<sup>15</sup> sedes Hagustaldensis et Lindisfarnensis.<sup>15</sup> Henricus<sup>17</sup> autem primus nono regni sui anno instituit novam sedem apud<sup>18</sup> Caerliel.<sup>19</sup>

## CAP. LVII.

*De numero sedium episcopaliū.*<sup>20</sup>

<sup>21</sup> CANTUARIENSIS metropolis habet sub se tredecim episcopos in Anglia, et quatuor in Wallia, videlicet,<sup>22</sup> Roffensem soli Cantiaë præidentem; item Londoniensem, qui præest Estsaxonibus,<sup>23</sup> Midelsex, et medietati<sup>24</sup> Hertfortshire; <sup>25</sup> item Cicestrensem soli Southsaxiæ<sup>26</sup> et Vectæ insulæ præidentem; Wyntoniensem, qui præest Hamptshire et Southreye; Salesburiensem,<sup>27</sup> qui præest Dorsetensibus,<sup>28</sup> Barroeshire, et Wyltshire;<sup>29</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Lindisfarnensis*, B.<sup>2</sup> *Koningcestriam*, B.; *Kunegescestre*, D.<sup>3</sup> *Cunningesburgh*, A.; *Coyngesburgh*, B.; *Cunnigisburgh*, Gale.<sup>4</sup> *Kumbreborg* (*Cumbreburgh*, D.) *locabatur*, C.D.<sup>5</sup> *qui locus*] locus ille, C.D.<sup>6</sup> *dicitur hodie*, B.<sup>7</sup> *Ubbesforð*, B.; *Ubleford*, A.; *Hubbeford*, D.<sup>8</sup> *Egberedi*, B.<sup>9</sup> *Dunolmiam*, B.; *Dunelium*, Gale.<sup>10</sup> *translatum*, B.<sup>11</sup> *et*] om. B.<sup>12</sup> *Cuthberti*, B., Gale.<sup>13</sup> Gale adds *est*.<sup>14</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.<sup>15</sup> *defecit omnino*, B., Gale.<sup>16</sup> *Lindisfarnensis*, B.<sup>17</sup> *Post hoc autem Henricus primus*, C.D., with other slight variations below.<sup>18</sup> *apud*] om. C.D.; *Karliolum*, B.<sup>19</sup> C.D. add: — “*quæ quondam Lugubalia dicebatur.*”<sup>20</sup> *episcopatum*] om. C.D.<sup>21</sup> *Sic igitur in præsentem*, ins. C.D.<sup>22</sup> *et . . . videlicet*] om. C.D.<sup>23</sup> *Estsaxonice*, Gale; *Estsexia*, D.<sup>24</sup> *medietatem habet Hertfordschira*, A.<sup>25</sup> *Hertfordschiria*, B.; *Herfordshiria*, Gale.<sup>26</sup> *Sussex*, B.; *Southsaxonibus*, D.<sup>27</sup> *Sarisburiensem*, B.; *Saresburiensem*, Gale.<sup>28</sup> *et*, ins. A.<sup>29</sup> *Wyntonschire*, B.; *Dorcestre*, *Barrocensibus*, *et Wiltonensibus*, D.



negester,<sup>1</sup> þat hatte Kunnyngesburgh also; þat place hatte now Vbbeford vpon Twede. At þe laste þe seuenþe ȝere of kyng Egbert, kyng Edgarus sone, þat [see]<sup>2</sup> was i-chaunged to Duren, and Seint Cuthbertus body was i-doo þere<sup>3</sup> by þe doynge of Edmond the bisshop; and from þat tyme forward þe see þat hatte Haugustald and Lyndefare fayled alle oute.<sup>4</sup> Þe firste kyng Henry þe nyneþe ȝere of his regnyng<sup>5</sup> made þe newe see at Carlille.<sup>6</sup> TREVISA.  
—

*Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.*

THE archebisshop of Canterbury hap vnder hym þritene bischoppes in Engeland, and foure in Wales. Þat beep Rouchestre, he hap vnder hym Kent allone;<sup>7</sup> Londoun, he hap vnder hym Essex and Middelsex and half Hertfordschire; Chichestre, he hap vnder hym Soupsex and þe Ile of Wiȝt; Wynchestre, he hap vnder hym Hampschire and Sowþereie; Salysbury hap vnder hym Barrokshire,<sup>8</sup> Wilteschire, and Dorsete; Excetre hap vnder hym

---

Lindisfarne was sette at Cungestre or Kunnengesburghe, whiche place is callede now Hubeforde on Twede. And at the laste that sete was removede to Duren, in the xvj. yere of Egelrede kyng, son of kyng Edgare; and the body of Seynte Cuthberte the bisshop was buriede there by Edmunde the bisshop. From whiche tyme the sectes of the chirches of Haugustaldense failede vtterly; and kyng Henry the firste, in the ix<sup>the</sup> yere of his reigne, ordeynede a newe seete, Caerlielle. MS. HARL.  
2261.  
—

*Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.*

THE metropolitan of Caunterbury hathe vnder hym xiiij. bischoppes in Engeland, and iiij. in Wales, that is to say:— the bisshop of Rochestre, whiche hathe gouernayle oonly in Kente. Also of London whiche hathe rewle in Estesex, Midelsex, and of the halfe of Hertefordeschire. Also the bisshop of Chichestre whiche is presidente oonly of Southesex and of the yle of Wyȝhte. The bisshop of Wynchestre, whiche is presidente in Hampteschire and Surry. And of Salisbury þat is presidente of Dorset, Barrokschire,

<sup>1</sup> *Kunegestre*, a. and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Added from Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *brought thyder*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *alle oute*] vtterly, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *regne*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> So a.; *Caerleyl*, Cx.; *Cornwayle*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *aloon*, a. Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Barkshire*, Cx.; who has other slight variations of orthography and expression.

Excestrensem, qui præest Devonïæ<sup>1</sup> et Cornubiæ; Bathoniensem, qui præest Somersetensibus; Wygorniensem, qui præest Glovernensibus, Wygornensibus, et dimidiis<sup>2</sup> Warwycensibus; Herfordensem, qui præest Herefordensibus et parti<sup>3</sup> Salopshire; <sup>4</sup> Cestrensem, sive Conventrensem et Lichfeldensem,<sup>5</sup> qui præest Cestriæ,<sup>6</sup> Staffordiæ, Derby, dimidiæ Warewiciæ,<sup>7</sup> parti Salopiæ,<sup>8</sup> parti<sup>9</sup> Lancastreshire,<sup>10</sup> videlicet a flumine de Mersee<sup>11</sup> usque<sup>12</sup> flumen de Rippel;<sup>13</sup> Lincolniensem, qui præest provinciis, quæ sunt inter Thamisiam et Humbram, videlicet, Lincolnïæ, Leicestriæ, Northamtoniæ, Huntyntoniæ, Bedfordiæ, Bokyngham,<sup>14</sup> Oxoniæ, et dimidiæ<sup>15</sup> Hertfortshire;<sup>16</sup> Heliensem,<sup>17</sup> qui præest Cantebruggeshire, præter Merlond;<sup>18</sup> Norwicensem, qui præest Merlond,<sup>19</sup> Norfolchiæ,<sup>20</sup> et Southforchiæ.<sup>21</sup> Item Cantuarensis habet in Wallia quatuor suffraganeos, scilicet Landavensem, Menevensem,<sup>22</sup> Bangoriensem,<sup>23</sup> et Sancti Asaph. Eboracum<sup>24</sup> autem metropolis hodie tantum duos habet sub se<sup>25</sup> episcopos, Dunelmensem scilicet<sup>26</sup> et Carduliensem. *Ranulphus*.<sup>27</sup> Cum igitur duo in Anglia solummodo<sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Doroniæ*, Gale.

<sup>2</sup> *dimidie*, Gale. (The MSS. have contractions here and below.)

<sup>3</sup> *parti*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *de Salopeschire*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Coventre et Lichfeld*, A.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Cestriæ*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *et*, ins. A.; *dimidium Warwicensem*, Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *parti Salopiæ*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *parti*] et *dimidiæ*, C.D.; *partim*, Gale (twice).

<sup>10</sup> *Lancastre*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *Meerse*, B.; D. omits this and the four preceding words.

<sup>12</sup> *ad*, ins. A.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Ryppell*, B.; *Rupill*, A.; *Rippul*, Gale; *Ribbil*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *Bukyngham, Bedford*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *habet*, ins. A.

<sup>16</sup> *altera dimidia pertinet Londoniensi*, ins. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Eliensem*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *Merslond*, B.; *Mershlond*, C. (not D.)

<sup>19</sup> *Merslond*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *Norfolchiæ*, Gale.

<sup>21</sup> *Sowtfolchiæ*, A. (and Gale, nearly.) There are a few very trivial orthographical and other variations in this part of the chapter in C.D., which have not been noticed.

<sup>22</sup> *Minevensem*, Gale.

<sup>23</sup> *Bangor.*, *Menev.*, B.

<sup>24</sup> *Eboracensis*, B.; *Eboraci*, Gale.

<sup>25</sup> *sub se habet*, B.

<sup>26</sup> *scilicet*] added from B., Gale.

<sup>27</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>28</sup> *tantummodo*, C.D.; *solomodo*, E.

Deuenschire and Cornwayle ; Baþe haþ vndre hym Somersete-  
 [schire]<sup>1</sup> allone ; Wircestre hathe vnder hym Glowcetre-  
 [schire],<sup>2</sup> Wircestreschire, and half Warwykschire ; Herforde  
 haþ vnder hym Herfordschire and som of Schropschire.  
 Chestre is bisshop of Couentre [and]<sup>3</sup> of Lichfield, and haþ  
 vnder hym Chestreschire, Staffordschire, Derbyschire, half  
 Warwikschire, som of Schropschire, and som of Lancastre-  
 schire from þe ryuer of Merce<sup>4</sup> anon to þe ryuer of Rypel.<sup>5</sup>  
 Lyncolne haþ vnder hym þe prouince þat beþ bytwene Temse  
 and Humber, þat beþ þe schires of Lyncolne,<sup>6</sup> of Leycetre,  
 of Northamptoun, of Huntyngdoun, of Bedeford, of Bukyng-  
 ham,<sup>7</sup> of Oxenforde, and half Hertfordschire. Hely haþ  
 vnder hym Cantebriggeschire outake Merslond.<sup>8</sup> Norp-  
 whiche haþ vnder hym Merslond, Norpfolk, and Soupfolk.<sup>9</sup>  
 Also þe archebisshop of Caunterbury haþ foure suffragans  
 in Wales, þat beþ Landaf, Seint Dauyes, Bangor, and Seint  
 Assaph. Þe archebisshop of York haþ now but tweie bis-  
 shoppes vnder hym, þat beþ Durem and Carlille. R.<sup>10</sup> And

TREVISA.

and Wilteschire. Of Excestre, that is presidente of Deuon-  
 schire and of Cornewaile. And of Bathe, þat is presidente  
 in Somerseteschire. Of Wirchestre, whiche is presidente  
 in Glouchestreschire and Wirchestre, and in the halfe of  
 Warwikeschire. And of Herdeforde, whiche is presidente  
 in that schire, and in parte of Shropschire. The bishop of  
 Chestre of Couentre and of Lichefelde, whiche is presidente  
 in Staffordeschire, in Derby, and in the halfe of Warwike-  
 schire, and in parte of Shroppeschire, and in parte of  
 Lancastreschire that is from the water of Mersee vn to the  
 floode of Rippelle. And of Lyncolne, whiche is presidente of  
 the prouinces whiche be betwene Thamys and Humbre, as  
 Lincolne, Leircestre, Northampton, Huntyngdon, Beddeforde,  
 Bukkyngham, Oxon, and halfe of Hertefordeschire. And of  
 Hely, that is presidente in Cantebriggeschire, Merlonde  
 excepte. Of Norwiche, that is presidente in Merlonde,  
 Northefolke, and Sowthefolke. Also the metropolitan of  
 Caunterbery hathe iiij. suffraganes in Wales ; that is to say,  
 of Landauense, of Bangor, of Meneuia, and Assaph. The  
 archebisshop of Yorke hathe ij. bishoppes vnder hym  
 oonly, of Durem and Caerliel. Then sithe þer be ij.

MS. HARL. 2261.

<sup>1</sup> Added from Cx. (not in a.)

<sup>2</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Mersee, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Rypyl, a.

<sup>6</sup> of Engelonde, Lyncolne, MS.

<sup>7</sup> Buggyngham, a.; Bokyngham, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Merlond, a. and Cx. ; and so  
below.

<sup>9</sup> Norfolk and Suffolk, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Reference added from Cx. ; who  
omits the latter part of the sentence.

De duobus Angliæ primatibus sunt primates, Cantuariensis, qui dicitur<sup>1</sup> primas totius Angliæ, et<sup>2</sup> Eboracensis, qui primas Angliæ dicitur;<sup>3</sup> quid unus alteri debeat, et<sup>4</sup> in quibus eis<sup>5</sup> subjacere teneatur,<sup>6</sup> in subsequentibus circa annum Domini<sup>7</sup> millesimum septuagesimum secundum plenius continetur, ubi coram rege<sup>8</sup> Willelmo primo et Angliæ<sup>9</sup> præsulibus, ex mandato Papæ inter præfatos primates causa ventilata,<sup>10</sup> decretum est ut Eboracensis in his quæ ad cultum catholicum pertinent Cantuariensi subjaceat;<sup>11</sup> ita, videlicet, ut ubicumque<sup>12</sup> in Anglia Cantuariensis concilium cogere<sup>13</sup> voluerit, Eboracensis cum suis suffraganeis adesse teneatur, et ejus<sup>14</sup> canonicis decretis obedire.<sup>15</sup> Obeunte autem Cantuariensi, Eboracensis Doroberniam veniet, electum cum cæteris episcopis in primatem proprium consecrabit. Quod si Eboracensis obierit, successor ejus ad Cantuariensem accedet, et ordinationem ab eo accipiet,<sup>16</sup> faciendo juramentum cum professione de

<sup>1</sup> *qui dicitur*] quidem, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *et*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *dicitur primas Angliæ*, B.D.

<sup>4</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *ei*, B.; om. Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *eis . . . teneatur*] ve subjaceat, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *gratie*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Angliæ*, ins. B.

<sup>9</sup> *Angliæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sic*, ins. B.

<sup>11</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *locorum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *vocare*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *ejus*] om. A.B., Gale.

<sup>15</sup> *suffraganeis . . . obedire*] sibi subjectis episcopis aderit, canonicis ejus præceptis obediens erit, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *recipiet*, Gale.

so beep but tweie primates in Engelond, Canturbury, þat is i-cleped primate of al Engelond, and **Ȝ**ork primate of Engelond. What oon of hem schal doo to þat oper, and in what poynt he schal be obedient and vnder hym, it is fully conteyned wip ynne aboute þe ȝere of our Lord a powsand þre skore and twelue. Þere to fore þe firste kyng William and þe bisshoppes of Engelond, by maundement of þe pope þe cause was i-handled and i-treted bytwene þe forsaide primates and ordeyned, and i-demed þat þe primat of **Ȝ**ork schal be [sugett to þe]<sup>1</sup> primat of Canterbury in þinges þat longeþ to þe worschippe of God and to þe bileue of holy chirche, so þat in what place euere it<sup>2</sup> be in Engelond þat þe primate of Caunterbury<sup>3</sup> wil hote and constreine and gadre<sup>4</sup> a counsail of clergie, þe primat of York is i-holde wip his suffragans forto be þere, and forto be obedient to þe ordenaunce þat þere is lawefulliche i-ordeyned. Whan þe primat of Caunterbury is deed, þe primat of **Ȝ**ork schal come to Caunturbury, and wip opere bisshoppes he schal sacre hym þat is i-chose, and so wip opere bisshoppes he schal sacre his owne primat. **Ȝ**if þe primat of **Ȝ**ork is deed his successour schal come to þe primat<sup>5</sup> of Caunterbury, and he schal take his ordynaunce of hym, and do his oop wip professioun of lawe-

TREVISA.

primates in Englonde, oon of Caunterbury, that is callede the primate of alle Englonde, that other of Yorke, whiche is callede the primate of Englonde, in what thynges oon of theym awe to be subiecte to that other, hit schalle be expressede in this processe folowenge, abowte the yere of oure Lorde God a m. lx. and xij. yere, more plenerly. Wherefore a cause was ventilate and movede thro the commaundemente of the pope, afore William firste kinge of Englonde, and diuerse other bischoppes of that londe; where hit was decrete that tharchebischop of Yorke scholde be subiecte to þe primate of Caunterbury in those thynges whiche perteyne to the honor of God; in so moche that tharchebischop of Yorke with his suffraganes scholde be at the counselle where hit pleasede the primate of Caunterbury to assigne hit, and to obey the decretes of canon. And the archebischop of Caunterbury dedde, the archebischop of Yorke schalle come to Caunterbury, and consecrate the man electe in to the primate. And if the archebischop of Yorke dee, his successor schalle comme to Caunterbury to receyve his ordinacion, makenge an othe

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>2</sup> *euere hit*, *a.* and *Cx.*; *it euere*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *Engelond*, MS. (not *a.* or *Cx.*)<sup>4</sup> *constrayne to gadre*, *Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *bisshop*, *Cx.*

obedientia canonica. Inferius autem, circa annum Domini millesimum centesimum nonagesimum quintum, sub tempore regis Ricardi, ponuntur rationes pro parte et<sup>1</sup> jure utriusque primatis facientes. Necnon et<sup>2</sup> a tempore Conquæstus usque ad tempora ultimi Henrici regis,<sup>3</sup> sub diebus Thurstini,<sup>4</sup> Thomæ, et<sup>5</sup> aliorum<sup>6</sup> Eboracensium pontificum,<sup>7</sup> quid alter primas alteri fecerit, quomodo quoque<sup>8</sup> alter alterius manum subterfugerit,<sup>9</sup> plenius edocetur; præsentem vero<sup>10</sup> locum, cum prologi magis quam pleni tractatus<sup>11</sup> vicem gerat, præfatis rationibus<sup>12</sup> onerare nimis foret tædiosum.

## CAP. LVIII.

*A quot<sup>13</sup> et quibus hæc terra sit inhabitata gentibus.*<sup>14</sup>

Britones.

HÆC insula in primis Britones incolas habuit, qui<sup>15</sup> anno Hely sacerdotis xvij<sup>o</sup>, tempore regis Latinorum Silvii Posthumi, post Trojam eversam anno xliij<sup>o</sup>,<sup>16</sup> ante urbem Romam conditam quadringentesimo xxxij<sup>o</sup>, (*Beda, libro primo*,<sup>17</sup>) de tractu Armorico advecti<sup>18</sup> australes insulæ partes diu tenuerunt. Contigit postmodum

<sup>1</sup> *parte et*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *Necnon et*] Sparsim quoque per cronicam istam, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *tempora . . . regis*] novissimum Henricum regem, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Thurstani*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *quorundam*, ins. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *aliorum*] om. A.

<sup>7</sup> *episcoporum*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *quomodo quoque*] quomodoque, C.D.; *quoque*, om. A.B.

<sup>9</sup> *subterfugit*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *tamen*, C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *magis . . . tractatus*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *amplius*, ins. C.D., Gale.

<sup>13</sup> *quot, quando*, Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *Quando et quibus hæc terra sit inhabitata gentibus*, A.; *Quibus hæc terra inhabitata sit gentibus*, B.; *De incolis Angliæ*, C.; *De incolis prioribus*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *quo*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *anno xliij<sup>o</sup>*] cccciii., Gale.

<sup>17</sup> C.D. omit reference.

<sup>18</sup> *advenientes*, B.

ful obediens. Wij ynne, aboute þe 3ere of oure Lord elleune hundred foure score and fiftene, vnder þe tyme of kyng Richard, beþ resouns i-sette þat makeþ for þe party and for þe ri3t of eyþer primate.<sup>1</sup> Also what oone primat dede to þat oþer in tyme of Thurstinus, of Thomas, and of oþere bisshoppes of 3ork from þe Conquest anon to þe laste kyng Henry his<sup>2</sup> tyme. Also þere it is i-tau3t how eiper of hem asterte<sup>3</sup> from oþer. Þis place is but a forspekyng, and nou3t a ful tretis þerof. Þerfore hit were noyefulle<sup>4</sup> to charge þis place wij alle þilke resouns þat þere beþ i-made.

TREVISA

*A quot, quando, et quibus inhabitata sit gentibus.*

*Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.*

BRETOUNS wonede first in þis ilond þe 3ere of Hely þe preost ei3tetene; of Siluius Posthumus, kyng of Latyns, eleuene; after þe takyng of Troye, þre and fourty 3ere; to fore þe byldyng of Rome, foure hundred and two and þretty.<sup>5</sup> *Beda, libro primo.* Þei come hider and took hir cours from Armorik, þat now is þe oþer Bretayne; þey helde long tyme

with profession off obedience canonicalle. But in this processe foloenge, abowte the yere of God m<sup>l</sup> c. xcv.,<sup>6</sup> vnder the tyme of kyng Richarde the firste, reasones were allegate for either parte of bothe primates: and also from the tyme of the Conqueste vn to the tymes of the laste Henry kyng, in the daies of Thurstyn, Thomas, and of other bischoppes of Yorke, what that oon primate did to that other, and how oon of theyme fledde the powere of that other, for to reherse the reasones of theyme and allegacion, hit were onerable to vs in this tyme.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 74 b.

*Of what Peple, how mony, and when, this Yle of Briteyne was inhabite.—Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.*

THIS yle callede Englonde now hade Britones the firste inhabitatores of hit, in þe xvij<sup>th</sup> yere of Hely preste, in the tyme of Siluius Posthumus kyng of Latines, þe xliij<sup>th</sup> yere after the destruccion of Troye, by cccc. yere and xxxij<sup>th</sup> afore the cite of Rome was edifiede. *Beda, libro primo.* Whiche commenge from Armorike occupiede a longe season the sowthe partes of the yle of Briteyne. Hyt

<sup>1</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *Henries, a.*

<sup>3</sup> *starte, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *noyeful, a., Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> Sentence varied in Cx

<sup>6</sup> m<sup>l</sup>. c. 95, Harl. MS. The Roman and Arabic numerals are used promiscuously elsewhere.

Picti.

tempore Vespasiani ducis Romani,<sup>1</sup> gentem Pictorum de<sup>2</sup> Scythia<sup>3</sup> longis navibus oceanum ingressam, circum-agentē flatu ventorum,<sup>4</sup> oras boreales Hiberniæ intrasse, atque inventa ibi Scotorum gente sedes sibi<sup>5</sup> petivisse, nec impetrare potuisse.<sup>6 7</sup> Nam cum Hibernia, ut Scoti asserebant, ambas gentas capere non posset, Scoti remiserunt Pictos ad septentrionales partes<sup>8</sup> Britanniae, opem contra Britones adversantes,<sup>9</sup> si insurgerent, promittentes. Uxoresque illis<sup>10</sup> de filiabus suis ea conditione tradiderunt, ut ubi res veniret<sup>11</sup> in dubium, magis de foeminea<sup>12</sup> prosapia quam de masculina regem sibi eligerent. *Gaufridus*.<sup>13</sup> Tempore autem<sup>14</sup> Vespasiani Cæsaris, regnante apud Britannos Mario filio Arviragi, Rodricus quidam rex Pictorum de Scythia veniens cœpit Albaniam devastare; quem Marius interficiens dedit devicto populo, qui cum Rodrico venerat, borealem partem Albaniae, quæ Cathenesia<sup>15</sup> dicitur, ad inhabitandum. Illi vero uxoribus carentes, cum de natione Britonum uxores<sup>16</sup> habere non possent,<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ducis Romani*] om. C.D.<sup>2</sup> *de*] om. C.<sup>3</sup> *Scicia* or *Schicia*, MSS. and Gale, and so below.<sup>4</sup> *mentuorum*, C.<sup>5</sup> *ibi*, C.D.<sup>6</sup> *nec . . . potuisse*] om. C.D.<sup>7</sup> *atque . . . potuisse*] om. B.<sup>8</sup> *partes*] om. B.<sup>9</sup> *Britones adversantes*] adversarios, C.D.<sup>10</sup> *eis*, C.D. ; om. B.<sup>11</sup> *veniebat*, D.<sup>12</sup> *feminina*, B.<sup>13</sup> *Gaufridus*, B.<sup>14</sup> *autem*] om. C.D.<sup>15</sup> *Catanesia*, Gale.<sup>16</sup> *uxores*] om. C.<sup>17</sup> *possunt*, B.



pe souþ contrayes of pe ilond. Hit byfelle afterwarde in TREVISIA.  
 Vespassi[a]nus tyme, duke of Rome, þatt pe Pictes out of  
 Scythia<sup>1</sup> schipped into oceane, and were i-dryue aboute wip  
 pe wynde, and entrede in to pe norþ costes of Irlond, and  
 founde þere Scottes, and prayed for to haue a place to wonye  
 inne, and myȝte none gete. For Irlond, as Scottes seide,  
 myȝt nouȝt susteyne boþe peple. Scottes sente pe Pictes to  
 the norþ side of Bretayne, and behiȝte<sup>2</sup> hem<sup>3</sup> help aȝenst  
 þe Bretouns þat were enemyes, yf þey wolde arise, and took  
 hem to wyfes of here douȝtres vpon suche a condicioun;  
 ȝif doute fel who schulde haue ryȝt for to be kyng, he<sup>4</sup>  
 schulde rapen chese hem a kyng of þe moder side þan of þe  
 fader side, of þe wommen kyn rapen [þan]<sup>5</sup> of þe men kyn.  
*Gaufridus.* In Vaspasian þe emperour his tyme, whan  
 Marius Aruiragus his sone was kyng of Bretouns, on<sup>6</sup> Rodrik  
 kyng of Pictes come out of Scythia<sup>1</sup> and gan to destroye  
 Scotlonde. þan Marius þe kyng slowe þis Rodorik kyng of  
 Pictes, and ȝaf þe norþ party of<sup>7</sup> Scotlonde, þat hatte Cathenesia,  
 to þe men þat were i-come wip Roderik and were ouercome  
 wip<sup>8</sup> hem, for to wone ynne. But þese men hadde non wives,  
 ne none myȝte haue of þe naciouns of Bretouns; perfore þey

happede afterwarde in the tyme of Vespasian duke of MS. HARL.  
 Rome, the peple of Pictes to haue comen from Scythia,<sup>1</sup> 2261.  
 and to haue intrede the oceane, the wynde helpenge theyme,  
 and so to haue intrede the northe costes of Yrlonde; whiche  
 fyndenge þer Scottes desirede a place in that londe whom  
 thei myȝhte inhabite, but thei kouthe not obteyne that  
 desire. For the Scottes seide Yrlonde wolde not suffice  
 bothe peple. Wherefore thei sende the Pictes to the northe  
 partes of Briteyne, promysenge helpe to theyme, if that the  
 Britones made eny insurreccion ageyne theym; ȝiffenge to  
 theyme theire doȝhters to be mariede, in that condicion,  
 that if there were any dowte thei schulde elect in to  
 theire kyng oon of the female kynde rather then of the  
 male kynde and bloode. *Gaufridus.* In the tyme of  
 Vespasian emperoure, Marius son of Aruiragus reignege  
 at Britones, Rodricus a kyng of Pictes, commenge from  
 Scythia,<sup>1</sup> began to waste Albania, whom Marius did slee,  
 ȝiffenge to the peple deuicte whiche come with Rodricus the  
 northe parte of Albania to inhabite, whiche is called  
 Cateneyse. Whiche wontenge wives, and the Britones not

<sup>1</sup> *Scicia* or *Scitia*, MSS., as usual;  
 and so below.

<sup>2</sup> So Cx.; and *hiȝt*, *a.*; and *he*  
*hiȝte*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; *hymself*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *they*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *one*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So Cx.; *to*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *by*, Cx.

transfretantes Hiberniam Hiberniensium filias sibi copularunt;<sup>1</sup> eo tamen pacto, ut sanguis maternus in successionebus præferretur.<sup>2</sup> *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo septimo decimo.*<sup>3</sup> Servius tamen<sup>4</sup> super Virgilium dicit Pictos esse Agathyrso, sedesque quondam circa paludes Scythicas habuisse. Et dicuntur Picti quasi stigmatizati seu<sup>5</sup> cauteriati, propter abundantiam fleumatis,<sup>6</sup> quia<sup>7</sup> ubi ex crebris stigmatibus cicatrices obducuntur, corpora quasi picta redduntur. Suntque isti populi idem quod Gothi; nam cum Maximus tyrannus de Britannia in Galliam<sup>8</sup> cum omni armato terræ<sup>9</sup> milite ad occupandum imperium transvectus fuisset, Gratianus et Valentinianus, fratres imperiique consortes, gentem hanc Gothicam, in rebus bellicis fortem et strenuam, beneficiis et blanditiis allectam, a Scythiæ finibus in boreales Britanniae partes ad infestandum<sup>10</sup> Britones, omni armato milite tunc nudatos, navigio transmiserunt. Sicque de prædonibus accolæ effecti,<sup>11</sup> usurpatas<sup>12</sup> sedes aquilones<sup>13</sup> tenuerunt.<sup>14</sup> *Gaufridus.* Carausius

<sup>1</sup> *copulaverunt*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *præferatur*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> C.D. omit the reference. The true reference is to Girald. *De Instr. Princ.* lib. 1. c. 6. (p. 188, Brewer). The Harl. MS. is wrong.

<sup>4</sup> *tamen*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *vel*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *fleumatis*, A.B.D., Gale.

<sup>7</sup> *qui*, E.

<sup>8</sup> *Franciam*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *terra*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *infestandos*, Gale.

<sup>11</sup> *facti*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *voluptates*, E.

<sup>13</sup> *aquilones*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *effecti . . . tenuerunt*] *facti* usurpatas ad sedes aquilones pervenerunt, C. (not D.)

seilled into Irlond, and toke hem to wyfes Irischemen TREVISA.  
 douzters, at<sup>1</sup> pat couenaunt, pat the moder blood schulde be  
 putt to fore in successioun of heritage. *Giraldus, capitulo*  
*septimodecimo*. Nopeles Seruius<sup>2</sup> super Virgilium seip pat  
 Pictes beep Agatirsis,<sup>3</sup> pat hadde som wonynge places aboute  
 pe wateres of Scythia, and pei beep i-cleped Pictes by cause  
 of peyntynge [and snittyng] <sup>4</sup> of woundes pat beep i-sene on  
 hire bodies, for pey hadde moche fleem,<sup>5</sup> and were ofte bois-  
 tousliche i-lete blood,<sup>6</sup> and hadde many woundes i-sene on  
 hire bodies,<sup>7</sup> so pat pey semede as it were men i-peynt wip  
 woundes; perfore pey were i-cleped Pictus, as it were peynted  
 men. Pese men and the Gotes ben al oon peple: for whan  
 Maximus pe tyraunt was i-went<sup>8</sup> out of Britayne in to  
 Fraunce for to occupie pe empere; panne Gratianus and  
 Valentinianus, pat were breþren and felawes of pe empere,  
 brozte pese Gothes out of Scythia wip greet ziftes, wip flater-  
 ynge and false<sup>9</sup> byhestes, in to pe north contray of Britayne;  
 for pey were stalworpe and strong men of armes. And so  
 pese briboures were i-made men of pe<sup>10</sup> lond and of pe<sup>11</sup> con-  
 tray, and wonede in pe northe contraies, and hilde pere citees  
 and townes. *Gaufridus*.<sup>12</sup> Carausius<sup>13</sup> pe tyraunt slow<sup>14</sup>

willenge to mary with theyme, saylede in to Yrlonde in MS. HARL.  
 maryenge to theyme the dozhters of men of Yrlonde, in 2261.  
 this condicion, that the bloode female scholde be preferrede  
 in succession. *Giraldus De Papa, capitulo septimo*.  
 Neuerthelesse Seruius on Virgille callethe the Pictes  
 Agathyrsi,<sup>15</sup> and to haue hade their habitaciones somme tyme  
 abowte the marras of Scythia whiche were callede Pictes, f. 72. a.  
 for the habundance of fleume in theyme. These peple be  
 callede also Gothi, for whan Maximus the tyrante wente  
 from Englonde in to Fraunce with a grete multitude of armede  
 men to occupy the empyre, Gratian and Valentinian, breder  
 and felowes of thempire, toke to theyme the peple callede  
 Gothi, nowble and stronge in batelle, thro rewarde and feire  
 speche, from the costes of Scythia in to the northe partes of  
 Briteyne, with a grete multitude of peple, to vexe the Britones;  
 and so that peple, of robbers made inhabitatores, occupiede  
 the northe partes of Briteyne thro presumpcion. *Gaufridus*.

<sup>1</sup> by, Cx.<sup>2</sup> Sirinus, MS. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> Agatirses, a.<sup>4</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> fleume, Cx.<sup>6</sup> ofte boxed and lete blood, Cx.<sup>7</sup> body, a., Cx.<sup>8</sup> wente, Cx.<sup>9</sup> fayre, Cx.<sup>10</sup> pe] om. a., Cx.<sup>11</sup> pe] om. a., Cx.<sup>12</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>13</sup> So a.; Caraucius, MS. (which has Careucius below), and Harl. MS.<sup>14</sup> slouz, a.<sup>15</sup> Agatirsi, Harl. MS.

tyrannus dolo Pictorum, qui in auxilium Bassiani venerant,<sup>1</sup> ipsum<sup>2</sup> Bassianum interfecit, deditque Pictis locum mansionis in Albania; ubi permixti cum Britonibus per subsequens ævum permanserunt. *Ranulphus*.<sup>3</sup> At<sup>4</sup> cum Picti boreales<sup>5</sup> prius Albaniam occupassent, videtur quod locus mansionis, quam Carausius iste<sup>6</sup> dedit Pictis, sit pars<sup>7</sup> austrina Albaniam, a muro scilicet Romani operis transverso<sup>8</sup> usque ad mare Scoticum protensa; in quo<sup>9</sup> continetur Galwodia et Lodoneya, de quo Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, sic loquitur: "Ninianus,<sup>10</sup> vir sanctus, convertit australes " Pictos,"<sup>11</sup> et cætera. Hunc tandem pagum Saxones supervenientes fecerunt pertinere ad provinciam Northimbrorum Berniciorum,<sup>12</sup> donec Kynadius Alpini filius, rex Scotorum, deletis<sup>13</sup> Pictis, illud territorium quod est inter Twedam et mare Scoticum, fecerat suo regno pertinere.<sup>14</sup> *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* Processu vero temporis Scoti, duce Reuda de Hibernia, quæ proprie Scotorum<sup>15</sup> patria<sup>16</sup> est, egressi,<sup>17</sup> vel amicitia vel ferro sibimet juxta Pictos<sup>18</sup> sedes statue-

<sup>1</sup> *venerant*] om. E.

<sup>2</sup> *ipsum*] om. D.

<sup>3</sup> *Ranulfus*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Et*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *boreas*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *iste*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *pars*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *transversa*, Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *qua*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Ninian*, A.B.

<sup>11</sup> *Pictos australes*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Berniciorum*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *delectis*, E.

<sup>14</sup> Sentence varied in C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Scotticorum*, A. Here (and sometimes elsewhere) E. has the double *t*.

<sup>16</sup> *propria*, C., Gale (not D.)

<sup>17</sup> *egressi*] *progressi*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *Pictos*] om. E.

Bassianus by help and tresoun of þe Pictes þat come in help and socour of Bassianus, and ʒaf þe Pictes a wonyng place in Albania, þat is Scotland. Þere þey wonede long tyme afterwarde i-medled<sup>1</sup> wip Britouns. R. Þanne sippe þe Pikkes<sup>2</sup> occupied raper<sup>3</sup> þe norþside of Scotland,<sup>4</sup> it semep þat þe wonyng place þat þis Carausius ʒaf hem is þe souþside of Scotlonde þat strecþeþ [from þe]<sup>5</sup> þwart ouer wal of Romayn werk to þe Scottische see, and conteynep Galewey and Lodouia [þat is]<sup>6</sup> Lodway. Þerof Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, spekeþ in þis manere: Nynyan þe holy man converted þe souþ Pictes. Afterward þe Saxons come and made þat contray longe to Brenicia, þe norþ partie of Norþhumberlond, for to<sup>7</sup> Kynadyus, Alpynus his sone, kyng of Scotland, put out [þe Pictes]<sup>8</sup> and made þat contrey þat is bytwene Twede and þe Scottisse see longe to his kyngdom. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* Afterward longe tyme the Scottes were i-lad by duke Reuda, and com out of Irlond, þat is þe propre contray of Scottes, and wip loue oþer wip strengþe made hem a place faste by þe Pictes in þe norþ

TREVISA.

Carausius the tyraunte did sle Bassian thro the decepcion of the Pictes, whiche come to haue schewede helpe to þe seide Bassian, whiche ʒafe to the Pictes a place to inhabite in Albania, where thei did abyde afterwarde by continuacion permixte with Britones. R. And when the Pictes hade occupiede afore tyme the northe partes of Albania, hit semethe that the place of inhabitation whom Carausius grauntede to theym was the sowthe parte of Albania, pro-tendede from the famosse walle of Roman werke ouertwarde<sup>9</sup> to the Scottissee, in whom Galoway is conteynede; of whom Beda spekeþe, libro iij<sup>o</sup>, capitulo 2<sup>o</sup>, seyenge, Seynte Ronyon conuertede þe sowthe Pictes. And at the laste the Saxones causede that coste to perteyne to the prouince of Northumbrelonde, vn til Kinadius the son of Alpinus, kyng of Scottes, destroyenge the Pictes, made that territory whiche is betwene Twede and the Scottissee to longe to his realme. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* And in processe of tyme the Scottes, takenge to theyme Reuda of Yrlonde to therei gouernoure, whiche londe is nye to the Scottes, wente furthe and toke to theyme seetes, what thro marte other fauor, nye to the Pictes, at the northe parte of an arme of the see,

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *i-melled, a.*<sup>2</sup> *seþþe þat Pictes, a., Cx.*<sup>3</sup> *firste, Cx.*<sup>4</sup> *þere þey wonede* added in MS. (not in *a.* or *Cx.*)<sup>5</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>6</sup> Added from *Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *unto the tyme that, Cx.*<sup>8</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>9</sup> So Harl. MS.

runt, ad septentrionalem scilicet<sup>1</sup> partem sinus maris, qui ab occidente in terram longo spatio<sup>2</sup> irrumpens<sup>3</sup> Britones antiquitus secernebat a Pictis.<sup>4</sup> A quo duce Reuda Scoti vocabantur Dalreudini;<sup>5</sup> nam lingua eorum *dal* partem significat.<sup>6</sup> *Giraldus, distinctione prima.* Picti, quia uxores quas de Britonibus habere non poterant de Scotis<sup>7</sup> Hiberniensibus obtinuerant,<sup>8</sup> eos<sup>9</sup> ad cohabitandum allexerunt; terramque maritimam, ubi mare angustum est, quæ nunc Galwodia dicitur, eis<sup>10</sup> concesserunt. *Marianus.*<sup>11</sup> Apud Argayl<sup>12</sup> applicuerunt Scoti,<sup>13</sup> qui et Hibernienses, quod sonat Latine margo Scotorum,<sup>14</sup> eo quod Scoti ibidem<sup>15</sup> applicarent<sup>16</sup> ad faciendum damna Britannis; vel quia locus ille proximior est<sup>17</sup> Hibernicis ad applicandum.<sup>18 19</sup> *Beda, libro primo.*<sup>20</sup> Et sic Scoti tertiam in Britannia<sup>21</sup> post Britones et Pictos gentem addiderunt. *Ranulphus.*<sup>22</sup> Tandem Saxones contra<sup>23</sup> Scotos et Pictos a Britonibus invitati, expulsis Britonibus usque in Cambriam,<sup>24</sup> terram paulatim occupantes, et usque ad mare Scoticum fines suos dilatantes,<sup>25</sup> quartam in insula gentem fecerunt.

Saxones.

<sup>1</sup> *scilicet*] om. Gale.<sup>2</sup> *spatio*] om. C. (not D.)<sup>3</sup> *irrumpentis*, C.; *irrumpentes*, Gale; *erumpens*, D.<sup>4</sup> C.D. add: *ubi erat et civitas Britonum Alclud.*<sup>5</sup> *Daroudini*, A.; *Dareudini*, B.<sup>6</sup> *A . . . significat*] om. C.D.; signet, B.<sup>7</sup> *Scoticis*, A.<sup>8</sup> *obtinerunt*, C.D.<sup>9</sup> *cos*] om. E.<sup>10</sup> *eisdem*, C. (not D.)<sup>11</sup> *Martinus*, E.<sup>12</sup> *Argail*, B., Gale.<sup>13</sup> *Scotici*, A.<sup>14</sup> *Scoticorum*, A.<sup>15</sup> *ibi*, C.D.<sup>16</sup> *applicarunt*, C. (not D.)<sup>17</sup> *est*] om. A.B.<sup>18</sup> *est . . . applicandum*] et affinis est Hiberniæ, C.D.<sup>19</sup> C.D. insert here the following

passage: "*Ranulfus.* Seu quia  
" Scoti super Pictos locum illum  
" occupavere sicut jam dicitur.  
" Extenditur autem Galwedia ab  
" illo famoso maris sinu ubi quon-  
" dam urbs Alclud faerat, ubi et  
" Severus vallum fecerat, qui etiam  
" solebat secernere Britones a Pictis  
" [usque ad mare Scoticum, quod  
" Scotice Forth dicitur, currens-  
" que juxta oppidum de Serivelyn],  
" usque ad flumen Tae regna Sco-  
" torum et Anglorum solebat divi-  
" dere." The words in brackets  
added from D.

<sup>20</sup> *Alfridus*, C.D.<sup>21</sup> *in Brit. tertiam*, B.<sup>22</sup> *Ranulfus*] om. C.D.<sup>23</sup> *contra*] quasi ad expugnandum, B.<sup>24</sup> *Wallias*, C.D.<sup>25</sup> *et . . . dilatantes*] om. A.B.

side of þat arme of þe see þat brekep in to the ilond in þe west TREVISA.  
 side, þat departed in olde tyme bytwene Britouns and Pictes. —  
 Of þis duke Reuda þe Scottes hadde þe name, and were <sup>1</sup>  
 i-cleped Dalreudynes, as it were Reda <sup>2</sup> his part, for in here  
 speche a part is i-cleped *dal*. *Giraldus, distinctione prima.*  
 Þe Pictes myȝte haue noon <sup>3</sup> wyfes of Bretouns, but þey toke  
 hem wifes of Irisch Scottes, and byhete hem faire forto  
 wonye wip hem, and graunted hem a lond by þe see side;  
 þere þe see is narwe; <sup>4</sup> þat lond now hatte Galewey. *Maria-*  
*nus.* Irisch Scottes londede at Argoyl, <sup>5</sup> þat is Scottene Clyf,  
 for Scottes londede þere forto harmye <sup>6</sup> þe Britouns, oþer  
 for þat place is next to Irlond forto come in <sup>7</sup> to Britayne.  
*Beda.* And so the Scottes after Bretouns and Pictes made  
 þe þridde manere of <sup>8</sup> peple wonynge in Bretayne. R.  
 Þanne after þat come <sup>9</sup> Saxouns at þe prayenge of þe Bri-  
 touns, to helpe <sup>10</sup> aȝenst þe Scottes and þe Pictes; and þe  
 Britouns were i-putte out anon to Wales, and Saxons  
 occupied þe lond litel and litel and efte more and more, and <sup>11</sup>  
 straiȝt <sup>12</sup> anon to þe Scottische see; and so Saxons made þe

whiche, brekenge vp in to the londe from the weste in a grete MS. HARL.  
 space, departede in olde tymes the Britones from the Pictes: 2261.  
 of whiche duke, Reuda by name, the Scottes were callede  
 Dalreudini; for *dal* in the langage of theyme signifieth  
 parte. *Gaufridus, distinctione prima.* The Pictes, hauenge  
 not licence to marye with the doȝhters of Britones, mariede  
 with the Scottes of Yrlonde, movenge theym to inhabite that  
 londe with theyme, [and] grauntede to theyme the londe in the  
 costes nye to the see, where the see is not brode and large,  
 callede now Galaway. *Marianus.* The Scottes londed, f. 76. b.  
 otherwise callede men of Yrlonde, at a place callede Argail,  
 whiche sowndethe in Englische, the brynke of Scottes, in  
 that the Scottes did londe þer to do harme to the Britones,  
 other elles for cause that place was most nye to men of  
 Yrlonde to londe at. *Beda.* And so the Scottes brouȝhte  
 to Englonde the thridde peple, after Britones and Pictes.  
 R. And at the laste the Saxones desirede to inhabite that  
 londe of the Britones ageyne the Scottes and Pictes, the  
 Britones expulsede in to Wales, occupiede that londe to the

<sup>1</sup> *wefe*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Reuda*, *a.*

<sup>3</sup> *no*, *a.*

<sup>4</sup> *narowe*, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Argayl*, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *doe harme to*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *alonde in Britayne*, *a.*

<sup>8</sup> *of*] om., *a.*

<sup>9</sup> *comeþe*, *a.*; *come the*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *helpe hem*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *and*] om., *a.* and Cx. (the latter has other omissions.)

<sup>12</sup> *streit*, *a.*

<sup>13</sup> The true reference is to Girald. *De Inst. Princ.* lib. 1. c. 6.

*Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono.*<sup>1</sup> Quia Angli seu Saxones a Germania originem duxerunt, hactenus a vicina gente Britonum corrupte Germani<sup>2</sup> nuncupantur. *Ranulphus.*<sup>3</sup> Veruntamen circa annum Domini octingentesimum Egbertus rex Westsaxonum jussit omnes indigenas vocari Anglos. *Alfridus.* Dani denuo ducentis ferme annis, a tempore scilicet<sup>4</sup> Egberti usque ad tempora Sancti Edwardi, terram conterentes, quintam in insula gentem fecerunt; sed et<sup>5</sup> illi postmodum defecerunt.<sup>6</sup> Postremo Normanni sub duce Willelmo, subjugatis Anglis, terram usque hodie possidentes, sextam in insula gentem fecerunt. Sed et Flandrenses,<sup>7</sup> tempore regis Henrici,<sup>8</sup> in magna copia juxta<sup>9</sup> Mailros ad orientalem Angliæ plagam habitationem pro tempore accipientes, septimam in insula gentem fecerunt.<sup>10</sup> Jubente tamen eodem rege<sup>11</sup> ad occidentalem Walliæ partem apud Haverford<sup>12</sup> sunt translati. *Ranulphus.*<sup>13</sup> Sicque<sup>14</sup> Britannia, modo<sup>15</sup> deficientibus omnino Danis et Pictis, his quinque<sup>16</sup> nationibus habitatur in præ-senti, videlicet,<sup>17</sup> Scotis in Albania, Britonibus in Cam-

<sup>1</sup> Reference omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *Garmanni*, Gale; *Germani*, D.

<sup>3</sup> Reference added from B, Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *scilicet*, om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *evanuerunt*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Flandres*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *Henriciregisprimi*, A.B.D., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *juxta*] om. E.

<sup>10</sup> *Sed . . . fecerunt*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *idem Flandrenses*, add. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Haverforth*, A.

<sup>13</sup> *Ranulphus* om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Itaque*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *modo*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Danis Pictis hisque*, B.

<sup>17</sup> Added from A., Gale.



fourþe manere men<sup>1</sup> in þe ilonde of Bretayne. *Beda, libro quinto, capitulo quinto.*<sup>2</sup> For Saxons and Anglis come out of Germania, 3et som Bretouns þat woneþ nygh clepeþ hem schortly<sup>3</sup> Germans. R. Notheles aboute þe 3ere of oure Lord eyzte hondred, Egbertus, kyng of West Saxon, commandede and het clepe<sup>4</sup> alle manere men of þe londe<sup>5</sup> Engliche men. *Alfridus.* Þanne after þat þe Danes pursued þe lond, aboute a two hondred 3ere, þat is to menyngge from þe forseide Egbertes tyme anon to Seint Edwardes tyme, and made þe fiste manere peple in þe ilond, bot þey faillede afterward. At þe laste come Normans vnder duke William his tyme,<sup>6</sup> and suduwede Engliche men, and 3it holdeþ<sup>7</sup> þe londe; and þey made þe sixte peple in þe ilonde. But in þe firste kyng Henries<sup>8</sup> tymes come many Flemmynges and fenge a wonyng place for a tyme bysides Mailros in þe west side of Engeland, and made þe seucne peple in þe ilond. Nopeles by heste of þe same kyng, þey were i-houe þennes and i-putte<sup>9</sup> to Hauerforde his side, [in þe west side]<sup>10</sup> of Wales. [R.]<sup>11</sup> And so now in Brytayne, Danes and Pictes failleþ al out, and fyue naciouns woneþ þerynne; þat beþ Scottes in Albania, þat is Scotlond, Britouns in Cambria, þat is Wales, but þat Flemmynges woneþ ynne is in<sup>12</sup> West Wales, and

TREVISA.

Scottisse costes and see, so they brouzhte in to that londe the iiij<sup>the</sup> nacion. *Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono.* And for cause Engliche men other Saxones toke theire originalle of Germanye, 3itte thei be callede schortely Germanni of the nye peple of Britones. R. And abowte the viij<sup>c.</sup> yere of grace Egbertus kyng of Weste Saxones commaundede alle the inhabitatores of that londe to be callede Engliche men. *Alfridus.* After the tymes of Egberte by ij<sup>c.</sup> yere foloenge allemoste, the Danes entreuge in to that yle brouzhte the v<sup>the</sup> peple in to hit vn to the tymes of Seynte Edwarde, but thei faillede afterwarde. After that the Normannes with William Conqueroure subduenge Engliche men to theyme, hauenge that londe in possession vn to this tyme, brouzhte the vj<sup>the</sup> peple to that yle. But after that men of Flaundes toke to theyme an inhabitation at Mailros, the este plage of Englonde, with a grete multitude, in the tyme of kyng Henry the firste, and brouzhte the vij<sup>the</sup> peple in to Englonde as for a season and tyme. But after that thei were removede

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> of men, a., Cx.<sup>2</sup> nono, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; clepeþ schortly þe, MS.<sup>4</sup> badde men to calle, Cx.<sup>5</sup> So a.; londe of, MS.<sup>6</sup> his tyme] om. a. and Cx., probably rightly.<sup>7</sup> hepe they, Cx.<sup>8</sup> Henry his tyme, a.<sup>9</sup> put thens and dryuen, Cx.<sup>10</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>11</sup> Reference added from Cx.<sup>12</sup> is in] that is, Cx.

Pictorum  
dolosa  
extinctio.

bria, Flandrensibus in Westwallia, Normannis et Anglis permixtim in tota insula.<sup>1</sup> Cum igitur de subtractione Danorum quoad modum et eventum<sup>2</sup> apud historicos nulla sit hæsitatio, qualiter Picti defecerint<sup>3</sup> modo sit agendum.<sup>4</sup> *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo septuagesimo quinto.*<sup>5</sup> Occupata aliquando<sup>6</sup> a Saxonibus Britannia,<sup>7</sup> stabilique cum Pictis pace firmata, Scoti, qui Pictis adjuncti supervenerant, videntes Pictos quamquam pauciores, tamen armis et animi<sup>8</sup> præstantiores, ad solitas tanquam sibi innatas<sup>9</sup> prodictiones, quibus cæteris præminent gentibus, recurrerunt.<sup>10</sup> Convocatos<sup>11</sup> namque<sup>12</sup> tanquam ad convivium Pictorum magnates, captata crapulæ opportunitate, extractione clavorum qui tabulata tenebant, (in bancorum concavitate sedebant,)<sup>13</sup> mira decipula poplite tenus communiter<sup>14</sup> et improvise lapsos statim trucidarunt. Sicque ex<sup>15</sup> duobus populis gens bellicosior totaliter evanuit.

<sup>1</sup> Slightly altered and transposed in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *quoad . . . eventum*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *defecerunt*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *modo sit agendum*] videndum est, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> C.D. omits reference; *cap. 17<sup>o</sup>*, A. B., Gale. The true reference is to c. 6, as before; C. and D. agree best with Giraldus.

<sup>6</sup> *aliquando*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *insula*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *omnino*, B.; *animo*, A., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *innatas sibi*, B.

<sup>10</sup> Slightly altered in C.D.; *recurrerunt* before *quibus* in B.

<sup>11</sup> *Convocatosque*, F.

<sup>12</sup> *itaque*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *sedebant*] *sederunt*, B.; *quibus* *insidebant*, C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> *similiter*, C. (not D.) The sentence is slightly varied in these MSS.

<sup>15</sup> *de*, C.D.

Normans and Englishemen [ben] i-medled<sup>1</sup> in alle þe ilond. TREVISA.  
 For it is no doute in stories how and in what manere þe Danes  
 were i-putte away and destroyed out of Bretayne; now it is  
 [to]<sup>2</sup> declarynge how þe Pictes were destroyed and failed.  
*Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo 17.* Bretayne was som-  
 tyme occupied wip Saxons, and pees was i-made and i-stabled<sup>3</sup>  
 wip the Pictes; þanne Scottes<sup>4</sup> þat come wip the Pictes  
 sylhe<sup>5</sup> þat þe Pictes were lasse þan þe Scottes, and<sup>6</sup> were  
 nobler of dedes and better men of armes þanne were þe Scottes;  
 þanne þe Scottes<sup>7</sup> turnede to hir kynde<sup>8</sup> tresouns þat þey vseþ  
 ofte, for in tresoun þey passeþ<sup>9</sup> oþer men, and beþ tretours  
 as hit were by kynde. For þey preyed to a feste al þe grete  
 of þe Pictes, and wayted her tyme when þe Pictes were at  
 ese and mery, and hadde wel i-dronke, and drewe vp nayles  
 þat helde vp þe holow benches vnder þe Pictes, and þe  
 Pictes sodenliche an vnware fel ouer þe hammes into a  
 wonder putfalle.<sup>10</sup> Þanne þe Scottes fille on þe Pictes and  
 slowh hem, and lefte noon onlyue;<sup>11</sup> and so of þe tweye

to Hauerforde, at the weste parte of Wales, thro commaunde- MS. HARL.  
 mente of þe the same kyng. R. And so by succession 2261.  
 of tymes, the Danes failenge in Englonde, and Pictes, now  
 Albania is inhabite with Scottes, Wales with Britones, and  
 men of Flaundes in Weste Wales, Normannes and Engliche  
 men mixte in alle the yle of Briteyne. As in the sub-  
 traccion of Danes as vn to the maner and chaunce per of  
 croniclers make noo mencion, but hit schal be determinate  
 consequentely how the Pictes failede. *Giraldus, distinctione*  
*prima.* Briteyne occupiede some tyme with the Saxones,  
 and a stable fidelite made with the Pictes, the Scottes whiche f. 76. a.  
 were ioynede to the Pictes seenge the Pictes thauzhe fewe  
 in nowmbre, neuertheles thei were myzhty men of armes  
 and bolde of herte, desirede the capiteynes of the Pictes  
 and mony other to the feste, whiche vsenge a cautele  
 made the seetes in their festes to be movable with pynnes  
 of woode; and when the Pictes zafe attendaunce to surfette  
 and ryette, the Scottes toke aweye the nailes other pynnes,  
 and so the Pictes felle bakwarde, the legges of theyme beenge  
 vpwarde, in to holoo places vnder the seetes, and so thei  
 were alle sleynce. And so of ij. bolde peple, the more bolde

<sup>1</sup> *i-melled, a.; ben men medled,*  
Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *stablysshyd, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *the (sic) Scottes, a., Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *size, a.; sawe, Cx., who varies*  
the sentence.

<sup>6</sup> *and] om., a.*

<sup>7</sup> Cx. adds, *hawng therof enuye.*

<sup>8</sup> *naturel, Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> *tresoun ... apasseþ, a.*

<sup>10</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *only, a.; alyue, Cx.*

Alterā vero gens Scotorum longe<sup>1</sup> impar, ex tali<sup>2</sup> pro-  
 ditione emolumentum<sup>3</sup> quodammodo consecuta, totam<sup>4</sup>  
 terram illam, quam a nomine suo Scotiam vocave-  
 runt,<sup>5</sup> usque hodie possident.<sup>6</sup> Quibus eo tempore,  
 diebus videlicet Edgari regis,<sup>7</sup> Kynadius<sup>8</sup> Alpini filius  
 præsiciens<sup>9</sup> Pictaviam invasit, Pictos delevit, sexies  
 Saxoniam debellavit, et terram omnem<sup>10</sup> a mari Scotico  
 usque ad flumen Twedæ<sup>11</sup> usurpavit.

## CAP. LIX.

*De incolarum linguis.*<sup>12</sup>

*Ranulphus.*<sup>13</sup> Ut patet ad sensum,<sup>14</sup> quot in hac  
 insula<sup>15</sup> sunt gentes, tot gentium sunt linguæ; Scoti  
 tamen et Wallani,<sup>16</sup> uptote cum aliis nationibus imper-  
 mixti, ad purum pæne pristinum retinent idioma; nisi  
 forsā<sup>17</sup> Scoti ex<sup>18</sup> convictu Pictorum, cum quibus  
 olim confederati cohabitabant,<sup>19</sup> quippiam contraxerint

<sup>1</sup> *modis omnibus*, add. C.D.<sup>2</sup> *tali*] om. C.D.<sup>3</sup> *emolumenta*, C. (not D.)<sup>4</sup> *a mari usque ad mare*, add. C.D.<sup>5</sup> *dixerunt*, C.D.<sup>6</sup> *in hodiernum diem obtinent*, C.D.<sup>7</sup> *diebus . . . regis*] om. C.D.<sup>8</sup> *Linaldus*, B.; *Kinaldus*, A.<sup>9</sup> *possidens*, Gale, absurdly.<sup>10</sup> *omnem*] dudum Saxonibus sub-  
actam, quæ est, C.D.<sup>11</sup> *flumen Twedæ*] Mailros, quæ  
est in ripa Twedæ fluminis, C.D.<sup>12</sup> So Gale; *moribus*, E.<sup>13</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.D.<sup>14</sup> *Ut . . . sensum*] om. C.D.<sup>15</sup> *in . . . insula*] incolarum, B.<sup>16</sup> So E., Gale; *Wallici*, B.<sup>17</sup> *forte*, B.<sup>18</sup> *a*, C.D.<sup>19</sup> *habitabant*, B.

peple þe better werryour was<sup>1</sup> hollyche destroyed. Bote þe opere, þat beep þe Scottes, þat beep traytours, wel<sup>2</sup> vnliche to þe Pictes, took profiȝt by þat false tresoun; for þei took al þat lond, and holdeþ it ȝit hider to, and clepeþ hit Scotlond after here<sup>3</sup> owne name. Þat tyme, þat was in kyng Edgar his tyme, Kynadyus Alpynus his sone was ledere of Scottes, and werred in Picten londe,<sup>4</sup> and destroyed þe Pictes; he werred sixe sipes in Saxon, and took al þat<sup>5</sup> lond þat is bitwene Twede and þe Scottische see, wiþ wrong and wiþ strengþe.

TREVISA.

*De incolarum linguis. Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.*

As it is i-knowe how meny manere peple beep in þis ilond, pere beep also so many dyuers<sup>6</sup> longages and tonges; nopeles Walsche men and Scottes, þat beep nouȝt i-medled<sup>7</sup> wiþ oper nacions, holdeþ wel nyh<sup>8</sup> hir firste longage and speche; but ȝif the<sup>9</sup> Scottes þat were somtyme confederat and wonede wiþ

peple was vtterly destroyede. That other peple of Scottes hauenge a grete avayle by the dethe of theyme, haue that londe in possession whom thei calle Scotlande vn to this tyme. And also Kinadius, the son of Alpinus, entrede in to the cuntre of the Pictes in the tyme of kyng Edgare, and destroyede theyme, [and] fiȝhtenge soore vj. tymes ageyne the Saxones, presumede alle the grownde from the Scottisse vn to the water of Twide departenge now Englonde from Scottelonde.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Of the langage of the inhabitatores of Englonde.  
Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.*

Hir may be schewede clerely to the wytte that there were so many diuersites of langages in that londe as were diuersites of nacions. But Scottes and men of Wales kepe theire propre langage, as men inpermixte with other naciones; but peraventure Scottes haue taken somme parte

<sup>1</sup> *werryours were*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So Cx.; *were wel*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> So *a. ß.*; *theyr*, Cx.; *his*, MS. There is much confusion of numbers generally, and of the pronouns especially, in the MSS. of Trevisa's text.

<sup>4</sup> *Pictelond*, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *þe*, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *dyuers*] *om. a. and Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *melled beþ*, *a.*

<sup>8</sup> *kepe neygh yet*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *yet tho*, Cx.

in sermone.<sup>1</sup> Flandrenses vero, qui occidua Walliæ incolunt, dimissa jam barbarie,<sup>2</sup> Saxonice satis proloquuntur. Angli quoque, quamquam ab initio tripartitam sortirentur linguam, austrinam scilicet, mediterraneam, et borealem, veluti ex tribus Germaniæ populis procedentes, ex commixtionē tamen primo cum Danis, deinde cum Normannis,<sup>3</sup> corrupta in multis patria<sup>4</sup> lingua peregrinos jam captant boatus<sup>5</sup> et garritus. Hæc quidem nativæ linguæ corruptio provenit hodie multum<sup>6</sup> ex duobus; quod videlicet pueri in scholis contra morem cæterarum nationum a primo<sup>7</sup> Normannorum adventu, derelicto proprio vulgari, construere Gallice compelluntur;<sup>8</sup> item quod filii nobilium ab ipsis cunabulorum crepundiis ad Gallicum idioma<sup>9</sup> informantur. Quibus<sup>10</sup> profecto<sup>11</sup>

Linguae  
nativæ  
corruptionis  
causæ.

<sup>1</sup> *in sermone*] in verbo, B., apparently.

<sup>2</sup> *barbare*, B.; *barbaria*, E., Gale.

<sup>3</sup> *quorum juga pertulerunt*, add. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *propria* Gale.

<sup>5</sup> *balatus*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *potissime*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *post*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *compellantur*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *idioma*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Quos*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *agrestes et*, add. C.D.

þe Pictes drawe somewhat after hir speche; but þe Flemmynges þat woneþ in þe weste side of Wales haueþ i-left her straunge speche and spekeþ Saxonliche i-now.<sup>1</sup> Also Engliche men, þey [þei]<sup>2</sup> hadde from the bygynnyng þre manere speche, norþerne,<sup>3</sup> sowþerne, and middel speche in þe myddel of þe lond, as þey come of þre manere peple of Germania, nopeles by comyxtioun and mellyng firste wiþ Danes and afterward wiþ Normans, in meny<sup>4</sup> þe contray longage is apayred, and som vseþ straunge<sup>5</sup> wlafferynge,<sup>6</sup> chiterynge, harraynge, and garrynge grisbayting.<sup>7</sup> This apayryng of þe burþe of þe<sup>8</sup> tunge is because of tweie þinges; oon is for children in scole aʒenst þe vsage and manere of alle opere naciouns beþ compelled for to leue hire owne langage, and for to construe hir lessouns and here þynges in Frensche, and so þey haueþ seþ<sup>9</sup> þe Normans come first in to Engeland.<sup>10</sup> Also gentil men children beþ i-tauʒt to<sup>11</sup> speke Frensche from þe tyme þat þey beþ i-rokked in here cradel, and kunneþ speke and playe wiþ a childes broche; and vplondisshe men wil likne hym self to gentil men, and fondeþ wiþ greet besynesse for to speke Frensee, for to be i-tolde of.<sup>12</sup> *Trevisa.* Dis manere was moche i-vsede to for firste

TREVISIA.

in their commuicacion of the langage of Pictes, with whom thei dwellede somme tyme, and were confederate with theyme. Men of Flaundes that inhabite the weste partes of Wales levenge the speche of barbre speke after the Saxones. And thauʒhe men of Englonde hade in the begynnyng a langage tripartite, as of the sowthe parte of Englonde, of the myddelle parte of Englonde, and of the northe parte of Englonde, procedenge as of thre peple of Germanye, borowe moche in their speche now, as of<sup>13</sup> thro the commixtion with the Danes and after that with the Normannes. The corrupcion of that natife langage is causede moche of ij. thynges, that is to say, childer sette to schole after the commenge of Normannes in to Englonde were compellede to constru in Frenche ageyne the consuetude of oper naciones. In so moche that the childer of nowble men, after that thei were taken from the cradelle, were sette to lerne the speche of Frenche men. Wherefore churles seenge that, willenge to be like to theyme, laborede to speke Frenche with alle their myʒhte. Where hit is to be hade

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 79 b.

<sup>1</sup> *speken lyke to Saxons, Cx.*<sup>2</sup> *þei*] added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>3</sup> *souþorn, norþorn, a.*<sup>4</sup> *many thynges, Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *So a. and Cx.; strong, MS.*<sup>6</sup> *wlaffyng, Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *grysbityng, a., Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *of þe*] om. *a.*; *appayryng of the langage, Cx.*<sup>9</sup> *seþþe þe, a.*<sup>10</sup> Sentence much varied in *Cx*<sup>11</sup> *forto, a.*<sup>12</sup> Sentence abbreviated and much varied in *Cx.*<sup>13</sup> *So Harl. MS., but perhaps as of should be cancelled.*

rurales homines assimilari volentes,<sup>1</sup> ut per hoc spectabiliores videantur, francigenare<sup>2</sup> satagunt<sup>3</sup> omni nisu.<sup>4</sup> Ubi nempe<sup>5</sup> mirandum videtur,<sup>6</sup> quomodo<sup>7</sup> nativa et<sup>8</sup> propria Anglorum lingua,<sup>9</sup> in unica insula coartata, pronunciatione ipsa<sup>10</sup> sit tam diversa; cum tamen Normannica lingua,<sup>11</sup> quæ adventitia est, univoca maneat<sup>12</sup> penes<sup>13</sup> cunctos. De prædicta quoque lingua Saxonica tripartita, quæ in paucis adhuc agrestibus<sup>14</sup> vix remansit, orientales cum occiduis<sup>15</sup> tanquam sub eodem cæli climate lineati<sup>16</sup> plus consonant in sermone quam boreales cum austrinis. Inde est quod Mercii sive Mediterranei Angli, tanquam participantes natu-

<sup>1</sup> *in quibus merito genialis lingua remaneret, pro posse zelantes, C.D.*

<sup>2</sup> *francigenari, Gale.*

<sup>3</sup> *satagunt]* om. B.

<sup>4</sup> Slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *nempe]* om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *est, B.D,*

<sup>7</sup> *quod, C.D.*

<sup>8</sup> *et]* om. Gale.

<sup>9</sup> Transposed in C.

<sup>10</sup> *ipsa]* om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *lingua]* om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *manet, A.*

<sup>13</sup> *pene penes, E. (not A.B.C.D., Gale.)*

<sup>14</sup> *silvestribus, C.D.*

<sup>15</sup> *cum occiduis]* om. B.

<sup>16</sup> *limitati, C. (not D.)*



deth<sup>1</sup> and is sippe sumdel i-chaunged ; for Iohn<sup>2</sup> Cornwaile, a maister of grammer,<sup>3</sup> chaunged þe lore in gramer scole and construccion of Frensche in to Engliche ; and Richard Penriche lerned þe<sup>4</sup> manere techynge of hym and of<sup>5</sup> opere men of Pencrich ; so þat now, þe ʒere of oure Lorde a þowsand þre hundred and foure score and fyue, and of þe secounde kyng Richard after þe conquest nyne, in alle<sup>6</sup> þe gramere scoles of Engelond, children leueþ Frensche and construeþ and lerneþ an Engliche, and haueþ þerby auantage in oon side and disauantage in anoper side ; here auantage is, þat þey lerneþ her gramer in lasse tyme þan children were i-woned to doo ; disauantage is þat now children of gramer scole conneþ<sup>7</sup> na more Frensche þan can hir lift heele, and þat is harme for hem and þey schulle passe þe see and trauaille in straunge landes and in many oper places. Also gentil men haueþ now moche i-left for to teche here children Frensche. R. Hit semeþ a greet wonder how Engliche, [þat is þe burþe tonge of Englysshe]<sup>8</sup> men and her owne langage and tonge, is so dyuerse of sown<sup>9</sup> in þis oon ilond, and þe langage of Normandie is comlynge of anoper londe, and hath oon manere soun among alle men þat spekeþ hit ariʒt in Engelond.<sup>10</sup> *Trevisa.* Neuerþeles þere is as many dyuers mauere Frensche in þe reem of Fraunce as is dyuers manere Engliche in þe reem of Engelond. R. Also of þe forsaide Saxon tonge þat is i-deled apre, and is abide scarsliche wiþ fewe vplondisse

TREVISA.

in meruayle that the propur langage of Engliche men scholde be made so diuerse in oon lytelle yle in pronuncia-  
cion, sythe the langage of Normannes is oon and vniuocate  
allemoste amonge theyme alle. But as of the tripartite  
langage of Saxones, whiche remaynethe now but amonge  
fewe men, the<sup>11</sup> weste men of Englonde sownde and acorde  
more with the men of the este of that londe as vnder the  
same clyme of heuyn, then the men of the northe with men  
of the sowthe. Wherefore hit is that Engliche men of þe  
Marches of the mydelle partes of Englonde, takege as by

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> to fore þe firste moreyn, a.<sup>2</sup> Sir Iohan, Cx. ; who greatly varies the remainder of the extract from Trevisa.<sup>3</sup> gramyre, a.<sup>4</sup> þat, a.<sup>5</sup> of] om. a.<sup>6</sup> in al, a. ; and alle, MS.<sup>7</sup> So a. ; comeþ, MS.<sup>8</sup> Added from a.<sup>9</sup> soun, a.<sup>10</sup> Cx. amplifies the sentence thus :  
“ And the langage of Normandy is  
“ comen oute of another lond, and  
“ hath one maner soun among al  
“ men that spekeþ it in Englonde ;  
“ for a man of Kente, southern,  
“ western, and northern men speken  
“ Frensshe al lyke in sowne and  
“ speche ; but they can not speke  
“ theyr Englyssh so.”<sup>11</sup> the the, Harl. MS.

ram<sup>1</sup> extremorum, collaterales linguas<sup>2</sup> arcticam et ant-  
arcticam melius intelligant quam adinvicem se intelli-  
gunt<sup>3</sup> jam<sup>4</sup> extremi. <sup>5</sup>*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro*

Lingua  
Anglorum  
borealium  
ab australi-  
bus vix  
intelligi  
potest.

*tertio.* Tota<sup>6</sup> lingua Northimbrorum,<sup>7</sup> maxime<sup>8</sup> in  
Eboraco, ita stridet incondita,<sup>9</sup> quod nos australes eam  
vix intelligere possumus; quod puto propter viciniam<sup>10</sup>  
barbarorum contigisse, et etiam propter jugem remo-  
tionem regum<sup>11</sup> Anglorum<sup>12</sup> ab illis partibus, qui magis  
ad austrum diversati,<sup>13</sup><sup>14</sup> si quando boreales partes  
adeunt,<sup>15</sup> non nisi magno auxiliatorum manu pergunt.<sup>16</sup>

*Ranulphus.*<sup>17</sup> Frequentioris autem moræ in austrinis  
partibus<sup>18</sup> quam in borealibus causa potest esse gleba  
feracior,<sup>19</sup> plebs numerosior, urbes<sup>20</sup> insigniores, portus  
accommodatiores.

<sup>1</sup> naturam] om. E.

<sup>2</sup> linguas] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> So D.; intelligant, A.E., which, as well as Gale, have intelligunt above.

<sup>4</sup> nam, B.

<sup>5</sup> Quod testatur, add. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> inquit, add. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> Northankumbrorum, B.; North-umbria, D.

<sup>8</sup> et maxime, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> incognita, B.

<sup>10</sup> vicinitatem, C. (not D.); vicinam, A.

<sup>11</sup> quondam, add. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> modo Normannorum, add. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> sunt versati, B.; conversati, C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> domestico militum contenti numero, add. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> adierunt, D.

<sup>16</sup> manu pergunt] comitatu vadunt, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> Ranulphus] om. A.B.C. The latter part is as follows in C.D. :  
“ Cujus quidem demorationis re-  
gum in austrinis partibus causa  
solet esse quod ad austrum gleba  
sit feracior, plebs numerosior, aer  
temperatior, urbes insigniores, et  
plures portus ad necessaria ali-  
unde convehendo accomodatiores,  
utensilia denique, suppellectilia,  
et quicquid humano usui congruit  
præstantius ministrantur.”

<sup>18</sup> partibus austrinis, B.

<sup>19</sup> ferocior, A.

<sup>20</sup> et urbes, A.

men is greet wonder; for men of þe est wiþ men of þe west,<sup>1</sup> TREVISA.  
 as it were vnder þe same partie of heuene, acordeþ more  
 in sownynge of speche þan men of þe norþ wiþ men of þe  
 souþ; þerfore it is þat Mercii, þat beþ men of myddel Enge-  
 lond, as it were parteners of þe endes, vnderstondeþ bettre þe  
 side langages, norþerne and souþerne, þan norþerne and souþ-  
 erne vnderstondeþ eiper oper.<sup>2</sup> *Willelmus de Pontificibus,*  
*libro tertio.* Al þe longage of þe Norþhumbres, and specialliche  
 at York, is so scharp, slitting, and frotyng and vnschape, þat  
 we souþerne men may þat longage vnneþe vnderstonde. I  
 trowe þat þat is bycause þat þey beþ nyh to straunge men  
 and naciouns<sup>3</sup> þat spekeþ strongliche,<sup>4</sup> and also bycause þat  
 þe kynges of Engelond woneþ alwey fer from þat cuntrey; for  
 þey beþ more i-torned to þe souþ contray, and 3if þey<sup>5</sup> goþ  
 to þe norþ contray þey goþ wiþ greet [help]<sup>6</sup> and strengþe.  
 Þe cause why þey beþ more in þe souþ contrey þan in þe  
 norþ, [is] for hit<sup>7</sup> may be better corne londe, more peple,  
 more noble citees, and more profitable hauenes.

participacion the nature of bothe extremities, vnderstonde MS. HARL.  
 the langages collateralle arthike and anthartike better then 2261.  
 the extremities vnderstonde theyme selfe to geder. *Willel-*  
*mus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* Alle the langage of men  
 of Northumbrelonde, and specially in Yorke, sowndethe so  
 that men of the sowthe cuntre may vnnethe vnderstonde  
 the langage of theyme, whiche thyng may be causede for  
 the nye langage of men of barbre to theyme, and also  
 for the grete distaunce of kynges of Englonde from hyt,  
 whiche vse moste the southe partes of that londe, returnenge  
 not in to the costes of the northe but with a grete multi-  
 tude. Also an other cause may be assignede, for the sowthe  
 partes be more habundante in fertilitie then the northe  
 partes, moo peple in nowmbre, hauenge also more plesaunte  
 portes.

<sup>1</sup> west is, MS. (not a.).

<sup>2</sup> Sentence slightly varied in Cx.

<sup>3</sup> aliens, a. β.

<sup>4</sup> *straungleliche*, β. and Cx.; which seems right, but the extract from

William is so altered, that Caxton's critical authority is here very slight.

<sup>5</sup> he, a. β.

<sup>6</sup> Added from a.

<sup>7</sup> for hit] om. a. β.; is by cause that ther is, Cx.

## CAP. LX.

*De incolarum moribus.*<sup>1</sup>

Gentis  
Flandrensis  
mores et  
vaticina-  
tiones.

*Giraldus.* Significatis superius<sup>2</sup> utcumque Wallanorum et Scotorum moribus, jam de ritibus permixti Anglorum populi erit perorandum. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Et quidem gens illa Flandrensis<sup>3</sup> ad occidentem Walliæ, quasi Anglica jam convictu<sup>4</sup> est effecta; fortis<sup>5</sup> est et robusta, bellico conflictu<sup>6</sup> Cambrensibus infestissima, lanificiis et<sup>7</sup> mercimoniis usitatissima,<sup>8</sup> ad subeundum terræ marisque pericula pro lucro captando promptissima, vicissim pro loco et tempore nunc ad arma nunc ad aratra accommoda. De qua<sup>9</sup> gente mirandum<sup>10</sup> videtur, quod in armis arietum dextris carne nudatis non assis sed elixis<sup>11</sup> futura prospiciunt,<sup>12</sup> præterita, et<sup>13</sup> præsentia; sed<sup>14</sup> loco absentia, quasi quodam spiritu fatidico<sup>15</sup> et arte miranda, pacis et guerræ signa, regni statum, cædes<sup>16</sup> et adulteria, rimularum<sup>17</sup> et notularum indiciis certissime<sup>18</sup> declarat.<sup>19</sup>

*Ranulphus.* Reliqua vero gens Anglorum Loegriam

<sup>1</sup> *De gentis hujus moribus*, A.; *De gestis et moribus*, C.; *De gentis hujus terræ moribus*, D.; B. omits title.

<sup>2</sup> *Digestis in superioribus*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Flandrensis*] added in margin in C. in another ink; omitted in D.

<sup>4</sup> *conventu*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *quasi . . . fortis*] apud Roos et Haverford dudum transmissa origine Flandrensis, convictu jam Anglica est effecta gens fortis, &c., C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *belli conflictu assiduo*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. A.E.

<sup>8</sup> *lanificiis . . . usitatissima*] om. C.

<sup>9</sup> *De qua*] Hac autem de, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *mirandum*] notabile mihi, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *ulixis*, A.; *elixis*, B.; *tam*, ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *quam*, ins. C.D.; *præsentia et præterita*, A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *etiam*, ins. C.

<sup>14</sup> *sed*] om. A.

<sup>15</sup> *prophético*, C.; *vaticido*, MSS. and Gale.

<sup>16</sup> *sedes*, A.B.

<sup>17</sup> *rimularum*] rumularum (rimarum, D.) quarundam, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *certissime*] om. Gale.

<sup>19</sup> *delegant*, C. (not D.)

*De gentibus hujus moribus. Capitulum sexagesimum.*

TREVISA.

*Giraldus in Itinerario.* For þe maneres and þe doynge of Walsche men and of Scottes beþ to fore honde somdel declared, now of þe maneres and of þe doynge of þe medled<sup>1</sup> peple of Engeland nedep forto telle. But þe Flemynges þat beþ in þe westside of Wales beþ now by torned as þough þey were Engliche by cause of companye wiþ Engliche men, and þey beþ stalworpe<sup>2</sup> and stronge to fiȝte, and beþ þe moste enemyes þat Walsche men haþ,<sup>3</sup> and vseþ marchaundyse and cloþynge, and beþ ful redy to putte hem self to auentures and to peril in þe see and in þe<sup>4</sup> lond, by cause<sup>5</sup> of greet wynnyng, and beþ redy for to goo somtyme to þe plowȝ and somtyme to dedes of armes whan tyme and place axep. Hit semeþ of þis<sup>6</sup> men a grete wonder<sup>7</sup> þat in a boon of a wethres riȝt schuldre, whan þe flesche is aweye i-sode<sup>8</sup> and nouȝt i-rosted, þey knowep what haþ be do, is i-doo, and schal be doo, and as hit were by a spirit of prophecie and a wonderful craft þey telleþ what me dop in fer contrayes, tokens of pees and of werre, þe staat of þe reeme,<sup>9</sup> sleyng of men, and spouse-breeche; soche þey declareþ certeynliche by schewynge of tokenes and of synnes<sup>10</sup> þat beþ in suche a schulder boon. R. But þe Engliche men þat woneþ in Engeland, þat beþ i-

*Of the maneres of the peple of hit.*MS. HARL.  
2261.*Capitulum sexagesimum.*

A DECLARACION hade in processe precedenge as of þe maneres of men of Wales and of Scottes, we schalle determine of the rites of the permixte peple of Englonde. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* And that peple of Flaundes f. 77. a. whiche inhabite the weste partes of Wales is made now in disposicion like to the peple of Englonde, beenge myȝhty and stronge in confictes and in batelle, contrarious to Walsche men, vsenge moche wolle and marchaundise, prompte to take on theim perelle of the see either of the londe for lucre, nowc applieng theyme to labour, as for the place and tyme, and soone to batelle. R. That other peple of Engliche men inhabitenge Loegria, as of yles permixte,

<sup>1</sup> melled, a.<sup>2</sup> myghty, Cx., who has also many slight variations.<sup>3</sup> haueþ, a.<sup>4</sup> þe] om. a.<sup>5</sup> and by cause, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>6</sup> these, Cx.<sup>7</sup> þis crafte ys nat usyd þer now as y trow. Note in MS.<sup>8</sup> i-sode] So a.; is sode, MS.<sup>9</sup> reame, a.; royamme, Cx.<sup>10</sup> synnes, a.

Reliquarum gentium virtutes et vitia.

inhabitans, utpote<sup>1</sup> insulana,<sup>2</sup> permixta, et a primitivis scatebris longius derivata, proprio motu etiam sine alieno hortatu facile flectitur ad opposita; adeo quoque quietis impatiens, <sup>3</sup>curæ æmula,<sup>4</sup> otium<sup>5</sup> nauseat; (*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio;*) ut<sup>6</sup> cum hostes externos funditus depresserit, ipsa<sup>7</sup> mutuo se<sup>8</sup> conterat, et more vacui stomachi agat in seipsam. *Ranulphus.*<sup>9</sup> Gens tamen australis quietior et mitior, borealis vero mobilior et ferocior, gens media participii<sup>10</sup> vicem tenet.<sup>11</sup> Item<sup>12</sup> gens Angligena præ cæteris gulæ<sup>13</sup> dedita, in victu<sup>14</sup> et vestitu multum<sup>15</sup> sumptuosa; quod quidem vitium a diebus Hardekanuti<sup>16</sup> regis Danici, qui bina bis fercula etiam<sup>17</sup> in cœnis jusserat apponi, creditur contraxisse. Gens hæc equo et pede<sup>18</sup> expedita; ad omne genus armorum accommoda;<sup>19</sup> in bellicis congressibus,<sup>20</sup> ubi fraus abfuerit,

<sup>1</sup> *ut puta*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Loegriam . . . insulana*] per Loegriam, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *ut*, ins. B.

<sup>4</sup> *quæ*, ins. C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *socium*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Et*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *ipsam*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *mutuo se*] se mutuo, C. (D. omits *se*; *de*, E.)

<sup>9</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *participia*, E.

<sup>11</sup> *Ranulphus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Item*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *gulæ*] nationibus cibis et potibus, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *in victu*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *nimum*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Hardecnuti*, A.; *Hardeknuti*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *etiam*] om. B.

<sup>18</sup> *tam pede quam equo*, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *ad omnem militiæ conflictum apta*, add. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *conflictibus*, C. (not D.)

medled<sup>1</sup> in þe ilond, þat [beþ]<sup>2</sup> fer i-spronge from þe welles<sup>3</sup> TREVISA.  
 þat þey spronge of first, wel liȝtliche wiþ oute entisyng of eny  
 oþer men, by here owne assent tornei<sup>4</sup> to contrary dedes. And  
 so<sup>5</sup> vnesy, also ful vnpacient of pees, enemy of besynesse, and  
 wlatful of<sup>6</sup> sleupe, (*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio*,)  
 þat whan þey haueþ destroyed here enemyes al to þe grounde,  
 þanne þey fiȝteþ wiþ hem self, and sleeþ eueriche oþer, as a voyde  
 stomak and a clene worcheþ in hit self. [R.]<sup>7</sup> Noþeles men of  
 þe souþ beþ esier and more mylde; and men of þe north be<sup>8</sup>  
 more vnstable, more cruel, and more vnesy; þe myddel men beþ  
 somdele partyners wiþ boþe: also þey woneþ<sup>9</sup> hem to glotonye  
 more þan oþer men, and beþ more costlewe in mete and in  
 drynke<sup>10</sup> and in clopyng. Me troweþ<sup>11</sup> þat þey took þat vyce<sup>12</sup>  
 of kyng Hardeknute þat was a Dane, for he sette twyfes double  
 messe and also at soper.<sup>13</sup> Þese men been speedful boþe on hors  
 and on foote, able and redy to alle manere dedes of armes, and  
 beþ i-woned<sup>14</sup> to haue the victorie and þe maistrie in euerich

be liȝhtely declynede thro theire awne mocion vn to thynges MS. HARL.  
 contrarious, whiche be soe impacient, as *Willelmus de Pontif-  
 ficibus, libro tertio, rehersethe, that when that peple hathe 2261.  
 depressede theire enemyes then thei fiȝhte amonge theyme  
 selfe, and laboure ageyne nature in the maner of a voide  
 stomake. R. Neuerthelesse, the peple of the sowthe is  
 meke and quiete, the peple of þe northe is more moveable  
 and cruelle, the peple of the myddelle partes be in maner  
 as a participulle. Also the peple of Englonde is ȝiffen  
 more to glotony and to surfettes a fore other peple, takege  
 grete coste in meite and clothes, whiche is seide to haue  
 bene taken in the tyme of Hardeknutus kyng, a Dane,<sup>15</sup>  
 whiche vse many diversities of meites at a meite. That  
 peple is apte to alle kyndes of armes, bothe on foote and  
 on horse, wonte to haue a crowne off a lauref<sup>16</sup> tre for the*

<sup>1</sup> *i-medled* or *medled* is generally *melled* in *a*.

<sup>2</sup> Added from *a*.

<sup>3</sup> *places*, Cx., who has a few other slight variations.

<sup>4</sup> *torne*, *a*.

<sup>5</sup> So *a*. and Cx.; *Also*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *on*, *a*.; *ful of*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Reference added from Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *beþ*, *a*.

<sup>9</sup> *vse*, Cx.; who has also various slight deviations throughout the extract.

<sup>10</sup> *and in drynk*] om. *a*. and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *Me supposeth*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *vse*, MS. (not *a*. or Cx.)

<sup>13</sup> *souper*, *a*.; *at dyner* and *at soper* also, Cx. (but the improvement seems to be his own. See the text.)

<sup>14</sup> *wonte*, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> So Harl. MS., but the sentence seems a little corrupt.

<sup>16</sup> So Harl. MS.

solet lauream reportare. Gens ista<sup>1</sup> curiosa satis, ut noscat et narret<sup>2</sup> mirabilia quæ viderit; regiones colustrat;<sup>3</sup> in solo proprio vix locupletior, in longinquis magis felix. Nova nancisci melius novit, quam hæreditaria conservare. Hinc est quod late per orbem dispergitur, putans sibi patriam omne solum. Gens denique<sup>4</sup> ad omnem idonea industriam; sed ante factum importuna et præceps, post factum sagacior, facile deserit quod incepit. *Pol., libro sexto.*<sup>5</sup> Proinde est quod Eugenius papa dixit, gentem Anglicam<sup>6</sup> ad quæcunque vellet fore idoneam, et cæteris gentibus præferendam,<sup>7</sup> nisi levitas animi impediret. Et sicut Hannibal negabat posse vinci Romanos nisi in patria propria, ita et<sup>8</sup> gens Anglica<sup>9</sup> dum peregrinatur invincibilis est, in sedibus propriis facilius<sup>10</sup> expugnatur. *Ranulphus.*<sup>11</sup> Gens<sup>12</sup> ista<sup>13</sup> quæ sua sunt fastidiens vituperat propria, commendat aliena; de status sui

<sup>1</sup> *itaque ista*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *narrat*, A.B.; *aut narret*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *rimatur*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *quoque*, A.B.; *itaque*, D.

<sup>5</sup> C.D. omit reference.

<sup>6</sup> *Angligenam*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *et . . . præferendam*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *et*] om. E.

<sup>9</sup> *Anglicana*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *facilius*] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> Reference added from B. and Gale.

<sup>12</sup> *etiam*, add. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *ad aliena noscenda sive experienda valde curiosa*, add. C.D. See Harleian translation.



fiȝt wher no treson is walkynge ; and [beȝ]<sup>1</sup> curious, and TREVISA.  
 kunneȝ wel i-now telle dedes and wondres þat þei haueth  
 i-seie. Also þey goop in dyuers londes, vnneȝe beep eny men  
 richere in her owne londe opere more gracious in fer and in  
 straunge<sup>2</sup> londe. Þey<sup>3</sup> konneȝ betre wynne and gete newe  
 þan kepe her owne heritage ; þefore it is þat þey<sup>4</sup> beep  
 i-spred so wyde and wenep þat euerich oper<sup>5</sup> londe is hir owne  
 heritage.<sup>6</sup> Þe men beep able to al manere sleipe and witte,  
 but to fore þe dede blondrynge and hasty, and more wys after  
 þe dede, and leueȝ ofte<sup>7</sup> liȝtliche what þey haueȝ bygonne.  
*Polycraticon, libro sexto.* Þefore Eugenius þe pope seide þat  
 Engliſſhe men were able to do what euer þey wolde, and to  
 be sette and putte to fore alle opere, nere<sup>8</sup> þat liȝt wiȝ letteȝ.  
 And as Hannibal<sup>9</sup> saide þat þe Romayns myȝte nouȝt be ouer-  
 come but in hir owne cuntray : so Engliſche men mowe not  
 be ouercome in straunge londes, but in hir own cuntray þey  
 beep liȝtliche ouercome. R. Þese men despiseȝ hir owne, and  
 preiseȝ oper menis, and vnneȝe beep apaide wiȝ hir owne  
 estate ; what byfalleȝ and semeȝ oper men, þey wolleȝ glad-

victory in batelles, if treason reigne not amonge theyme. MS. HARL.  
 That peple is curious ynowe that hit may knowe, and telle 2261.  
 meruellous thynges goenge to oper regiones, vnnethe ryche  
 and fortunate in their awne londe, but fortunate specially  
 in ferre costes. For hit can purchase better then kepe the  
 propur inheritaunce of theyme, wherefore the peple of that  
 londe is dispersede a brode thro alle the worlde, trawenge  
 alle the worlde to be a cuntre to theyme ; a peple apte  
 moche to wylenes and decepcion, but importune a fore the  
 dede, levenge liȝhtly a thyng y-begunne. *Policronicon,*<sup>10</sup>  
*libro vij<sup>to</sup>.* Wherefore hit is that Eugenius the pope seide  
 the peple of Englonde apte to euery thyng, and to be  
 preferrede a fore peple of other naciones but for inconstance  
 of theyme ; and like as Hannibal denyede the Romanes to be  
 ouercome but in their propre cuntre, soe in lyke wise the f. 77. b.  
 peple of Englonde is invincible in other cuntres, and soone  
 deuicte in their awne cuntre. R. The peple of Englonde is  
 fulle curious to knowe straunge thynges by experience, deprau-  
 uenge their awne thynges [thei] commende other straunge,

<sup>1</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So Cx. ; *strouenge*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> þy, a.

<sup>4</sup> þeyȝ, a.

<sup>5</sup> oper] om. a. and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> heritage] om. a. and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> of, a., Cx.

<sup>8</sup> ne were that light wytte, Cx.,  
 just after.

<sup>9</sup> Hanyba, MS.

<sup>10</sup> So Harl. MS. at length.

gradu<sup>1</sup> vix unquam contenta, quod alteri congruit libenter in se transfigurat ; unde fit ut vernaculus quod armigeri est,<sup>2</sup> armiger quod militis, miles quod ducis, dux quod regis est in se repræsentat.<sup>3</sup> Immo nonnulli<sup>4</sup> omne genus circueuntes in nullo<sup>5</sup> genere sunt, omnem ordinem attemptantes<sup>6</sup> nullius ordinis sunt.<sup>7</sup> Nam in gestu<sup>8</sup> sunt histriones, in affatu Cicerones,<sup>9</sup> in convictu nebulones, in quæstu caupones, in apparatu sunt tirones, in lucris Argi, in laboribus Tantali, in curis

<sup>1</sup> *de . . . gradu*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *est*] om. A.,

<sup>3</sup> *representent*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Unde nonnulli*, A. ; Gale, A., and E. omit *omne*.

<sup>5</sup> *novo*, Gale, badly.

<sup>6</sup> *acceptantes*, Gale, badly.

<sup>7</sup> *omnem . . . sunt*] added in margin of C.—(D. has them in text).

<sup>8</sup> *gestis*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Cicherones* or *Citherones*, MSS.; *Citherones*, Gale (for *Cithærones*?) which however brings out little or no sense.

lyche take to hem self; perfore hit is pat a *zeman*<sup>1</sup> arraieþ hym as a squyer, a squyer as a knyzt, a kni<sup>z</sup>t as a duke [and]<sup>2</sup> a duke as a kyng. *z*it som goop a boutte to alle manere staate and beep in noon astaate,<sup>3</sup> for þey þat wole take eueriche degree beep of non degre, for in berynge<sup>4</sup> þey beep menstralles and heraudes,<sup>5</sup> in talkyngre grete spekere, in etyngre and in drynkyngre glotouns, in gaderyngre of catel hoksters<sup>6</sup> and tauerners, in aray tormentoures, in wynnynges Argi, in trauaile Tantal, in takyngre hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally, in chirches mamettes, in courtes ponder, onliche in priuelege of clergie and in prouendres<sup>7</sup> þey knowlecheþ hem silf clerkes. *Trevisa.* In wynnyngre þey beep Argy, in trauaile Tantal, in takyngre hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally. For to vnderstonde þis reson ari<sup>z</sup>t foure wordes [þerof]<sup>8</sup> moste be declared, þat beep þese foure, Argy, Tantal, Dedaly, and Sardanapally; perfore take hede that Argus in an herde, Argus a schippe, a schipman, and a chapman. But here it is more to purpos þat poetes feyneþ oon þat was somtyme al ful of eyzen in eueriche side<sup>9</sup> and heet Argus, so þat this Argus my<sup>z</sup>te see<sup>10</sup> to fore and byhynde, vpwarde and downward, and al aboute in eueriche side, and by a manere likenesse of þis Argus, he þat is war and wys, and kan see and be war in eueriche side is i-cleped Argus, and ful of yzen as Argus was. Ðan forto speke to meny such he moste be i-cleped Argi in þe plural nombre. Ðan in þat cronyke he seiþ þat þey beep Argy in wynnyngre, hit is to mene þat þey beep ware and seep aboute in euery side where wynnyngre may arise. Ðat oper word is Tantal; perfore take hede þat þe poete feyneþ þat Tantalus was a man and slowh<sup>11</sup> his owne sonne, perfore he was i-dampned to perpetual penaunce, as þe poete feyneþ þat Tantalus stondeþ<sup>12</sup> alway in a water vp anon to þe<sup>13</sup> ouer

TREVISA.

vnnethe other neuer contente of the state of theirre degre, MS. HARL. 2261.  
transfigurengre to theyme that is congruente to an other man. Wherefore hit is seen oftetyms pat a yoman dothe represente as the state of a es[q]wier, an esquier of a kny<sup>z</sup>hte, a kny<sup>z</sup>hte of a lorde, a lorde of a duke, a duke off a kyngre. There fore mony men goenge abowte euery degre be founde in noo degre, attemptenge euery ordre be not of eny ordre; for thei be as ioculers in behauor, glotones in meite, tauerners in expense, my<sup>z</sup>hty men or frauncleones in apparelle, Argi in lucre, like to Tantalus in

<sup>1</sup> *zymman, a.*<sup>2</sup> Added from *a.*<sup>3</sup> *no stat, a.*<sup>4</sup> *berying outward, Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *herowdes, Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *hucksters, Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *prebendis, Cx.*<sup>8</sup> Added from *a.*<sup>9</sup> So *a*; *a side, MS.*<sup>10</sup> So *Cx.*; *i-see, MS.*<sup>11</sup> *slow, a.*<sup>12</sup> *stondes, a.*<sup>13</sup> *þe] om. a.*

Dædali, in cubilibus Sardanapali, in templis simulacra, in curiis tonitrua, solis<sup>1</sup> privilegiis et præbendis clericos se fatentur. Sed et<sup>2</sup> in cunctis passim Angligenis<sup>3</sup> tanta vestium varietas et apparatus<sup>4</sup> multiformitas inolevit, ut neutri jam generis quilibet pæne censeatur.<sup>5</sup> De qua re prophetavit quidam sanctus anachorita temporibus<sup>6</sup> regis Egelfredi<sup>7</sup> in hunc modum. *Henricus, libro sexto.*<sup>8</sup> Angli quia proditio, ebrietati, et negligentiae domus Dei dediti sunt, primo per Danos, deinde<sup>9</sup> per Normannos, tertio per Scotos, quos vilis-

<sup>1</sup> *solis*] om. Gale.

<sup>2</sup> *etiam*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Angligenis*] om. Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *multiplicitas ac*, ins. B.

<sup>5</sup> *censeat*, E.

<sup>6</sup> *tempore*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Egeldredi*, B. ; *Egelredi*, D., Gale.

<sup>8</sup> Added in margin of C.

<sup>9</sup> *secundo*, C.D.

brerde<sup>1</sup> of þe neþer lippe, and hap all way euene at his mouþ<sup>2</sup> TREVISIA.  
 ripe apples and noble fruyt, ne water comeþ wiþ ynne his  
 mouþ, he is so i-holde vp; and so he stondeþ in þat array  
 bytwene mete and drynke, and may noþer ete ne drynke, and  
 is an hongred and apirst þat woo is hym on lyue. By a manere  
 likeness of þis Tantalus þey þat dooþ riȝt nouȝt, þere<sup>3</sup> moche  
 þing is to doo in euery side, beþ i-cleped Tantalus. Hit semeþ  
 þat þis sawe is to mene, in trauaille þey beþ Tantalus, for þey  
 dooþ riȝt nouȝt þerto. Þe þridde word is Dedalus; take hede  
 þat Dedalus was a wel sligh<sup>4</sup> man, and by likness of hym men  
 þat beþ sliȝe beþ i-cleped Dedalus in þe plurel noumbre, so  
 it is to mene as hit semeþ in þis sawe, in takynge hede and in  
 cry<sup>5</sup> þey beþ Dedalus, þat is fel and sly. The ferþe word is  
 [Sardanapalli; þerfore take hede þat],<sup>6</sup> Sardanapallus was a  
 kyng, rex Assyriorum, and was ful vnchast, and by a manere  
 liknesse of hym þey þat beþ swiþe vnchast beþ i-cleped  
 Sardanapally. R. But among alle Englische i-medled to  
 giders is so grete chaungynge and diuersite [of clopinge and]<sup>7</sup>  
 of array [and so many manere and dyuerse shappes, that wel  
 nyghe is there ony man knowen by his clothyng and his  
 arraye]<sup>8</sup> of what degre he is. Þerof prophecied an holy anker  
 to kyng Egilred his tyme in þis manere. *Henricus, libro sexto.*  
 Englisshe men for þey woneþ hem to dronkelewnesse, to  
 tresoun, and to rechelesnesse of Goddes hous, first by Danes  
 and þanne by Normans, and at þe þridde tyme by Scottes, þat  
 þey holdeþ most wrecches and leste worþ of alle, þey schulleþ be

laboure, and as Dedalus in cure, lyke to Sardanapallus in MS. HARL.  
 beddes, simulacres in temples, thundres in courtes, know- 2261.  
 leggenge theym to be clerkes throo only priuileges and  
 benefices other prebendes. But now in these daies suche  
 diuersites of vesture and apparelle be vsede alle moste  
 amouge alle men of Englonde, that thei seme to be as of  
 noo gendre or kynde; of whom an holy heremite did pro-  
 phecy in the tyme of knyge Egelredus in thys maner.  
*Henricus, libro sexto.* For cause that Englische men be  
 ziffen to treason, drunkenesse, and to the negligence of  
 þe howse of God, thei schalle be punyschede sore, firste by  
 Danes, in the secunde tyme by Normannes, in the thrydde  
 tyme by the Scottes, whom thei acompte as a peple moste

<sup>1</sup> *brered, a.*

<sup>2</sup> *mouþ*] om. *a.*

<sup>3</sup> So MS. *a.* and *β.*; but *where*  
 seems to be required. See p. 187.

<sup>4</sup> *subtyl and a slye, Cx.*; who has  
 very much re-cast the whole extract  
 from Trevisa.

<sup>5</sup> *kuyre, a.*

<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.*

<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.*

<sup>8</sup> Added from Cx., who may have  
 somewhat amplified his text.

simos reputant, erunt conterendi; adeoque<sup>1</sup> tunc varium erit sæculum, ut varietas mentium multimoda vestium variatione<sup>2</sup> designetur.<sup>3</sup> *Explicit Liber Primus.*

---

LIBER SECUNDUS.

---

*Prologus Libri Secundi.*

CAP. I.

Major mundus propter minorem mundum (*i.e.* hominem) est creatus.

ORDO narrationis historicæ hoc expostulat, ut post descripta mundi<sup>4</sup> loca etiam orbis gesta describantur. Sed si unumquodque propter quid et illud magis, cum propter minorem mundum factus sit major, juxta illud, “Major” inquit<sup>5</sup> “serviet minori,” non ab re erit, descripto in præcedentibus majori mundo,<sup>6</sup> ipsum quoque minorem mundum<sup>7</sup> in principio actuum suorum parumper describere; ut qualis quantusve sit agnos-

---

<sup>1</sup> *adeo*, B.; *adeo quia*, Gale.

<sup>2</sup> *varietate*, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *designabitur*, D. (on an erasure).

<sup>4</sup> *orbis*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *inquit Scriptura*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *mundo*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *mundum*] om. C.D.

ouercome ; þan þe worlde schal be so vnstable and so dyuers TREVISIA.  
and variable þat þe vnstabilnesse of pouztes schal [be]<sup>1</sup> by-  
tokened by many manere dyuersite of clopinge. *Explicit*  
*Liber Primus.*

*Incipit Liber Secundus. Capitulum primum.*

AFTER þat places and contrees beþ [rekened and]<sup>2</sup> dis-  
cryued of þe worlde wyde, þe ordre of þe tale of þe story  
axep þat berynge and dedes of þe worlde be also discreued.  
But 3if<sup>3</sup> every þing is for somewhat and þat is more, (*Trevisa.*  
Here is<sup>4</sup> auctorite of philosophre, and<sup>5</sup> is to mene þat al þing  
þat is resonabliche<sup>6</sup> and kyndeliche i-ordeyned for anoper þing  
as a mene forto come þerto [and forto]<sup>7</sup> save it, is i-or-  
deyned for better þing and more noble þan is þat þing þat  
is i-ordeyned<sup>8</sup> þefore : ensauple,<sup>9</sup> erynge and sowynge and  
dongynge of lond is ordeyned for to haue good corne, [and  
good corne]<sup>10</sup> is better þan al þe oper deel ; also medecyne is  
i-ordeyned for hele, and hele is better þan þe medecyne ; also

vile, in so moche that the worlde schalle be then so vari- MS. HARL.  
able, that the diuersite of myndes schalle be designate in 2261.  
the mony folde diuersite of vesture and of apparelle. *Ex-*  
*plicit Liber Primus.*

INCIPIIT LIBER SECUNDUS.

*Liber Secundus. Capitulum primum.*

f. 78. a.

THE ordre of the narracion of stories requirethe that  
the gestes of the worlde scholde be describede also after  
the places of the worlde schewede and expressede ; then,  
sythe the gretter worlde was made for the lesse worlde, as  
hit is seide, "The gretter worlde schalle serue the lesse,"  
then the descripcion in the precedenge processe of the  
grete worlde schalle not be with owte a cause and vtilite.  
Wyllenge now to describe the lesse worlde in the begyn-  
nenge of his actes, that the qualite or quantite of hit may

<sup>1</sup> Added from a.

<sup>2</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> 3if ] om. Cx. ; badly, not per-  
ceiving the extract from Trevisa to  
be parenthetical.

<sup>4</sup> þis, a., Cx.

<sup>5</sup> and ] om. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> resonable, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> so ordeyned, a. ; soordeyning, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> ensauple ] om. Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

catur qui tam pusillus in tam magno tam magnifica operatur. Et quidem cunctorum entium opifex, apud quem ideales rerum rationes sunt reconditæ,<sup>1</sup> post peractam majoris mundi machinam minorem mundum condidit, quem licet majori mundo prætulerit,<sup>2</sup> in eo tamen majoris mundi similitudinem impressit.<sup>3</sup> In tribus namque<sup>4</sup> assimilantur mundus et homo,<sup>5</sup> in dimensione diametrali, in dispositione naturali, in operatione virtuali. Et primo quidem quamvis<sup>6</sup> humani corporis longitudo quæ est a planta pedis usque<sup>7</sup> ad verticem capitis<sup>8</sup> sexies sit major ejus latitudine quæ est a crate lateris ad cratem, et etiam<sup>9</sup> decies major ejus altitudine quæ est a dorso usque ad ventrem: veruntamen<sup>10</sup> secundum Plinium, libro septimo, capitulo octavodecimo, quanta est distantia inter cenit<sup>11</sup> capitis

Homo et mundus inter se comparantur.

<sup>1</sup> *condite*, B.

<sup>2</sup> So A.B.; *peritulerit*, E.

<sup>3</sup> So A.E.; *expressit*, B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *autem*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *et homo*, om. E.

<sup>6</sup> *licet*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *pedis usque*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *capitis*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *etiam*] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *veruntamen*] om. C.D.; adding *tamen* after *Plinium*.

<sup>11</sup> *cenum* corrected to *cenit* in C.; *chenit*, B., see Ducange, s.v. *cenith*.



mete and drynke and oper pynges beep i-ordeyned<sup>1</sup> for þe TREVISA.  
 lyf, and þe lyf is better and more noble þan mete and drynke  
 and alle opere<sup>2</sup> þinges þat beep so i-ordeyned for þe lyf.)  
 R.—þanne, seþþe þat þe more worlde is i-made for þe lasse,  
 as holy writte seiþ, “þe more schal serue þe lasse,” and now þe  
 more world is discreued in oure foure sawes in þe firste book,  
 þan it is skilful somdel to descryue þe lasse world also  
 from þe bygynnyng of his forme<sup>3</sup> dedes, þat<sup>4</sup> hit myȝte be  
 knowe what manere þing hit is and how grete, þat is so litel  
 and doop so grete dedes in þe more worlde, þat is so grete  
 and so huge. And also þe worchere and þe<sup>5</sup> makere of alle  
 þinges þat haþ wiþ him schapliche resouns of al manere  
 resouns and<sup>6</sup> þinges, whanne he hadde i-made þe more  
 worlde, þan he made þe lasse; and þey he made him lord of þe  
 grete world, ȝit he prynted on hym þe likenesse of þe greet<sup>7</sup>  
 world. For a man and þe world beþ liche in þre pynges:  
 in lengþe, in brede, and in dipnesse;<sup>8</sup> in kyndely dispo-  
 sicioun; and vertues worchyng.<sup>9</sup> And firste þeiȝ þe lengþe  
 of a manis body, þat is from þe sole of þe foot to þe top of  
 þe heed, be<sup>10</sup> suche sixe as þe brede, þat is from þe oon side of  
 þe ribbes to þat oper side, and ten so moche as þe depnesse þat  
 is from þe rugge<sup>11</sup> to þe wombe; noþeles Plinius, libro  
 7º, capitulo 18º, seiþ þat as moche space as is bytwene cinit,

be knowen, whiche beenge so litelle worchethe so grete MS. HARL.  
 thynges in so grete a thyng. The maker of alle thynges, 2261.  
 anendes whom the ydealle reasones of thynges be hidde,  
 made the lesse worlde after the grete engyne of the worlde  
 made, in whom he impressede the similitude of the grete  
 worlde. For a man and the worlde be assimilate in iij.  
 thynges, in dimension diametralle or dimetralle, in dispo-  
 sicion naturalle, and in operation virtualle. And thauȝhe þe  
 longitude of the body of man, whiche is from the soole of  
 the foote vn to the toppe of the hedde, be vj. tymes more  
 then the latitude of hym whiche is from side to side, and  
 x. tymes more then þe altitude of hyt, whiche is from the  
 backe to the bely; for<sup>12</sup> after the grete clerk Plinius, libro  
 quinto, capitulo decimo octavo, what distaunce is betwene

<sup>1</sup> So Cx. (but with *be* for *beep*);  
 þat beep so i-ordeyned, MS. and *a*.

<sup>2</sup> þe opere, *a*.

<sup>3</sup> forne, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; þan, MS.

<sup>5</sup> þe] om. *a*.

<sup>6</sup> and] om. *a*.; *al maner thynges*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So *a*. and Cx.; *lasse*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> and in dipnesse] om. *a*.

<sup>9</sup> Here ys þe proporcyon of mannys  
 body. Note in MS.

<sup>10</sup> So *a*.; *ben*, MS.

<sup>11</sup> rygge, *a*.; *rigge*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> The translator should have  
 written *yet*.

nostri ad oppositum punctum in cœlo, tanta est ab oriente in occidentem, sic fit in corpore humano ; quod quantum est homini<sup>1</sup> spatium a vestigio ad verticem, tantum est homini<sup>2</sup> spatium extensis<sup>3</sup> manibus inter extrema longissimorum digitorum. Tradit etiam<sup>4</sup> Plinius ibidem capitulo septimodecimo, quod in trimatu ætatis cujuslibet mensura erit futuræ staturæ dimidia, si vixerit. *Ranulphus*.<sup>5</sup> Secundo, sicut videmus<sup>6</sup> in mundo, ita in homine, quod partes et membra mutuo sibi correspondent, compatiuntur, et vicem supplent ; nam superiora regunt et influunt, inferiora supportant et serviunt, media recipiunt et refundunt. Et in utroque mundo dum membrum fuerit extra locum suum et intraverit alienum, fit statim perturbatio ; sicut quando aër includitur<sup>7</sup> in terræ visceribus, fit terræ motus ; quando vero<sup>8</sup> in nubibus, fit tonitrus ; sic quoque<sup>9</sup> in cor-

<sup>1</sup> *hominis*, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *hominis*, C. (not D.) ; *ei*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *expansis sive extensis*, C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> *enim*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *vidimus*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *includerit*, E.

<sup>8</sup> *vero*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *quoque*] om. C.D.

pat is þe point þat is in þe welken<sup>1</sup> euen aʒenst hem<sup>2</sup> in þe oper side of þe erþe, so moche is out of þe est in to þe weste; and so hit is in þe body of a man þat as moche as is from þe sole of þe foot to þe top of þe hede,<sup>3</sup> so moche is bytwene his tweie lengest fyngres endes, and he strecche out his armes and hondes abrood. Also Plinius pere<sup>4</sup> riʒt, capitulo 7<sup>o</sup>,<sup>5</sup> seiþ þat þe stature and þe mesure of a childe whan he is þre ʒere olde is euen half mesure of<sup>6</sup> his stature þat he schal haue whan he is of age, and he lyue<sup>7</sup> so longe. Þe secounde as we seeþ in þe world so we seeþ in a man, þat þe membres and þe parties helpeþ and stondeþ euerich oper in stede, and bynened<sup>8</sup> his woo. For þe ouer lymes gouerneþ and ʒeueþ; þe neþer lymmes bereþ and serueþ; þe myddel fongeþ and deleþ aboute to<sup>9</sup> oper lymes. And in eiper<sup>10</sup> world ʒif a lyme is oute of his owne place, and i-entred in to anoþer place þan his<sup>11</sup> owne, anon is grete distourbaunce i-made, as whan þe ayer<sup>12</sup> is closed<sup>13</sup> wiþ ynne þe erþe, þan þe erþe schakeþ,<sup>14</sup> and whan with ynne þe cloudes þan is greet pondrynge; also in þe body of a man

TREVISA.

cenit of oure hedde and a poynte contradictorious to hit in heuyn, soe moche distaunce is from the este in to the weste; soe in lyke wyse hit is in the body of man, that as moche distaunce is betwene the soole of his foote to the toppe of the hedde, so moche distaunce is betwene the extremities of the longeste fyngers, his armes extente. Also Plinius dothe rehearse in the same boke, capitulo 17<sup>o</sup>, þat in euery thrydde age the measure of the peple schalle be but halfe of the firste age precedente in stature, if hit lyve. For lyke as we see in the worlde so hit is in man, that the partes and membres be corespondente to gedre and supplyenge the place of that other. For the bodies above gouerne and ʒiffe influence, the membres inferialle supporte and do seruyce, the meane other membres mediate, receyve, and refunde. And if a member of either worlde be owte of his place naturale, and a straunge thyng haue introite in to hit, the body is troublede anon. As when the wynde is includede in the wombe of the erthe, a mouenge of the erthe is made, and when hit is in the clowdes a thundre is

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> *wolkyn, a.*; *firmament, Cx.*<sup>2</sup> *hym, Cx.*, more correctly.<sup>3</sup> *heued, a.*<sup>4</sup> *the, Cx.*<sup>5</sup> 17, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *and, a., Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *alyue, a.*<sup>8</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *bymened, MS.*<sup>9</sup> *about the, Cx.*<sup>10</sup> *the eyther, Cx.*<sup>11</sup> *in his, Cx.*<sup>12</sup> *eyer, a.*<sup>13</sup> *enclosed, Cx.*<sup>14</sup> *quaketh, Cx.*

pore humano quando <sup>1</sup> membra dislocantur aut humores corrumpuntur, fit dolor et morbus. Insuper cum <sup>2</sup> membra bene fuerint proportionata quoad figuram, colorem, qualitatem,<sup>3</sup> quantitatem, situm, et motum, denotatur <sup>4</sup> bona mentis habitudo. Econtra <sup>5</sup> fit cum membra male<sup>6</sup> fuerint proportionata; <sup>7</sup> inde <sup>8</sup> sentiavit Plato quod qualis animalis effigiem gestat homo, talis animalis sequitur<sup>9</sup> mores et affectus. Præterea sicut in rerum ordine mundanarum supremum inferioris generis tangit infimum superioris; <sup>10</sup> utpote ostria, quæ quasi infimum tenent locum in genere animalium, parum excedunt vitam plantarum, eo quod immobilia sint <sup>11</sup> terræ <sup>12</sup> hærentia et solum habeant <sup>13</sup> tactum; et ultimum terræ tangit infimum aquæ, et supremum

<sup>1</sup> *cum*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *etiam cum*, C.; *et cum*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *qualitatem*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *denotat*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *E contrario*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *male*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *proportionantur*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *inde et*, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *gestat*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *generis*, ins. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *sunt*, B.C.

<sup>12</sup> *terræ*] om. E.

<sup>13</sup> *habent*, B.

whan þe lymes beþ awreizt<sup>1</sup> out of her<sup>2</sup> owne places, oþer  
 ȝif þe humours beþ apaired, þanne is ache, sicknesse, and  
 sorwe. Also whan þe lymes beþ wel arayed, and as they  
 schulde be in schappe, colour and hewe, manere, quantite, and  
 gretnesse and smalnesse, meuyng and place, þan haþ þe man  
 good þees and quiete, and is in good heele and reste. Þe  
 contrary falleþ,<sup>3</sup> and þe lemes<sup>4</sup> be euel and nouȝt riȝtly [and  
 richeliche]<sup>5</sup> arayed; þerfore Plato ȝaf his doom, and seide  
 suche ordenaunce, disposicioun, and schap as a man haþ in his  
 kyndeliche [membres and lymes, suche kyndeliche]<sup>6</sup> maneres  
 þey foloweþ in<sup>7</sup> dedes. Also as it is in þe parties of þe  
 grete world þat þey beþ so i-ordeyned and i-sette þat þe  
 ouermeste<sup>8</sup> of þe neþer kynde touche þe neþermeste<sup>9</sup> of þe  
 ouer<sup>10</sup> kynde, as oistres and schelle fische, þat beþ as it were  
 lowest in bestene<sup>11</sup> kynde, passeþ but litel þe perfeccioun of  
 lyf of treen and of herbes, for þey mowe not meue hem but  
 as culpes of þe see waggeþ wiþ þe water, elles þey cleueþ to þe  
 erthe and mowe noþer [see]<sup>12</sup> ne hire, ne taste, ne smelle, but  
 onliche fele whan þey beþ i-touched; and þe<sup>13</sup> laste [of]<sup>14</sup> þe  
 erþe toucheþ þe lowest of þe water, and þe ouermeste<sup>15</sup> of þe

TREVISA.

causede and made by hyt, in lyke wise in the body of MS. HARL.  
 man; sorowe and sekenesse be causede when membres be 2261.  
 owte of theirre places naturalle, auther humores be corrupte.  
 And also lyke as a goode habitude of the mynde is signi-  
 fiede when the membres be welle proporcionatē as vn to  
 figure, coloure, qualite, quantite, place, and movenge, and in  
 sentence contrarious when the membres be inproporcionate to  
 gedre; wherefore Plato ȝafe sentence that man folowethe  
 the maneres and affectes of that beste, of whom he hathe  
 similitude. And lyke as the hieste thyng of a thyng  
 inferialle towchethe the laweste place of his superior, in  
 the ordre of worldely thynges; as oestres, whiche holde as  
 the laweste place in the kynde of bestes, excede but a  
 litelle the līte of plantes in that thei be immoveable and  
 drawenge to the erthe, hauenge oonly the witte of towch-  
 enge. And the hieste parte of the erthe towchethe the  
 loweste parte of the water, and so ascendenge by degrees

<sup>1</sup> *writhed*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *here*, a.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; *contray failleþ*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *lymes*, a.<sup>5</sup> Added from a. Not in Cx.<sup>6</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>7</sup> *and*, a., Cx. The latter varies the sentence.<sup>8</sup> *highest*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *lowest*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *high*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *beestes*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>13</sup> *at þe*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>14</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>15</sup> So Cx. (Words are repeated without sense in MS.)

aquæ tangit primum aeris, et sic gradatim ascendendo usque ad ultimum orbem: sic quoque supremum in genere corporum quod potest dici, corpus humanum, æqualiter complexionatum attingit infimum proximi generis superioris, quod<sup>1</sup> est anima humana, quæ quasi tenet ultimum gradum in genere intellectualium substantiarum. Atque ideo horizon dicitur et confinium corporeorum et incorporeorum, in qua gradatim ascenditur ab infima potentia usque ad supremam intellectivam,<sup>2</sup> quæ quando a terrenis affectibus fuerit depurata, attingit quandoque<sup>3</sup> substantias separatas. Insuper et homo habet aliquid commune cum<sup>4</sup> partialibus mundi rebus, quia, secundum Gregorium in homilia<sup>5</sup> de Ascensione, homo<sup>6</sup> habet esse cum lapidibus, vivere cum arboribus, sentire cum animalibus, intelligere cum angelis. Quinetiam in humano corpore apparet terra in carne et ossibus, aqua in sanguine et<sup>7</sup> humoribus, aer in pulmone, ignis in corde. Sed et *homo* Latine<sup>8</sup> dicitur *antropos* Græce, quasi arbor

<sup>1</sup> *quod*, A.

<sup>2</sup> So A.D.E.; *intelligentiam*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *quandoque*] added in margin of C.

<sup>4</sup> *cum*] om. E.

<sup>5</sup> *Omelia*, MSS., and so below.

<sup>6</sup> *in . . . homo*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *sanguine et*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *antropos dicitur*, B.; *Sed et homo Græce dicitur antropos, Latine, quasi arbor eversa*, D. This seems to be right, but was manifestly not Trevisa's text.

water toucheþ þe loweste of þe ayer, and so vpward by degrees anon to þe ouermeste hevene : also <sup>1</sup> þe hiþeste in bodiliche kynde, þat may skilfulliche be i-cleped manis body, kyndeliche and perfitliche disposed arecheþ to þe lowest of þe nexte ouerkynde ; þat is manis soule, þat holdeþ þe lowest degre of spiritis and of gostes þat haueþ knowleche and vnderstondinge, and perfore he is i-cleped orisoun, as it were þe next marche in kynde bytwene bodily and goostly þinges. By þe soule me goþ vp from <sup>2</sup> þe lowest kynde by degrees of knoweleche and of konnyng anon to þe ouermeste knowleche and vnderstondyng, and whan þe soule is al clene wip oute erpeliche likyng he recheþ oþerwhile to holy [spirites] <sup>3</sup> þat beþ no þyng bodilich. Also man <sup>4</sup> haþ somewhat comyn wip þynges þat beþ parties of þe grete world. For Gregorie in an omelye seiþ þat man haþ beynges wip stones, lyuynges wip trees and herbes, felynges <sup>5</sup> wip bestes, knowleche and vnderstondyng wip aungels. Also in manis body semeþ erpe in flesche and bones, water in blood and in oþer humours, ayer in þe longen, <sup>6</sup> fuyre in þe herte ; and hatte *homo* in Latyn and *antropos* <sup>7</sup> in Grewe, þat is as hit were a tree

TREVISA.

—

vn to the laste worlde : so in lyke wise the hieste thyng in the kynde of bodies, that may be seide, the body of man egally complexionate, atteynethe the laweste thyng of the kynde superialle other generalite, whiche is the sawle of man, whiche holdethe as the laweste place in the kynde or generalite of substaunces intellectuall. Wherefore hit is callede orizon, and as the coste of thynges corporealle and incorporealle, in whom hit is ascended by degres from the laweste power to the hieste powere intellectuall ; whiche, separate somme tyme from substaunces terrestrialle, as in affecte atteynethe otherwhile substaunce separate. Also a man hathe somme thynges commune with parcialle thynges of þe worlde. For after Seynte Gregory, in an omely in the Ascencion of oure Lorde God, “A man haþ beenge with stones, “lyvenge with trees, felenge with bestes, vnderstondenge with “angelles.” Also erthe apperethe in the body of a man in the flesche and in the boones, water in the bloode and humores, aier in þe longen, and fire in the herte. But a man in Grewe is callede *antropos*, as a tre euertede ; for a

MS. HARL.  
2261.

—

<sup>1</sup> So MS. *a.β.* ; but probably we should read *so*.

<sup>2</sup> *and from*, MS. (not *a.* or *Cx.*)

<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.* ; *mēn*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.* ; *felynges*, MS. (first hand.)

<sup>6</sup> *lungen*, *a.*

<sup>7</sup> *antrapos*, *a.*

eversa. Habet enim caput cum comis instar radicis, et quasi ramos habet brachia cum cruribus. Quoad tertium simile, quod est<sup>1</sup> virtualis operatio,<sup>2</sup> videmus, <sup>3</sup>sicut dicit Gregorius in homilia de Adventu, quod mundus in annis prioribus velut in juventute viguit; ad propagandam prolem robustus fuit, utpote<sup>4</sup> salute corporum<sup>5</sup> viridis, opulentia rerum pinguis; at nunc ipsa<sup>6</sup> senectute sua deprimitur, et quasi ad vicinam mortem crebris molestiis urgetur. Ita et<sup>7</sup> homini in juventute viget corpus, roboratur pectus, torosa est cervix,<sup>8</sup> plena sunt brachia; in annis autem senilibus statura curvatur, cervix deprimitur, crebris suspiriis pectus urgetur, anhelitus succiditur,<sup>9</sup> virtus per totum deficit; et etiam, si languor defuerit, plerumque ipsa salus in senibus est ægritudo. Præterea<sup>3</sup> sicut videmus quod<sup>10</sup> in majori mundo duo sunt<sup>11</sup> motus, unus naturalis, quo moventur orbes<sup>12</sup> inferiores ab occidente in orientem, et alius violentus, quo rapiuntur econtra raptu primi mobilis<sup>13</sup> ab oriente in occidentem;<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> est quod, E. (first hand.)

<sup>2</sup> quod . . . operatio] om. D.

<sup>3</sup> sicut dicit . . . Præterea] added in margin of C. in another ink; absent from D.

<sup>4</sup> ut, B.

<sup>5</sup> cōpm, A.

<sup>6</sup> ac ipsa nunc, B.

<sup>7</sup> ut, E.; et homini, A.B.

<sup>8</sup> thorax et cervix, B.

<sup>9</sup> succiditur, A.

<sup>10</sup> quod] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> sunt] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> urbes, B.

<sup>13</sup> violentus . . . mobilis] quo moventur orbes inferiores, B.

<sup>14</sup> et . . . occidentem] om. A.; ad modum primi orbis after occidentem, B.



i-torned vp so doun, and hap an heed<sup>1</sup> wip heer as it were<sup>2</sup> a roote, and hap armes and pyghes as it were bowes. Touchynge þe pridde liknesse, þat is vertuous worchyng, we seep, as Gregory seip in an omelie of þe Aduent, þat þe world was at þe begynnyng pryuyng and strong for to bryng forþ children as it were in þowþe, and was ful of hele, and so fresche and grene, and by greet richesse it was fatte. But now it<sup>3</sup> is abated, wipelde, and ait<sup>4</sup> were i-dryue toward þe deth wip ofte and meny diseses. So in a manys þowþe þe body is pryuyng, þe brest is strong, the nolle is bolde, þe armes beep fulle. But in his elde þe stature bowep and crokep and stoupeþ adoun, þe bolde nolle abateþ, þe brest is i-dryue ofte wip many sighes and soore, þe brep schorteþ, in to alle<sup>5</sup> þe body myȝt and strengþe abateþ, and ȝif þey<sup>6</sup> þere were noon oper siknesse in olde men, for þe more deel hele is siknesse. Also as we seep þat in þe more worlde beep tweie contrary meuynges; oon is kyndeliche, by þe whiche þe planetes and þe neyper wolkons moeueþ out of þe west in to þe est; þat oper is violent, by þe whiche þey beep i-rauisched aȝenward wip the meoung<sup>7</sup> of þe ouermeste wolken out of þe est in to þe west: so it fareþ in a man þat the flesche

TREVISA.

man hathe an hedde with heire, in the maner of a rote of a tre, and armes as bowȝes. As vnto the thridde similitude, whiche is virtuale operacion, we see, as Seynte Gregory seythe in an omely of Aduente, that the worlde hathe thryvede in yeres afore as in yowthe to the multiplicacion of peple, for hit was myȝhty as for healethe of bodies, grene and fatte as in plente of thynges. But hit is now as depressede with age, and is constreynede as with ryfe greuauces to a nye deihe. Also in lyke wise the body of man encreaseþe in youthe, the breste is stronge, the armes be fulle; but the stature is boede downe in age, the coppe is depressede, the breste is constreynede with mony sighes, the brethe is succidede, and vertu faileþe thro alle the body. Also like as we see that þer be ij. movenges in the greiter worlde, oon naturalle, thro whom the worldes inferialle be movede from the weste in to the este, that other is a movenge violente, by whom the worldes be rapte thro the rape of the firste mover from the este in to þe weste: soe hit is in like wise in man, that the flesche

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *heued, a.*<sup>2</sup> Several words are erroneously repeated in MS., but omitted in *a.* and Cx.<sup>3</sup> *hc, a.*<sup>4</sup> *as hit, a., Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *in al, Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *and ȝif þeiȝ, a.; and though, Cx.* Probably *ȝif* should be cancelled.<sup>7</sup> *meuyng, a.*

sic fit in homine, quod caro concupiscit adversus spiritum et<sup>1</sup> spiritus adversus carnem, et inferiores potentiae militant contra rationem. Ad hæc<sup>2</sup> homo cum rebus sæculi nonnullis quasi communia operatur seu patitur;<sup>3</sup> nam torpet quandoque<sup>4</sup> ut terra, fluit ut aqua, cedit ut aer, furit ut ignis, mutatur ut luna, mactat ut Mars, ambit ut Mercurius, degenerat ut Jupiter, sævit ut Saturnus. Cæterum, teste Plinio, libro septimo, capitulo tertio, sicut extrema orbis loca potissime scatent miraculis,<sup>5</sup> sicut patet in India, Æthiopia,<sup>6</sup> Africa, ita et in ipso hominum genere ingeniosa natura fecit sibi miraculosa ludibria. Nam primum in ipsa humana facie, ubi decem aut<sup>7</sup> paulo plura sunt membra, tanta est diversitas, ut in tot hominum milibus una alteri vix conveniat. In Africa<sup>8</sup> sunt familiae quaedam habentes linguas fascinantes, adeo ut earum laudatione intereant commendata,<sup>9</sup> arescant arbores,<sup>10</sup> moriantur inpuberes.

<sup>1</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *huc*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *seu patitur*] om. D.

<sup>4</sup> *nam torpet quandoque*] denique vicissim torpet, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *miraculis*] om. E.

<sup>6</sup> *et*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *vel*, A.D.

<sup>8</sup> *quoque sunt*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *probata*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *earum . . . arbores*] om. B.

coueyteþ aʒenst þe spirit, and þe spirit aʒenst þe flesche; for þe neþere knoweleches and wittes fiʒteþ aʒenst [þe]<sup>1</sup> resoun. And ʒit a man haþ comoun worchynge and suffrynge leche<sup>2</sup> to many opere parties of þe more<sup>3</sup> world; for he is slow and heuy as þe erþe, and fletetþ away as þe water, and wiþdrawetþ sodeynliche as þe ayer, and hetetþ as þe fuyre, chaungeþ as the mone, fiʒteþ and sleep<sup>4</sup> as Mars, coueyteþ as Mercurius, goop oute of kynde as Iupiter,<sup>5</sup> and is cruel as Saturnus. Also Plinius, libro 7<sup>o</sup>, capitulo 3<sup>o</sup>, seiþeþ pat as þe vtter parties of þe grete worlde welletþ and springetþ ful of myracles, wondres, and meruailles, as in Ynde, in Ethiopia, Blomen<sup>6</sup> londe, and in Affrica; so in mankynde, kynde haþ slilyche and craftiliche i-made wonderful werkes and merþe. For first in a mannys face þere<sup>7</sup> beþ ten lymes oper fewe moo, þer<sup>8</sup> is so grete diuersite, þat among meny powsand men vnneþe is oon i-founde in face i-liche to anoper. In Affrica beþ meynes<sup>9</sup> þat haueþ wycchen<sup>10</sup> tonges, so þat þinges þat þey preiseþ þey schendeþ and sleep wiþ hire preisynge. So þat trees þat þey preiseþ waxen drie<sup>11</sup> and children

TREVISA.

covetethe ageyne the sawle, and the sawle ageyne the flesche, and þe powers inferialle laboure and stryve ageyne reason. Also a man is comparate with mony thynges in the worlde, and suffrethe as thynges commune with theyme, for he is slawe otherwhile as the erthe, floenge like to the water, ʒiffenge place like to the aier, brennenge as fire, chaungege like to the moone, sleenge as Mars, goenge abowte other couetenge like to Mercurius, goenge owte of kynde like Iupiter, beenge woode or cruelle like to Saturnus. Also, after Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio, lyke as the extremalle places of the worlde be moste habundante in miracles, as in Ynde, Ethioppe, and Affrike, soe in like wise nature hathe made moste meruellous disportes in that kynde of men. For now there is suche diuersite in the face of man, where x. members were firste, or fewe moo, that vnnethe ij. men be lyke amonge mony m̄. Also there be men in Affrike, thro the lawde of whom thynges comended dye, trees do wedre, and wexe drye: also in Tri-

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a*.

<sup>2</sup> *suffrynge liche, a*.

<sup>3</sup> *the body more, MS.*

<sup>4</sup> So *a*. and Cx.; *fleep, MS.*

<sup>5</sup> So *a*.; *Jubiter, MS.*

<sup>6</sup> *blew men, a*.

<sup>7</sup> Perhaps we should read *where*. See p. 173.

<sup>8</sup> So Cx.; *þat, MS.*

<sup>9</sup> *many, Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> *wicching, a*.; *wirchyng, Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> So Cx. Various words erroneously repeated in MS. (not *a*.)

Ita<sup>1</sup> et in Triballis<sup>2</sup> et in Illyricis sunt homines<sup>3</sup> qui solo visu interimant diutius<sup>4</sup> conspecta, præsertim si intuentes sunt<sup>5</sup> irati; et hi quidem binas pupillas habent in singulis oculis. Sic enim<sup>6</sup> testatur Varro, quod in quorundam hominum oculis peperit natura venenum; ne quid uspiam mali sit, quod in homine non reperiatur. Sic etiam aliquæ corporum partes nascuntur ad aliqua mirabilia ostendenda, sicut Pyrrho regi Epirotarum pollex in dextro pede, cujus tactus contra venenum valuit; quem<sup>7</sup> cum reliquo corpore cremari non posse tradiderunt<sup>8</sup> auctores.<sup>9</sup> Ita<sup>10</sup> Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo, testatur quod quidam gignuntur<sup>11</sup> concreto genitali; aliqui vice dentium concreto osse generantur, sicut patuit in filio Prusiæ, regis Bithyniæ; cujus superior pars dentium<sup>12</sup> sic concreta fuit, ut reliquo corpore combusto illa pars cremari non potuit. *Item ibidem*,<sup>13</sup> capitulo octavo decimo. Aliqui vivunt concretis toto corpore ossibus et sine medullis; et hi nec sitim sentiunt

<sup>1</sup> *Ita*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *Triballis*, MSS. (Latin and English), *b* and *v* being often interchanged.

<sup>3</sup> *hominibus*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *diutius*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *fuertint*, and slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> After *enim* apud nos, C.D.; nos, A.

<sup>7</sup> *quem*] hinc (hunc, D., by cler. error) etiam, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *tradunt*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *posse ... auctores*] potuit, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *At*, C.D.; *Item*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *nascuntur*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *dentium*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *ibidem*] eodem libro, C.D.

deyep.<sup>1</sup> So in Triballis and in Illyricis<sup>2</sup> beep men pat sleep  
wip hir siȝt what pey beholdep and lokep on longe, nameliche  
and pey be greued and wrop while pey lokep so and by-  
holdep, and pese hauen<sup>3</sup> in eueriche yȝe<sup>4</sup> tweie blakkes.  
Also among vs, Varro seip, kynde hap i-gendred and i-  
brouȝt forȝ venym in som mennys eyȝen, so pat non euel  
is y-founde pat pere nys somewhat i-liche and i-founde in  
mankynde. So som parties of a manis body beep forseynge<sup>5</sup>  
and bodynge of wondres. So Pyrrhus,<sup>6</sup> kyng of Epirotes, hadde  
a greet too in his riȝt foot, pe touchynge of pat too was a good  
medicynne aȝenst venym; and pat too myȝte noȝt be brent [wip  
pe oper body]<sup>7</sup> whan pe oper bodyes was i-brent,<sup>8</sup> so auctors  
tellep. Also *Plinius, libro 7<sup>o</sup>, capitulo 17<sup>o</sup>,*<sup>9</sup> seip pat som men  
beep i-gete and i-bore wip gendrynge stoness cleuyngge to  
gidres as it were al oon; som beep i-bore wip oon boon al<sup>10</sup> in  
stede of teep, and pat boon is hardere and scharpere pan any  
mannys toop. So Prusy, kyng of Bithynia, hade a sone pat hadde  
a bone in his mouȝ instede of his ouer<sup>11</sup> teep, oon bone al hool,  
and pat boon was so harde, pat whan pe oper deel of pe body  
was i-brend pat bone myȝte nouȝt brenne also. *Ibidem, capi-  
tulo 18<sup>o</sup>.* Som men lyueȝ pat<sup>12</sup> eueriche of hem hap pe bones  
of his body cleuyngge to gidres as hit were al oon boon, al hool  
and wip oute marwe;<sup>13</sup> pese men been neuere aferst,<sup>14</sup> also pey  
swetep neuere more. *Trevisa.* Som men tellep pat som mau

TREVISIA.

ballis and in Illyricis be men whiche cause thynges beholden  
longe to peresche, and specially if the men beholdenge be  
wrothe, whiche haue ij. apples in either eie. So in lyke  
wise the poete Varro rehersethe that nature hathe infuded  
in to the eien of somme men venom, so that per is noone ylle  
thyngge but hit is reperible in man. Also somme partes  
off men be causede for somme meruellous thynges, to be  
schewede, as a thowmbe in the ryȝhte foote of Pyrrhus<sup>6</sup>  
kyngge, the towchenge of whom ȝafe subsidy ageyne venom,  
whom auctores say not to haue be brente when the body  
of the kyngge was brente. Also Plinius seithe, libro 7<sup>o</sup>,  
capitulo 17<sup>o</sup>, that somme men lyve alle the body concrete  
and compacte with boones, with owte eny maro, and these  
men do not thurste, neithe<sup>15</sup> swete. Also in the same boke,

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *dreyep, a.*<sup>2</sup> *Trivallis and in Iliricis, MS.*<sup>3</sup> *haueȝ, a.*<sup>4</sup> *ye, a.*<sup>5</sup> *forbuson, a.; forbyson, Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *Pirus or Pirrus, MS.*<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *whan the other partyes of his  
bodye was (sic) brente, Cx.*<sup>9</sup> 27, *Cx.*<sup>10</sup> *al hool, Cx.*<sup>11</sup> *opere, a., Cx.*<sup>12</sup> *and, a., Cx.*<sup>13</sup> *marouȝ, a.; mary, Cx.*<sup>14</sup> So also *a.*; *a thirst, Cx.*<sup>15</sup> So Harl. MS.

nec sudorem emittunt. *Item capitulo vicesimo primo.* Aliqui<sup>1</sup> etiam rectos et transversos cancellatim toto corpore nervos habentes prodigiosa virium elatione micuerunt.<sup>2</sup> Aliqui indefesso cursu prævalent, quidam visu præpollent, ut Strabo miles, qui per centum triginta quinque passuum milia<sup>3</sup> classem Punicam vidit e specula.<sup>4</sup> Item, secundum Plinium, libro undecimo, capitulo quadragesimo nono,<sup>5</sup> Tiberius Cæsar clarius vidit in tenebris quam in luce, ita ut de nocte expergefactus perspicue cuncta videret. *Item libro septimo, capitulo vicesimo septimo.* Nonnulli etiam memoria viguerunt, ut Cyrus, rex Persarum; qui cunctis in exercitu suo militibus nomina reddidit. *Ranulphus.*<sup>6</sup> Et Seneca in primo prologo declamationum testatur de seipso,<sup>7</sup> quod tanta memoria viguit, ut duo milia nominum<sup>8</sup> eo quo erant ordine dicta recitasse<sup>9</sup> ex corde, et etiam plusquam ducentos versus ab aliis

<sup>1</sup> *Alii*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *interierunt*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *milia passuum*, B.; *miliaria*, A.  
E.

<sup>4</sup> Sentence slightly varied in D.

<sup>5</sup> The true reference is to lib. xi.  
c. 54.

<sup>6</sup> *Ranulphus... composuit*. This is placed after the next sentence in C., and is there added in the margin; it is absent from D.

<sup>7</sup> *testatur* after *seipso*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *hominum*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *recitassent*, C.; *recitasset*, B.

in Irlond hap oon boon al hool in oon side instede of all his ribbes; and Thomas<sup>1</sup> Hayward of Berkeley hap in þe molde of his heed, pol and forheed, but oon boon al hool; þerfore he may wel suffre grete strokes aboue on his heued,<sup>2</sup> and busche aʒenst men and horshedes, and breke strong dores wip his heed, and hit<sup>3</sup> greueþ hym nouʒt. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 21º*, seiþ þat som men hadde in to alle þe body senewes, even i-streiʒt,<sup>4</sup> þwart ouer in<sup>5</sup> a crosse wise, and passynge wonderful in strengþe. Som mowe dure to renne wip out [werinesse; som be passyng elere of sighte, as a knyghte þat highte Strabo stode in]<sup>6</sup> a weytes place, and sigh þe navey of schippes<sup>7</sup> of Puni þat were from hem<sup>8</sup> an hondred and fyue and þretty myle.<sup>9</sup> Also *Plinius, libro xi., capitulo 44º*, seiþ þat Tiberius Cesar sigh more clereliche in derkenesse þan in liʒt, so þat whan he were awaked anyʒt<sup>10</sup> he myʒt see<sup>11</sup> al þing cleerliche aboute hym. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 27º*. Som were wonder myʒty of mynde, as Cyrus kyng of Pers, that to al þe kynʒtes of his oost ʒaf certayne names. And Seneca, libro primo declamationum, seiþ of hym self, þat he was so myʒty of mynde þat he rehersed two þowsand names arewe by herte in þe same ordre as þey were i-seide. And þat he rehersed mo þan two hondred vers þat oper men hadde i-ʒeue,<sup>12</sup> and bygan

TREVISA.

capitulo 21º, somme men hauenge senowes as transuertede and ouercrossede thro alle the body, haue bene of grete myʒhte; somme preuayle in swifte course and rennenge; somme men be nowble in siʒhte, as a knyghte callede Strabo was, whiche see the schippes Punicalle and myrrours by c.xxxv<sup>ti</sup> m<sup>l</sup> passes from hym. Also, after Plinius, libro xiº, capitulo xlixº, Tiberius themperour see more clerely in derknesse then in lyʒhte, in so moche that he awakede in the nyʒhte see alle thynges clerely. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 27º*. Mony men haue hade grete scharpenesse in mynde, as Cyrus kyng of Pers[i]a, whiche ʒafe names to alle the knyʒhtes in his hoste. Also Seneca rehersethe of hym selfe in the firste prologe, that he was of suche memory that he wolde haue rehersed ij. m<sup>l</sup> names by herte, after the ordre thei were seide, and also moo then ij<sup>c</sup> versus seide of an other man, begynnenge at the laste

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> *Thomme, a. ; Tom, Cx.*  
<sup>2</sup> *heed without hurt, Cx. (omitting the rest of the sentence.)*  
<sup>3</sup> *hit] om. a.*  
<sup>4</sup> *i-straut, a. ; strayght, Cx.*  
<sup>5</sup> *and, a., Cx.*  
<sup>6</sup> *Added from Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *nauyes and shippes, Cx.*  
<sup>8</sup> *him, Cx.*  
<sup>9</sup> *myles, Cx.*  
<sup>10</sup> *waked in the nyght, Cx.*  
<sup>11</sup> *So Cx. ; i-see, MS.*  
<sup>12</sup> *yeuen, Cx.*

datos ab ultimo incipiens usque ad primum repetisset. Item ibidem dicit quod Cineas legatus Pyrrhi regis Epirotarum postero die adventus sui<sup>1</sup> apud Romam omnem senatum et circumfusam plebem propriis nominibus salutaverit. Et quidam alius recitatum a poeta carmen novum suum esse dixit, eo quod carmen illud semel auditum expeditius recitaret quam ille qui composuit. *Item Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo vicesimo septimo.*<sup>2</sup> Quidam etiam<sup>3</sup> ingenii vigore claruerunt, ut Julius Cæsar, qui legere, scribere, et audire simul solebat; quaternas etiam simul epistolas dictare consuevit.<sup>4</sup> *Item libro septimo, capitulo octavo decimo.* Quibusdam vires majores sunt in dextra, quibusdam in læva, quibusdam<sup>5</sup> æqualiter in utraque. Item ponderosiora sunt mares fœminis, defuncta viventibus, dormientia vigilantibus. Virorum quoque cadavera supina fluitant,<sup>6</sup> fœminarum vero prona et resupina, ac si pudori<sup>7</sup> parcat natura.<sup>8</sup> *Item libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo.*<sup>9</sup> Legimus unum hominem risisse eo quo natus est die, ac manum

<sup>1</sup> *sui*] om. E.

<sup>2</sup> C. omits reference. The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 25.

<sup>3</sup> *et*, B.

<sup>4</sup> Transposed in C.

<sup>5</sup> *quibus*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *fluctuant*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *pudore*, E.

<sup>8</sup> Paragraph slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 15.



at þe laste and rehersed anon to þe firste wip oute eny faile. TREVISA.  
 Also he seip þere þat Cineas, Pyrrhus messenger<sup>1</sup> kyng of Epirotes, þis Cineas þe secunde [day]<sup>2</sup> þat he come to Rome, he saluted<sup>3</sup> and grette þe senatoures, and spak to eueriche of þe peple þat come aboute hym by his owne name. Anoper seide þat Cineas hadde<sup>4</sup> a grete makynge of poyesie, for he rehersed hit at þe firste bygynnyng<sup>5</sup> more swiftly þan he þat hadde i-made it. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 21º*,<sup>6</sup> seip som were more noble and wys of witte, as Iulius Cesar, þat was i-woned to rede and write what me<sup>7</sup> seide wip good avisement al at ones. Also he vsed to write quayers, and endite letters and pisteles al at ones. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 18º*, seip þat som men haueþ more strengþe in þe riȝt side, and som haueþ more in þe lift<sup>8</sup> side, and some beep i-liche strong in eiper side.<sup>9</sup> Also men beep heuyer þan wommen, and dede men<sup>10</sup> bodyes heuyer þan quykke, and sleping þan wakyng heuyer also. Of dede men kareyns renneþ foule moistures and humours, and þey ligge vpriȝt; and of dede wommen kareyns and þey ligge neuelyng and dounriȝt,<sup>11</sup> as þey kynde spared schame. Also *libro 7º, capitulo 17º*, we redeþ þat oo man lowh<sup>12</sup> þat day þat he was i-bore, and

vn to the firste. Also he rehersethe there, that Cineas, MS. HARL. 2261.  
 meassenger of kyng Pyrrhus, salutede alle the senate of Rome and alle the peple abowte by theire propre names in the secunde day after his comynge to the cite. Also an other man rehersenge the versus of a poete, ascribede the lawde to hym, in that he rehersed theym more expedientely then the poete whiche made theyme. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 27º*, rehersethe that somme men haue bene nowble of witte, as Iulius Cesar, whiche was vsede to rede, wryte, here, and to endyte epistoles at oon tyme. Also *Plinius* rehersethe, *libro 7º, capitulo 28º*,<sup>13</sup> that somme men haue moste strenȝhte in the ryȝhte honde, somme in the lifte honde,<sup>14</sup> and somme men haue egalle strenȝhtes in either f. 80. a.  
 honde. Also men be moore heuy then wemen, and dedde thynges more then thynges in lyfe, and thynges slepenge more then thynges wakenge. Also, *libro 7º, capitulo 17*, we haue a-redde a man to haue laȝhede in the firste day

<sup>1</sup> messenger, a.

<sup>2</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> salewed, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> hadde made, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> atte firste herynge, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> 27, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> men, Cx. (and so generally.)

<sup>8</sup> left, a.

<sup>9</sup> So a. and Cx. Some words are repeated in MS.

<sup>10</sup> mennes, Cx. (with other slight variations above and below.)

<sup>11</sup> þis ys a merveyle. Note in MS.

<sup>12</sup> lowz, a.

<sup>13</sup> The true reference is to capp. 17.

18.

<sup>14</sup> londre, Harl. MS.

cujusdam palpantis<sup>1</sup> repulisse. *Item*<sup>2</sup> *capitulo vicesimo*. Et feruntur aliqui<sup>3</sup> nunquam risisse, aliqui<sup>4</sup> nunquam flesse,<sup>5</sup> aliqui nunquam exspuisse, aliqui nunquam eructasse. *Item*<sup>6</sup> *capitulo quarto*. Et quemadmodum in cæteris animalibus, sic in humano genere gignuntur quandoque utriusque<sup>7</sup> sexus personæ, quas Hermaphroditas<sup>8</sup> vocamus, olim androgynos vocatos,<sup>9</sup> et inter prodigia notatos,<sup>10</sup> nunc vero inter delicias computatos.<sup>11</sup> Sed et sexum ipsum mutari vidimus et audivimus. Nam in Africa vidimus puellam ipso<sup>12</sup> nuptiarum die in marem mutari,<sup>13</sup> barbamque et cætera virilia produxisse, uxoremque cito postmodum<sup>14</sup> duxisse. *Ranulphus*. *Item* tangit Augustinus de Civitate, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo nono, quod<sup>15</sup> tradit A. Gellius,<sup>16</sup> libro Atticarum noctium, ex fœminis mutationes fieri in mares non esse fabulosum, sed potius ad litteram verum, unde<sup>17</sup> et ipse A.

Hermaphroditæ.

Sexus mutationes.

<sup>1</sup> *palpantis se*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *Idem*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *multi*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *alii*, B., and so below (twice).

<sup>5</sup> *flesisse*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *Idem*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *utrius*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *hermofroditas*, MSS.

<sup>9</sup> *vocitatos*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> So A.; *computatos*, B.; *vocatos*, D. E.

<sup>11</sup> *notatos*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *ipsa*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *vidimus . . . mutari*] added in margin of C. Absent from D.

<sup>14</sup> *postmodum cito*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *quod cum*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *Agellius*, MSS.

<sup>17</sup> *unde*] om. C.

putte away a manis hond þat groped and handeled hym. *Also*, TREVISIA.  
*Capitulo* 20°. Men<sup>1</sup> spekeþ of som men þat neuere lowh, of  
 som þat wepe neuere, of som þat spat<sup>2</sup> neuere, of somme þat  
 bolked<sup>3</sup> neuere. *Trevisa*. Rogge<sup>4</sup> Bagge was a ful old man at  
 Wotton vnder hegge, in Glowcetre schire, he spat neuere, he  
 kowhed<sup>5</sup> neuere. *Also Seneca, ubi prius, capitulo* 4°. And  
 as hit is among oper<sup>6</sup> bestes, so hit is in mankynde þat  
 somtyme oon of mankynde is bope man and woman, and  
 such oon is i-cleped hermofrodita, and was somtyme i-cleped  
 androgumus,<sup>7</sup> and acounted among meruayles and wondres ;  
 but now among us it is deynte, for it is seelde i-seye. *Also*  
 we haueþ i-seie and i-herde þat some haueþ i-chaunged<sup>8</sup>  
 hir schap ; for we sighe in Affrica a mayde þe same day þat  
 sche scholde haue be i-wedded, i-chaunged and i-torned into a  
 man, and was i-berded anon, and anon hadde alle lymes  
 as a man schulde haue, and wedded a wyf with inne a  
 schort tyme after. *Also Seynte Austyn de civitate Dei, libro*  
 3°, *capitulo* 29°, toucheþ þat A. Gellius<sup>9</sup> [libro] Atticarum<sup>10</sup>  
 noctium seiþ þat wommen beþ somtyme i-torned into men :  
 hit is no made<sup>11</sup> tale, but hit is soop as þe lettre is i-write ;

of his natiuite, and to haue put a way the honde of the MS. HARL.  
 man towchenge hym. *Also, capitulo* 20. Somme men be 2261.  
 seide to haue not lazhede in their lyfe, somme men neuer  
 to haue wepede, somme men neuer to haue spytte. *Also,*  
*capitulo quarto*, lyke as hit is in other bestes, so hit is in  
 the kynde of man, that somme persones be gendred of bothe  
 kyndes, whom we calle hermofroditas, callede somme tyme  
 androdinos, namede as amonge wondres, now acomptede  
 amonge delites. *Also* we haue seen and herde peple to  
 haue chaungede their kynde. For we see a maide in  
 Affrike in the day of here mariage to haue ben chaungede  
 in to a man, and to haue hade a berde and other membres  
 of a man, and to haue mariede soone after with a woman.  
*Also Seynte Austyn seithe, De Civitate Dei, libro tertio,*  
*capitulo* 29, that A. Gellius<sup>9</sup> rehersethe, libro Atticarum  
 noctium, women to haue ben chaungede in to men, and that  
 hit is not a fable but a trawthe. Wherefore A. Gellius<sup>9</sup> dothe

<sup>1</sup> *Mè, a.*, and also Cx. (contrary to his custom.)

<sup>2</sup> *spytte, Cx.*, and so below.

<sup>3</sup> *balked, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *Rogger, Cx.* (not *a.*)

<sup>5</sup> *coughed, a.*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *opere, a.*

<sup>7</sup> *androgimus, a.* Both in Trevisa

and in the Harl. translation we should read *androgynous*.

<sup>8</sup> *chaunge wonderly, Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> *Agellius, MS., a.*, and Harl. MS.

<sup>10</sup> *atticaruco, MS., a.*, and Cx. (not Harl. MS.) Several proper names have been tacitly corrected throughout the chapter.

<sup>11</sup> *magel, Cx.*

Gellius refert se vidisse apud urbem Smyrnam puellam mutatam in marem eo die quo nubere debuit. Unde et aliquando tale monstrum allatum senatui sub Licinio Crasso et Cassio Longino<sup>1</sup> consulibus jussu aruspicum in desertam insulam deportatum est. Item de gallinis sexum mutantibus in gallos loquitur Titus Livius, et etiam Avicenna, libro octavo de animalibus, quod gallina quædam vicerat gallum in pugna, quæ post victoriam levavit caudam ut gallus; aculeus corneus sibi crevit in tibia, et crista in capite.<sup>2</sup> *Item*

Varia miracula ad conceptum spectantia.

*Trogus, libro septimo, capitulo quintodecimo.*<sup>3</sup> Cæterum in Ægypto Trogus refert septenos foetus uno partu edi; sed et tunc editis geminis, præcipue si varii sexus fuerint, aut puerperæ aut puerperio raram vitam superesse. *Item capitulo duodecimo.*<sup>4</sup> Sed et aliquoties modico interveniente tempore duo conceptus fiunt, et itidem duo vicissim fiunt partus et uterque perfectus, sicut patuit in Hercule et ejus fratre<sup>5</sup> Iphicle.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *et Longino, C.*

<sup>2</sup> All this passage from Ranulphus added in margin of C. A. and B. transpose it after the next two passages, after *Hippicle*. It is absent from D.

<sup>3</sup> *Item . . . quintodecimo]* Idem capitulo 40, C.; Idem c. 5, D.; Item

libro 7, cº. 40, A.B. The true reference is to Plin. vii. 3.

<sup>4</sup> C. omits reference. D. has c. 2º. The true reference is to Plin. vii. 9. Ed. Franz (but this is c. 11 of some).

<sup>5</sup> *fratre suo, B.*

<sup>6</sup> *Hippicle, MSS.*

perfore A. Gellius seip, pat in a citee pat het Smyrna he seih<sup>1</sup> a maide i-torned in to a stoon<sup>2</sup> pe same day pat sehe schulde haue be wedded. Also suche oon was i-brouzt to Rome to pe senatoures in pe tyme of Licinius<sup>3</sup> and Cassius Longinus, consulus<sup>4</sup> of Rome, and by heste of dyuynours pat toke hede of pe<sup>5</sup> weder and of chitterynge of briddes it was i-bore into a wild ilond. Also Titus Liuius spekeþ of hennes pat were i-torned into cokkes And Auicenna, libro 8<sup>o</sup> de animalibus, spekeþ of an hen pat hadde ouercome a cok in fiþtynge, and after pe fiþtynge and pe victorie, he<sup>6</sup> rered vp the tayle as a cok, and had anon i-growe<sup>7</sup> a spore on pe leg and a crest on pe heed as it were a cok. *Also capitulo 50<sup>o</sup>.* Trogus seip in Egipt beep seven children i-boren<sup>8</sup> at oon berþen; but þif tweie twynnes beep i-bore, it is wel seelde<sup>9</sup> pat pe moder and pe firste childe lyveþ longe after pe burþe, and nameliche þif pat oon is a knaue childe and pe oper a mayde childe. *Also capitulo 12<sup>o</sup>.* And somtyme a womman conceyueþ twey children and is but a litel tyme bytwene; and so pe children ben afterward i-bore oon after oper, and beep perfit i-now, as hit was of Hercules and his broþer Iphicles.<sup>10</sup> And so it ferde<sup>11</sup> of pat woman pat bare

TREVISA.

reherse hym selfe to haue seen at a cite callede Smyrna, a maide chaungede in to a man in the day of their weddenge. Wherefore suche a wondre brouzhte oon tyme to the senate, in the tyme of Licinius Crassus, and Cassius Longinus,<sup>12</sup> consulles, whiche was sende in to a deserte place thro the counsaile of wicches. Also Titus Liuius spekethe of hennes chaungenge their kynde in to kokkes, and also, Auicenna, libro octauo de animalibus, that an henne hade the victory of a cokke in fiþhte, whiche lifte the tayle lyke to a cokke after the victory, spurres groenge in the legge of hit, hauenge a combe in the hedde. Also the same Auicenne, capitulo 5<sup>o</sup>. Also Trogus rehersethe a woman in Egipte to haue childed vij. childer at oon season, but other the moder other the childer contynue not in lyfe longe after. But mony women haue ij. childer at oon tyme, and tweyne at an other tyme, as hit was schewede in Hercules, and in Iphicles<sup>10</sup> his brother. Also somme

MS. HARL.  
2621.

<sup>1</sup> *syze, a.; sawe, Cx.* (and so usually.)

<sup>2</sup> *a man, a., Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *Lascivius, MSS.*

<sup>4</sup> *consuls, ., Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *þe] om. a., Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *she, Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *i-crowe, a.*

<sup>8</sup> *i-bore, a.; born, Cx.* (The latter varies the sentence.)

<sup>9</sup> *selde, a.*

<sup>10</sup> *Hispicle, or Hispicles, MSS.; Hispycle, Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> *ferde or happend, Cx.*

<sup>12</sup> *Lascivius Crassus, Cassius, and Longinus, Harl. MS.*

Et etiam in illa muliere, quæ gemino partu alteram marito<sup>1</sup> alterum adultero similem genuit. Et in illa quæ sub septimo mense edito puerperio in secundis post hoc<sup>2</sup> mensibus geminas enixa est. Quasdam autem semper<sup>3</sup> fœminas, quasdam semper mares parere, quasdam hoc<sup>4</sup> alternare manifestum est. Aliquæ etiam semper et ad omnes viros sunt steriles; aliquæ ad aliquos sunt steriles, ab aliis tamen concipiunt. *Item*<sup>5</sup> *capitulo tertio decimo*. Quasdam etiam sibi similes semper parere, quasdam similes patri, quasdam similes nulli, quasdam fœminam patri, marem sibi; quasdam antiquioribus parentibus similes producere notum est.<sup>6</sup> Exemplum est de Nicæo nobili pictore<sup>7</sup> apud Byzantium, qui de pulchra matre natus degeneravit in avum<sup>8</sup> Æthiopem. *Hugutio, capitulo*<sup>9</sup> *Molo*. Talem ferunt fore fœminarum naturam, ut quales formas conspexerint,<sup>10</sup> dum concipiunt, talem sobolem procreare; nam anima humana in usu venereo formas extra conspectas intus transmittit, et earum species in propriam qualitatem rapit. Sic solent in Hispania obicere<sup>11</sup> generosos equos obtutibus equarum

<sup>1</sup> *alterum marito*] om. A.

<sup>2</sup> *hæc*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *super*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *hæc*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Item*] libro septimo, C.

<sup>6</sup> Slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> Higden should have written *pycte*. See Plin., vii. 10.

<sup>8</sup> *nanum*, C.D.E.; *atrum*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Hugo*, A.B. *Hugutio* . . . *xiiij*°, added in margin of C. Absent from D.

<sup>10</sup> *mentaliter* added in B.

<sup>11</sup> *subjicere*, A.

tweie children oon liche to hire housbonde, and þe opere to þe copenere,<sup>1</sup> and of þat woman þat in þe seuenþe monþe aftir hir birþe in þe secunde monþe after sche bare tweie children. Som wommen bereþ alwey mayde children, and some alway knaue children, and som alway chaungeþ and bereþ somtyme a mayde<sup>2</sup> childe [and]<sup>3</sup> somtyme a knaue childe. Som beep bareyn and conceyueþ neuere of no man, and som conceyueþ [of som men]<sup>4</sup> and [of]<sup>4</sup> som men conceyueþ nouȝt. *Also, capitulo 13<sup>o</sup>.* Som bereþ children liche to [hem self and some liche to þe fader, and som liche to no man. Some bereþ douȝters liche to þe fader<sup>5</sup> and sones<sup>6</sup> liche to hemself. Some bereþ children liche to]<sup>7</sup> some of<sup>8</sup> hire forfadres. Ensamble is of<sup>9</sup> Niceus þe<sup>10</sup> noble peyntour at Byzantium, þat was i-bore of a faire moder and wente out of kynde and hadde on honde [as]<sup>11</sup> a blew man. *Hugo, capitulo malo.* Me seip þat wommen kynde<sup>12</sup> is suche þat þey<sup>13</sup> conceyueþ children i-liche to þinges þat þey seep i-peynt and i-schape; for þe worchyng of the soule while þe body is in getyng of a childe sendeþ inward liknes and schappes þat þey<sup>14</sup> seep wiþ oute, and rauischeþ þe ymages þerof as hit were to his disposicioun. And so þey useþ in Spayne for to bryng

TREVISA.

women haue in alle tymes male childer, somme women at alle tymes female childer, and somme women bothe at diuerse tymes. Also somme women be bareyn at alle tymes and to alle men, and somme women beenge bareyn to somme men conceyve of somme men. *Also, capitulo 13<sup>o</sup>.* Somme women haue childer like to theyme, somme like to the fader, and somme like to their predecessores afore tyme. An exemple may be schewede of Niceus, a nowble peynter at Byzantium, whiche borne of his moder, a feire woman, wente owte of kynde in to a fowle man of Ethioppe. *Hugo, capitulo Malo.* Philosophers say the nature of women to be of suche disposicion that thei bryng furthe suche childer like to the formes whom thei beholde in the tyme of concepcion, for the sawle of man in the vse venealle transmittethe interially formes other similitudes conceyvede exteriorly, and takethe, as by rape, the similitudes of theyme in to his propre qualite. Therefore men in

MS. HARL.  
2261.  
f. 80. b.

<sup>1</sup> *compyner*, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

<sup>2</sup> *mayden*, a.

<sup>3</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *fadris*, β.

<sup>6</sup> So β.; *some* a.

<sup>7</sup> Added from a., which is partly corrected from β. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *some of*] om. β.

<sup>9</sup> *of*] om. a. and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *þe*] So a. β. and Cx.; *for*, MS.

<sup>11</sup> Added from a and Cx.

<sup>12</sup> So a.; *womans kynde*, Cx.; *kyn-dynde*, MS.

<sup>13</sup> *he*, a.; *she*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *he*, a.; *she*, Cx.

concupientium, et pulchras columbas depingere in locis  
 ubi columbæ conversantur. Et Quintilianus defendit  
 matronam accusatam de adulterio, eo quod Æthiopem  
 genuisset, allegans talem inaginein tempore conceptus  
 in cubiculo depictam fuisse. Et Hippocrates<sup>1</sup> scribit  
 quandam fuisse condemnandam, eo quod pulcherrimum  
 puerum utrique parenti dissimilem pepererat, nisi Hip-  
 pocrates monuisset quærerere an similis pictura fuisset  
 in cubiculo parentum tempore conceptionis. *Plinius,*  
*libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Idcirco autem<sup>2</sup>  
 in homine plures differentiæ fiunt, quia<sup>3</sup> animi cele-  
 ritas et ingenii<sup>4</sup> varietas multiformes notas in ipso  
 hominis conceptu imprimit. In cæteris<sup>5</sup> animantibus  
 animi sunt quasi<sup>6</sup> immobiles, et ideo in illis<sup>7</sup> quis-  
 que<sup>8</sup> foetus est suo generi similis.

<sup>1</sup> *Ipocras* or *Ypocas*, MSS. here  
 and below.

<sup>2</sup> *autem*] om. A.

<sup>3</sup> *quoniam*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *ingenii humani*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *cæteris vero*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *quasi*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *in illis*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *quisquam*, B.



faire hors and gentil, and holdep hem to fore þe mares and in hir siȝt while þey conceyueþ. And þey vseþ also to paynte faire coloures<sup>1</sup> in places þere<sup>2</sup> coluers beþ i-woned to dwelle. And Quintilianus excuseþ and defendeþ a womman þat wsa accused of spousebreche for sche hadde i-bore a blew man, and he leggeþ<sup>3</sup> for hir þat suche an ymage was i-peynt in hir bed chambre whan sche conceyued þat childe. And Ypocras<sup>4</sup> wroot of a woman þat schulde be dampned to þe deep, for sche<sup>5</sup> hadde i-bore a faire childe þat was not liche hir self noþer to þe fader; but Ypocras made men assaie, and it was i-founde þat suche an ymage was i-peynt in þe fader and þe<sup>6</sup> moder bedchambre while þat childe was i-conceyued, and so þe moder was i-saued. *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 13º.* Þerfore in a man beþ many dyuersitees, for swiftnes of pouȝtes and chaungynge of witte in þe concepcioun preentip<sup>7</sup> in meny dyuers liknesse and schappes. In oþer bestes wit is as it were not chaungeable, þerfore among hem al þe brood is liche<sup>8</sup> to þe same kynde.

TREVISA.

Speyne vse to sette or putte feire horses to the siȝhte of the mares when thei vse to gendre, and to peynte in places where dofes vse freschely with feire dofes in picture. And Quintilianus<sup>9</sup> defended a woman accusede of advoutery, in that sche was delyuerede of a man of Ethioppe, makenge allegacion suche an ymage to haue be made in picture a bowte the bedde in the tyme of here concepcion. Also that grete clerk Ypocras writethe a woman to haue been despisede, in that sche was delyuerede of a feire childe, like neither to the fader neither to the moder, but that Ypocras defendede that woman, in that there was suche an ymage abowte the bedde in the tyme of here concepcion. *Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Therefore mony difference be in a man, swiftnesse of sawle, variablenesse of witte, impressenge mony similitudes in the concepcion of a man. But the sawles in other bestes be as immoveable, and þer fore euery concepcion of theyme is like to the kynde of hit.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> coluers, a., Cx., who adds *or dowues.*

<sup>2</sup> As in other places this word appears in the MSS. for *where.*

<sup>3</sup> *leieþ, a.; leyed, Cx.* (with other slight variations.)

<sup>4</sup> As this form occurs in Chaucer it has been allowed to stand.

<sup>5</sup> *hc, a.*

<sup>6</sup> *þe]* om. a. and Cx. (which is better.)

<sup>7</sup> *emprynteth, Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *yliche, a.*

<sup>9</sup> *Quintilianus, Harl. MS.*

## CAP. II.

*De monstruosis hominum partibus.*<sup>1</sup>

Varii  
hominum  
partus  
monstruosi;  
Cyclopes,  
Sciopodes,  
&c.

*Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo septimo.* De monstruosis hominum partibus<sup>2</sup> quæritur utrum ex primo homine an ex Noe credantur propagari, quales dicuntur Cyclopes unum oculum in fronte habentes.<sup>3</sup> Quidam autem<sup>4</sup> utrumque sexum<sup>5</sup> dicuntur habere, dextram mammam virilem, sinistram<sup>6</sup> muliebrem, vicissimque<sup>7</sup> inter se coeundo et gignere et parere. Alibi etiam quinquennes<sup>8</sup> fœminas concipere; et octavum a nativitate<sup>9</sup> annum non excedere. Alii crura sine poplite habere<sup>10</sup> mira celeritate præstantes, quos Sciopodas<sup>11</sup> vocant, eo quod æstivo tempore resupini jacentes umbra pedum se protegant.<sup>12</sup> Ad quod dicimus, quod omnia hominum genera qui dicuntur esse credere non est necesse; veruntamen qualis ratio redditur apud nos de monstruosis partibus, talis de monstruosis gentibus reddi potest.

<sup>1</sup> Title in D. only.

<sup>2</sup> *partibus*, E.

<sup>3</sup> C.D. bring in here the reference to Augustine.

<sup>4</sup> So C.D.; *quod quidam*, A.E. (without sense); *dicuntur* before *utrum*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *sexuum*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *et sinistram*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *que*] om. E.

<sup>8</sup> *quinquennas*, A.; *quinquies*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *nativitatis*, B.E.

<sup>10</sup> *habere*] om. E.; *dicuntur habere*,

B.

<sup>11</sup> So E.; *sciopatus*, B.; *sciopcidas*,

A.

<sup>12</sup> *protegant*, B.

*Capitulum secundum.*

TREVISA.

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro 16<sup>o</sup>, capitulo 7<sup>o</sup>.* Off broodes, þat beep wonderliche i-schape, me axeþ ʒif þey come of Adam and Noe. Som of hem hatte Cyclopes, and haueþ but oon eyʒe in þe for heed. Some hap<sup>1</sup> eiper schap of man and of womman, and gendreþ to gidres and geteþ, and conceyueþ and bereþ child,<sup>2</sup> as þe cours comeþ aboute. For ones he schal gete a childe, and sche<sup>3</sup> schal eftsones conceyue and goo with childe, euerich in his tyme as hit goop aboute. Som wommen conceyueþ at fyue ʒere olde, and lyueþ nouʒt over eiʒte yere. Somme haueþ pighes with oute hammes, and beep wonderliche swift, an<sup>4</sup> hatte Sciopodes;<sup>5</sup> for þei liggeþ neuelynge<sup>6</sup> and doun riʒt in þe somer tyme, and defendiþ hem self wip þe schadewe of here feet from þe hete of þe sonne. Herto<sup>7</sup> we answerþ and seiþ þat it nedep nouʒt to trowe þat þere beep so many manere schape men<sup>8</sup> as me spekeþ of. Nopeles resoun as it is y-ʒoue of wonder schappe children þat beep among vs, suche resoun me may ʒeue of dyuers manere peple þat

*Capitulum secundum.*

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sexto decimo, capitulo septimo.* A question may be movede of suche mervayles in nature wheder thei come of Adam or of Noe, as men callede Cyclopes, hauenge oon eie in the forehede. And somme be seide to haue either kynde as the ryʒhte pappe of a man and the lifte of a woman, other while gendrenge to gedre and to conceyve. Also in other places hit is seide women of the age of v. yere to childe, and not to excede the viij<sup>the</sup> yere from the natiuite of theyme, and somme men have thees with owte a homme of grete swiftenes, whiche peple be callede Sciopode,<sup>9</sup> in that thei lyenge in the somer tyme with their faces vpwarde, defende alle their body thro the schado of their foote. To the whiche question we say that hit is [not] necessary a man to beleve the kyndes of alle men whiche be seide to be; neuerthesse the same reason may be assignede of the monstrous peple whiche

<sup>1</sup> haveþ, a.<sup>2</sup> childer, Cx. (with other slight variations.)<sup>3</sup> he, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> and, a.<sup>5</sup> Cyopodes, MS., &c.<sup>6</sup> nyuelynge, a.; neuelynge, ß.<sup>7</sup> Wherto, Cx.<sup>8</sup> mishappen men, Cx.<sup>9</sup> stropode or scropode, Harl. MS.

Deus enim ubi et quando aliquid<sup>1</sup> oporteat creari novit, sciens universitatis pulchritudinem, qualium partium similitudine aut dissimilitudine contextat. Certe sub nostra ætate in oriente natus est homo in superiori parte<sup>2</sup> duplex usque ad medium ventris, inferius autem simplex. Nec propter hoc diffitebimur eum ab<sup>3</sup> Adam processisse. Igitur hujusmodi<sup>4</sup> monstruosa aut omnino non sunt, aut si sunt homines non sunt, aut si homines sunt<sup>5</sup> ex Adam procul Antipodes. dubio processerunt. Quod vero<sup>6</sup> Antipodas quidam fabulantur existere, id est, homines a contraria parte mundi adversa pedibus nostris calcare vestigia, nulla ratione credibile<sup>7</sup> est. Nec<sup>8</sup> enim hoc<sup>9</sup> ulla historica cognitio prodit, sed tantum conjectura humana adinvenit. Quamvis<sup>10</sup> enim terra sit rotunda, et intra convexa cœli quodammodo suspensa, non tamen est nuda ex illa parte ubi constat eam aquarum congerie circumamictam;<sup>11</sup> sed et licet terra ibidem esset nuda,

<sup>1</sup> *aliquam*, C. ; *aliqua*, A.D.

<sup>2</sup> *superiori parte*] superioribus, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *ex*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Hujusmodi igitur*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *homines non . . . sunt*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *autem*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *credendum*, C., *credē*, D. ; *ratio plena non notabit*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Neque*, C.D.B., which last omits *enim*.

<sup>9</sup> *hæc*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *Licet*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *circumamictam*, C.D.

beep wonderliche i-schape. For God knowep where and whanne it needep to make eny manere ping, he knowez þe fairenesse of al creatures, and wip what liknesse and vnliknesse of parties þey beep i-medled<sup>1</sup> to gidres. Certeynliche in oure tyme was aman i-bore in þe est þat hadde tweic bodies aboue anon to þe myddel of þe wombe, and bynepe but oon; but 3it for al þat we schal trowe þat he com<sup>2</sup> of Adam. Þerfore, suche þat beep wonderliche i-schape oþer þey beep nouzt; oþer þey beep no men; oþer 3if þey beþ men, wip oute doute þey come of Adam his kynde.<sup>3</sup> Touchinge Antipodes þat men spekep of and seip<sup>4</sup> þat þey beep men in þe oþer side of þe erpe, and here feet toward oure,<sup>5</sup> and hire heed 3onward and tredeþ hiderward, þat may be trowed by no resoun, þere is no storie þat makeþ vs haue knowleche; but onliche by gessynge of mankynde suche a tale is i-founde. Þey þe erpe be rounde al aboute and somdel honginge wip ynne þe holownesse of heuene, neuerþeles þe erpe is nouzt bare in þat side, for he is byclipped and i-closed wip ynne

TREVISA.

we schewede afore of the monstrous partes. For God knowethe how euery thyng awe to be create, and how he scholde dispose the pulcritude of the vniuersite in hit, in similitude of partes either in dissimilitude. In oure tyme and age a childe was borne in the este, dowble in the superior parte vn to the myddes of the bely, and single from that place downewarde, 3itte for alle that we schalle not [haue] diffidence but that he come of Adam. Therefore wondrefulle or monstrous thynges, other thei be not in eny wyse, or if thei be thei ar noo men, or if thei be men withowte eny dowte thei toke their originalle of Adam. And that somme men say, as in fables, men callede Antipodas to be, that is to say, men to be in a contrarious parte of the worlde, and to trede with their feete ageyne oure stappes; hit is not credible by eny reason, neither the cognicion of eny story dothe not expresse hit to be soo, but that the coniecture of man movethe that thyng. For thau3he the erthe be rownde and conuexede with ynne, neuertheless hit is not bare of þat parte, sithe that hit is circumamictē with waters, and thau3he the erthe were bare þer, hit wolde not

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *melled, a.*<sup>4</sup> *syngeth, Cx.*<sup>2</sup> *come, a., Cx.*<sup>3</sup> Text as in *a.* and *Cx.*; clauses transposed in MS.<sup>5</sup> *owres, Cx.*

non ideo esset consequens quod homines ibi haberet. *Ranulphus*.<sup>1</sup> Nisi forte velimus intelligere Antipodas eo modo quo tradit Marcianus in Astrologia sua,<sup>2</sup> dicens quod antipodibus<sup>3</sup> æstatem facit Capricornus et hyemem Cancer, quod utique ultra australem partem Æthiopiæ conjicitur<sup>4</sup> fore,<sup>5</sup> ubi obliqua et pæne contraria fiunt vestigia his qui circa insulam Tylæ<sup>6</sup> sub ipso polo arctico morantur.<sup>7</sup> *Isidorus, libro undecimo.*

Portenta  
futuri  
præscia.

Portentorum creationes quandoque fiunt ad significa-

<sup>1</sup> *Ranulphus*] This sentence added in margin of C. Absent from D.

<sup>2</sup> See Mart. Capell. *De nupt. Phil.* lib. viii. § *De cursu solis* (in fine), p. 295. Ed. Grot.

<sup>3</sup> *antipodis*, A.E.

<sup>4</sup> *convicitur* A.E.

<sup>5</sup> *esse*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *Tile*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *commorantur*, A.B.C.

pe water. And þey he were bare<sup>1</sup> and nouzt so i-closed, TREVISA.  
 zit it folowep nouzt that men schulde wonye pere. R. —  
 But we<sup>2</sup> wolde mene, as Marcianus seip in his Astrologie, þat  
 Capricornus þe goot makeþ somer to þe Antipodes, and þe  
 Crabbe<sup>3</sup> makip to hem wynter; and þat is acouted byzonde þe  
 side of Ethiopia, blew men<sup>4</sup> londe; þere men torneþ wel nigh  
 here feet towarde men<sup>4</sup> feet þat wonep aboute þe ilond Tyle  
 vnder þe norþ sterre. *Trevisa.* Here take hed þat þe cercle  
 þat<sup>5</sup> þe sonne holdeþ his cours ynne by the zere is i-deled in  
 twelue parties, and eueriche partie þerof is i-cleped a signe, and  
 euerich signe hap his owne name.<sup>6</sup> Þese beep þe names of þe  
 signes: þe Wether, þe Boole, þe Twynnes, þe Crabbe, þe Leon,  
 þe Mayde, þe Balaunce, þe Scorpion, þe Archer, þe Goot, þe  
 Sceen,<sup>7</sup> þe Fisshe. Also twelue monþes ben<sup>8</sup> in þe zere, and  
 eueriche monþe þe sonne entreþ in to a signe,<sup>9</sup> as it falleþ for  
 þe monþe. And so in Marche þey entreþ into þe Weþer; in  
 Auerel<sup>10</sup> in to the Boole; in May in to þe Twynnes; in Iuyn  
 into þe Crabbe; and so forþ arewe by monþes and signes, so  
 þat in Decembre þe sonne is in þe Goot. Þanne Marcianus wil  
 mene whan he seip þat þe Goot makeþ somer [to Antipodes, þat  
 whanne þe sonne is in þe Goot þan hit is somer]<sup>11</sup> wip hem.  
 But in Decembre it is mydwynter monþe; and whanne he seip  
 þat þe Crabbe makeþ hem wynter, he meneþ þat whanne þe  
 sonne is in þe Crabbe þan it is wynter wip ham, þat is in Iuyn,  
 þat is mydsomer monþe: and so hit is i-clared<sup>12</sup> what it is to  
 mene, þe Goot makeþ hem somer, and þe Crabbe wynter.  
*Isidorus, Etymolog., libro xj<sup>o</sup>.* Som tyme burþes beep i-bore  
 wonderliche and<sup>13</sup> wonderliche i-schape for to be bodynge

folowe by a directe consequente that the erthe scholde con- MS. HARL.  
 teyne men in that parte. R. Perauenture but if we vnder- 2261.  
 stonde Anipodas men so namede in that maner as Mar-  
 cianus dothe in his Astrology, seyenge that Capricorne f. 81. b.  
 makethe somer to men called Antipode, and Cancer wynter;  
 whiche thyng is supposede to be caused ouer the sowthe  
 parte of Ethioppe, for the stappes þer be oblike and con-  
 trarious to theyme whiche dwelle abowte the yle callede  
 Tyle vnder that pole artike. *Isidorus, Eth., libro xj<sup>o</sup>.*  
 The creaciones of wondres be causede otherwhile to the

<sup>1</sup> *baar, a.*

<sup>2</sup> *he, Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *the cancer, the signe, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *mennes, Cx. (twice.)*

<sup>5</sup> *So Cx. (that); of, MS.*

<sup>6</sup> *a propre name, Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *scene, a.; scene, β; stewe, Cx.*

There is very little doubt that *scenc*

(Germ. *Schenk*) is the true reading.  
See Glossary.

<sup>8</sup> *beþ, a.*

<sup>9</sup> *So a.; assigne, MS.*

<sup>10</sup> *Aprile, Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> *Added from a. and Cx.*

<sup>12</sup> *declared, Cx., a.*

<sup>13</sup> *and] om. a.*

tionem<sup>1</sup> futurorum, et tunc non diu vivunt; ut quod<sup>2</sup> in tempore Xerxis,<sup>3</sup> regis Persarum,<sup>4</sup> vulpes ex equa nata solvi regnum portendebat. Et tempore Alexandri Magni cujusdam monstri superiores partes hominis erant sed mortuæ, inferiores vero variarum bestiarum sed viventes, significabant repentinam regis interfec- tionem; nam<sup>5</sup> supervixerant deteriora melioribus. *Isidorus, libro undecimo, capitulo ultimo.*<sup>6</sup> Fiunt<sup>7</sup> quandoque monstruosæ transformationes hominum in bestias, quod fit magicis carminibus seu<sup>8</sup> herbarum veneficiis.<sup>9</sup> Quædam enim recipiunt mutationem per ipsam naturam, quædam<sup>10</sup> per corruptionem transeunt

---

<sup>1</sup> *significationes*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Xersis*, A.E.; *Xerses*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Persarum*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *enim*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Item capitulo ultimo*, C.D. (E. omits *capitulo ultimo*.)

<sup>7</sup> *fiunt etiam*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *aut*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *beneficiis*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *quædam vero*, C.D.



and forto<sup>1</sup> comynge<sup>2</sup> of wondres pat schal bifalle, but panne TREVISA.  
 þey lyveþ nouȝt l[o]nge.<sup>3</sup> As in Xerxes<sup>4</sup> kyng of Pers —  
 his tyme a mare foled [a fox],<sup>5</sup> and boded pat þe kyngdom  
 schulde be vndoo.<sup>6</sup> And in þe grete kyng Alisaundes<sup>7</sup> tyme  
 was i-brouȝt forþ a beest wonderliche i-schape, [for þe ouer  
 parties of hym were i-schape]<sup>8</sup> as þe parties of a man, but þey  
 were dede, and [þe]<sup>9</sup> neper parties were i-schape as þe parties  
 of dyuers manere bestes, and were onlyue,<sup>10</sup> and bode<sup>11</sup> soðeyn  
 sleynge of þe king,<sup>12</sup> for þe worse parties lyuede lengere  
 þan þe better. *Trevisa.*<sup>13</sup> William Wayte of Berkeley sigh  
 a childe wiþ tweye hedes and tweye nekkes i-bore and i-fulled<sup>14</sup>  
 at Mese in Loreyn, þe ȝere of oure Lord a þowsand þre<sup>15</sup>  
 hondred and sixe and fifty, pat ȝere þe kyng of Fraunce was  
 i-take at þe batayle of Peyters. Þis child hadde tweie armes<sup>16</sup>  
 and tweie legges, as oþer children haueþ, and he hadde þe  
 pridde legge growynge oute aboue þe buttokkes byhynde, and  
 þe pridde arme bytwene þe tweie schuldres. *Item Isidorus,*  
*libro ijº, capitulo 3º.* Somtyme is grisliche and wonderliche  
 chaungynge and schapyng<sup>17</sup> of men in to bestes, and is i-doo  
 by wordes oþer by wichecraft. Som haþ and som<sup>18</sup> fongeþ  
 suche chaungynge by þe same kynde, somme by corrupcioun  
 passeþ and changeþ in to oþer kynde, and so of calues

significacion of thynges to comme, and then thei lyve not MS. HARL.  
 longe; as a fox was foode of a mare in the tyme off Xerxes 2261.  
 kyng of Persa. And also þer was suche a wondre in the  
 tyme of Alexander the Conquerour, the superior partes of  
 whom were of a man, but dedde, and the partes inferialle  
 were of diuerse bestes, and in lyfe, whiche signifieth or  
 signifiede the soden dethe of kyng Alexander, for the  
 more vile partes lyuede more longe then the partes more  
 nowble. *Isidorus, libro xj., capitulo ultimo.* And mon-  
 struous transformaciones of men in to bestes be made other-  
 while thro charmes of wiches and wikkede operaciones of  
 yerbes. Somme thynges receyve mutacion by their nature,  
 somme thynges goe in to other kyndes by corrupcion, as  
 bees of roten calves, and vermyn callede scarabei of cor-

<sup>1</sup> to] om. a.  
<sup>2</sup> and to kenning, Cx., who has  
 also various slight alterations.  
<sup>3</sup> longe, a.  
<sup>4</sup> Excercises, MS., &c.  
<sup>5</sup> Added from a. and Cx.  
<sup>6</sup> vndo, a., Cx.  
<sup>7</sup> Alisaundre his, a.  
<sup>8</sup> Added from a. and Cx.  
<sup>9</sup> Added from Cx. (the).

<sup>10</sup> alyue, Cx.  
<sup>11</sup> bodede, a.; betokened, Cx.  
<sup>12</sup> So a. and Cx.; kyngdom, MS.  
<sup>13</sup> Reference added from a.  
<sup>14</sup> cristened, Cx.  
<sup>15</sup> So. a. and Cx.; sixe, MS.  
<sup>16</sup> So Cx.; names, MS., and a.  
<sup>17</sup> wonderfully chaungynge of  
 schappes, Cx.  
<sup>18</sup> som] om. a.

in alias species, ut<sup>1</sup> de putridis vitulis apes, de putridis equis scarabæi; unde Ovidius:<sup>2</sup>

“Concava littorei si demas brachia cancri,  
“Scorpius<sup>3</sup> exhibit, caudaque minabitur unca.”

*Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.*<sup>4</sup> Quoad monstruosas hominum transformationes tenendum est, quod dæmones et mali homines nec possunt naturam aliquam creare, neque<sup>5</sup> quod creatum est mutare; possunt tamen, Deo permittente, species transfigurare. Ita videlicet ut illud fantasticum hominis, quod cogitando sive somniando varias corporum formas haurit,<sup>6</sup> sopitis corporeis sensibus, etiam<sup>7</sup> cum corpus non sit, veluti tamen corporatum in alicujus animalis effigie appareat sensibus alienis; talisque sibi homo esse<sup>8</sup> videatur, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et etiam<sup>9</sup> portare onera, quæ si vera sunt<sup>10</sup> onera, portantur a dæmonibus;<sup>11</sup> ut sic, Deo juste judicante, illusio fiat hominibus. *Ranulphus.* De ista materia vide plenius infra<sup>12</sup> post bellum Trojanum.

<sup>1</sup> *et*, E.

<sup>2</sup> *Met.* x. 369.

<sup>3</sup> *Coppus*, A.

<sup>4</sup> 19°, C. The true reference is to lib. xviii., c. 18. D. omits all the remainder of this chapter.

<sup>5</sup> *nec*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *capit*, Aug.

<sup>7</sup> *et*, B.C.

<sup>8</sup> *esse*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *etiam*] om. B., Aug.

<sup>10</sup> *sint*, A. (not Aug.)

<sup>11</sup> *ab hominibus*, B. (not Aug.)

<sup>12</sup> *infra*] om. B.C.

i-rooted comeþ bees, and of hors i-roted comeþ harnettes.<sup>1</sup> TREVISA:  
Perfore Ouyde seip—

Ȝf pou craft hadde,  
Take armes holow<sup>2</sup> for þe crabbe.  
Scorpio bryngeþ<sup>3</sup> haile,  
To styngge with croked taylor.

*Augustinus, libro 18º, capitulo 6º.* In þe manere of wonderful tornyngge, chaungyngge, and schappinge of men and wommen hit is to holdyngge þat fendes and euel men mowe make no kynde, noþer chaunge þat is i-made. Neuerþeles Almyȝti God soffreþ liknesse of þinges dyuersliche forto seme,<sup>4</sup> so þat þe fantasie of a man þat gadreþ liknesse of dyuerse þinges in þouȝt, and in sweuenyngge<sup>5</sup> whanne þe wittes beþ i-lette and takeþ noon hede, makeþ to seme liknesse of bodies þat is nouȝt present, also of ymages and of dyuers liknesse and schappes of þinges þat neuere were i-made; and so men takyngge semeþ þat þey seeþ liknesse and schappe of dyuers þinges and of bestes, as men semeþ slepyngge and metyngge wonderful sweuenes, and semeþ somtyme þat þey bereþ many ful heuy burþenes; [bote and þei ben berþennes]<sup>6</sup> fendes bereþ hem, and so God þat demeth riȝtfulliche suffreþ mankynde be ofte so bigiled. *R.* Of þis matire loke<sup>7</sup> wiþ ynne more pleynliche after þe batayle of Troye.

rupte horses, caneres and scorpiones of mules. *Augustinus, MS. HARL. libro octavo, capitulo sexto.* As vii to the monstuous transformaciones of men, hit is to be holden that the deuelles 2261.  
and ylle men may not create eny nature, neither chaunge that is create; neuerthesse thei may thro the permission of God transfigure similitudes, so that the thyngge fantasticalle of a man that he<sup>8</sup> seethe diuerse similtudes, as in thenkenge other in dremenge, the wyttes corporealle oppressed; sithe hit is no tru body, ȝit hit dothe appere as to straunge wittes as a thyngge corporealle in the similitude of somme beste, and hit apperethe to hym suche as he did see in dreames and to bere burdones. But and if the ordre of trawthe be considerate, the burdones be borne of deuelles. *R.* We schalle expresse more of this mater after the batelle of Troye.

<sup>1</sup> *cheaffers, a.; chawers, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *holw, a.*

<sup>3</sup> *springaþ, γ. (not α or β.)*

<sup>4</sup> *sene, MS. (not a. or Cx.)*

<sup>5</sup> *dreamyng or sweuenyng, Cx.*

(who has various slight alterations.)

Trevisa's translation is not very in-

telligible, and may be a little corrupt.

<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *lokeþ, MS. (not a.)*

<sup>8</sup> *that he]* These words should be cancelled apparently.

## CAP. III.

*De dissimilitudine inter hominem atque mundum.*<sup>1</sup>

<sup>2</sup> LICET igitur homo<sup>3</sup> juxta prædicta conveniat cum mundo et ejus contentis, in nonnullis tamen conditionis<sup>4</sup> prærogativis a mundo discrepat. Nam licet corpus humanum ab initio fuerit<sup>5</sup> de limo formatum, suæ tamen animæ ita fuit proportionatum ut in eo esset complexionis æqualitas, organizationis conformitas, staturæ rectitudo, et figuræ pulchritudo. Et sic foret deinceps corpus animæ obtemperans<sup>6</sup> sine pugna rebellionis, propagans sine pronitate libidinis, vegetabile sine defectione vigoris, immutabile<sup>7</sup> sine corruptione mortalitatis. Quinetiam conceptus hominis<sup>8</sup> fieret sine pudore, partus sine dolore, victus sine sudore,<sup>9</sup> motus membrorum sine errore.<sup>10</sup> Ad hæc datus<sup>11</sup> sibi fuit paradusus ad habitaculum, mulier ad consortium,

Primævi  
hominis  
status.

<sup>1</sup> Title wanting in MSS.

<sup>2</sup> C.D. needlessly prefix *Ranulphus*.

<sup>3</sup> *homo* after *prædicta*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *suæ* added in A.B.C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *fuerat*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *contemperans*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *immortalitatis*, A.; *immortale*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *humanus*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *labore*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *horrore*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> So C. D., correctly; *data* A.F.; the longer form of the chronicle changing for the worse.

*Capitulum tertium.*

TREVISA.

THEY man, as it is i-seide, be liche [and]<sup>1</sup> acord to þe world, and to<sup>2</sup> þinges þat ben conteyned þerynne; neuerþeles in many poyntes of manis condicioun, of his prerogatif<sup>3</sup> and his worþynesse, he is dyuerse and vnliche to the world. For þey mannis body<sup>4</sup> we[re]<sup>5</sup> firste i-made of erþ, neuerþeles hit was [so]<sup>6</sup> couenabliche and so acordynge to þe soule, þat in mannis body was euenness of complexioun, acordynge of<sup>7</sup> lemes, riȝtfullnesse of stature, fairnesse of schappe. And so schulde þe body afterward be buxom to þe soule wip oute eny rebelnesse,<sup>8</sup> and brynge forþ children wip oute eny synne, and lyue wip oute eny defaute of strengþe, and be translated and chaunged in<sup>9</sup> þe blisse of heuene wip oute deienge and deep. Also he schulde gete and conceyue children wip oute schame, and a womman schulde bere children wip oute sorwe and woo, and haue mete and drynke wip oute sweet<sup>10</sup> and trauaille, sterynge and meuyng in lymes wip oute eny mysfare. And to al þis paradys was i-ȝeue to<sup>11</sup> mankynde forto wonye ynne,

*Capitulum tertium.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

THEREFORE thauȝhe man haue conuenience with the worlde, after thynges aforeseide, and with the contentes off hit, neuerthelesse he differrethe from the worlde in mouy prerogatifes of his condicion. But thauȝhe the body of man was made in the begynnenge of the erthe, hit was so proporcionate to the sawle that equalite of complexion was in hit, conformite of organizacion, rectitude of stature, and pulcritude of figure, and so the body scholde be afterwarde obtemperate to the sawle with owte fiȝhte of rebellion, vegetable with owte defawte of strenghte, immutable with owte corrupcion of mortalite. And also the concepcion of men scholde be withowte schame, the byrthe with owte sorowe, lyvenge with owte laboure, the mouenge of membres with owte erreure. Paradise was ȝifen

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>2</sup> *in two*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *prerogatiue*, *a.*<sup>4</sup> *body*] om. *a.*<sup>5</sup> *were*, *a.*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>7</sup> *of*] *to*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *withouten any rebellion*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *in to*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *swoot*, *a.*; *swete*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *to*] om. *a.*, Cx.

Conditio  
hominis  
post lap-  
sum.

lignum vitæ ad edulium, universa creatura ad solatium, et tandem ipse Deus in præmium. Sed heu cito<sup>1</sup> cecidit tantus signifer, qui mane oriebatur. In honore quippe constitutus non intellexit; comparatus est jumentis inhærendo vetitis,<sup>2</sup> adeo ut ab illo die corpus corruptum per peccatum aggravet<sup>3</sup> animam, caro concupiscat adversus spiritum, et proni sint sensus hominis in malum, inimicique<sup>4</sup> hominis<sup>5</sup> domestici sensus ejus; quinetiam tentatio sit tota vita hominis super terram, sed et ipsa animæ accidentia ipsum corpus afficiant et transmutent, sicut e converso<sup>6</sup> corporis passiones redundant in animæ perturbationem. Insuper et inest homini assiduitas deficienti, impossibilitas permanendi,<sup>7</sup> facilitas cadendi, difficultas resurgendi, vilitas nascendi, anxietas vivendi, necessitas moriendi. *Plinius, libro xvij.<sup>8</sup> capitulo primo.<sup>9</sup> Et*

<sup>1</sup> *hodie*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *inhærendo vetitis*] om. D., which also omits *per peccatum* below.

<sup>3</sup> *aggravaret*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *quoque*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *hominis*] om. E.

<sup>6</sup> *e contrario*, B.C.

<sup>7</sup> *stundi*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> 17°, B.

<sup>9</sup> 13°, B. The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 1.

and womman forto be manis [felawe],<sup>1</sup> paradys to wonyng place, þe tree of lyf for mete, and al creatures for solace, at<sup>2</sup> þe laste God hem<sup>3</sup> self to be manis mede. But allas pat so noble a banyour fil so sone, þat was erliche i-brouzt and i-putte into<sup>4</sup> worschippe: þey<sup>5</sup> knewe nouzt pat þey<sup>5</sup> schulde be liche to bestes, whan he dede pat was forbode. From þat day forþward þe body þat is corrupt by synne greueþ þe soule. Þe flesche coueyteþ azenst þe soule, and manis wittes torneþ and assenteþ liztliche to euel. A mannes owne meynal wittes beep his owne enemyes. So pat al a manis lyf is in temptacioun while he lyueþ here in erþe, and þe dispocisioun of þe soule ruleþ, meyn-teneth, helpeþ, and confortetþ þe body; but azenward þe wrecched dispocisioun<sup>6</sup> of þe body distourbeþ þe soule. Also man<sup>7</sup> is euer faillynge [and] awayward,<sup>8</sup> he may nouzt stedfastliche abide; he falleþ liztliche, but he may nouzt liztliche arise; profit of berþe is sorwe<sup>9</sup> and care in<sup>10</sup> lyuyng; and man moot nedes deie. *Plinius, libro 17º, capitulo 13º.*<sup>11</sup> And þey alle opere pat beep i-made haue schilles,<sup>12</sup>

TREVISA.

—

to man as a iahabitacion, where he scholde reioyce thynges afore seide, and a woman was ziffen to be his felowe, the tre of lyfe to refreschenge, euery creature to a solace, and at the laste God was zifen to hym in to rewarde. But allas so nowble a sterre hade soone a falle that spronge fulle tymely, whiche sette in honor hade not knowlege of hym selfe, whiche is comparable to brute bestes in drawenge to thynges prohibitte, in so moche that the corrupte body from that day laborethe to greve the sawle. For scripture dothe expresse that the flesche covetethe ageyne the sawle, and the wittes of a man be prompte to synne, and the propre wittes of a man be enmyes to hym, so that temptacion is alle the lyfe of man on the erthe. And also the accidentalle thynges of the sawle punnysche and transmute the body, soe in lyke wise the passiones of the body redunde in to the perturbacion of the sawle, wherefore assiduite of feyntenesse longethe to a man, impossibilitate of permanence, lyzhtenes to falle, difficulte to aryse,<sup>13</sup> disease to lyve, and necessite to dye. *Plinius, libro 17º, capitulo 13º.* And sythe other

MS. HARL.

2261.

—

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *and atte*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *him*, *a.*

<sup>4</sup> *in*, *a.*

<sup>5</sup> *he*, Cx. (twice.)

<sup>6</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *dispensacioun*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *men*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *and awayward*, *a.*; *and wayward*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; *profit is (is of, a.) berþe sorwe*, MS. and *a.*

<sup>10</sup> *in hym*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)

<sup>11</sup> Reference transposed in MS.

<sup>12</sup> *shelles*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *a ryse*, MS., and similarly elsewhere.

cum cætera producta aut habeant testas, cortices,<sup>1</sup> coria, villos,<sup>2</sup> setas, pilos, plumas, pennas, aut squamas, homo ipse, tegumento carens, nudus effusus plorat in principio membris devinctus,<sup>3</sup> quadrupedi similis, animante<sup>4</sup> quovis debilius, nihil sciens, nihil aliud de se valens nisi sponte flere. Nulli<sup>5</sup> uspiam vita<sup>6</sup> fragilior, nulli morbus gravior, nulli libido major, nulli rabies acrior. Denique cætera animantia ad sese afficiuntur, in suo genere prope<sup>7</sup> degunt, non sæviunt nisi ad sui<sup>8</sup> dissimilia et<sup>9</sup> ad sibi contraria solummodo<sup>10</sup> et adversa. Homo tamen in seipso sibi<sup>11</sup> contrarius in sibi proximum grassatur, et cum propinqua defecerint<sup>12</sup> in seipsum sævit.<sup>13</sup> *Ranulphus*. Ad hoc duplex homini inflictum est infortunium, et hoc quidem juste, unum ab intra, ut qui in vita sua<sup>14</sup> projecit intima sua jam illa non habeat tranquilla, sed bella sibi pariant<sup>15</sup> intestina. Aliud quoque incommodum imminet ab extra, ut qui suo superiori Deo<sup>16</sup> obtemperare noluit, jam suum inferiorem sibi sentiat

<sup>1</sup> *et cortices*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *velles*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *devinctus*] originally *destitutus*, but *devinctus* written above line in another ink in C.; *destitutus*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *animante*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Nulla*, A.E.

<sup>6</sup> *vitam*, A.

<sup>7</sup> Piny has *probe*, which is much better.

<sup>8</sup> *sui*] so A.B.; om. C.D.; *sibi*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *et*] om. E.

<sup>10</sup> *solummodo*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *sibi*] so A.B.C.D.; *sibiipsi*, E.

<sup>12</sup> *defuerint*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *sævit*] om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *vita sua*] *vitia*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *parent*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *scilicet Deo*, B.



ryndes, skynnes, wolle, heer, bristles, feperes,<sup>1</sup> wynges, oper scales, man is i-bore wip oute eny helynge,<sup>2</sup> naked and bare, and anoon at his berpe he gynneth forto wepe; at þe bygynnynghe liche to a beste, but his lymes faillep hym, and may nouzht helpe hym self. But he is feblere þan eny oper beest; he can non helpe, he may nouzt doo of hym self, bot wepe wip alle his myzt. No beest hap lyf more brutel and vnsiker. Noon hap siknesse more grevous, noon more likynghe to doo oper wise þan he schulde. Noon is more cruel. Also oper bestes louep everiche oper of þe same kynde, and woneþ to gidres, and beep not cruel but to bestes of oper kynde þat beep contrarye to hem. But man torneþ þat manere doynghe vp so down, and is contrarye to hym self and cruel to oper men; and<sup>3</sup> he may not reche for to greue opere, þan he bycomeþ angry and cruel to hym self. [R.]<sup>4</sup> And zit to al þis man hap tweie<sup>5</sup> myshappes, and þat riztfulliche: oon is of hym selue wip ynne hym;<sup>6</sup> so þat he þat þrewe away pees and reste þat<sup>7</sup> werreþ with ynne hym in his lyuynghe, he hap neiþer<sup>8</sup> pees ne reste, but werre and stryf wip ynne. Anoper myshap man hap wip oute forþ, so þat he þat wolde not be sogette to God þat is aboue hym, now he felep his vnderlynges rebel to him. So þat þe

TREVISA.

thynges brouzhte furthe other haue schelles, barke, skynnes, MS. HARL. 2261.  
hure, plumes other penne, or scales; a man entrethe in to this worlde bare and nakede, wontenge eny couerenge, wepenge in his begynnege, more feble then eny other beste. For he can not do eny other thynghe of him selfe but wepe. The lyfe of noon other thynghe is more frayle, replete with moste infirmite, noo beste moore leccherous. For alle other bestes luffe to gedre in theire kynde, and lyve to gedre, not cruelle but to bestes of other kyndes and contrarious to them; but a man is contrarious oftetymes to his kynde and to hym selfe. R. Where fore ij. infortunys be ziffen to man by ryzhteousenes, oon is interialle in that he caste furthe his partes interialle in his lyve, he scholde not haue them now in tranquillite, but that the partes interialle scholde be to hym a conflicte. That other infortuny is exterialle, that man scholde haue his inferior rebellante to hym, in that he was inobediente to God his maker, so that

<sup>1</sup> *veperes, a.*<sup>2</sup> *helynghe or keueryng, Cx.*<sup>3</sup> *and yf, Cx.*<sup>4</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>5</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *mystweic happes, MS.*<sup>6</sup> *hym*] om. *a.*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *þat*] om. Cx.<sup>8</sup> *noþer, a.*

rebellantem. Ita plane ut reliquæ creaturæ,<sup>1</sup> quæ sibi concessæ fuerant<sup>2</sup> ad solatium fragilitatis, ad sustentaculum recreationis, ad vehiculum imbecillitatis, ad obsequium subjectionis, ad spectaculum admirationis, jam magna ex parte hominis aspectum refugiant, tactum abhorreant, dominium non sufferant, convictum reformident.<sup>3</sup>

## CAP. IV.

*De creatione Adam.*<sup>4</sup>

Compara-  
tio status  
innocentiæ  
et status  
miseriæ.

FORMATUS itaque<sup>5</sup> Adam homo primus de limo terræ extra paradisum in agro Damasceno sexto die sæculi, et in paradisum translatus, peccatoque eodem die commisso dejectus est post meridiem. Sicque cecidit de statu innocentiae ad statum miseriae, vir quidem<sup>6</sup> in primordiis suis dulces in domo Dei capere potens<sup>7</sup> cibos, sed vetita volens et prohibita probans cecidit ab alto ad imum, de luce ad limum,<sup>8</sup> de incolat uad exilium, de domo ad devium, de fructu ad fletum,<sup>9</sup> de laude ad luctum, de joco ad jurgium, ab<sup>10</sup> amore ad odium, de prosperitate ad pœnalitatem,<sup>11</sup> de sospitate ad infirmitatem, de penu ad penuriam, de gratia ad culpam, de pace [ad rixas, de gaudio]<sup>12</sup> ad pœnam, de familia-

<sup>1</sup> *reliqua creatura*, D.E.

<sup>2</sup> *fuerat concessa*, D.E. (but the verbs below in the plural).

<sup>3</sup> *convictum reformident*] om. D.

<sup>4</sup> Title in E. only.

<sup>5</sup> *igitur*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *qui*, B., om. D.

<sup>7</sup> *potens capere*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *tenebras*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *de risu ad rictum*, added in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *de*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *dulcore ad absinthium*, added in C.D. The latter MS. has several clerical errors and omissions.

<sup>12</sup> Added from B.

creatures þat were i-ȝeue man to solas of brutelnesse, to susteynyng of confort, to bere vp febilnesse, to seruise and subiection, to merour<sup>1</sup> and schewyge of wondres, now for þe moste deel he<sup>2</sup> fleep mannys siȝt, and his felawschippe, and his companye, and hateþ his handelynge, and wil nouȝt of his lordschippe, and dredeþ sore to lyue and dwolle<sup>3</sup> wip hym.

TREVISA.

*Capitulum quartum.*

ADAM was i-made of erpe in the filde of Damask þe sixte day of þe world, and i-brouȝt in Paradys, and synned þe same day, and was i-putte out after mydday. And he fel out of þe state of innocence and of<sup>4</sup> welpe in to þe state<sup>5</sup> of wrecchednesse and of woo. Man in his<sup>6</sup> bygynnyng myȝte take wel swete mete in Goddis owne hous, but he desired þat he schulde nouȝt, and he assaied þat was forbode, and fel out of hiȝe in to lowh, out of liȝt in to derknesse and slym, out of his owne londe and contray in to outlawyng, out of hous in to maskyng and wayles<sup>7</sup> contray and lond, out of fruit into wepyng and woo, out of preisyng in to deel and sorwe, out of merpe in to stryf, oute of loue in to hate, out of ioye and welpe in to peyne and tene, out of helpe and grace in to gilt and synne,<sup>8</sup> out of pees in to peyne,

bestes and other creatures, whiche were create to the solace of man, to the sustentacle of recreacion, to the obsequy of subieccion, to the spectacle of admiracion, flee in grete parte the siȝhte of man, abhorrenge his towchenge, takenge not hym as their lorde.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Of the creation of Adam, the firste man.*

*Capitulum quartum.*

ADAM the firste man, yformede of the slycche of the erthe, in the felde Damascene with owte Paradise, in the vj<sup>th</sup> day of the worlde, and translate in to Paradise, was deiecte for synne, doen that same day, from Paradise after noue. And so Adam felle from the state of innocency to the state of miserye, from the hie place to a lave place, from liȝhte to darkenesse, from inhabitation to exile, from frute to weipenge, from ioy to peyne, from luffe to hate, from swetenesse vn to bytternesse, from prosperite to penaunce, from healethe to infirmite, from grace to blame, from familiarite to offense.

<sup>1</sup> *myroure*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *þei*, β.; *a*, γ.; *they*, Cx., rightly; but see p. 237 note.

<sup>3</sup> So *a*.; *dwelle*, Cx.; *dye*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *of þe*] MS. (not *a*.)

<sup>5</sup> *staat*, *a*.

<sup>6</sup> So *a*. and Cx.; *womman* in *his*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> So *a*., β., γ.; *into waylyngs* and *trouble*, Cx.; *valeyes*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> So *a*. and Cx.; *sitte*, MS.

Cain et  
Abel.

ritate ad offensam.<sup>1</sup> *Methodius*. Hic<sup>2</sup> Adam quinto-decimo vitæ suæ anno genuit Cayn<sup>3</sup> et Calmanam sororem ejus.<sup>4</sup> Iterum<sup>5</sup> post hoc<sup>6</sup> quintodecimo anno,<sup>7</sup> quod<sup>8</sup> est trecesimo vitæ suæ anno, genuit Adam<sup>9</sup> Abel et Delboram sororem ejus, sed interfecto Abel<sup>10</sup> luxerunt eum parentes ejus centum annis. *Ranulphus*.

De numero  
annorum  
Adam.

Adam secundum Hebræos centesimo trecesimo ætatis suæ anno genuit Seth, et postmodum<sup>11</sup> vixit octingentis annis;<sup>12</sup> sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus, Etymologiarum<sup>13</sup> libro quinto, dicunt Adam fuisse ducentorum triginta annorum ante nativitatem Seth, et postmodum<sup>14</sup> vixisse septingentis annis; et sic Adam in toto vixit nongentis triginta annis; et mortuus sepultus est in Hebron,<sup>15</sup> quod est Cariatharbe, quod sonat,<sup>16</sup> *Urbs quatuor*, id est quatuor patriarcharum qui ibi sepulti sunt, scilicet Adam, Abraham, Isaak, Jacob.<sup>17</sup>

De genera-  
tionibus  
ab Adam  
usque ad  
Noe.  
Seth.  
Enos.

Seth centum quinque annorum<sup>18</sup> genuit Enos, et post vixit octingentis<sup>19</sup> annis, sed Septuaginta interpretes<sup>20</sup> dixerunt<sup>21</sup> Seth<sup>22</sup> ducentorum quinque annorum<sup>23</sup> genuisse Enos, et post<sup>24</sup> vixisse dec. vij. annis.<sup>25</sup>

Enos nonaginta annorum genuit Caynan, et post vixit octingentis<sup>26</sup> quindecim annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes dicunt Enos centum nonaginta annorum genuisse Caynan, et post vixisse septingentis<sup>27</sup> quin-

<sup>1</sup> C.D. add *de prospero ad pœnale, de vivo ad mortale*. B. adds, after *offensam*, *de dilectione ad inobedientiam*.

<sup>2</sup> *Hic itaque*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Cayn*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *suam*, D., and so below.

<sup>5</sup> *Item*, A.B.

<sup>6</sup> *hæc*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *xv. annis*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *id*, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *Adam*] om. C.

<sup>10</sup> *sed . . . Abel*] eo (Abel, D.) vero interfecto, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *postea*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Petrus* is here inserted in C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Etymologiarum*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *post*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *Ebron*, A.D.

<sup>16</sup> *quod sonat . . . Jacob*] om. D.

<sup>17</sup> *et Jacob*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *secundum Hebræos*, added in C. D., and so below.

<sup>19</sup> *septingentis*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *et Isidorus*, added in C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *dicunt*, B.

<sup>22</sup> *Seth*] om. A.

<sup>23</sup> *ducentorum annorum et quinque*, B.

<sup>24</sup> *postmodum*, B.

<sup>25</sup> D. adds: *itaque in toto vixit 912 annis*.

<sup>26</sup> *septingentis*, B.

<sup>27</sup> *ducentis*, A.

out of homlynesse into offence and wreppe. *Methodius.* Dis Adam þe fiftenþe 3ere of his lyf gat <sup>1</sup> Cayn, þat is comounliche i-cleped Cayn, and his suster Calmana. Þanne fiftene 3ere afterward, whan Adam was þritty 3ere olde, he gat Abel and his suster Delbora. But Abel was i-slawe, and his fader and moder made [deel and] <sup>2</sup> sorwe i-now <sup>3</sup> an hundred wynter. R̄. As Hebrewes seiþ, Adam gat Seth þe 3ere of his age an hundred and þritty, and lyued after ei3te hondred 3ere, and so Adam lyued in al nyne hondred 3ere and þrittey. *Trevisa.* Þere were þre score and ten þat torned Holy Writte out of Hebrew in to Grewe, and þey beþ i-cleped þe þre score and ten. R̄. Adam deide and was i-buried in Ebron, þat is i-cleped also Cariatharbe, þat is to menyng <sup>4</sup> þe cite of foure, þat beþ patriarkes þat beþ i-buried þere, þat beþ Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob. Seth gat Enes whan he was an hondred 3ere olde and fyue, and lyuede afterwarde ei3te hondred 3ere; but [þe] þre <sup>5</sup> skore and ten seith þat Seþ was two hondred 3ere and fyue whan he gat Enos, and lyued afterward seuen hondred 3ere and seuene. Enos, foure score 3ere olde and ten, gat Caynan, and lyuede afterward ei3te hondred

TREVISA.

—

*Methodius.* Adam gate Cayn and Calmana his suster in the xv<sup>th</sup> yere of his age; also in the xv<sup>th</sup> yere after that, whiche is the xxx<sup>th</sup> yere of his age, he gate Abel and Delbora his sustyr, but Abel sleyne, Adam and Eve wailede his dethe by an c. yere folowenge. R̄. And, after men of Hebrew, Adam gate Seth in the c. and xxx<sup>th</sup> yere of his age, and lyffede after viij<sup>c</sup>. yere. But, after the lxx<sup>th</sup> interpretatores and after Isidorus, *Ethi. libro quinto*, Adam was of ij<sup>c</sup>. and xxx<sup>th</sup> yere in age afore the natiuite of Seth, seyenge Adam to haue lyvede after vij<sup>c</sup>. yere. And soe hade Adam in age ix<sup>c</sup>. yere and xxx<sup>th</sup>, whiche dyenge was f. 83 a. buried in Ebron, that is callede Cariatharbe, whiche sowndethe a iiij. cite, that is to say, of iiij. patriarkes whiche were beriede there, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob. Seth, beenge of a c. and v. yere in age, gate Enos, and lyvede after viij<sup>c</sup>. yere: but after the lxx<sup>th</sup> interpretatores. Seth, beenge of cc. and v. yere, gate Enos, lyvenge after vij<sup>c</sup>. and also vij. yere. Enos of xc. yere gate Cainan, lyvenge after decc. and xv. yere. But after the lxx<sup>th</sup> inter-

MS. HARL.

2261.

—

<sup>1</sup> *bigate*, Cx.; and so below *sometimes*.

<sup>2</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx., who has *dole*.

<sup>3</sup> *i-now*] om. *a.* and Cx.; which have *for him*, probably rightly.

<sup>4</sup> *meane*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *the þre*, *a.* and Cx.; the latter has some omissions below.

decim annis.<sup>1</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>2</sup> Iste Enos dicitur specialiter<sup>3</sup> invocasse nomen Domini primo;<sup>4</sup> quia forte primus invenit verba deprecatoria, vel secundum Hebræos<sup>5</sup> quia<sup>6</sup> fecit imagines ad honorem Dei, vel<sup>7</sup> ad excitandum pigritiam humanæ memoriæ in Deum.<sup>8</sup>

Cainan. Caynan septuaginta annorum genuit Malaleel, et post vixit octingentis quadraginta annis; sed<sup>9</sup> Septuaginta interpretes<sup>10</sup> præponunt centum annos ad septuaginta, et postmodum subtrahunt centum.<sup>11</sup>

Mahalaleel. Malalael<sup>12</sup> sexaginta quinque<sup>13</sup> annorum genuit Jareth,<sup>14</sup> et postmodum<sup>15</sup> vixit octingentis triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes<sup>16</sup> præponunt centum annos ante<sup>17</sup> sexaginta quinque, et<sup>18</sup> post subtrahunt centum.<sup>19</sup>

Jared. Jareth<sup>20</sup> centum sexaginta duorum<sup>21</sup> annorum genuit Enoch, et vixit postmodum<sup>22</sup> octingentis annis. In hoc concordant Septuaginta interpretes cum aliis.<sup>23</sup>

Enoch. Enoch sexaginta quinque<sup>24</sup> annorum genuit Mathusale,<sup>25</sup> et postmodum vixit trecentis annis sexaginta quinque, ambulavitque cum Deo, et translatus est; sed Septuaginta interpretes præponunt centum ad sexaginta quinque. Iste<sup>26</sup> Enoch adinvenit<sup>27</sup> aliquas literas, et aliquos libros scripsit, sicut innuit Judas Apostolus in canonica sua; sub cujus tempore<sup>28</sup> Adam creditur

<sup>1</sup> dicunt . . . annis] om. B.; sed lxx. et Isidorus ante Caynan ponunt 190 annos et [dicunt] post 715 vixisse; ita quod dies ejus sunt 908 anni, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.C.

<sup>3</sup> *specialiter fertur*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *primo*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *secundum Hebræos*] prout dicunt Hebræi, A.B.C.

<sup>6</sup> *primus*, A.B.

<sup>7</sup> *et*, A.B.

<sup>8</sup> Sentence added in margin of C., slightly abbreviated; absent from D.

<sup>9</sup> *sed . . . centum*] et facti sunt omnes dies ejus nongenti decem anni, B.

<sup>10</sup> *interpretes*] et Isidorus, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *et decem annos*] ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Malaleel*, E.

<sup>13</sup> 45, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Jared*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *post*, C.D., and so frequently.

<sup>16</sup> *interpretes*] et Isidorus, C.D., which add the reference to Isidore throughout. After this it is not noted.

<sup>17</sup> *ad*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *et . . . centum*] ita quod vixit in toto 895 annis, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *sed . . . centum*] et facti sunt omnes dies ejus 895 anni, B.

<sup>20</sup> *secundum Hebræos*, added in C. D.

<sup>21</sup> *cxlij*, B.

<sup>22</sup> *post*, C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *interpretes . . . aliis*] et Ysidorus, C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *xlvi.*, B.

<sup>25</sup> *Matussale*, A.

<sup>26</sup> *Iste . . . fuit*] om. C.D.

<sup>27</sup> *invenit*, A.

<sup>28</sup> *diebus*, A.B.

Ʒere and fiftene ; but þe þre score and ten seiþ þat Enos was nyne score Ʒere and ten and gat Caynan, and lyued afterwarde seuen hondred Ʒere and fiftene. Me seiþ specialliche þat Enos cleped fyrst Goddis name, for vppon caas he fonde first wordes of prayenge. Opere, as Hebrewes telleþ, he fond first ymages to worschippe of God : forto wake þe slouþe of manis mynde into God Almyȝty. Caynan, þre score Ʒere olde and ten, gat Malaleel, and lyuede afterwarde eyȝte hondred Ʒere and fourty ; but þe þre skore and ten putteþ an hondred Ʒere to fore þe<sup>1</sup> seenty, and wiþ draweþ an hondred afterward. Malaleel, fyue and sixty Ʒere olde, gat Iareth, and lyuede afterwarde eiȝte hondred Ʒere and þritty. But þe seenty setteþ an hondred to fore fyue and sixty, and wiþ draweþ an hondred aftirward. Iareth, an hondred Ʒere olde and two and sixty, gat Enoch,<sup>2</sup> and lyuede afterwarde eiȝte hondred Ʒere foure score and ten.<sup>3</sup> [In]<sup>4</sup> þis seventy acordeþ wiþ othere. Enoch, fyve and sixty Ʒere olde, gat Matusale, and lyued afterward þre hondred Ʒere, and helde God Almyȝty his way, and was translated and i-brouȝt in paradys, but þe seenty setteth a hondred Ʒere tofore fyue and sixty. Þis Enoch was fyndere of lettres, and wroot som bookes, so seiþ Seynt Iudas the postle in<sup>5</sup> his pistle.<sup>6</sup> Me trowede<sup>7</sup> þat Adam deyde in

TREVISA.

pretatores, Enos of c. and xc. yere to haue geten Cainan, and to haue lyffede afterwarde viijc. and xv. This Enos is seyde to haue callede to helpe specially and firste the name of Godde ; for, as men of Ebrewe say, he made firste ymages to þe honor of God, to excite the slawthe of the memory of man in to the lawde of God. Cainan beenge of lxx<sup>ti</sup> yere gate Malaleel, and lyvede after viijc. and xli<sup>ti</sup> yere ; but the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores adde. an c. yere afore lxx<sup>ti</sup>, and after thei withdrawe an c. yere. Malaleel of lx. and v. yere gate Iareth, and lyvede after viijc. and xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere ; but the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores putte an c. yere afore lx. and v. yere, and take after that an c. yere away. Iareth of an clxij. yere gate Enoch, and lyvede after viijc. yere ; and the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores acorde with other in that. Enoch of lx. and v. yere gate Matussale, and lyvede after ijje. yere, and walkede with God, and was translate ; but the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores putte an c. yere to lxxv. This Enoch founde somme letters firste and did write bookes, as Iudas thapostle rehersethe in Canonica sua ; in the daies of whom mony men suppose Adam to haue diede. And lyke as the vij<sup>the</sup> in

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and Cx. ; and, MS.<sup>2</sup> *Enoch*, MS., but *Enoch* below. The bar seems here and elsewhere to be only redundant.<sup>3</sup> *foure score and ten*] om. Cx.<sup>4</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>5</sup> *apostle, a.*<sup>6</sup> *pistel, a.* ; *epistle, Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *troweth, Cx.*

mortuus fuisse.<sup>1</sup> Et<sup>2</sup> sicut in generatione Cayn septimus ab Adam, scilicet Lamech, pessimus fuit, sic in generatione Seth septimus ab Adam, scilicet Enoch, optimus fuit.<sup>3</sup>

Methuse-  
lah.

Mathussale<sup>4</sup> centum octoginta<sup>5</sup> annorum genuit Lamech, et post<sup>6</sup> vixit septingentis duobus<sup>7</sup> annis, hoc est usque ad diluuium<sup>8</sup> secundum veriore<sup>9</sup> traditionem, et<sup>10</sup> non ultra per quatuordecim annos sicut quidam posuerunt. Sed anno vitæ suæ nongentesimo sexagesimo<sup>11</sup> nono, quo cœpit diluuium, mortuus est.

Lamech.

Lamech<sup>12</sup> centum octoginta duorum annorum<sup>13</sup> genuit Noe, et postmodum<sup>14</sup> vixit quingentis nonaginta<sup>15</sup> annis.

## CAP. V.

### *De posteritate Lamech.*<sup>16</sup>

Cayn<sup>17</sup> primogenitus Adæ genuit Enoch, qui genuit Irad, qui genuit Mauaiel,<sup>18</sup> qui Mathussael, qui Lamech.

<sup>1</sup> obisse, A.B.

<sup>2</sup> Ut, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Iste . . . fuit*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *secundum omnes*, ins. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *septem*, ins. A.

<sup>6</sup> *postmodum*, B.

<sup>7</sup> 782, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *sed non ultra*, ins. B.

<sup>9</sup> *variorem*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *sed*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *xlix.*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *secundum omnes*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *annorum*] om. E.

<sup>14</sup> *post*, A.

<sup>15</sup> *quinque*, ins. B.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> Title wanting in MS.

<sup>17</sup> *Cain*, A. The following passage occurs before this in C. (It commences with a large capital N, but the words Cap. 5. are placed opposite *Cayn primogenitus*, &c., in the margin of C.) :—" Noe vero quingentorum annorum genuit Sem, Cham, et Japheth; et spatio centum annorum conficiens arcam, sexcentesimo anno vitæ suæ ingressus est eam primo die secundi mensis, introducing ad se per octo dies quæ præcepta fuerant introduci, ante-

quam Dominus plueret super terram. Et sic factum est diluuium per annum pæne terram occupans. Aqua nempe diluuii transcendit montes excelsos quindecim cubitis, quia per tantam altitudinem creduntur opera hominum fœdasse aera per ignis adorationem, qui tam alte extulit fumum et favillas. In quo anno terminatur prima ætas ab Adam usque ad diluuium sub generationibus decem, habens annos secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo quarto, et secundum Hebræos, 2656, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorum libro quinto, 2242, secundum Hieronymum non plene 2000, secundum Methodium 2000. Ipse tamen Methodius omittit annos aliquos, si superfuerint; quia per chiliades sæcula disponit." This passage is given also in D., but more shortly; and it occurs with some variations in the text of the longer MSS. below.

<sup>18</sup> *Malaleel*, D. badly; see Gen. iv. 18.



pis Enoch his tyme; and as [in]<sup>1</sup> Cayn his children Lamech þe TREVISIA.  
 seuenþe from Adam was worst; so in Sep his children Enoch  
 þe seuenþe from Adam was best. Metusale, an hondred ʒere  
 olde foure skore and seuene, gat Lamech, and lyued afterward  
 seuen hondred ʒere and tweyne, þat was anoon to Noes flood.  
 Lamech, an hondred ʒere olde foure skore and tweyne, gat  
 Noe, and lyued aftirward fyue hondred ʒere foure score and  
 ten.

*Capitulum quintum.*

CAYM, Adams firste sone, gat Enoch, he gat Irad, he  
 gat Mauaiel,<sup>2</sup> he gat Matusale, he gat Lamech. Þis Lamech

---

the generacion of Cayn, whiche was Lamech, was moste MS. HARL.  
 wyckede in his generacion, soe in lyke wise Enoch, the 2261.  
 vii<sup>the</sup> from Adam, was moste goode. Matussale of c.lxxx.  
 and vij. yere gate Lamech, lyvenge after vij<sup>c</sup>. and ij. yere,  
 that is to the grete floode of Noe, and noo longer, after  
 the trewe tradicion; by xiiij. yeres, as somme men putte: but  
 he diede in the ix<sup>c</sup>. yere lx. and ix., in whiche yere the  
 grete floode began. Lamech of a c.lxxxij. yere gate Noe,  
 and lyvede afterwarde d.xc. and v. yere.

*Capitulum quintum.*

CAYN the firste son of Adam gate Enoc, whiche gate  
 Iradus, whiche gate Mauaiel; and he gate Matussale, whiche

---

<sup>1</sup> Added from β. γ.

| <sup>2</sup> So a.; *Manuel*, MS.

De uxori-  
bus et filiis  
Lamech.  
Artes in-  
ventæ.

Hic Lamech acceptis duabus uxoribus Ada et Sella, genuit ex Ada duos filios, Jabel qui fuit pater habitantium in tentoriis, et Tubal<sup>1</sup> qui fuit pater canentium in cithara<sup>2</sup> et organo. Ex altera uxore, Sella, genuit Tubalcayn,<sup>3</sup> qui fuit faber et malleator, et sororem ejus<sup>4</sup> Noema, quæ invenit artem texturæ. *Josephus*. Cayn violenter opes congregans ad luxuriam et latrocinia homines<sup>5</sup> invitavit, simplicem hominum vitam transtulit ad ponderum et mensurarum adinventionem, terminos et limites terræ primus<sup>6</sup> instituit, civitatem fecit et muravit, timens quos lædebat.

Primi  
homines  
inermes.

*Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo secundo.* Homines primum tanquam nudi et<sup>7</sup> inermes, nec contra bestias aut<sup>8</sup> homines tuti, nec receptacula frigoris aut æstus habentes, naturali solertia oppida excogitaverunt; unde et<sup>9</sup> tuguria et casas ex<sup>10</sup> virgultis et arundinibus contexuerunt,<sup>11</sup> ut vita eorum foret<sup>12</sup> tutior. *Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo.* Lamech septimus ab Adam et pessimus primus induxit bigamiam, et sic adulterium contra legem Dei et<sup>13</sup> naturæ ac contra Dei decretum.

Bigamia  
inducta.

Iabal.

*Josephus.*<sup>14</sup> Jabel primus greges ordinavit a<sup>15</sup> characteribus, distinxit hædos ab agnis,<sup>16</sup> seniores a<sup>17</sup> junioribus divisit.<sup>18</sup> *Petrus, capitulo xxvij.*<sup>19</sup> Tubalcayn invenit

Tubalcain  
et Iabal.

<sup>1</sup> *Iubal*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *cythara*, C.; *cithera*, A.B.

<sup>3</sup> *Tubalcain*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *suam*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *homines*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *primo*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. C.

<sup>8</sup> *nec*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *ex*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *contexerunt*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *vita esset*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *ac*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Petrus . . . Josephus*] om. D.

<sup>15</sup> *et*, B.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *ovibus*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *et*, A.

<sup>18</sup> C.D. introduce the following

passage :—“ *Petrus*. Tubal (Iubal, “ D.) fuit inventor consonantiarum, “ non instrumentorum; quia longe “ post inventa fuerunt; sed inventor “ fuit musicæ, id est, consonantia- “ rum; ut labor pastoralis verte- “ retur in delicias. Et quia audierat “ Adam prophetasse de duobus ju- “ diciis, ipse scripsit hanc artem “ in duabus columnis, in utraque “ totam; in marmorea contra “ diluvium, in lateritia contra “ incendium, ne periret ars in- “ venta.” See p. 232.

<sup>19</sup> 20, C.D. The true reference is, to c. 28., both here and just above and also below, p. 228.

took tweie wives, Ada and Sella, and gat tweie sones, on Ada Iabel, pat was fader of hem pat wonede in tentes and in paulyouns. And Tubal pat was fadre of organistres and of harpores. And Lamech gat on Sella Tubalcan, pat was a smyth worchynghe wip hamer; and his suster Noema, sche was first fyndere of<sup>1</sup> weuynghe craft. *Iosephus*. Caym gadered richesse violentliche by strengpe, and made men be lecchoures and peues, and tornede symple lyuynghe [of]<sup>2</sup> men to fyndynghe of mesures and of wyztes; he ordeyned merkes [and]<sup>2</sup> boundes of fildes and of londes, and bulde a citee and walled hit, for he dredde<sup>3</sup> ful sore hem pat he hadde i-greued. *Isidorus, libro 15<sup>o</sup>, capitulo 2<sup>o</sup>*. Men were first naked and vnarmed, nouzt siker azenst bestes, noþer azenst men, and hadde no place to fonge hem, and to kepe hem fro<sup>4</sup> colde and for hete; þan by besynesse of kynde witte pey bepouzt hem of buldynghe, þerfore pey bulde hem smale cootes and cabans, and waf ham and heled hem wip smale<sup>5</sup> twigges and wip reed, pat hire lyf myzte be þe more saaf. *Petrus, capitulo 27<sup>o</sup>*. Lamech, þe seuenpe from Adam and most schrewe, was þe firste pat brouzte yn bygamy, and so spousebreche azenst þe lawe of God and of kynde, and azenst Goddis owne dome.<sup>6</sup> *Iosephus*. Iabel ordeynede first flokkes of bestes, and merkis to knowe oon from anoþer, and departide kydes from

TREVISA.

—

gate Lamech. This Lamech, takege to hym ij. wives, Ada and Sella, gate of Ada Iabel and Tubal, and of his other wife, Sella, Tubalcaym, whiche was a smythe, and Noema, his suster, whiche founde firste the arte of weyvenge. *Iosephus*. Cayn gedrenge violently richesse, desirede men to thefte and robbery, chaungenge the simple lyfe of men, founde mesures firste, and made a cite, dredenge men, whom he hurte. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo*. The firste men, as bare and with owte armore, not sure ageyne men either bestes, hauenge as noo places for coldenesse other hete, made places to theyme by naturalle reason of rodde and reedes, that their life myzhte be in more suerte. *Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo*. Lamech, the vij<sup>th</sup>e from Adam, and the moste wickede man, inducede firste bigamy, and so adultery, ageyne the lawe of God and of nature, and ageyne the ordinaunce of God. *Iosephus*. Iabel ordeynede firste flockes, diuidenge kyddes from lambes with

MS. HARL.  
2261.

—

Cx. <sup>1</sup> was first fyndere of ] fonde first,

<sup>2</sup> Added from a.

<sup>3</sup> drad, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> for, a.

<sup>5</sup> cabans and keuerd hem with smale, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> doom, a.

Musices  
origo.

artem ferrariam et sculpturam; quo fabricante Tubal sono malleorum delectatus proportiones et consonantias ex eorum ponderibus invenit,<sup>1</sup> id<sup>2</sup> est, exercitator fuit consonantiarum, non autem inventor instrumentorum musicalium, quia illa<sup>3</sup> longe postmodum sunt inventa. *Ranulphus.* Hic dicunt docti, quod licet Tubal ad alleviandum tædium pastorale musicam primus exercuerit, non ideo rationem consonantiarum per pondera primus invenit; sed magis Pythagoras. De quo vide<sup>4</sup> infra, libro tertio, de<sup>5</sup> Pythagora, capitulo undecimo.<sup>6</sup>

Pœna  
Lamech.

*Petrus, capitulo xxvij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>2</sup> Lamech sagittarius, sed cæcutiens habuit adolescentem ductorem, cum exerceret venationem pro delectatione et usu pellium; quia non erat usus carniū ante diluvium.<sup>7</sup> Casu interfecit Cayn latentem inter fructecta, æstimans ipsum esse feram. Et quia ductor suus eum non præmunierat, eum similiter interfecit. Et ideo cum<sup>8</sup> peccatum Cayn sit punitum

<sup>1</sup> *adinvenit*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *id. . . xxvij<sup>o</sup>*] abbreviated in C.D. to—"Quod tamen Græci Pythagoræ (Pittagoræ, MSS.) fabulose ascribunt; sic etiam excogitavit operari in metallis ex figuris, quas metalla liquefacta referebant."

<sup>3</sup> *illa* after *postmodum*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *videtur*, B.; om. A.

<sup>5</sup> *de . . . undecimo*] capitulo de Pythagora, B.

<sup>6</sup> *capitulo undecimo*] om. A.

<sup>7</sup> *quia . . . diluvium*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *tamen*, B.

lambren,<sup>1</sup> and zonge from olde. *Petrus*. Tubalcain fonde first smythes craft<sup>2</sup> and grauyng, and whan Tubalcain wrouz<sup>3</sup>te in his smepes<sup>4</sup> craft, Tubal haddé grete likyng to hire pe hameres sowne,<sup>5</sup> and he fonde proporcious and acorde of melodye by wyz<sup>6</sup>te in<sup>6</sup> pe hameres, and so pey vsed hym moche in pe acorde of melodye, but he was nouzt fyndere of pe instrumentis of musik, ffor pey were i-founde longe afterward. R. Here wise men telleþ þat pey Tubal vsede first musyk for to releue hym self<sup>7</sup> while he was an herde, and kepte bestes, ffor all þat he was nouzt pe firste þat fonde pe resoun of acorde in musyk by wiztes, but Pittagoras fonde þat; perof loke wiþ ynne, in pe þridde book, of Pittagoras. *Petrus*, 27°. Lamech, an archer but somdel blynde, hadde a zongelyng þat ladde hym while he hunted for pley and likyng, oper for loue<sup>8</sup> of bestes skynnes, ffor men ete no flesche to fore Noes flood. And hit happe<sup>9</sup> þat he slow Caym, þat loted<sup>10</sup> among pe bussches, and wende þat it were a wylde beste; and for his ledere warned hym nozt, he slow hym also. And þerfore siþpe þat Caym his synne was i-punsched seuen-

TREVISA.

carectes, and the elder from the yonger. *Petrus, capitulo 27°*. MS. HARL. 2261.  
Tubalcaym fonde firste the arte of smythes and gravege, whiche laboreng at the foerge, Tubal hauenge delectacion in the sownde of the malle fonde proporciones and consonance of the weizhtes of theyme; that is to say, Tubal was an exciter of consonances but not the fynder of instrumentes musicalle, for thei were fonde by a longe season after that tyme. R. But discrete men say, thauzhe Tubal exercisede firste musike to alleuiate the tediousenes pastoralle, neuertheless he was not the firste fynder of the reason of consonance by weizhtes, but rather Pitagoras, of whom hit schalle be schewede in the thrydde booke. *Petrus, 27° capitulo*. Lameche the schoter hade a yonge man to his gouernour and leder, whiche vsenge to hunte for delectacion and vse of skynnes, for men vsede not flesche afore the grete floode, did slee Cayn lyenge priuely in couerte, trawenge hit to haue bene a dere, whiche did slee also his leder, in that he zafe not to hym a monicion per of. Therefore, sythe the synne of Cayn was punyschede vij. folde, that is to say, in

<sup>1</sup> *lambryn, a.*; *lambes, Cx.*<sup>2</sup> *smythcraft, a.*<sup>3</sup> So *a. β. γ.*; *Tubal gan worke,*

MS.; Cx. has omissions here.

<sup>4</sup> *smyth, a.*<sup>5</sup> *soun, a.*<sup>6</sup> *in]* of, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *for his plesir, Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *one, Cx.*<sup>9</sup> *happede, a.*<sup>10</sup> *loyterd, Cx.*

septuplum, id est in<sup>1</sup> septima generatione,<sup>2</sup> peccatum Lamech est punitum septuagesies<sup>3</sup> septies, quia<sup>4</sup> septuaginta et septem animæ egressæ sunt<sup>5</sup> de Lamech, quæ<sup>6</sup> in diluvio perierunt; vel quia tot erant generationes inter Lamech et<sup>7</sup> Christum, qui pœnam pro omnibus solvit.

De longæ-  
vitate  
patriarch-  
arum, et de  
gigantibus.

*Josephus.* Nullus putet falsum quod de tanta anti-  
quorum longævitate legitur, cum ipsi essent religiosi,  
et pabula haberent opportuniora, et etiam propter  
gloriosas virtutes quas<sup>8</sup> jugiter scrutabantur, scilicet  
astrologiam et geometriam, quæ nunquam addiscere<sup>9</sup>  
possent,<sup>10</sup> nisi ad minus sexcentis viverent annis; quo  
in spatio magnus annus astrorum impletur.<sup>11</sup> *Jose-  
phus.*<sup>12</sup> Usque ad septimam generationem filii Seth  
fuerunt boni; sed postmodum<sup>13</sup> viri<sup>14</sup> abusi sunt viris,  
et mulieres mulieribus. *Genesis.* Ingressique filii Dei  
ad filias hominum, id est, filii Seth ad filias Cayn,  
genuerunt gigantes. *Petrus, vicesimo nono.*<sup>15</sup> Et potuit  
esse, ut<sup>16</sup> incubi dæmones generarent gigantes, in qui-  
bus magnitudini corporum correspondebat immanitas

<sup>1</sup> in] So B.; om. E.

<sup>2</sup> in septimam generationem, C.  
(not D.)

<sup>3</sup> septuagesies, E.

<sup>4</sup> id est, B.

<sup>5</sup> sunt] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> quæ] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> inter . . . et] usque ad, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> quas ipsi, B.

<sup>9</sup> addicere, E.

<sup>10</sup> possunt, A.

<sup>11</sup> Slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> Reference added from A.B.C.

<sup>13</sup> postmodum] post 700 anno,  
C.D.

<sup>14</sup> viri after sunt, B.

<sup>15</sup> xxix] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> quod, C.D.; om. B.

fold, þat is in þe seuenþe generacioun; for Lamech <sup>1</sup> TREVISIA.  
 was þe seuenþe from Adam in þat lyne; Lamech his synne  
 was i-punsched seuene and seuenty folde; ffor seuen and  
 seuenty children þat come of hym were dede in Noes floode.  
 Opere for so many generaciouns were bytwene Lamech  
 and Crist, þat payed a payne for vs alle.<sup>2</sup> *Iosephus*. No  
 man schal trowe þat it is false, þat is i-rad of so longe lyuynge  
 of men þat were somtyme, for þey lyuede faire lyf, and  
 hadde couenable and elene mete and drynke, and also for  
 blisful vertues þat þey vsede, and made hem besy aboute  
 astrologie and gemetrie, þat þey myzte neuere lerne but 3if þey  
 lyuede sixe hundred 3ere at þe leste; for in so longe tyme  
 is þe grete 3ere of [þe]<sup>3</sup> sterres fulfilled. *Petrus*. Seth  
 his children were good men anon to þe seuenþe generacioun;  
 bot afterward men mys vsede men, and women [mysusede  
 women].<sup>4</sup> *Genesis*. Godes sones took men dou3tres, þat is to  
 menyng, Seth his sones took Caym his dou3tres, and gete  
 geantis. *Petrus* 29. And hit myzhte be þat Incubus,<sup>5</sup> suche  
 fendes as lieþ<sup>6</sup> by wommen in liknesse of men, made geantes  
 be i-gete, in þe whiche geantes gretnesse of herte answerþ  
 and acordeþ to þe hugenesse of body. But after Noes flood

the vij<sup>th</sup>e generacion; the synne of Lamech was punyschede MS. HARL.  
 lxx<sup>ii</sup> tymes vij. tymes, for lxxvij. sawles commenge furthe 2261.  
 from Lamech were pereschede in the grete floode. Other  
 elles so many generaciones were betwene Lamech and Criste,  
 which redemed mankynde. *Iosephus*. I move that a man  
 thenke not this to be fals that is redde of the longe lyfe  
 of men in that tyme, sythe thei were religious men, and  
 oportune exhibicion was 3iffen to theyme, hauenge glorious  
 vertues, as astrology and geometry, whom thei serchede  
 besily, whiche thynges they myzhte not haue lernede with-  
 owte thei hade lyvede vj<sup>c</sup>. yere, for the grete nowmbre of  
 sterres is fullefillede in that space. *Petrus*. The childer  
 of Seth were goode vn to the vij<sup>th</sup>e generacion; but after  
 that men abusede men, and women abusede women. *Genesis*.  
 The childer of God goenge to the dozhters of men, that is  
 to say the sones of Seth to the dozhters of Cayn, gate  
 gigantes. *Petrus*. And hit myzhte be that spirittes gate  
 gigantes, in whom hugenesse of sawle was corespondente  
 to the hugenesse of their body. But other gigantes were

<sup>1</sup> *Adam Laneth, a.*

<sup>2</sup> *payed rawnsome, Cx., who omits  
for vs alle.*

<sup>3</sup> *Added from a.*

<sup>4</sup> *So Cx. and a.*

<sup>5</sup> *Incuby, a. γ.; Incubi, β., Cx.,  
a preferable reading; but possibly  
Incubus may be meant for an  
(English) plural.*

<sup>6</sup> *liggeþ, a.*

animorum. Sed et post diluuium nati sunt alii gigantes in Hebron, et postmodum<sup>1</sup> fuerunt alii in Than civitate Ægypti, qui dicti sunt Tithanes,<sup>2</sup> de quorum stirpe fuit Enachim,<sup>3</sup> cujus filii habitaverunt in Hebron,<sup>4</sup> de quibus ortus est Goliath.<sup>5</sup>

De duabus columnis contra diluuium et ignem.

*Josephus.* Illis temporibus scientes homines, sicut per Adam prædictum fuerat, quod aut aquis aut igne forent perituri,<sup>6</sup> studia sua et artes quas excogitauerant<sup>7</sup> scripserunt in duabus columnis, lapidea et lateritia,<sup>8</sup> ne tolleretur<sup>9</sup> a memoria quod<sup>10</sup> sapienter excogitauerant; in marmore<sup>12</sup> quidem contra diluuium aquæ, in lateritia contra<sup>13</sup> incendium. E quibus ferunt columnam<sup>14</sup> lapideam diluuium evasisse, et adhuc in Syria permansisse.<sup>14</sup>

De diluuiio Noe, et de arca constructione.

*Genesis.* Igitur Noe cum quingentorum esset annorum genuit Sem, Cham, et Japhet, hoc est dicere, cum tantæ esset ætatis<sup>15</sup> habuit hos tres filios generatos, et post hoc spatio centum annorum confecit<sup>16</sup> arcam de lignis lævigatis, id est, politis, scilicet<sup>17</sup> intus et extra bituminatam, trecentorum cubitorum in longitudine, quinquaginta cubitorum in latitudine, triginta cubitorum in altitudine, id est, a fundo<sup>18</sup> ad tabulatum sub tignis, in qua fecit fenestram, et ostium

<sup>1</sup> *postea*, B.C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Titanes*, A.D. ; *Titantes*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Eneachym*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Ebron*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *Goliath*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *forent perituri*] fuerant perituri, B. ; deberent perire, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *excogitauerunt*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *lateritia et marmorea*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *tollerentur*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *quæ*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *excogitauerunt*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *marmorea*, A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *contra ignis*, B.

<sup>14</sup> Extract slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *esset ætatis tantæ*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *Igitur . . . confecit*] Fecit quoque Noe, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *scilicet*] om. B.

<sup>18</sup> *fundo usque*, A.D.



were opere geantes i-bore in Ebron, and afterward were opere in Than, a citee of Egipte, and pilke geantes were i-cleped Tithanes ; of hem com Enachym, his children woned in Ebron ; of hem come Golias. *Iosephus.* Pat tyme men wiste, as Adam hadde i-seide, pat pey schulde be destroyed by fuyr, oper<sup>1</sup> by water, perfore bookes pat pey hadde i-made by grete trauaille and studie pey closede hem in tweie greet pileres i-made of marbyl and of brend tyle. In a piler of marbyl for water, and in a pyler of tyle for fuyre ; ffor hit schulde be i-saued in<sup>2</sup> pat manere to helpe [of]<sup>3</sup> mankynde. Me seip pat pe piler of stoon scaped pe flood and is zit in Siria. *Genesis.* Panne whan Noe was fyue hondred zere<sup>4</sup> olde he gat Sem, Cham, and Iapheth ; pat is to menyng,<sup>5</sup> whan he was so olde, he hadde pese pre sones i-gete, and he made pe schippe an hondred zere afterward of tymber, i-planed wel smethe,<sup>6</sup> and was i-glewed with ynne.<sup>7</sup> Pe schippe was pre hondred cubite long, and fifty cubite brood, and pritty cubite high from pe cule<sup>8</sup> to pe hacches vnder pe cabans and housyng. Noe made a wyndow in his schippe, and a dore on

TREVISIA.

---

borne in Ebron after the grete floode, and other in Tan,<sup>9</sup> a cite of Egipte, whiche were callede Titanes, of the stokke of whom Enachim was, whose childer dwellede in Ebron, of whom Golias come. *Iosephus.* Men in that tyme knowenge by Adam that thei scholde peresche with water other fyre, did write artes whom thei hade geten by labore in ij. pillers of diverse ston, that hit scholde not peresche from memory. Oon ston was of marbole, ageyne the floenge of water ; that other was of tyleston, ageyne the brennenge of fyre ; whiche pillers be seyde to be zitte in Siria. *Genesis.* Perfore Noe beenge of v<sup>c</sup> yere in age, gate Sem, Cham, and Iapheth, that is to say, when Noe was of that age, he hade geten those childer, Sem, Cham, and Iapheth ; and after that, by the space of a c. yere, Noe made the schippe of pleyne burdes, dressede with picche with ynne and with owte, conteynenge iij<sup>c</sup>. cubites in longitude and l<sup>ti</sup> cubites in brodeness, xxx<sup>ti</sup> cubites in hi<sup>z</sup>hte, that was from the bothom of hit vn to the hacches, where he made a wyndowe, and a

MS. HARL.

2261.

---

<sup>1</sup> or *ellys*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *in*] by, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>4</sup> *zere he*, MS. (not *a.*)<sup>5</sup> *to seyne*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *smoth*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *within and without*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *kele*, *a.* and Cx.<sup>9</sup> *Can*, Harl. MS.

in latere deorsum. Fecit etiam mansiunculas, cœnacula, et tristega, consummans eam in<sup>1</sup> cubito.<sup>2</sup>

Aræ cum  
homine  
compara-  
tio.

*Petrus, capitulo tricesimo.*<sup>3</sup> Et facta est hæc arca instar corporis humani, in quo longitudo, scilicet<sup>4</sup> a planta usque ad verticem, sexies major est latitudine, quæ extenditur a crate lateris ad cratem; et iterum longitudo decies major est<sup>5</sup> altitudine, quæ extenditur a dorso usque ad ventrem. <sup>6</sup>*Hugutio de arca.* Arca ista non valebat<sup>7</sup> tot et tanta<sup>8</sup> capere, nisi cubiti illi fuissent geometrici; cubitus enim communis et usualis<sup>9</sup> continet pedem et dimidium, sive sex palmos. Palmus autem<sup>10</sup> extenditur a pollice usque ad extremum digitum. Cubitus vero geometricus continet sex cubitos communes, quod est<sup>11</sup> novem pedes.

Noe arcam  
ingreditur.

Igitur<sup>12</sup> arca perfecta, Noe sexcentesimo anno vitæ suæ ingressus est in eam primo die secundi mensis, introducens ad se per octo dies quæ precepta fuerant introduci, antequam Dominus plueret super terram. Et sic factum est diluvium per annum pæne terram<sup>13</sup> occupans.

<sup>1</sup> *in*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> Paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *capitulo xxx.*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *scilicet*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *est*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *Rabanus et*, ins. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *valuit*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *tot et tanta*] tanta et tot, B.; tam multa, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *usualis et communis*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *enim*, B.; *quoque*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *quod est*] scilicet, B.; *qui sunt*, D.

<sup>12</sup> The rest of this chapter is wanting in C.; part is transposed to the beginning of the chapter. See previous note.

<sup>13</sup> *terram fere*, B.

þe side downward, and housynge and cabans wip dyuers flo-  
rynge: þe wyndow was a cubyt highe. *Trevisa*. Here me<sup>1</sup>  
may wondre how þe wyndowe was i-made byneþe in þe side  
of the schippe for comynge [yn]<sup>2</sup> of water. Doctor de Lyra  
meueþ þis doute, and [sayth]<sup>3</sup> þat þere we haueþ fenestra, þat  
is a fenestre and a wyndow, þe lettre of hebrew hatte<sup>4</sup> lucerna,  
þat is a lanterne; and som men seiþ þat þat lanterne was a car-  
buncle oper som oper precious stoon, þat schoon and ʒaf liʒt  
clere i-now þere it was i-sette. Bot som oper seiþ þat þat  
wyndowe was an hool<sup>5</sup> cristal stoon, and feng yn liʒt<sup>6</sup> and hilde  
out water. Meny oper wyndowes were in þe schippe, and so it  
nedede, for [þe]<sup>7</sup> schippe was ful grete and huge, and had yn  
ful many bestes. *Petrus*, 30. Þis schip was i-made somdel to  
þe liknesse of manis body, in þe whiche þe lengþe from þe sole  
of þe foot in to þe top of þe heued<sup>8</sup> is suche sixe as þe brede,  
þat is from þe myddel of þe side ribbes in þe oper side. Also<sup>9</sup>  
þe lengþe is suche ten as þe depnesse þat streccheþ from þe  
ribbe<sup>10</sup> to þe wombe. *Trevisa*. Yf þe man is<sup>11</sup> ful schape as  
he schulde be, noþer to greet noþer<sup>12</sup> to smal. *Hugo de Arca*.<sup>13</sup>  
Þis schippe myʒte nouʒt fonge so meny bestes and oper pinges  
and so grete, but þe cubites were cubites of gemetrie.<sup>14</sup> For  
þe comoun cubite þat me vseþ conteyneþ but a foot and an  
half, þat is sixe spannes. A spanne streccheþ from þe ende of  
þe þombe to þe ende of þe myddel fynger, whan þe honde is  
i-strauʒt. But a cubite of gemetrie conteyneþ sixe comoun  
cubites, þat wil be nyne foot long. *Genesis*. Þanne whan the

TREVISA.

—

durre in the side downwarde. And also mansiones and  
other chambres, endenge theym in a cubite. *Petrus*, 30. That  
schippe was made after similitude of the man, in whom  
the longitude, whiche is from the soole of the foote vn to  
the toppe of the hede, is in vj. tymes more then the brode-  
nesse of hym, whiche is extended from side to side; and  
also the longitude of hym is x. tymes more then the hiʒhte  
whiche is extended from the bak to the bely. *Hugutio de  
Arca*. That schippe; myʒte not conteyne so many thynges  
with owte the cubites were geometricalle, for the commune  
cubite and vsualle conteynethe a foote and a dimidia, a geo-  
metricalle cubite conteynethe vj. commune cubites, whiche  
make ix. fotes. *Genesis*. Noe endenge that schippe in the

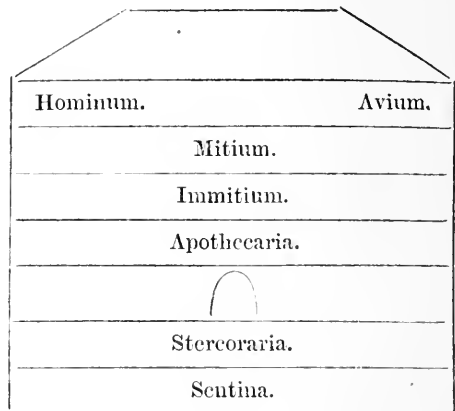
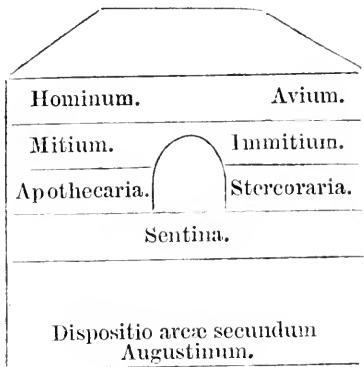
MS. HARL.  
2261.

—

<sup>1</sup> men, Cx.<sup>2</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>4</sup> haþ, a. β. γ. and Cx., which  
seems right.<sup>5</sup> al hool of, a. and Cx.<sup>6</sup> by whiche light entred, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> heed, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Also in, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>10</sup> rigge, Cx.<sup>11</sup> be of, Cx.<sup>12</sup> ne, a.<sup>13</sup> Arm, MS.<sup>14</sup> geometry, Cx.

Prima ætas  
sæculi ter-  
minatur.

Aqua nempe diluvii transcendit montes excelsos quindecim cubitis, quia per tantam altitudinem putantur opera hominum fœdasse aera, scilicet per ignis adorationem, qui tam alte extulit.<sup>1</sup> In hoc<sup>2</sup> anno terminatur prima ætas sæculi, ab Adam usque ad diluvium sub generationibus decem, quæ supra tanguntur, habens annos secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo quarto, et etiam secundum Hebræos, duo milia sexcentos quinquaginta sex. Sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorum, libro quinto, duo milia ducentos, quadraginta



Dispositio arceæ secundum alios.

duos. Sed secundum Hieronymum non plene duo milia ; secundum Methodium duo milia. Ipse nempe Methodius<sup>3</sup> omittit annos, si qui superfuerint supra millenarios, quia ipse calculat ætates per chiliades.

<sup>1</sup> *Aqua . . . extulit*] om. A.B.

<sup>2</sup> *quo*, A.B.

<sup>3</sup> *Methodius*] om. A.B.

schippe was i-made, Noe, in þe 3ere of his lyf sex hondred, entrede and 3ede in to [þat]<sup>1</sup> schippe þe firste day of þe secunde monþe, þat is May.<sup>2</sup> And in ei3te dayes he brou3te in to þe schippe al þat he was i-hote yn for to brynge,<sup>3</sup> or<sup>4</sup> oure Lorde sent reyne vppon<sup>5</sup> erþe. And so þe flood was i-made, and occupied þe erþe wel nyh al a 3ere. Þe water of þe flood passede fiftene cubites aboue þe hizest hilles. For the workes of mankynde defouled þe ayer so hi3e, as me troweþ, by worschippyng of fuyre þat smokede and spranclede<sup>6</sup> vp so hi3e. Þis 3ere endep<sup>7</sup> the firste age of þe world from Adam to Noe his flood vnder ten generaciouns þat we speke of raper. *And Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quarto.* And also the Hebrewes seiþ þat þis firste age of þe world conteyneþ two þowsand 3ere seuen hondred<sup>8</sup> and sixe and fifty; but þe seuenty forneres and Isidre also, libro quinto, seiþ two þowsand 3ere seuen hondred and two and fourty. But Ierom seiþ not fullliche two þowsand. And Methodius seiþ two þowsand, for here he leueþ þe odde 3eres þat beep ouer þe þowsandes.<sup>9</sup> For þey<sup>10</sup> caleþ and acounteþ þe ages of þe world by þowsendes, and leet þat oper deel abyde.

TREVISA.

(Diagrams of the ark as in Higden's text.)

vj<sup>c</sup>. yere of his life, entrede in to hit þe firste day of the secunde monethe, bryngenge to hit by viij<sup>th</sup>e dayes thynges commaunded to be brou3hte to hit, or the reyne began: after that a floode was made, occupienge the erthe allemoste by a yere. The water of þat floode was above the hieste hilles by xv. cubites, by whiche altitude hit is seide the werkes of men to haue corrupte the aier. In whiche yere the firste age of the worlde is terminate, from Adam to the grete floode, vnder x. generaciones, hauenge, after Iosephus, libro 1<sup>o</sup>, capitulo 4<sup>o</sup>, and after men of Ebrewe, ij<sup>m</sup> vj<sup>c</sup>. lvj. yere. But after the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores, and after Isidorus, libro 5<sup>to</sup>, ij<sup>m</sup> ij<sup>c</sup>. xlij<sup>ti</sup> yere; after Seynte Ierom not fully ij<sup>m</sup>; after Methodius ij<sup>m</sup>, but he levethe yeres, if þer be eny ouer m<sup>3</sup>, for he dothe calele the ages by ciliades.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

(Here follow diagrams of the ark, entitled, *Descriptio arca Noe, secundum doctos.*)

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> of *Matii*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> at that he was warned to brynge in, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *ar*, *a.*; *er*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> here vppon, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> sprynkeld, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> ended, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> hondred 3ere, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)

<sup>9</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; þowsand, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *he*, *β*. *γ*. and Cx., which is right, but the strange use of the pronouns has been noticed before both in MS. and *a.*

CAP. VI.<sup>1</sup>*De posteritate Noe.*<sup>2</sup>De arcu  
celesti.

*Genesis.* Exsiccatis tandem aquis diluvii,<sup>3</sup> et Noe egresso vicesimo septimo die mensis secundi, id est, Maii,<sup>4</sup> promisit Dominus Noe quod ultra non fieret diluvium. In cujus foederis signum posuit arcum suum in nubibus celi. *Petrus.*<sup>5</sup> Arcus est signum duorum iudiciorum, iudicii scilicet præteriti per aquam ne<sup>6</sup> timeatur, et futuri per ignem ut expectetur. Inde est quod arcus<sup>7</sup> habet duos<sup>8</sup> colores, exteriorem cæruleum, id est, aqueum, quia<sup>9</sup> præteriit; et igneum interiorem, quia<sup>10</sup> futurus est. Et tradunt sancti quod per quadraginta annos<sup>11</sup> ante iudicium non videbitur<sup>12</sup> arcus.

*Ranulphus.* Secundum sanctos ab Adam usque ad Noe non pluerat, nec Iris apparuerat; nec fuit usus

<sup>1</sup> The division of the chapters is not marked by the original scribe in A., but a later hand has noted Cap. vi. in the margin.

<sup>2</sup> Title wanting in MSS.

<sup>3</sup> *diluvii*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *vicesimo . . . Maii*] eadem scilicet die qua ingressus est anno revoluto, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> A.B. add 32. The true reference is to c. 35.

<sup>6</sup> *ut*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *arcus*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *duos*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *qui*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *qui*, A.B.

<sup>11</sup> *per . . . annos*] 40 annis, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *videtur*, B.

*Capitulum sextum.*

TREVISA.

AT þe laste whanne þe water of þe flood was wiþdrawe<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> Noe went out of þe schippe þe seuen and twenty day of þe secounde monþe, þat is, May; þan oure Lorde byhete Noe þat no suche flood schulde be after þat; and in tokenynge<sup>3</sup> of þe<sup>4</sup> couenant he sette his bowe in þe clowdes, þat is, þe reynbowe. *Petrus*, 32<sup>o</sup>. Þe reynbowe is tokenynge<sup>5</sup> of tweye domes, of þe dome þat was i-doo by water; for me schulde nouzt drede hit; and of þe doome þat schal be by fuyre, for me schulde drede hit. Þerfore þe bowe haþ tweie coloures, þe vtter is watery, for þe dome of water is apassed; þe ynnere is fury, for þe dome of fuyre schal be. And holy seyntes telleþ þat þe reynbowe schal nouzt be seie fourty zere to fore þe day of dome. Also þei telle þat it roon neuere from Adam to Noes flood. Also noon reynbowe was i-seie at þat tyme, noþer flesche ne fische i-ete, noþer wyn i-dronke. For þat tyme was as hit were springing tyme, and þoo was i-now and plente of al<sup>6</sup> heleful<sup>7</sup> þinges, þat was afterward i-chaunged þorw synne.

*Capitulum sextum.*

THE waters of that grete floode dryede, and Noe goen MS. HARL. 2261.  
furthe from his schippe the xxvij<sup>th</sup> day of the secounde monethe, whiche was Maii, God promisede to Noe that the waters scholde sease, in a signe where of he put his bawe in the clowdes of heyn. *Petrus*, 22<sup>o</sup> *capitulo*. That bawe is a signe of ij. iuggementes, oon paste by water, whiche scholde not be dredde, and an other iuggemente to comme by fyre whiche scholde be taryede. Therefore hit is that a bawe hathe ij. coloures, the coloure exteriale as of water, whiche is paste, and a coloure of fire with ynne, whiche is to comme. Also holy men expresse that the bawe schalle not be seen by xl<sup>th</sup> yere afore the iuggemente. Also they say that there was noo reyne from Adam vn to the grete floode, neiþer that bawe did appere, neither the exercise of flesche, fische, either of vynes, was vsede; for that tyme was as the temperate tyme of ver, and habundaunce of hollesomme thynges whiche were chaungede afterwarde by synne. Wherefore the eitenge of flesche

<sup>1</sup> *flode withdrewe*, a. and Cx.<sup>2</sup> *and*] om. Cx.<sup>3</sup> *tokyn*, a. Cx.<sup>4</sup> *þat*, a.<sup>5</sup> *tokyn*, a.<sup>6</sup> Text as in a. and Cx.; some words repeated without sense in MS.<sup>7</sup> *helthful*, Cx.

Incipiunt  
genera-  
tiones a  
Noe usque  
Abraham.  
Shem.  
Arphaxad.

carnis aut piscis aut vineæ, sed herbarum et radicum.<sup>1</sup> Vixit Noe post diluuium trecentis<sup>2</sup> quinquaginta annis, et sic in toto vixit nongentis quinquaginta annis; et sic<sup>3</sup> mortuus est, relictis post se filiis<sup>4</sup> Sem, Chaam, et Jafeth,<sup>5</sup> de quibus disseminatum est omne genus hominum.<sup>6</sup> *Genesis*.<sup>7</sup> Igitur biennio post diluuium Sem centum annorum existens<sup>8</sup> genuit Arfaxath,<sup>9</sup> et vixit postmodum<sup>10</sup> quingentis annis.<sup>11</sup> Arfaxat, pater Chaldæorum secundum Hieronymum, centum triginta quinque annorum existens secundum Isidorum, libro sexto, sed<sup>12</sup> secundum Hebræos triginta quinque<sup>13</sup> annorum genuit Sale, et vixit postmodum trecentis tribus annis, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes, et<sup>14</sup> secundum Lucam Evangelistam qui secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, Arfaxat centum triginta quinque annorum existens genuit Caynan,<sup>15</sup> et postmodum vixit trecentis triginta annis.<sup>16</sup>

Cainan.  
Salah.

Caynan<sup>17</sup> centum triginta<sup>18</sup> annorum existens genuit Sale,<sup>19</sup> a quo sunt antiqui Samaritæ vel Judæi,<sup>20</sup> et postmodum, secundum Septuaginta interpretes,<sup>14</sup> vixit quadringentis triginta octo annis.

<sup>1</sup> *R. . . radicum*] This passage (added in margin of C.) is as follows in A.B.C.:—"Item dicunt quod ab Adam usque ad diluuium non pluerat nec arcus apparuerat,\* nec usus carnis, piscis, aut vineæ fuerat, quia tunc fuit quasi vernalis temperies et copia rerum salubrium, quæ postmodum per peccatum fuerunt immutata,† unde et‡ post diluuium esus carniū concessus est homini, qui prius herbis et radicibus vescēbatur."

<sup>2</sup> *cc.*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *sic*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *post se filiis*] tribus post se filiis, A.; tribus filiis, B.; tribus filiis suis, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Japhet*, A.B.D.

\* *erat*, B.

† *immutata sunt*, A.B.

‡ *ei*] om. A.

<sup>6</sup> *humanum*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *Genesis*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *secundo anno post diluuium*, ins. C.

<sup>9</sup> *Arphaxat*, A.D.

<sup>10</sup> *postmodum*] almost always *post* in this cap. in C.; *postea*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *annos*, D.; correctly; but the MSS. have *annis* almost always.

<sup>12</sup> *et*, A.

<sup>13</sup> 239, B.

<sup>14</sup> *et . . . interpretes*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *Chaynnan*, A.

<sup>16</sup> Sentence slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Luca teste*, ins. C.D., badly.

<sup>18</sup> 230, D.

<sup>19</sup> By a blunder of the scribe the sentence has been transposed in A., marginal notes being placed to indicate the errors.

<sup>20</sup> *vel Judæi*] Iudi, E.; om. A.



Bot after þe flood mankynde hadde leue forto ete fische and flesche,<sup>1</sup> þat raper ete herbes and rootes. Noe lyuede after þe flood pre hondred ʒere and fifty, and he leuede in alle nyne hondred wynter<sup>2</sup> and fifty, and so deyde, and lefte þre sones [on lyue]<sup>3</sup> Sem, Cam, and Iapheth, of þe whiche þre com al manere of mankynde. *Genesis.* Þanne two ʒere after þe flood Sem was an hondred ʒere old, and gat Arphaxath, and lyuede afterward fyue hondred ʒere. Arphaxath was fader of Caldeys, and gate Sale when he was an hondred ʒere olde and fyue and þritty, as Ierom seip; but Isidre, libro sexto and þe<sup>4</sup> Hebrewes seip fyue and þritty ʒere. He gat Caynan,<sup>5</sup> and lyued afterward þre hondred ʒere and þre;<sup>6</sup> [but þe seventy, and Luc also þat folweþ hem: Arphaxat whanne he was an hondred ʒere and fyue and þritty, he gat Caynan, and lyuede afterward þre hondred ʒere and þritty.]<sup>7</sup> Caynan, an hondred ʒere olde and þritty, gat Sale; of hym come þe olde Samaritans and the Iudees, and lyuede afterward foure hondred and eiʒte and þritty ʒere,<sup>8</sup> so<sup>9</sup> þe seuenty telleþ.

TREVISA.

—

was grauntede to man after that grete floode, vsenge a fore MS. HARL. that tyme to eite yerbes and rootes. Noe lyvede after that 2261. floode by ccc. and l<sup>ti</sup> yere, and so he lyvede in alle ix<sup>c</sup> and l<sup>ti</sup> yere, whiche dyenge lefte his iij. childer after hym, Sem, Cham, and Iapheth, of whom alle the kynde of man was disseminate. *Genesis.* Sem beenge of a c. yere in age, in the secunde yere after the grete floode, gate Arphaxat, and lyvede after v<sup>c</sup> yere. Arphaxat, the fader of men of Caldea, after Seynte Ierom, beenge of a c. and xxxv<sup>ti</sup> yere after Ysoder and men of Hebrewes, when he was of the age of xxxv<sup>ti</sup> yere, he gate Sale, and lyvede after ccc. iij. yere. But after the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores, and after Seynte Luke Euangeliste, whiche foloede theyme, Arphaxat of a c. and xxxv<sup>ti</sup> yere in age, gate Cainan, and lyvede after ccc. and xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere. Cainan, hauenge a c. and xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere in

<sup>1</sup> *flesch and fische, a.*<sup>2</sup> *yere, Cx.*<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>4</sup> *þe*] om. *a.*<sup>5</sup> *He gat Caynan*] om. *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>6</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *þritty*, MS.<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.* (the latter has also *foloweth.*)<sup>8</sup> *ʒere*] transposed in *a.*<sup>9</sup> *so þat*, MS. (not *a.* or *Cx.*)

- Sale. Sale secundum Hebræos triginta<sup>1</sup> annorum existens genuit Heber, a quo dicti sunt Hebræi; et postmodum vixit quadringentis<sup>2</sup> annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus anteponunt centum ante<sup>3</sup> triginta et post trecentos triginta.<sup>4</sup>
- Heber. Heber, a quo dicti sunt<sup>5</sup> Hebræi<sup>6</sup> secundum Hebræos triginta quatuor<sup>7</sup> annorum existens genuit Phaleg,<sup>8</sup> et postmodum vixit quadringentis triginta annis; sed<sup>9</sup> Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum ante triginta quatuor.<sup>10</sup>
- Phaleg. Phaleg<sup>11</sup> secundum Hebræos triginta annorum existens<sup>12</sup> genuit Reu vel<sup>13</sup> Ragau, et postmodum vixit<sup>14</sup> ducentis novem annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes<sup>15</sup> et Isidorus addunt centum ante<sup>16</sup> triginta, et postmodum ponunt<sup>17</sup> ducentos octo.<sup>18</sup> Et vocatus est iste Phaleg,<sup>19</sup> quod interpretatum est<sup>20</sup> *divisio*, eo quod<sup>21</sup> in diebus<sup>22</sup> ejus, cum terra esset labii unius, linguæ confusæ sunt turris<sup>23</sup> constructione, et sic gentes per terras sunt divisæ.<sup>24</sup>
- Ragau vel Reu. Ragau secundum Hebræos triginta duorum annorum existens<sup>25</sup> genuit Sarug, et vixit postmodum ducentis<sup>26</sup> septem annis; sed<sup>27</sup> Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta duos,<sup>28</sup> et postmodum<sup>29</sup> ponunt<sup>30</sup> ducentos septem.<sup>31</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 100, D.<sup>2</sup> 430, C.; 403, D.<sup>3</sup> *ante*] om. B.<sup>4</sup> 303, D.; sentence slightly varied in C.D.<sup>5</sup> *dicti sunt*] om. C.D.<sup>6</sup> *a... Hebræi*] om. B.<sup>7</sup> *quatuor*] om. B.C.<sup>8</sup> So C.D.; *Phalech*, A.B.E.<sup>9</sup> *quadringentis... sed*] 40, B.<sup>10</sup> *ponunt... quatuor*] anteponunt cxxxiii. annos, B.; ante ponunt 100 et post 330, C.D.<sup>11</sup> So C.D.; *Phalech*, A.B.E.<sup>12</sup> *existens*] om. C.D.<sup>13</sup> *Reu vel*] om. D.<sup>14</sup> *vixit*] added from A.C.D.<sup>15</sup> *interpretes*] om. A.<sup>16</sup> *anteponunt centum*, B.<sup>17</sup> *ponunt*] om. B.<sup>18</sup> *sed... octo*] om. C.D.<sup>19</sup> *Phalech*, A.B.E.<sup>20</sup> *interpretatur*, C.D.<sup>21</sup> *eo quod*] quia, C.D.<sup>22</sup> *tempore*, B.<sup>23</sup> *in turris*, B.<sup>24</sup> Transposed in C.D.<sup>25</sup> *existens*] om. C.D.<sup>26</sup> *trecentis*, C.D.<sup>27</sup> *sed secundum*, B.<sup>28</sup> *anteponuntur* 132, B.<sup>29</sup> *post*, B.<sup>30</sup> *ponunt*] om. B.<sup>31</sup> 107, B.; *sed lxx. et Isidorus ponunt 300 ante 32*, C.D.

Hebrewes seip þat Sale, whan he was þritty ʒere olde, gat Heber. Of pis Heber þey were i-cleped Hebrewes. And Sale lyuede after he hadde i-gete Heber foure hondred ʒere, but þe seuenty and Isidre acounteþ<sup>1</sup> þe hondred ʒere afore<sup>2</sup> þe þritty, and þre hondred ʒere after þe þritty. Of [Heber]<sup>3</sup> Hebrewes had<sup>4</sup> þe name. Þe Hebrewes seip þat Heber foure and þritty ʒere olde gat Phalech, and lyuede afterward foure hondred ʒere and þritty; but þe seuenty putteþ þe hondred tofore þe foure and þritty. Hebrewes seip þat Phalech þritty ʒere olde gat Reu, þat hatte Ragau also, and lyuede afterward two hondred ʒere and nyne; but þe seuenty and Ysidre putteþ þe hondred tofore þe þritty, and afterwarde two hondred and nyne. Dis hatte<sup>5</sup> Phalech riʒtfulliche, for Phalech is to menyngē<sup>6</sup> *departynge*; for longage was departed in his tyme, þat rapur was al oon in þe buldynge of þe tour Babel. And so men were departed in to dyuers londes. Ragau, two and þritty ʒere olde, gat Sarug, and lyuede afterward two hondred yere and seune; so seip Hebrewes. But þe seuenty and Isidre seip an hondred tofore two and þritty, and afterwarde two hondred and seune. Hebrewes seip þat Sarug þritty ʒere olde gat

TREVISA.

age, gate Sale, of whom the olde Samarites come. Sale, after men of Hebrewē, beenge of xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere in age, gate Heber of whom men of Hebrewē toke name, and lyvede after cccc. yere; but after the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores a. c. yere be put afore xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere, and after that ccc. and xxx<sup>ti</sup>. Heber, of whom men of Hebrewē toke name, hauenge xxxiiij. yere in age, gate Phaleg, and lyvede after cccc. and xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere; but the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores put a c. yere afore xxxiiij<sup>ti</sup> yere. Phaleg, after men of Hebrewē, of xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere in age, gate Reu or Ragau, and lyvede after ij<sup>c</sup>. and ix. yere; but the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores and Ysoder putte a c. yere afore xxx<sup>ti</sup> and cc. and vij. yere after, and he was callede Phaleg, as diuision by interpretation, in that the langage were confusede in his daies in the construccion of the towre of Babel, and so the peple were diuided. Ragau, after men of Hebrewē, hauenge xxxij<sup>ti</sup> yere in age, gate Sarug, lyvenge after cc. and vij. yere; but the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores and Ysoder putte an c. yere afore xxxij<sup>ti</sup> and after ij<sup>c</sup>. vij. yere. Sarug, after men of Hebrewē, of xxx<sup>ti</sup>

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *accompted*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *tofore*, a.; *bifor*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>4</sup> *haue*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *heet*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *to say*, Cx.

Sarug. Sarug secundum Hebræos triginta annorum existens<sup>1</sup> genuit Nachor, et postmodum vixit ducentis duobus<sup>2</sup> annis, sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta et postmodum ducentos.

Nachor. Nachor secundum Hebræos viginti annorum<sup>3</sup> existens<sup>4</sup> genuit Thare, et postmodum<sup>5</sup> vixit annis centum novem; sed Septuaginta interpretes<sup>6</sup> ponunt<sup>7</sup> centum ante viginti novem. Isidorus<sup>8</sup> dicit Nachor fuisse septuaginta novem annorum, quando genuit Thare.

Thare. Thare secundum Hebræos et secundum Isidorum cum esset<sup>9</sup> annorum septuaginta genuit Abram,<sup>10</sup> Nachor, et<sup>11</sup> Aram; et postmodum vixit centum triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes ponunt centum ante septuaginta annos. *Petrus, tricesimo octavo.*<sup>12</sup>

Ætas secunda terminatur. Et sic<sup>13</sup> terminatur secunda sæculi ætas a diluvio usque ad nativitatem Abrahæ, per decem generationes protensa; habens secundum Hebræos, Josephum, et Hieronymum annos ducentos<sup>14</sup> nonaginta duos, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinum sunt<sup>15</sup> anni mille septuaginta duo sub generationibus<sup>16</sup> undecim; sed<sup>17</sup> secundum Isidorum sunt anni nongenti<sup>18</sup> quadraginta duo, secundum Methodium habet chiliadem.

<sup>1</sup> *existens*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *ducentos*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *annorum*] om. E.

<sup>4</sup> *viginti existens*] annorum 39, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *et postmodum*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *interpretes*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *præponunt*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *autem*, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *cum esset*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Abraham*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Nachor et*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *tricesimo octavo*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *sic*] om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *mille ducentos*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *sunt*] om. B.

<sup>16</sup> *et generationes*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *sed*] om. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *nonaginti*, E.

Nachor, and lyued afterward two hondred ʒere and tweyne; TREVISA.  
 but the seenty and Ysidre putteþ an hondred ʒere to fore  
 pritty,<sup>1</sup> and two hondred after.<sup>2</sup> Hebrewes seip þat Nachor  
 nyne and twenty ʒere olde gat Thare, and lyued afterward an  
 hondrede ʒere and nyne; but þe seenty putteþ an hondred  
 ʒere to fore nyne and twenty; and Isidre seip þat Nachor  
 was seenty ʒere and nyne, whan he gat Thare. [þe  
 Hebrewes and Isidre seip þat]<sup>3</sup> Thaare seenty ʒere olde  
 gat Abraham, Naachor, and Aram,<sup>4</sup> and lyued afterward an  
 hondred ʒere and pritty, but the seenty putteþ the hondred  
 to fore þe seenty ʒeres.<sup>5</sup> *Trevisa.* ʒit take hede rediliche  
 of þe seenty: I haue i-seide to fore þat þey were þre score  
 and ten, þat tornede Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe:  
 hem I clepe þe Seenty, and so þey beþ i-cleped in þis book  
 and of meny holy doctoures; and þey beþ specialliche i-cleped  
 þe Seenty tourneris,<sup>6</sup> for þey torned Holy Writte out of Ebrew  
 in to Grewe.<sup>7</sup> *Petrus, tricesimo octavo.* And so the secunde  
 age of þe world is i-ended, from Noes flood to Habrahams  
 burþe; and conteyneþ ten generaciouns, and two hondred ʒere  
 foure<sup>8</sup> score and twelue, so seip the Hebrewes, Ioseph, and  
 Ierom. But þe seenty, as<sup>9</sup> Seynt Austyn, acounteþ a þow-  
 sand ʒere and two and seenty, and eleuene<sup>10</sup> generaciouns.  
 But Isidre acounteþ nyne hondred ʒere, and two and fourty;

---

yere in age, gate Nachor, and lyvede after ij<sup>c</sup> and ij. yere; MS. HARL.  
2261.  
 but the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores and Ysoder putte a c. yere afore  
 xxx<sup>ti</sup>, and after that cc. yere. Nachor, after men of He-  
 brewe, hauenge xxix<sup>ti</sup> yere in age, gate Thare, and lyvede  
 after a c. and ix. yere. But Ysoder seithe Nachor to haue  
 been of lxxix. yere when that he did gette Thare. Thare,  
 after men of Hebrewes and Ysoder, of lxx<sup>ti</sup> yere, gate Abra-  
 ham, and lyvede after a c. and [x] xx<sup>ti</sup> yere; but the lxx<sup>ti</sup>  
 interpretatores putte a c. yere afore lxx<sup>ti</sup>. *Petrus, capitulo*  
*38º.* And so the secunde age of the worlde is terminate  
 from the grete floode to the natiuite of Abraham by x.  
 generaciones, hauenge, after men of Hebrewes, Iosephus, and  
 Seynte Ierom, ix<sup>c</sup> xc. and ij. yere; but after the lxx<sup>ti</sup>  
 interpretatores and Seynte Austyn, m<sup>l</sup> yere, lxxij., vnder  
 a xj. generaciones. And after Ysoder, ix<sup>c</sup> yere xlij<sup>ti</sup>. And  
 after Methodius, hit hathe a ciliade. The cause of this

<sup>1</sup> *the thrytty*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *afterward*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Aaron*, MS.; *Aran*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *yere*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *turneres*, *a.*

<sup>7</sup> Cx. omits the extract from Tre-  
visa.

<sup>8</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; and *pritty foure*,  
MS.

<sup>9</sup> and, *a.* and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *enleuene*, *a.* and Cx.

Diversitas  
inter He-  
bræos et  
lxx. inter-  
pretes.

Causa hujus diversitatis est quod Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinus addunt centum annos ad ætatem cujuslibet generationis<sup>1</sup> ab Arphaxat<sup>2</sup> usque ad Nachor. *Beda*. Sicut Noe fuit decimus ab Adam, sic Abram<sup>3</sup> fuit decimus a Noe. Veruntamen Lucas in serie<sup>4</sup> genealogiæ suæ<sup>5</sup> quando dixit “qui fuit Sale, qui fuit “Caynan, qui fuit Arphaxat,” secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, qui unam generationem plusquam Hebræi posuerunt. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro quintodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo*. Cum aliquid diversum in pluribus translationibus reperitur quod juxta fidem rerum gestarum stare non potest, potius credatur illi linguæ unde in aliam fit translatio. *Beda*. Translatio<sup>6</sup> Septuaginta interpretum vel minus solícite primo edita est, vel postmodum a gentilibus<sup>7</sup> corrupta. *Eusebius*. Ab Adam usque ad Abraham nulla penitus<sup>8</sup> Græca nec barbara invenitur historia. *Methodius*. Centesimo anno tertiæ<sup>9</sup> chiliadis<sup>10</sup> natus est<sup>11</sup> Noe filius nomine Ionicus,<sup>12</sup> cui dedit Noe dominationes usque ad mare Eliocora, cui

Ionicus,  
Noe filius.

<sup>1</sup> generantis, A.C. ; ætatem after generationis, B.

<sup>2</sup> So A.D. ; Arfaxat, E.

<sup>3</sup> Abraham, A.B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> suæ, added from A.B.C.D.

<sup>5</sup> geneologie, E. (not A.)

<sup>6</sup> vero, ins. B.

<sup>7</sup> gentibus, B.

<sup>8</sup> est nec, ins. C.D. ; nec (only), ins. A.B.

<sup>9</sup> tertiæ] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> chiliadis, C.

<sup>11</sup> est] om. E.

<sup>12</sup> Ionichus, E.

and Met[h]odius a þowsand. Þe caas of þis dyuersite<sup>1</sup> is, for þe TREVISA.  
 seenty, and Seynt Austyn<sup>2</sup> also, putteþ to eueriche fader his  
 age from Arphaxath to Nachor an hondred ʒere. *Beda*. As  
 Noe was þe tenþe from Adam, so Abraham was þe tenþe from  
 Noe. Nopeles Luke followeþ þe seenty in his geneologie,  
 whan he seip, “Qui fuit Sale,” þat is to menyng, “þat was  
 “Sale his sone” and so forþ, “þat was Caynan his sone, þat  
 “was Arphaxath his sone.” Þere Luke foloweþ þe seenty, þat  
 putteþ on generacioun moo þan þe Hebrewes putteþ. *Augus-  
 tinus de Civitate, libro quintodecimo, capitulo tertidecimo*.  
 Whanne in meny translaciouns is dyuersite i-founde, þat may  
 noupt stonde; þanne þe firste longage, þat þe tornynge and  
 translacioun is i-made of, schal be most i-trowed.<sup>3</sup> *Beda*. Þe  
 tornynge and translacioun of þe seenty was first nouʒt ful  
 rediliche i-torned, oper it was afterward apayred by mysbe-  
 leued men. *Eusebius*. From Adam to Abraham is no storie  
 i-founde in Grewe, noþer in straunge langage. *Methodius*.  
 Noe hadde a sone i-bore two þowsand ʒere and an hondred  
 after þe begynnyng of þe worlde; þat sone heet Ionicus;  
 Noe ʒaf hym lordschip anoon to þe see Eliochora. To hym  
 God Almyʒty ʒaf witte and wisdom þat he schulde fynde

diuersite may be assignede þat the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores, MS. HARL.  
 and Seynte Austyn putte a c. yere to the age of euery 2261.  
 man from Arphaxat to Nachor. *Beda*. And lyke as Noe  
 was the x<sup>the</sup> from Adam, soe Abraham was the x<sup>the</sup> from  
 Noe; but truly Seynte Luke folowede the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpre-  
 tatores in the ordre of his genealogy when he seyde “whiche  
 “was Sale, whiche was Cainan,” whiche putte oon genera-  
 tion more then men of Hebrewes putte. *Augustinus de Civi-  
 tate Dei, libro quinto decimo, capitulo 13º*. When a thyng  
 is founde variable and diuerse in many translaciones, that  
 hit may stonde accordenge to the trawethe of the gestes,  
 then hit is to ʒiffe moste specialle credence to that lan-  
 gage from whom the translacion is made. *Beda*. The  
 translacion of the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores was made insuffi-  
 cientely, either hyt was corrupte of peple afterwarde.  
*Eusebius*. There is noo storye founde from Adam vn to  
 Abraham in Grewe other in the langage of Barbre. *Me-  
 thodius*. Ionicus, the son of Noe, was borne in the c. yere  
 of the thridde ciliade; to whom Noe ʒafe many dominations;  
 and God ʒafe to hym a ʒifte of sapience that he myʒhte

<sup>1</sup> *dyuercete, a.*<sup>2</sup> *Augustyn, Cx.*<sup>3</sup> *bileued, Cx.*

etiam dedit Deus donum sapientiæ, ut inveniret astronomiam, et quod<sup>1</sup> sciret prædicere quosdam eventus, potissime<sup>2</sup> de ortu et occasu quatuor regnorum principalium; scilicet quod primi<sup>3</sup> de Cham regnarent Assyrii, de quo fuit Belus; postmodum de Sem,<sup>4</sup> Medi, Persæ, et Græci; denuo<sup>5</sup> de Japhet, Romani. Hæc ostendit Ionicus<sup>6</sup> Nemphroti<sup>7</sup> discipulo suo, qui exhinc accensus libidine<sup>8</sup> dominandi regnavit inter filios Cham in Babylone, qui interim obtinuerunt Assyrios et Ægyptios, quousque regnaret Ninus<sup>9</sup> Assyrios. *Josephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.*<sup>10</sup> Post obitum Noe in diebus Phaleg,<sup>11</sup> cum terra esset labii unius, filii filiorum Noe, ducente et docente eos Nemphrot, filio Chus filii Cham filii Noe, putantes felicitatem non a Deo sed propria virtute sibi provenire, insuper et<sup>12</sup> arbitrantur<sup>13</sup> quod Deus per invidiam eos separare vellet,<sup>14</sup> ut sic divisos eos facilius subjugare posset, timentesque aliud<sup>15</sup> diluvium adventurum,<sup>16</sup> turrim altam ex cocto latere et bitumine colligato ædificabant in campo Sennaar,<sup>17</sup> ubi postmodum constructa est Babylonia. Sed verius<sup>18</sup> eos dispersit Deus, ne dis-

Nemphrot  
vel Nim-  
rod.

Turris  
Babel.

<sup>1</sup> *quod*] ut, B.; om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *præcipue*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *primo*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Seem*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *post*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Ionichus*, some MSS.

<sup>7</sup> *Nembroti*, D., and similarly below.

<sup>8</sup> *amore*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *qui primo subjugavit*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *capitulo quinto*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *Phalec*, E.

<sup>12</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> So C.D.; *arbitrabantur*, A.E.

<sup>14</sup> *hac de causa*, ins. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *aliud*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *adventurum*] om. C.D.; *venturum*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Sennaar*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *Verius autem*, D.



science of astronomye, and he coupe<sup>1</sup> telle to forehonde<sup>2</sup> what schulde byfalle<sup>3</sup> and come afterward; and specialliche of pe bygynnyng and endyng of pe foure cheef kyngdoms. And so pey knewe [pat]<sup>4</sup> firste of Cham pe Assires schulde regne; of Cham com Belus. Afterward of Sem pe Medes, pe Perses, and Grees.<sup>5</sup> Pan of Iapheth pe Romayns. Ionichus schewed al pis to his disciple [Nemproth, perfore]<sup>6</sup> Nemproth had greet desire to reigne, and reigned in Babiloyne amonge Cham his children. Pey get and hild Assiria and Egipt, forto Nynus reigned in Assiria vpon pe Assires. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.* After pat Noe was deed in Phalech his tyme, whan<sup>7</sup> al pe men of pe worlde hadde oon longage and tonge, Noe his children by ledyng and by techyng of Nemproth trowed pat good happes and good speede is nouzt of God Almyzty, but by manis owne vertues and dedes. Also pey wende pat God Almyzty wolde departe hem by enuye, pat he myzte pe more liztliche make hem suget. Also pey dradde pat anoper flood schulde come, and bulde a wel hiže place<sup>8</sup> of brent tyle and glewe instede of mortar in pe feeld pat hatte Sennaar; pere Babiloyne was afterward i-bulde, but God Almyzty departed

TREVISA.

fynde astronomy, and to knowe thynges to comme, and specially of the spryngenge and fallenge of iiij. realmes, that is to say, men of Assiria scholde [come] of Cham, of whom Belus come. Afterwarde men of Media, of Persa, and men of Grewe scholde comme of Sem, and the Romanes of Iapheth. Ionicus schewede this to Nemproth his disciple, whiche accende in luste of dominacion reignede in Babilon among the childer of Cham, whiche obteynede men of Assiria and of Egipte vn tille that Ninus reignede there. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.* After the dethe of Noe in the daies of Phaleg, when the erthe was of oon langage, Nemproth techenge theyme, son of Chus, the son of Cham other Chuder,<sup>9</sup> the son of Noe, trawenge felicite not to be of God but of their propre vertu, supposede that God wolde separate theyme that he myzhte subiecte theym diuidede the rather to hym, dredenge an other floode to comme, made to theyme an hie towre of sodde, tyle, ston, made sure with pyche, in the felde of Sennar, where Babilon was edifiede afterwarde. R. But truly God dispersede theyme

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *kouþ, a.*<sup>2</sup> *bifore, Cx.*<sup>3</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *byfalleþ, MS.*<sup>4</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*; *knew-ethe, MS.*<sup>5</sup> *the Grees, Cx.,* which is better.<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *than, Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *tour, a.*<sup>9</sup> The *MS.* has been corrected, and the reading is somewhat uncertain.

sentiones inter se<sup>1</sup> facerent. Vocatus est autem<sup>2</sup> locus ille Babel, quod sonat *confusio*, eo quod linguæ ædificantium ibidem divino nutu sint<sup>3</sup> confusæ. *Ranulphus*.<sup>4</sup> Heber putatur immunis a conspiratione in turris constructione, et ideo<sup>5</sup> immunis<sup>6</sup> a linguæ confusione. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo quinto*.<sup>7</sup> Igitur Nemphrot robustus venator hominum,<sup>8</sup> id est, oppressor, expulso Assur de terra illa, cœpit regnare inter filios Cham in Babylone civitate, quam fundavit. Hanc tamen postmodum Semiramis regina ampliavit. Deinde Nemphrot transivit ad Persas, et<sup>9</sup> docuit adorare ignem et colere,<sup>10</sup> ubi fundavit civitatem Niniven; quam postmodum Ninus et Semiramis<sup>11</sup> ampliarunt.<sup>12</sup>

CAP. VII.<sup>13</sup>

*De filiis Noe et de regnis ab eorum posteris fundatis*.<sup>14</sup>

Gentes  
per terras  
divisæ;  
hominum  
variæ for-  
tunæ.

*Augustinus De Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo*.<sup>15</sup> Gentibus itaque per terras divisis, quibusque suas cupiditates sectantibus, dum id<sup>16</sup> quod appetebatur nemini sufficere videbatur, adversus seipsas<sup>17</sup> dividebantur;<sup>18</sup> et pars prævalens reliquam opprimebat,

<sup>1</sup> eos, B.

<sup>2</sup> autem] so A.B.C.D.; om. E.

<sup>3</sup> sunt, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Ranulphus*] *Freculphus*, B.; om. A.C. The passage is added in the margin of C.; D. omits it.

<sup>5</sup> *iccirco*, A.B.

<sup>6</sup> fuit, B.C.

<sup>7</sup> *capitulo xxxv.*] om. C.D. The true reference is to *Hist. Gen.* c. 37.

<sup>8</sup> *hominum*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> et] quos, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> et colere] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> So B.; *Semira*, E.; *Samiramis*, A.; *Semiramis uxor sua plurimum*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *ampliauerunt*, A.

<sup>13</sup> *Cap. VII.*] om. B.

<sup>14</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>15</sup> The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 2.

<sup>16</sup> *illud*, A.B.

<sup>17</sup> So B.; *se ipsam*, A.D.E.

<sup>18</sup> So B.; *dividebatur*, A.D.E.

hem for þey schulde not make discencioun and stryf among hem self. Þis Nemprot was Chus his sone ; Chus was Cham his sone ; and Cham was Noe his [sone].<sup>1</sup> Þat place is i-cleped Babel, þat is to menyng *schedynge* ; for þere at God Almyȝte his heste þe longages and tonges of þe bulders were i-schad and to schift.<sup>2</sup> Heber was i-holde gilteles of conspiracioun in þe buldinge of þe toure, and þerfore he was i-spared as gilteles in þe schedynge of tonges. *Petrus, tricesimo quinto.* Þanne Nemprot, a stronge huntere of men, þat is, a tyraunt vppon men, he putte Assur out of þat londe, and byganne to reigne among Cham his children<sup>3</sup> in þe citee of Babiloyne þat he bulde. Noeles Semiramis þe queene afterward made þis citee wel more. Afterward Nemprot wente to þe men of Pers and tauȝte hem to worschippe þe fuyre, and foundede pere þe citee of<sup>4</sup> Nyneue. Afterward Ninus and Semiramis<sup>5</sup> made þat citee more.

TREVISA.

*Capitulum septimum.*

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo.* Whanne men were departed and to schift<sup>6</sup> in to dyuers londes, and euerich folowed his owne likynge and wille, while

rather leste thei scholde make dissencion amonge theyme selfe, whiche place was callede Babel, sowndenge *a confusion*, in that the langages of men edifienge hit wære confusede by the wyll of God. But Heber was trawede to be with owte blame from conspiracion in the makenge of that towre, wherefore he was partelesse in the confusion of the langage of theyme. *Petrus, 15°.* There Nemproth the bostuous oppressor of men, expellenge Assur, began to reigne in the cite of Babilon amonge the childer of Cham, whiche cite he made, whom whene Semiramis made more large. After that Nemproth wente to men of Persa, and tauȝhte theyme to worschippe fire, where he made the cite of Niniuen, whom Ninus and Semiramis did ampliate afterwarde.

MS. HARL.  
2261.*Capitulum septimum.*

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo primo.* This peple diuided in to the worlde, and folowenge the lustes of ambicion, seenge that thyng not to be sufficiunte that was desirede, was diuidede amonge theyme selfe;

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>2</sup> *skaterd*, *Cx.*<sup>3</sup> *childer*, *Cx.*<sup>4</sup> *of*] *om. a.*<sup>5</sup> *Semyramys*, MS. (*Semyramis*, above.)<sup>6</sup> *to schufte* or *skatred*, *Cx.*

saluti libertatem præferens, ita ut magnæ<sup>1</sup> fierent admirationi, qui perire maluerunt quam servire; cum<sup>2</sup> vox naturæ sit malle subici quam deleri. Hinc non sine Dei providentia factum est, ut quidam essent regnis præditi, quidam subditi.<sup>3</sup> *Isidorus, libro octavo,*

Posteritas  
Sem.

*capitulo secundo.*<sup>4</sup> Gentes igitur de Sem, primogenito Noe, descendentes possederunt terram meridianam ab ortu solis usque ad Phœnices, sub linguis viginti septem, patrias<sup>5</sup> quadringentas sex occupantes.<sup>6</sup> Qui vero<sup>7</sup>

Posteritas  
Cham.

de Cham descenderunt a Sidone per oceanum austrinum<sup>8</sup> usque ad Gaditanum<sup>9</sup> fretum tenuerunt patrias trecentas nonaginta quatuor sub linguis triginta. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo.*<sup>10</sup> Qui autem

Posteritas  
Japhet.

de stirpe Japhet a Tauro monte Ciliciæ<sup>11</sup> descenderunt<sup>12</sup> versus aquilonem per oceanum septentrionalem mediam partem Asiæ et omnem Europam usque ad oceanum Britannicum, tenuerunt patrias ducentas sub linguis et gentibus quindecim, nomina locis et po-

<sup>1</sup> *magni*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *tamen*, ins. C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *subjecti*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Isidorus, libro quarto*, C.D. The true reference is to lib. ix. c. 2.

<sup>5</sup> *vero*, ins. C.

<sup>6</sup> *occupantes*] om. E.

<sup>7</sup> *vero*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *austrum*, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *Gadithanum*, A.

<sup>10</sup> b. 18. c. 1., D. The true reference seems to be lib. xvi. c. 3.

<sup>11</sup> *Scicilia*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *descenderunt*] om. D.E.

[pat]<sup>1</sup> it semede pat what pat<sup>2</sup> was desired was i-now to no man. Mankynde was departed azenst hym self, and þe strengre party bare doun pat [oper],<sup>3</sup> and tolde more prys of fredom þan of sauacioun and of hele; so pat it was greet wonder of hem, pat hadde leuere be lost and i-spilde þan be vnderlynges and servy.<sup>4</sup> And 3it be<sup>5</sup> lore of kynde, bettre is to<sup>6</sup> be vnderlynge and seruaunt þan be put out of lyf. Þerfore by Goddes ordenaunce hit is doo pat som men beep kynges and lordes and some beep sugettis and seruautes. *Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Þan men pat come of Sem, Noe his [firste]<sup>7</sup> sone, hadde þe souplond from þe rysyng of þe sonne anon to þe Fenices, men pat so hatte. [Þese men, pat so hatte,]<sup>8</sup> pat come of Sem, occupied foure hondred contrees and sixe vnder seuene and twenty longages. Þey pat come of Cham helde þe londe by þe souþ ocecan anon to þe see Gaditan, þre hondred contrayes<sup>9</sup> foure score and fourtene vnder pritty longages and tonges. *Augustinus, libro sexto.* Þey that come of Iapheth helde þe lond from þe hil pat hatte mons Taurus in Cilicia norþward toward þe norþ ocecan, þe haluendel<sup>10</sup> of Asia, and al Europa anon to þe Britische see,<sup>11</sup> pat is þe Englische see, þre hundred contrayes vnder fiftene longages and tonges, and lefte eche lond and

TREVISA.

---

and the stronger parte oppressede the parte more feble, preferrege liberte to theire sawle healethe, to be hade in grete meruayle, wyllenge raper to die then to be subiecte; sythe nature willethe rather to be subiecte then to be destroyede: whiche thyng was not doen with owte the prouidence of God, that somme scholde be gouernoures in realmes and somme subiectes. *Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Therefore peple descendenge from Sem, the firste son of Noe, hade in possession the londe meridiem, whiche was from the rysenge of the son to the Feniceannes vnder xxvij<sup>ti</sup> langages, occupieng cccc. and vj. cuntres. And men that come of Cham occupied ccc. xc. cuntres and iiij., vnder xxx<sup>ti</sup> langages, from Sydon by the sowthe ocean vn to the see Gaditan. *Augustinus, libro sexto.* And men that come of Iapheth occupiede from the mounte callede Taurus towarde the northe, and halfe parte of Asia, and alle Europa vn to the see of Briteyne, conteynenge cc. cuntres, vnder xv. langages, levenge to the places and to

MS. HARL.

2261.

---

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a. β. γ.* and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Possibly *pat* should be cancelled; it is found however in *a. β. γ.*, as well as in MS.

<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *seruautes*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *by*, *a.* and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *to*] om. *a.* and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Added from *a.* and (partly) Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *contrayes and sixe*] MS. (first hand.)

<sup>10</sup> *to half dele*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *ocecan*, *a.*

Nomina  
locorum  
unde deri-  
vantur.

pulis<sup>1</sup> relinquentes; de quibus plurima sunt immu-  
tata aut a regibus locorum, aut ab ipsis locis, aut<sup>2</sup>  
ab incolarum moribus. Cætera autem permanent, ut<sup>3</sup>  
fuerunt. Ita etiam<sup>4</sup> ut<sup>5</sup> hodie rationabiliter appareat  
unde fuerunt<sup>6</sup> derivata, sicut ex Assur Assyrii, ex Heber  
Hebræi. De quibusdam vero ratio non apparet, sicut  
illud quod dicunt Ægyptios<sup>7</sup> pertinere ad Mesraim,<sup>8</sup>  
Æthiopes ad Chus. *Josephus, libro primo, capitulo*  
*quinto.*<sup>9</sup> A Chus usque<sup>10</sup> nunc Æthiopes dicti sunt  
Chusei, a Mesraim<sup>11</sup> Ægyptii dicti sunt Mesrei. Sicque<sup>12</sup>  
gente per terras divisa aliqui nomina locis imposue-  
runt; aliqui, ut Græci, ad libitum nomina muta-  
verunt, aut propter scripturæ decorem, aut propter<sup>13</sup>  
legendium delectationem, aut ut<sup>14</sup> antiquorum gloriam  
suam propriam facerent. *Hugutio, capitulo*<sup>15</sup> *Phrygia.*<sup>16</sup>

Diversa  
nomina  
pro diver-  
sis condi-  
tionibus.

Sæpe etiam pro qualitate negotii varia imponuntur  
nomina; ut cum Trojanos volumus designare timidos,  
vocamus<sup>17</sup> eos Phrygios; si generosos, vocamus<sup>18</sup> eos  
Dardanos; si fortes, dicimus eos Trojanos; si audaces, vo-  
camus<sup>19</sup> eos Hectores.<sup>20</sup> *Isidorus, libro nono,*<sup>21</sup> *capitulo*  
*secundo.* Gentes orientales in gutture verba collidunt,

<sup>1</sup> *locis et populis]* gentibus et regnis, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *aut]* om. A.

<sup>3</sup> *permanent, ut]* *permanentia*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *etiam]* om. A.B.C.; *ut etiam*, D., which is better.

<sup>5</sup> *jam*, ins. C.

<sup>6</sup> *fuerant*, B.

<sup>7</sup> So D.; *Egiptiones*, A.E.

<sup>8</sup> *mensuram*, B.

<sup>9</sup> 2<sup>o</sup>, B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 6.

<sup>10</sup> *sicut*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *a Mesraim]* added from C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *quia sic*, A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *propter]* om. A.

<sup>14</sup> *ut]* om. A.

<sup>15</sup> *de*, C. Reference omitted in D.

<sup>16</sup> *Frigia*, MSS. Other slight errors in spelling proper names have been tacitly corrected in this and the following chapter.

<sup>17</sup> *dicimus*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *dicimus*, B.C.; *eos*, om. B.D.

<sup>19</sup> *dicimus*, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *Hectoreos*, D.

<sup>21</sup> 14, C. Extract from Isidore omitted in D. The true reference is to lib. ix. c. 1.

puple his name ; of the whiche meny beep now i-changed oper  
of kynges of londes, oper of the same londes, oper of maneres <sup>1</sup> TREVISIA.  
of men of londes. Oper thinges stondeþ, as it were ;<sup>2</sup> so þat  
þit it is sene of whom þey come ; as þe Assures come of  
Assur, and the Hebrewes come of Heber. Of som is no resoun  
i-knowe, as þat þat me seiþ þat þe Egipcians perteyneþ  
to Mesraim and Ethiopes to Chus. *Iosephus, libro primo,*  
*capitulo quinto.* Of Chus forto now þe Ethiopes beep i-cleped  
Cusey<sup>3</sup> and þe Egipcians Mesrei. And so, when men were  
to schift into dyuers londes, som chaungede names as hem  
likede, as the Grees, oper for fairenesse of wrytinge, oper for  
likyng of rederes, oper forto make her owne [selfe the]<sup>4</sup>  
noblete of hir forfadres. *Hugo, capitulo Frigia.*<sup>5</sup> Ofte names  
beep i-sette for a manere of doynge.<sup>6</sup> As whan we wole mene  
þat þe<sup>7</sup> Troians beep feerful, we cleped hem Frigios ; and  
þif we wole mene þat þey beþ gentil and noble, we clepeþ  
hem Dardans ; þif we wil mene þat þey beþ stronge, we clepeþ  
hem Troians ; þif hardy, we clepeþ hem Hectores.<sup>8</sup> *Isidorus,*  
*libro 14<sup>o</sup>, capitulo secundo.* Men of the est sowneþ her

the peple names. Of whom many thynges be chaunged MS. HARL.  
now, other of kynges of those places, other of the places, 2261.  
other elles thro the maneres of the inhabitatores of theym.  
Other thynges be permanente as thei were, as men of As-  
siria toke their name of Assur, men of Hebrewes of Heber.  
*Ozee,*<sup>9</sup> *libro primo, capitulo quinto.* Men of Ethiopie be  
called vn to this tyme Chusei, of Chus, and men of Egipte  
Mesrei, of Mesra. Soe this peple, diuided by regiones and  
cuntrees, some men haue þiffen names to places, somme men  
haue þiffen names to them after their pleasure, like to  
men off Grewe. Somme men haue chaungede the names  
for feirenesse of scripture, other for the delectacion of men  
redenge, other elles that thei myzhte ascribe to theyme  
the lawde of olde men as their propre lawde. *Hugutio,*  
*capitulo Frigia.* Diuerse names be assignede ofte for  
the qualite of labores, as callenge men of Troy Frigios,  
when we wille calle thyyme afrayed, callenge theyme  
Dardanos when thei be gentille, and Troianes when we  
wille calle theyme myzty, and Hectores when we calle  
theyme bolde. *Isidorus, libro decimo quarto, capitulo se-*  
*cundo.* Peple of the este sownde the wordes in the throte,

<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.* ; *manere*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *stande as they were*, *Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *Chusei*, *a.*

<sup>4</sup> Added from *Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *Frisia*, MS. and *a.*

<sup>6</sup> *Dyverce namys after dyverce con-*  
*dycyouns* in margin of MS. and *a.*

<sup>7</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.* ; *þei*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.* ; *Ector*, MS.

<sup>9</sup> So Harl. MS. for *Iosephus*.

ut Hebræi et Syri; gentes mediterraneæ in palato feriunt,<sup>1</sup> ut Græci et Asiani;<sup>2</sup> occidentales inter dentes verba frangunt, ut Romani et Hispani. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.*<sup>3</sup>

Regna  
quatuor  
primæva,  
Assyrio-  
rum,  
Ægyptio-  
rum, Scy-  
tharum,  
Sicyonio-  
rum.

Sed a principio dispersionis<sup>4</sup> gentium quamquam<sup>5</sup> regna Assyriorum in oriente, Ægyptiorum in meridie, Scytharum in aquilone, Sicyoniorum in occidente, id est,<sup>6</sup> in Græcia, fuerunt quasi coæva quoad initium, *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo*, regna tamen

Regna  
quatuor  
principalia  
demum  
effecta, As-  
syriorum,  
Persarum,  
Græcorum,  
Roma-  
norum.

Assyriorum, Medorum, seu<sup>7</sup> Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum consequenter sibi<sup>8</sup> succedentia fuerunt principalia inter cætera quoad progressum; quorum tamen primum et ultimum clariora fuere<sup>9</sup> et durabiliora. Cætera quoque regna sive reges velut appendices istorum dixerim;<sup>10</sup> Atheniensium quoque gesta majora fuere fama quam re ipsa, teste Salustio et Varrone,<sup>11</sup> et hoc propter scriptorum et philosophorum ibidem florentium præclara ingenia, qui gesta ipsa laudibus nimium extulerunt. *Ranulphus.* At<sup>12</sup> quia tractatus generalis quatuor regnorum principalium prædictorum,<sup>13</sup> a principio videlicet<sup>14</sup> regni<sup>15</sup> Assyriorum usque ad finem regni Romanorum vastum<sup>16 17</sup> vendicat procursum, idcirco de

<sup>1</sup> *ferunt*, A.; *ferent*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Aciani*, B.

<sup>3</sup> E. omits c. 18. The true reference is to c. 17. apparently; just below lib. xviii. c. 2. is certainly intended.

<sup>4</sup> *dispositionis*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *quamvis*, B.; *licet*, C.D., which abbreviate the sentence.

<sup>6</sup> *scilicet*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *et*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *sibi*] om. D.

<sup>9</sup> *luculentiora fuerunt*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *dixerunt*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *Verone*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *Et*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *prædictorum*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *scilicet*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *regni*] om. A.

<sup>16</sup> *vastat*, A.

<sup>17</sup> *sibi*, ins. C.D.



wordes in þe prote as Hebrewes and Siries ;<sup>1</sup> men of myddel londes in þe roof of þe mouþ, as Grees and Asyans ; men of þe west brekeþ here words bytwene þe teep, as Spaynardes<sup>2</sup> and Romayns. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.*<sup>3</sup> But sipe þat men were first to schift<sup>4</sup> into dyuerse londes, þey þe kyngdoms of Assiries<sup>5</sup> in þe est, of Egipcians in þe souþ, and of Sithes<sup>6</sup> in þe norþ, þat is in þe<sup>7</sup> Grees, begunne as it were at ones : *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo* :—nopeles the kyngdoms [of]<sup>8</sup> Assiries, of Medes, þat is of Perses, of Grees, of Romayns, folowede eche after oper, and were principal among opere. Nopeles þe firste and þe laste were more noble, and durede lengere.<sup>9</sup> Oper kyngdoms [and kynges longede to þese kyngdoms].<sup>10</sup> Also berynge and dedes of men of Athenys beþ gretter in loos and in fame þan þey beþ in dede ; so seiþ Salustius and Varro<sup>11</sup> also. And þat is for<sup>12</sup> writers and filosofres of Athenes were solempne of witt, and preysede þe dedes hugeliche and ouermesure. R̄. And for þe tretysis<sup>13</sup> ful and general of þe forsaide foure cheef kyngdoms, from þe begynnynge of þe kyngdom of Assiries to þe ende of þe kyngdom of Romayns, axeþ longe writyne and proces ; perfore

TREVISA.

as men of Hebrewes and of Siria, peple of the myddel cuntre breke theire wordes in the hier parte of the mowthe, as men of Grece and of Asia, men and peple of the weste breke theire wordes amonge the teithe, as men of Rome and of Speyne. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo, capitulo primo.* Neuerthelesse the realmes of Assiria, Media, or of Persia, of Grekes and of Romanes, by succession were realmes moste principalle amonge other realmes, as vn to progresse, the firste of whom and the laste were moste clere and durable. And other realmes and kynges were as dependenge to theyme ; for the gestes of kynges of Athenes were made more glorious in fame than thei were in trawthe, and that was causede by the actes of filosofers and of other discrete men inhabitenge that study, exaltenge the gestes with grete lawde. R̄. And for cause that a generalle tracte of the iiij. principalle realmes afore seide, from the begynnenge of that realme of Assiria vn to the ende of the reigne of the Romanes, dothe require a large

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 78. b.

<sup>1</sup> *Syres, a.*  
<sup>2</sup> *Spaynols, Cx.*  
<sup>3</sup> *Cx. prints octodecimo (at length, and so below.)*  
<sup>4</sup> *firste skatred, Cx.*  
<sup>5</sup> *Assyricns, Cx.*  
<sup>6</sup> *Schytes, a. ; Shites, Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *þe] om. a.*  
<sup>8</sup> *Added from a.*  
<sup>9</sup> *lengere þan, MS. (not a. or Cx.)*  
<sup>10</sup> *Added from a. and Cx.*  
<sup>11</sup> *Farro, MS. and a.*  
<sup>12</sup> *for that, Cx.*  
<sup>13</sup> *tretys is, MSS. and Cx.*

tribus regnis primævis, regno Assyriorum quasi coævus, primitus est agendum.<sup>1</sup>

CAP. VIII.

*De regnis Scytharum, Ægyptiorum, Assyriorum, Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum.*<sup>2</sup>

§ 1. *Regnum Scytharum incipit.*<sup>3</sup>

Tanaus  
primus rex  
Scytharum.

<sup>4</sup>REGNUM<sup>5</sup> Scytharum<sup>6</sup> in aquilone, quod ratione temporis et ætatis secundum post Assyrios vendicat ordinem, incepit tempore Sarug<sup>7</sup> proavi Abrahæ sub Thanao primo ipsorum<sup>8</sup> rege, a quo fluvius<sup>9</sup> Thanay videtur denominari,<sup>10</sup> qui ad orbis boream dividit Asiam ab Europa. Hoc quidem<sup>11</sup> regnum nulli hominum unquam cessit, quin<sup>12</sup> etiam Asiam ter conquistavit, Darium regem Persarum fugavit, Cyrum regem occidit, Zephironem Alexandri magni ducem delevit.

Reges  
Sicyonis.

*Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.*<sup>13</sup> Aliud quoque regnum in occidente fuit<sup>14</sup> Sicyoniorum,<sup>15</sup> id est, Arcadiæ, quæ pars est Græciæ in Europa, currens sub Agilao<sup>16</sup> primo per annos nongentos septuaginta unum sub regibus

<sup>1</sup> *tractandum*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> Title wanting in MSS.

<sup>3</sup> A.B.C.D. omit title of the section; and so below; *incipit*, E., here and below.

<sup>4</sup> *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *itaque*, ins. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Scitatarum*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *Sarag*, E.

<sup>8</sup> *illorum*, A.E.; *eorum*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *flumen*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *denominatur*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *quidem*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *quin*] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> 40, B.; C.D. omit reference.

<sup>14</sup> *fuit*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *Cicionorum*, A.; *Scicioniorum*, B.; *Sicioniorum*, D.; *Scicionorum*, E.; and similarly below.

<sup>16</sup> *sub Agilao*] a *Gilao*, B. *Ægialeus* is the true form of the name of the first mythic king of Sicyon.

of þre þe<sup>1</sup> firste kyngdoms, as it were of þe same age wip TREVISA.  
þe kyngdom of Assiries, firste we schal write.

*Capitulum octavum.*

THE kyngdom of Sithes<sup>2</sup> in þe north by cause of age and of tyme axep þe secunde place in ordre, and is sette after þe kyngdom of Assiries, and bygan in Sarug his tyme vnder Thanaus þe firste kyng þat<sup>3</sup> was pere. Sarug was Abraham his fader graunsire. Hit semep þat þe ryver Thanays hap þe name of þis kyng Thanaus; þe whiche ryver in þe norpside of þe world departep betwene Asya and Europa. Þis kyngdom was neuere ouercome, but þries he conquerede Asia and ouercome Darius, kyng of Perses, and slowh Cyrus þe kyng, and dede away Zephiron, þat was þe grete Alisaundre his ledere. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* Also anoþer kyngdom was in þe west, and was þe kyngdom of Scicions,<sup>4</sup> þat is of Arcadia, a partie of Grees in Europa, and durede vnder Agilaus first nyne hondred þere þre score and enlevene. Agilaus is a lorde, as it were a kyng oþer an emperoure. Afterwarde

---

processe, þerfore we wyllle procede and determinate of the MS. HARL.  
2261.  
thre firste realmes as egalle to hit.

*Of the inception of realmes. Capitulum octavum.*

THE realme of Scitia, other the reigne of kynges in hit, whiche chalangethe the secunde place and ordre after men of Assiria, began in the tyme of Sarug, grawntefader to Thare the fader of Abraham, requirenge that place bothe by the reason of tyme and of age, vnder Thanaus, firste kyng of theyme, of whom that floode callede Thanay semethe to haue taken name, whiche diuidethe Asia from Europa in the northe partes of the worlde. That realme was not gotten by conqweste of eny man, but men in hit conquerede iij. tymes Asia, causenge Darius kyng of Persia to flee; sleenge also Cirus the kyng, and destroyenge Zephiro, duke of grete Alexander. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* There was an other realme in the weste<sup>5</sup> of men of Scitia, that is to say of Archadia, whiche is a parte of Grece in Europa, rennenge other contynuenge vnder the firste Agilaus by ix. yere lxxj., vnder xxxj<sup>ti</sup> kynges, from

<sup>1</sup> þre þe] So MS., a. β. γ.

<sup>2</sup> Schytes, α.

<sup>3</sup> þer, α.

<sup>4</sup> Either for *Sicyon* or *Sicyonians*.

<sup>5</sup> *este*, MS. originally; but the correction may be by the first hand.

triginta uno, ab<sup>1</sup> anno vicesimo quarto Nachor avi Abrahæ usque ad Zeuxippum,<sup>2</sup> qui regnavit septimodecimo anno Hely sacerdotis. Inde quædam regio in Arcadia quondam vocabatur<sup>3</sup> Agealea,<sup>4</sup> quæ tamen postmodum dicta est Peloponnesus,<sup>5</sup> ubi fuit unum de Græciæ<sup>6</sup> regnis.<sup>7</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>8</sup> Vult tamen Dionysius quod<sup>9</sup> regnum Sicyoniorum inceperit quinquagesimo<sup>10</sup> anno Thare, vicesimo videlicet<sup>11</sup> anno ante nativitatem Abrahæ, in quo regnavit primus<sup>12</sup> Cecrops<sup>13</sup> per annos quadraginta quinque.<sup>14</sup>

§ 2. *Regnum Ægyptiorum incipit.*

Menes  
primus rex  
Ægypti.

Varia in  
Ægypto  
dynastiæ.

Persarum  
occupatio.

Aliud<sup>15</sup> regnum quasi coævum<sup>16</sup> prædictis fuit regnum Ægyptiorum in meridie, quod tempore<sup>17</sup> Nachor avi Abrahæ incepit, habens quindecim dynastias, quæ dicuntur summæ potestates, a primo Mineo vel Zones<sup>18</sup> usque ad tempora Abrahæ. Deinde Thebæi tenuerunt sexdecim dynastias. Tandem Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones,<sup>19</sup> tenuerunt octodecim dynastias.<sup>20</sup> Sicque duravit hoc regnum Ægyptiorum usque ad tempus

<sup>1</sup> *sub*, D., and similarly in some other places.

<sup>2</sup> *Zeusippum*, MSS.

<sup>3</sup> *dicebatur*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *Agealia*, A.D. The true form is *Ægaleia*.

<sup>5</sup> *Peloponensis*, MSS.

<sup>6</sup> So, A.B.; *Græcis*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *Græciæ regnum*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Ranulphus*] *om.* C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *quia*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *primo*, *ins.* C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *scilicet*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *primus*] *om.* D.

<sup>13</sup> *Cicrops*, MSS.

<sup>14</sup> *quadraginta quinque*] *om.* B.

<sup>15</sup> *etiam*, *ins.* C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *vicinum istis*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *tempore*] *xlv.* anno, B.

<sup>18</sup> *Zenes*, A.

<sup>19</sup> *Pharones*, E.

<sup>20</sup> *Deinde . . . dynastias*] Deinde 16 dynastias tenuerunt Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones, C.D. Higden should have written *Diospolitani*.

TREVISA.

pis kyngdom durede, vnder oon and pritty kings,<sup>1</sup> from þe foure and twenty ȝere of Nachor Abraham his graunsire anon to Zeuxippus,<sup>2</sup> þat reignede þe ȝere of Hely þe preost seuentene. Þerfore oon kyngdom in Arcadia somtyme heet Agealea. Nopeles afterward hit heet Peloponnensis; þere was oon of þe kyngdom of Grees. [R.]<sup>3</sup> Nopeles Denys seip þat þe kyndom of Scicions bygan þe ȝere of Thare fifty; þat was twenty ȝere or Abraham was i-bore; Thare was Abraham his fader. In þis kyngdom þe firste kyng was Cecrops,<sup>4</sup> and reignede fyue and fifty ȝere. Anoper kyngdom as hit were in þe same age with þe<sup>5</sup> forseide kyngdoms was<sup>6</sup> þe kyngdom of Egipt in þe soup, and bygan in Nachor his tyme, Abraham<sup>7</sup> his grauntsire. Þis kyngdom hadde fiftene grete lordschippes, and cleped hem Dynastias, from þe firste Mineus, oper Zones,<sup>8</sup> to Abrahams tyme. Afterward Thebei, men of Thebes, hylde sixtenc<sup>9</sup> grete lordschippes, and cleped hem Dynastias.<sup>10</sup> Þan Diapolitani, þat were i-cleped Pharaones, þat were kynges of Egipt, hylde eiȝtetene grete lordschippes and cleped hem Dynastias. Dynastia is *grete lordschippe*, and power duryng in a prouince to chese<sup>11</sup> kyng oper emperoure. And so þis kyngdom of Egipt durede anon to þe tyme of Cambys[es]<sup>12</sup> þat was

the xxiiij<sup>th</sup> yere of Nachor, grauntefader to Abraham, vn to Zeuxippus,<sup>2</sup> whiche reignede in the xvij<sup>th</sup> yere of Hely the preste. Where of a region in Archadia was callede somme tyme Agialia, whiche was callede afterwarde Peloponensis, where oon realme of Grece was. R. Neuertheless Dionisius wille that þe reigne of men of Scitia began in the 1<sup>th</sup> yere of Thare, that was afore the natiuite of Abraham by xx<sup>th</sup> yere, in whom Cicrops reignede firste by xlv. yeres. Also the realme of men of Egipte in the [sowthe] was coegalle vn to theyme whiche began in the tyme of Nachor, grawntefader to Abraham, hauenge xv. hie potestates from the firste Mineus other Zones vn to the tymes of Abraham. After that men callede Thebei occupied and did holde xvj. hie potestates. At the laste Diapolitanes, whiche were callede Pharaones, holded xvij. hie potestates, and so the realme of men of Egipte durede vn to the times of Cambises, son of Cirus kyng of Persia, to

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *kyngdoms*, MS.<sup>2</sup> *Zeusippus*, MSS. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> Reference added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>4</sup> *Cicropos*, MS.; *Cicrops*, *a.*<sup>5</sup> *þese*, *a.* Cx.<sup>6</sup> *þat was*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)<sup>7</sup> *Abrahams*, *a.*<sup>8</sup> *sonnes*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *sexten*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *Damastias*, MS., and similarly below.<sup>11</sup> *that chose*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *Cambis*, MS. and *a.*

Cambysis,<sup>1</sup> filii Cyri regis Persarum, cui pater adhuc vivens regnum Assyriorum jam tunc ad Medos translatum concesserat, et eum<sup>2</sup> Nabugodonozor cognominaverat;<sup>3</sup> cujus quoque<sup>4</sup> princeps Holofernes<sup>5</sup> Ægyptum subjugavit. Et extunc sub septem regibus Persarum Ægyptus mansit.

Decem  
reges in-  
digenæ.

Persæ  
iterum  
occupant  
Ægyptum.

Succedunt  
Lagidæ  
vel Ptole-  
mæi.

Romanis  
cedit  
Ægyptus.

Post quos recessit Ægyptus a Persis, habens decem<sup>6</sup> proprios reges; quousque Ochus, qui et<sup>7</sup> Artaxerxes,<sup>8</sup> rex Persarum duodecimus, expulso usque ad<sup>9</sup> Æthiopiam Nectanebo,<sup>10</sup> rege Ægypti ultimo, regnum Ægypti recuperaret. Quod quidem regnum extunc<sup>11</sup> sub tribus regibus Persarum mansit usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni. Ex quo tempore regnum Ægypti et Persarum cessit ditioni Græcorum per annos trecentos sub regibus tredecim, qui dicebantur Lagidæ sive<sup>12</sup> Ptolemæi<sup>13</sup> usque<sup>14</sup> ad tempora Julii Cæsaris, sive, ut quibusdam placet, usque ad quintumdecimum annum Augusti Cæsaris, qui superavit Cleopatram filiam Dionysi<sup>15</sup> Ptolemæi ultimi Lagidæ.<sup>14 16</sup> Ex quo tempore<sup>17</sup> Ægyptus cessit Romanis. Sicque a principio omnes reges Ægypti usque ad Alexandrum fuerunt

<sup>1</sup> *Cambise*, A.E. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *eum*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> So C.D.; *cognominavit*, B.; *cognoverat*, A.E.

<sup>4</sup> *etiam*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *Olofernes*, B.D.

<sup>6</sup> *duos*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. E.

<sup>8</sup> *Artharxerses*, A.; *Artaxerses*, B., *Artexerses*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *usque ad*] usque in, B.; in, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Nectanabo*, MSS.

<sup>11</sup> *extunc*] om. D.

<sup>12</sup> *sive*] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> *Ptolomei*, MSS., here and below.

<sup>14</sup> *usque . . . Lagidæ*] om. A.B. (not C.D.)

<sup>15</sup> *Dionisii*, MSS.

<sup>16</sup> Sentence slightly varied in C. D.

<sup>17</sup> *Ex quo tempore*] Et extunc, C.D.

Cyrus his sone. Cyrus was kyng of Pers, and 3af while TREVISA.  
 he lyuede þe kyngdom of Assyria þat was þoo i-torned to  
 þe Medes to his sone Cambys[es], and cleped him Nabugo-  
 donosor also, and his prince Olofernes,<sup>1</sup> and sodued Egipt.  
 And Egipt was vnder seuene kynges of Perse, and after  
 wente from the Perses, and hadde ten kynges of her owne  
 forto Ochus, þat heet Artaxerxes<sup>2</sup> also, þe twelfþe kyng  
 of Perses, put out Nactanabo,<sup>3</sup> the leste kyng of Egipt,  
 anon to Ethiopia, and wan þe kyngdom of Egipt. After-  
 ward þe kyngdom durede vnder þre kynges<sup>4</sup> anoon to  
 the seuene þere of þe grete Alisaundre,<sup>5</sup> after [þat]<sup>6</sup>  
 þe kyngdoms of Egipt and of Perse was<sup>7</sup> vnder þe  
 Grees þre hondred þere vnder þrittene kynges, þat were  
 i-cleped Lagides and Ptholomeus<sup>8</sup> anoon to Iulius Cesar  
 his tyme; oper, as som mem meneþ, anon to þe fifteþe  
 þere of Augustus Cesar that ouercome Cleopatra,<sup>9</sup> Denys his  
 doþhter. Denys was Ptholomeus and last Lagid. Egipt from  
 that<sup>10</sup> tyme fel to<sup>11</sup> Romanys,<sup>12</sup> and so al þe kynges of Egipt  
 from the firste begynnynge anon to Alisaundre were foure  
 score and eleuene. Þe kynges of Egipt were first i-cleped

whom his fader 3afe, beenge in lyfe, the realme of Assiria, MS. HARL.  
 whiche he did translate to men of Medea, and namede hym 2261.  
 Nabugodnosor, whose prince, Olofernes by name, subduede  
 to him Egipte, and after that Egipte remaynede under vij.  
 kynges of Persia. After whom Egipte was occupiede by x.  
 kynges of that cuntre, vn til that Ochus, otherwise callede  
 Artaxerses, þe xij<sup>the</sup> kyng of Persia, expellenge Nectanabus,  
 kyng of Egipte, vn to Ethioppe, recurede that realme  
 ageyne. Whiche realme remaynede afterwarde vnder thre  
 kynges of Persia vn to the vij<sup>the</sup> yere of Alexander the  
 Conqueroure, from whiche tyme the realmes of Persia and  
 also of Egipte began to be subiecte to the domination of  
 Grekes by ccc. yere, vnder xiiij. kynges, whiche were callede  
 Lagide other Ptolomei, vn to the tymes of Iulius Cesar;  
 other elles, after somme men, vn to the xv<sup>the</sup> yere of Au-  
 gustus Cesar, whiche hade victory of Cleopatra, the doþhter  
 of Dionysius Ptolomeus, laste of that name callede Lagide.  
 From whiche tyme Egipte was subiecte to the Romanes.  
 Soe alle the kynges in Egipte from the begynnenge to kyng  
 Alexander were xc., of whom the firste were callede Dinas-

<sup>1</sup> So *a.*; *Olofernus*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Arthaxerxes*, MS.; *Artharexer-*  
*ses*, *a.*

<sup>3</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*, *Nactabono*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> So *Cx.*; *þre kyngdoms*, *a.*; *þe*  
*kyng Donis*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Alexander*, *a.*

<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> So MS., *a. β. γ.*; *were*, *Cx.* Per-  
 haps his own correction.

<sup>8</sup> *Tholomeus*, *Cx.* (i.e. *Ptolemies*.)

<sup>9</sup> *Cleopatram*, *a.*

<sup>10</sup> So *Cx.*; *the*, MS.

<sup>11</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *in to*, MS.

<sup>12</sup> *þe Romanys*, *a.*

nonaginta,<sup>1</sup> quorum primi dicebantur Diastenes,<sup>2</sup> postmodum<sup>3</sup> Pharaones, tandem<sup>4</sup> Lagidæ sive Ptolemæi. *Josephus, libro octavo,<sup>5</sup> capitulo tertio.<sup>6</sup>* Reges Ægypti ab infantia aliis reor<sup>7</sup> nominibus appellari, sed ad imperium ascendentes vocabantur Pharaones,<sup>8</sup> quod lingua Ægyptiaca<sup>9</sup> sonat *rex*; sic etiam<sup>10</sup> reges Alexandriæ ad regnum pervenientes<sup>11</sup> vocabantur Ptolemæi, et reges Romanorum dicebantur Cæsares;<sup>12</sup> sed post socerum Salomonis nullum legi apud Ægyptios Pharaonem vocatum.

§ 3. *Incipit regnum Assyriorum.*<sup>13</sup>

Regnum  
Beli  
antiquis-  
simum.

Durat  
usque ad  
Sardanapa-  
lum.

Arbaces  
regnum ad  
Medos  
transfert.

*Augustinus De Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.<sup>14</sup>* Quartum regnum sed tempore primum fuit<sup>15</sup> Assyriorum in oriente sub Belo Nemprotide, incipiens vicesimo quinto anno Sarug proavi Abrahæ, quod toti<sup>16</sup> Asiæ excepta India dominabatur. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.<sup>17</sup>* Et duravit per annos mille trecentos duo sub regibus triginta septem usque ad ultimum Sardanapalum,<sup>18</sup> qui obiit septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda. Deinde Arbaces sive Arbaccus<sup>19</sup> præpositus<sup>20</sup> et interfector regis transtulit monarchiam Assyriorum<sup>21</sup> ad Medos, quod intelligendum est spe sed nondum<sup>22</sup> re.<sup>23</sup> *Ranulphus.* Nam apud Assyrios post Sardana-

<sup>1</sup> 91, A.B.C.D., and so Trevisa, but not Harl. MS. Higden should have written *septuaginta* according to his own calculation, including Alexander.

<sup>2</sup> *Diastines, A.; Dinastines, D.* Higden doubtless intended *Dynastæ*.

<sup>3</sup> *postea, C.D.; deinde, B., omitting tandem.*

<sup>4</sup> *post Alexandrum, ins. C.D.*

<sup>5</sup> 4°, C.

<sup>6</sup> 4°, C.; 8°, D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 6.

<sup>7</sup> *sentio, C. (not D.)*

<sup>8</sup> *Pharaones . . . Cæsares]* om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *lingua Ægyptiaca]* Ægyptiace, D.

<sup>10</sup> *etiam]* om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *venientes, C.*

<sup>12</sup> The reference to Augustin is brought in here in C.D., and the passage is abbreviated.

<sup>13</sup> A.B.C.D. omit title of the section.

<sup>14</sup> The true reference is to c. 17.

<sup>15</sup> *regnum, ins. B.*

<sup>16</sup> *quod toti]* totique, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> 140, B.

<sup>18</sup> *Sardanapallum, MSS.*

<sup>19</sup> *sive Arbaccus]* om. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *propositus, D.*

<sup>21</sup> *usque, ins. B.*

<sup>22</sup> *in, ins. A.C. (not D.)*

<sup>23</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.



Dyastenes, and þan Pharaones, and at þe last Lagides and Ptholomeus.<sup>1</sup> *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Þe kynges of Egipt hadde in her childhode oper names, but whanne they were i-made kynges þey were i-cleped Pharaones. For a kyng is i-cleped Pharao in þe longage of Egipt. Þe kynges of Alexandria were i-cleped Ptholomeies, when þey were i-maked<sup>2</sup> kynges; and þe kynges of Romaynes were i-cleped Cesars. Salomon wedded a kynges douȝter of Egipt; [I rede of no kyng after hym of Egipt]<sup>3</sup> þat was cleped Pharao. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo-decimo.* Þe fourþe kyngdom, but þe eldest of tyme, is þe kyngdom of Assiries; and bygan in þe est vnder Belus Nemproth þe fyue and twenty<sup>4</sup> ȝere of Sarug þat was Abrahams fader<sup>5</sup> grauntsire. Þis kyngdom had lordschippe of al Asia outake Inde. *Petrus sexagesimo.* And it durede a powsand ȝere þre hundred and tweyne, vnder seuene and þritty kynges anon to þe [last]<sup>6</sup> Sardanapallus þe kyng, þat dyede in<sup>7</sup> þe seuene ȝere of Ozias, kyng of Iuda. Þan Arbaces, þat heet Abbacus<sup>8</sup> also, þe kynges styward and his traytour, for he slowh hym and tornede þe kyngdom of Assiries to þe Medes, þat is to vndirstondyng in hope and nouȝt in dede. [R.]<sup>9</sup> For after Sardanapallus from þe

TREVISA.

---

tines, after that Pharaones, at the laste Lagide or Ptolomei. *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo secundo.* Kynges of Egipte, as I suppose, hauenge other names in their yowthe, ascendege to the empyre were callede Pharaones, whiche is callede a kyng after the langage of men of Egipte. Soe in lyke wise kynges of Alexandrye ascendege to thempyre were callede Ptolomei, and kynges of the Romans were callede Cesares. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo decimo.* The iiij<sup>th</sup> realme, but firste in tyme, was of men of Assiria in the este, vnder Belus Nemprotides in the begynnege, in the xxv<sup>th</sup> yere of Sarug grauntefader to Thare, whiche hade dominacion in alle Asia, Ynde excepte. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* And that realme indurede by a m<sup>l</sup> ccc. ij. yere, vnder xxxvij<sup>th</sup> kynges, vn to the laste Sardanapallus, whiche diede the vij<sup>th</sup> yere of Ozias, kyng of Iuda. After that Arbases, other wise callede Arbaccus, the governour and sleer of the kyng, did translate the monarchye of men of Assiria vn to men of Media; whiche is to be vnderstonde in kynde other in similitude, but not in trawethe. R. For vij. myȝhty

MS. HARL.  
2261.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ptolomees, a.*<sup>2</sup> *made, a.*<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and Cx.: *þritty*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *ffader, a.*<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>7</sup> *in*] om. *a.* and Cx.<sup>8</sup> *Abaccus, a.*<sup>9</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

Reges Assyriorum post Sardanapalum non monarchæ; eorum nomina.

Regnum Babylonis tempore Ezechiel exortum. Regum nomina.

palum, a septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda<sup>1</sup> usque ad Manassen regem Juda, per annos circiter centum et duodecim, septem fuerunt reges potentes,<sup>2</sup> quamvis non monarchæ, quorum nomina sunt Arbaces, Phull,<sup>3</sup> Tegla-Falasar,<sup>4</sup> Salmanazar,<sup>5</sup> Senacherib, Assaradon, Sargon.<sup>6</sup> Volunt tamen quidam<sup>7</sup> ut post mortem Sardanapali, a septimo anno Oziæ usque ad vicesimum<sup>8</sup> primum annum transmigrationis Judaicæ, monarchia orientis steterit apud Medos per annos ducentos sexaginta sub regibus octo, a primo scilicet Arbace usque ad ultimum Astyagen; qui fuit avunculus Darii et avus Cyri; quem Astyagen Cyrus subvertens transtulit regnum Medorum ad monarchiam Persarum, relicto ibi<sup>9</sup> Astyagi<sup>10</sup> regno Hyrcanorum.<sup>11</sup> Veruntamen<sup>12</sup> tempore Senecherib regis Assyriorum et Ezechiaë regis Juda surrexit magnum regnum Babyloniorum et Chaldæorum,<sup>13</sup> currens sub regibus septem, qui sunt Merodak seu Baladak,<sup>14</sup> Nabugodonosor, Nabogodonosor secundus,<sup>15</sup> E[vi]lmerodac,<sup>16</sup> Regusar,<sup>17</sup> Labofardac, Balthazar,<sup>18</sup> qui et Nabar; quem occidens Cyrus junctus Dario avunculo suo transtulit

<sup>1</sup> *regis Juda*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *potes*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Phulli*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Teglafalazar*, A.; *Tegbathfalazar*, B.; *Teglasphalasar*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Salmanasar*, D.

<sup>6</sup> The orthography of E. for these Assyrian kings has been kept here and below.

<sup>7</sup> *quidem*, A.; *quidam tamen*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *tricesimum*, B.C.; 31, D.

<sup>9</sup> *ibi*] *ipso*, A. (second hand); *illi*, which the Harl. MS. probably had, seems to be the true reading.

<sup>10</sup> *Astragi*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *relicto . . . Hyrcanorum*] om. C. D.; the whole passage being slightly transposed.

<sup>12</sup> *Denique*, C.; *Diebus tamen*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *Caldeorum*, A.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Merodac seu Balodac*, A.; *Balladac*, B.; *Meradac seu Baladac*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *Nabugodonosor secundus*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Evilmerodac*, A.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Ragusar*, D.

<sup>18</sup> *Baltasar*, A.; *Balthasar*, D.

seuenþe 3ere of Ozias kyng of Iuda to Manasses kyng TREVISIA.  
of Iuda, aboute an hondred 3ere and twelue, the Assiries  
hadde seuen my3ty kynges, þey [he]<sup>1</sup> hadde nouzt þe kyng-  
dom al hool, of þe whiche þese beep þe names: Arbaces,  
Phull, Teglafalasar, Salmanasar, Senacheryb, Assaradon,  
Sargon. Nopeles som wil mene þat after Sardanapallus  
his deþ, from þe seuenþe 3ere of Ozias þe kyng to þe 3ere  
of<sup>2</sup> transmygracioun of Iewes oon and þritty, þe hoole  
kyngdom of þe est stood with þe Medes two hondred 3ere  
and þritty vnder ey3te kynges, from þe firste Arbaces  
anon to Astyages þat was Darius em<sup>3</sup> and Cyrus his  
grauntsire. Cyrus ouertorned<sup>4</sup> þis Astyages, and tornede þe  
kyngdom of Medes to þe hool kyngdom of Perses, and  
lefte þe kyngdom of Hircans to Astyages. Nopeles in  
Senacheryb kyng of Assiries his tyme, and in Ezechias his  
tyme kyng of Iuda, com vppe þe<sup>4</sup> grete kyngdom of þe  
Babileyns and Caldeys, and durede vnder seuen kynges,<sup>5</sup>  
þat beep Meredak,<sup>6</sup> þat hatte Baladak also; Nabugodonosor,  
Euilmederok,<sup>7</sup> Rugusar,<sup>8</sup> Labofardok,<sup>9</sup> Balthasar, þat heet  
Nabar also. Hym slowh Cyrus i-socied to his eme<sup>3</sup> Darius,

kynges reignede in Assiria after Sardanapallus, thau3he MS. HARL.  
thei occupiede not the holle monarchye, from the vij<sup>th</sup>e yere 2261.  
of Ozias kyng of Iuda, by a c. yere and xij., the names  
of whom were Arbases, Phullus, Theglatphalazar, Salman-  
azar, Sennacherib, Assaradon, and Sargon. Neuerthelesse  
somme men wille that the monarchye of the este stode at  
men of Media after the dethe of Sardanapallus, from the  
vij<sup>th</sup>e yere of Ozias kyng of Iuda vn to the xxxj<sup>th</sup>i yere  
of the transmigracion of the Iewes, by cc. yere and lx.  
yere, vnder viij. kynges, from the firste Arbases vn to the  
laste Astiages, whiche was vncle to Darius and graunte-  
fader to Cirus. Whiche Cirus, ouercommenge Astiages, did  
translate the realme of Media to the monarchye of men of  
Persia, levenge to that Astiages the realme of Hircannes.  
And in the reigne of Sennacherib kyng of Assiria, and  
of Ezechias kinge of Iuda, a grete realme of men of Caldea  
and of Babilon did aryse,<sup>10</sup> contynuede vnder vij. kynges,  
whiche were Merodac other Beladas, Nabugodnosor, Euil-  
merodac, Egesar, Regusar, Labefardac, Balthazar, other  
elles Nabar, whom Cirus sleenge, þro help of Darius his

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a*.

<sup>2</sup> of þe, *a*.

<sup>3</sup> *em, a.*; *vncle, Cx.*, and so be-  
low.

<sup>4</sup> to þe, MS. (not *a*. or *Cx.*)

<sup>5</sup> So *Cx.*; *kyngdoms, MS.* and *a*.

<sup>6</sup> Here and below the orthography

of the proper names has been left  
unaltered.

<sup>7</sup> *Euilmerodoc, a*.

<sup>8</sup> *Regusar, a*.

<sup>9</sup> *Labofardak, a*.

<sup>10</sup> *a ryse, Harl. MS.*; similarly *a*  
*passelle* below.

regnum ad Persas et Medos<sup>1</sup> sub anno transmirationis Judaicæ<sup>2</sup> tricesimo primo; et<sup>3</sup> sic fluxerunt anni ducenti<sup>4</sup> sexaginta a septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda, quo cepit deficere monarchia Assyriorum usque ad tricesimum primum annum transmirationis quando inceptit monarchia Persarum.

§ 4. *Regnum Persarum.*

Cyrus, rex  
primus  
Persarum.  
Nomina  
succes-  
sorum.

<sup>5</sup> Deinde monarchia Persarum ab anno tricesimo primo transmirationis<sup>6</sup> usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni,<sup>7</sup> hoc est, a primo Cyro usque<sup>8</sup> ultimum Darium filium Arsamis,<sup>9</sup> duravit per annos ducentos triginta quinque<sup>10</sup> sub regibus tredecim, qui sunt, secundum Giraldum, Cyrus primus; <sup>11</sup> Cambyses secundus, quem pater suus Cyrus cognominaverat Nabugodonozor, et se vivente<sup>12</sup> Nineven cum regno Assyriorum tradiderat annis duodecim, sub quo etiam historia Judith contigit; tertius Ermeides<sup>13</sup> magus; quartus Darius,<sup>14</sup> filius Hystaspis; <sup>15</sup> quintus Xerxes; sextus Artaxerxes,<sup>16</sup> septimus Xerxes;<sup>17</sup> octavus Sogdianus;<sup>18</sup> nonus Darius<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *et Medos*] om. E.

<sup>2</sup> *Judaicæ*] om. C.D., which have slight transpositions.

<sup>3</sup> *R̄*, ins. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *trescenti*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *quando . . . transmirationis*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *Magni*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *ad*, ins. B.

<sup>9</sup> *Arsanni*, or *Arsanii*, MSS., and so below. Possibly Higden himself wrote the erroneous form.

<sup>10</sup> *239 annis*, C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *licet alii ponant Darium avunculum Cyri esse primum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *se vivente et*, C.D. (the latter omits *et* altogether.)

<sup>13</sup> *Ermeides*] Ermoides, B.; Emeridius, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Carius*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Itapsis*, MSS.

<sup>16</sup> *qui et Longimanus, sub quo Esdras et Nehemias fuerunt*, ins. B.C.D.; *qui et Longimanus dictus est, sub quo Esdras et Nehemias floruerunt*, A. The versions also vary.

<sup>17</sup> *septimus Xerxes*] om. E.

<sup>18</sup> *Fogodianus*, MSS.

<sup>19</sup> *Sarius*, B.

and tornede his kyngdom [to þe kyngdom]<sup>1</sup> of Perse aud of Medes þe ʒere of þe transmygracioun of Iewes oon and þritty. And so passede two hondred ʒere and sixty from þe seuenþe ʒere of Ezechias<sup>2</sup> kyng of Iuda. In þe whiche ʒere bygan to faille þe hole kyngdom of Assiries anon to þe ʒere of þe transmygracioun oon and þritty. Þoo bygan þe hool kyngdom of Pers.<sup>3</sup> [Þan þe hole kyngdom of Perse,]<sup>4</sup> from þe ʒere of þe transmygracioun oon and þritty anon to þe seuenþe ʒere of þe grete Alexandre, þat was from þe firste Cyrus to þe laste Darius Arsanius his sone, durede two hondred ʒere and fyue and þritty vnder þrittene kynges; þat was Cyrus þe firste, Cambyses þe seconde. His fader Cyrus ʒaf hym anoper name, and cleped hym Nabugodonosor, and ʒaf hym Nynyve wiþ þe kyngdom of Assiries, whyle he was hym self alyve.<sup>5</sup> Vnder hym byfel þe storie of Iudith. Þe pridde Ermeudes Magus; þe ferþe Darius Tapsis his sone; þe fifte Excercises; þe sixte Athar Excercises,<sup>6</sup> þat heet Longimanus<sup>7</sup> also. Vnder hym were Esdras and Neemyas. Þe seuenþe Excercises; the eiʒþe Fogodian; þe nynþe Darius Nothus. Nothus is a bastard, or he þat is i-gete of a worpy fader and i-bore of an vnworpy moder. Þe tenþe

TREVISA.

vncle, translate that realme to men of Persia and of Media in the xxxj<sup>u</sup> yere of the transmigracion of the Iewes. And so cc. and xli<sup>ti</sup> yere apassed from þe vij<sup>th</sup> yere of Ozias kyng of Iuda, in whiche tyme the monarchye of men of Assiria began to fayle, vn to the xxxj<sup>ti</sup> yere of the transmigracion of Iewes, when the monarchy of men of Parthia began. And so the monarchy of men of Persia indurede from the xxxj<sup>ti</sup> yere of the transmigracion vn to the vij<sup>th</sup> yere of grete Alexander, whiche was from the firste Cirus vn to the laste Darius, son of Arsannius, by cc. and xxxv<sup>ti</sup> yere, vnder xiiij. kynges. Whiche be, after Giraldus, Cirus; after hym Cambyses, whom his fader namede Nabugodonozor, and ʒafe to hym in his lyfe Niniuen with the realme of Assiria, by xij. yere afore his dethe, vnder whom the memory of that woman Iudith happede. The thrydde was callede grete Ermeides. The iiij<sup>th</sup> Darius, son of Ytapsis. The v<sup>th</sup> Xerses; the vj<sup>th</sup> Artaxerses, whiche was namede otherwise Longimanus,<sup>7</sup> in the tyme of whom Esdras and Neemias floreschede. The vij<sup>th</sup> Perses. Fogodianus the viij<sup>th</sup>. Darius Nothus the ix<sup>th</sup>.<sup>8</sup>

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Added from *a*.<sup>2</sup> So Trevisa for *Ozias*.<sup>3</sup> *Peerse*, *a*. (*Peers*, above.)<sup>4</sup> Added from *a*. and *Cx*.<sup>5</sup> *onlyue*, *a*.<sup>6</sup> *Artarexerses*, *a*.<sup>7</sup> *Logimannus*, *a*.; *Longinianus*, Harl. MS.<sup>8</sup> *the ix<sup>th</sup> Nothus the ix<sup>th</sup>*, Harl. MS.

Nothus; decimus Artaxerxes,<sup>1</sup> qui et Assuerus, sub quo<sup>2</sup> Hester fuit; undecimus Ochus; duodecimus Arsames;<sup>3</sup> tertius decimus Darius, filius Arsamis; quem devincens<sup>4</sup> Alexander Magnus transtulit regnum Persarum ad monarchiam Macedonum apud Græcos.

§ 5. *Regnum Græcorum.*

Cranaus  
primus  
rex. Varia  
per Græ-  
ciam regna  
exorta.

Hoc<sup>5</sup> tamen regnum Macedonum prius inceperat sub primo Cranao quartodecimo<sup>6</sup> anno Oziæ regis Juda; et sic duravit per annos sexcentos triginta sex<sup>7</sup> usque ad ultimum, Persium,<sup>8</sup> quem occiderunt Romani nono anno Oniæ pontificis, qui et Menelaus.<sup>9</sup> Erant tamen<sup>10</sup> in Græcia alia regna successive instituta; quorum primum fuit apud Arcadium, id est Sicyonios, et inde translatum ad Peloponenses sicut supra dicitur.<sup>11</sup> Aliud regnum Græcorum<sup>12</sup> fuit apud Argivos, et inde translatum ad Mycenæ.<sup>13</sup> Aliud fuit apud Athenienses, aliud apud<sup>14</sup> Lacedæmones, id est Spartanos, aliud apud Epirum sive Thraciam,<sup>15</sup> aliud apud Macedoniam; quæ omnia, sicut cætera terrarum regna, a regno Romano<sup>16</sup> sunt<sup>17</sup> absorpta, et eidem concorporata in hunc modum.

<sup>1</sup> *Artaxerses*, A.D.; *Artexerses*, E.

<sup>2</sup> *historia*, ins. B.

<sup>3</sup> *Arsanius*, MSS., and *Arsani* below.

<sup>4</sup> *interficiens*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *Hoc*] *cum*, and the sentence beginning at *apud Græcos*, in C. (not D., which inserts in marg. *Willelmus*.)

<sup>6</sup> *quarto*, D.

<sup>7</sup> 626, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> So MSS. Higden should have written *Persea*.

<sup>9</sup> *Re*, ins. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *etiam nihilominus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *dicitur*] om. E.

<sup>12</sup> *Græcorum*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Mecenas*, A.E.; *Messenas*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *apud*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *Traciam*, E.D. (as usual); *Aran-  
cium*, B.; *Franciam*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *tandem*, ins. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *sunt* after *concorporata*, B.

Artharexcerses, þat heet Assuerus also; vnder hym was Hester. Þe enleueneþe Ochus; þe twelfþe Arsanius; þe þrittenþe Darius Arsanius his sone. Þe grete Alexandre ouercome hym, and tornede þe kyngdom of Perses to þe hole kyngdom of Macedonyes<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> of Grees. Nopeles þis<sup>3</sup> kyngdom of Macedons bygan raþer vnder þe firste Cranaus þe fourtenþe zere of Ozias kyng of Iuda, and so durede sexe hondred zere and sixe and þritty anon to þe laste Persius. Þe Romayns slowh hym þe nynþe zere of Onias þe bisshop, þat heet Menelaus also. Nopeles þere were oper kyngdoms in Grees, eueriche after oper i-ordeyned; of þe whiche þe firste was in Arcadia at þe Scicions, þat peple, and was i-torned pens to þe Peloponenses, as it is i-seide tofore. Anoper kyngdom of Grees was among þe Argyues, and was i-torned pennes to þe Macens.<sup>4</sup> Anoper was at Athenys, þat citee; anoper among þe Lacedemons, þese were þe Sportans. Anoper at Epirus, þat is T[h]racia. Anoper at Macedonia. Þe kyngdom<sup>5</sup> of Rome swolowede vp alle þese kyngdoms [as he dede opere kyngdoms]<sup>6</sup> of londes, and made hem [alle]<sup>7</sup> longe to þe kyngdom of Rome. In þis manere þe kyngdom of Rome<sup>8</sup>

TREVISA.

Artaxerses other Assuerus þe x<sup>the</sup>, vnder whom Hester was. Ochus the xj<sup>the</sup>. Arsannius the xij<sup>the</sup>. Darius the son of Arsanius the xijj<sup>the</sup>. Whom Alexander ouercomenge, did translate the realme of men of Persia vn to the monarchye of men of Macedony amonge the Grekes, whiche realme began afore vnder Cranaus in the xijj<sup>the</sup> yere of Ozias kynge of Iuda; and so that realme indured by vj<sup>c</sup> and xxxvj<sup>ti</sup> yere, vn to the laste, Persius, whom the Romanes did slee in the ix<sup>the</sup> yere of Onias the bischoppe, other Menelaus. After that other realmes were made in Grece by succession; the firste was at Archadia, after that tyme translate to men of Peloponense, as hit is expressede afore. An other realme of the Grekes was at Argiuos, whiche was translate from pens to Mecenas. An other was at Athenes, an other at Lacedemonia. An other realme at Epira other Tracia; an other at Macedonia. Whiche realmes were made subiecte to the realme of Rome, and concorporate to hit, as other realmes were in this maner. The realme of Romanes, begynnenge vnder Ianus the firste

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Macedons, a.*<sup>2</sup> *at þe Grees, a.*<sup>3</sup> *So a. and Cx. Nopeles þere were oper kyngdoms, but þis, MS.*<sup>4</sup> *Mecens, a. and Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *kyng, Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *Added from a. and Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *Added from a. and Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *Text as in Cx.: words erroneously repeated in MS.*

§ 6. *Regnum Romanorum.*

Janus  
primus  
rex ;  
postea  
reges  
Latini,  
Albani,  
Romani.

Consules,  
tribuni  
plebis,  
dictatores.

Cæsares  
vel impe-  
ratores.

<sup>1</sup>Regnum Romanorum sub Jano primo<sup>2</sup> rege Italiae<sup>3</sup> exortum usque ad<sup>4</sup> annum septimum Darii filii Arsamis regis Persarum,<sup>5</sup> quem occidit Alexander Magnus, currit per annos octingentos<sup>6</sup> octoginta sub regibus viginti septem; quorum sex primi fuerunt Latini, et quatuordecim sequentes Albani, reliqui septem<sup>7</sup> post urbem conditam<sup>8</sup> Romani. Ex quibus Romulus fuit primus, et Tarquinius Superbus fuit ultimus. Denuo,<sup>9</sup> expulsis ab<sup>10</sup> urbe regibus, duo consules annuatim sunt<sup>11</sup> creati; deinde tribuni plebis et dictatores rem publicam tractabant usque ad Julium Cæsarem per annos quadringentos sexaginta tres.<sup>12</sup> Post hæc, omisso nomine regio, monarchæ, Cæsares, imperatores, et Augusti primatum tenuerunt. Quorum primus fuit Julius<sup>13</sup> ex consule et dictatore factus imperator, cujus successor et nepos Octavianus<sup>14</sup> Augustus regna totius orbis in unam redegit monarchiam.<sup>15</sup> Tandem Philippus imperator vicesimus octavus primus<sup>16</sup> Christianus est effectus. Deinde Constantinus Magnus sedem impe-

<sup>1</sup> *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *primo*] om. E.

<sup>3</sup> *Italiae*] sexto anno Delboræ  
judicis Israel, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *in*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *regis Persarum*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *septingentos*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *septem*] om. D.

<sup>8</sup> *dicebantur*, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Denuo*] Post hæc, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *ex*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *sunt*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *quatuor*, A.B.C.D. and the ver-  
sions.

<sup>13</sup> *Cæsar*, ins. B.

<sup>14</sup> *Octouianus*, MSS.

<sup>15</sup> *mundi redegit in monarchiam*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *vicesimus octavus primus*] om.  
C.D. ; *primo*, B.



bygan vnder Ianus þe firste kyng of Italy, and durede anon TREVISA.  
to þe seuenþe zere of Darius Arsanius his sone, kyng of  
Perses. ⁊ Hym slowh þe grete Alexander. And so þe grete<sup>1</sup>  
kyngdom of Rome durede at þat cours eiȝte hondred zere  
and foure score, vnder seuen<sup>2</sup> and twenty kynges. [Of þe  
whiche seuen and twenty<sup>3</sup> kynges]<sup>4</sup> sixe þe firste<sup>5</sup> were  
Latyns. Þe fourtene<sup>6</sup> þat were<sup>7</sup> after were Albans.  
Þe opere seuene þat come after þat þe citee was i-bulde  
were Romayns, of þe whiche Romulus was þe firste  
and Tarquinius þe proude was þe laste. Afterward kynges  
were i-put<sup>8</sup> out of þe citee, and were from zere to zere  
tweic consules i-chose. After consuls tribunes plebis<sup>9</sup>  
and dictatores<sup>10</sup> rulede the comounte anon to Iulius Cesar his  
tyme, foure hondred zere þre score and foure. Afterward  
he<sup>11</sup> lift of þe name of kynges, and cleped here cheef lordes  
Cesares, emperours, and Augustes; of þe whiche Iulius  
Cesar was þe firste of a consul and dictatour i-made empe-  
rour; his successour and ne was Octavianus<sup>12</sup> Augustus, and  
brouȝte alle þe kyngdoms of þe world in to oon kyngdom  
al hool. Þanne Philippe þe eiȝte and twenteþe emperour  
was þe firste emperour þat was Cristene.<sup>13</sup> Þanne þe grete

kyng of Ytaly, vn to the vij<sup>th</sup>e yere of Darius, son of MS. HARL.  
2261.  
Arsanius, and kyng of Persia, whom Alexander the Con-  
queroure did slee, contynuede by viij<sup>c</sup> and lxxx. yere, vnder  
xxvij. kynges, the firste vj. of whom were Latynes, and  
other xiiij. succedenge were Albani. Other vij. were after  
the makenge of the city of Rome, of whom Romulus was  
firste and Tarquinius the prowde was laste. Then, the  
kynges expulsede from the cite of Rome, ij. consules were  
made and create yerly; after theym, tribuni, maisters of  
the peple, vn to the tymes of Iulius Cesar, by cccc. yere  
lxiiij. After that, the name of a kyng ylefte, monarche,  
Cesares, emperoures, and men callede Augusti holdede the  
primate and chiefe place. Of whom Iulius Cesar, of a  
consul and a dictator, was made emperoure firste; Octa-  
vianus Augustus, his successor and neuwe, redacte in to  
oon monarchy the realmes of alle the worlde. At the  
laste, Philippus the xxvij<sup>th</sup> emperoure was made a Cristen  
man, firste of alle emperoures. After that, grete Constan-

<sup>1</sup> grete] om. a.

<sup>2</sup> eiȝte, MS. and a. (not Cx).

<sup>3</sup> twenty, a.

<sup>4</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> The same order of words in a.  
and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> So Cx.; fourtenþe, MS.

<sup>7</sup> came, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> put, a.

<sup>9</sup> plebes, MS., Cx.

<sup>10</sup> doctores, MS. a. and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> they, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> So Cx.; Octianus, a.; Occanus,  
MS.

<sup>13</sup> cristened, Cx.

rialem apud Constantinopolim constituit, dignitatem tamen sedis apostolicæ apud Romam successoribus Beati Petri reliquit.<sup>1</sup> Translato tandem imperio ad Karolum Magnum regem Francorum, Pipini regis filium, nomen imperiale solummodo apud Constantinopolim mansit.<sup>3</sup>

## CAP. IX.

*De Nini et Semiramidis imperio.*<sup>4</sup>

*Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* In diebus Sarug, Belus Nemprotides, rex Babylonis, intravit Assyriam, sed parum ibi conquisivit. At,<sup>5</sup> cum per sexaginta quinque annos regnasset, mortuus est. Cui successit Ninus filius suus tricesimo anno Thare,<sup>6</sup> patris<sup>7</sup> Abrahæ, regnare incipiens, regnavitque fere<sup>8</sup> toti Asiæ, excepta India, quinquaginta tribus annis. In cujus regni<sup>9</sup> anno quadragesimo tertio<sup>10</sup> natus est Abraham, anno ante urbem Romam conditam M. et pene CCC.<sup>11</sup> *Orosius, libro primo.* Anno ante urbem conditam M.CCC<sup>o</sup>. Ninus rex Assyriorum propagandæ dominationis libidine arma foris extulit, cruentamque vitam quinquaginta annis per totam

Ninus rex  
Asiæ.

<sup>1</sup> *relinquit*, A. ; *relinquens*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *solomode*, E. (not A.)

<sup>3</sup> In the preceding chapter a few trivial errors of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly corrected ; all the more serious errors are recorded.

<sup>4</sup> Title wanting in MSS.

<sup>5</sup> *Cumque*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Dionysius* (in marg.) C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *avi*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> So D. ; *fere* after *Asiæ* in A.E.

<sup>9</sup> *regni*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *anno ultimo*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *anno . . . ecc.*] om. C.D.

Constantyn made Constantynople<sup>1</sup> þe chief citee of þe **TREVISA.**  
 empere, and lefte Rome forto be chief see of þe pope to  
 Seint Petre his successours. Whanne þe empere was trans-  
 lated and i-torned to þe grete Charles, kyng of Fraunce,  
 Pipinus þe kynges sone, þanne þe name of þe emperour  
 [was] lefte<sup>2</sup> allone at Constantynople.

*Capitulum nonum.*

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo.* In  
 Sarug his tyme Belus, Nemproth his sonne, kyng of Babi-  
 loyne, wente into Assyria, and wan it afterward wip ynne  
 a schort tyme; and whan he hadde i-reigned fiue and sixty  
 zere þanne he deide. And his sone Nynus regnede after hym,  
 and bygan to reigne þe zere of Thare Abrahams fader euene  
 pritty, and was kyng wel nygh of al Asia outake Inde þre  
 and fifty zere. In þe zere of his kyngdom þre and fourty  
 Abraham was i-bore, to fore þe buldinge of þe citee of  
 Rome nyh a þowsand zere and þre hondred. *Orosius, libro*  
*primo.* Þe zere to fore þe buldyng of þe citee of Rome a þow-  
 sand and þre<sup>3</sup> hondred, Nynus kyng of Assiriens for couetise  
 to make hym greet lordschipe<sup>4</sup> bare out armour, and lyuede

tyme ordeinede the seete imperialle at Constantinople, levenge **MS. HARL.**  
 the dignite of the seete apostolicalle at Rome to the suc- **2261.**  
 cessores of Seynte Petre. At the laste, the empyre translate  
 to grete Charles kyng of Fraunce, son to kyng Pipinus,  
 the name imperialle remaynede oonly at Constantinople.

*Capitulum nonum.*

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo.* Belus  
 Nemprotides kyng of Babilon, entrede in to Assiria,  
 in the daies of Sarug, conquerenge but lytel þer, whiche  
 diede after that he hade regnede lxx. yere. Whom Ninus  
 his son succedede, begynnenge to reigne in the xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere of  
 Thare fader to Abraham, reignenge in alle Asia, Ynde excepte,  
 liij. yere; in the xliij<sup>ti</sup> of the reigne of whom Abraham was  
 borne, by a m<sup>l</sup> yere allemoste and ccc. afore the edificacion  
 of the cite of Rome. *Orosius, libro primo.* In the m<sup>l</sup> and  
 ccc. yere afore the edifieng of the cite of Rome, Ninus  
 kyng of Assiria, movede thro the luste of domination,

<sup>1</sup> *Constantynoble*, MS., a. β. γ., or Cx.) The verb is wanting in  
 here and below. (not Cx.) all, and in β. and γ.

<sup>2</sup> *lifte* after þanne in MS. (not a.

<sup>3</sup> *nyne*, a.

<sup>4</sup> *his lordshippe grete*, Cx.

Asiam bellis<sup>1</sup> egit.<sup>2</sup> A meridie atque mari<sup>3</sup> Rubro surgens sub ultimo septentrione Euxinum Pontum vastando perdomuit. Scythicam<sup>4</sup> barbariem adhuc tunc imbellem et innocentem vires suas nosse; et non jam lacte pecudum (ut prius) sed sanguine hominum vivere, dum vicit, edocuit. Novissime<sup>5</sup> Zoroasten, Bactrianorum regem magicæque artis inventorem, interfecit. Postremo, dum deficientem a se urbem quandam obsideret, ictu sagittæ interiit.<sup>6</sup> *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo sexto.*<sup>7</sup> Ninus, filius Beli, mortuo patre obtinuit Assyriam; et civitatem Niniven, a nomine suo sic nuncupatam, caput<sup>8</sup> regni sui fecit, ac<sup>9</sup> trium dierum itinere ampliavit; nam prius Nemphrot eam<sup>10</sup> fundaverat.<sup>11</sup> Devicit etiam Chaam, qui et Zoroastes, regem Bactriæ;<sup>12</sup> qui<sup>13</sup> septem liberales artes<sup>14</sup> in quatuordecim columnis, septem æneis et septem lateritiis, contra utrumque diluvium conscripsit. Cujus etiam<sup>15</sup> libros Ninus combussit. *Isidorus, Etymolog., libro octavo.*<sup>16</sup> Scripsit<sup>17</sup> Aristoteles de Zoroaste, quod vicies centum milia versuum in arte magicæ<sup>18</sup> com-

<sup>1</sup> *bellando*, A. (second hand).

<sup>2</sup> *exegit*, B.

<sup>3</sup> So A.B.C.D.; *atque a mari*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *Schiticam* or *Sciticam*, MSS.

<sup>5</sup> So A.; *Novissimo*, E.

<sup>6</sup> *Orosius . . . interiit*] om. D.; add. in marg. C.

<sup>7</sup> The true reference is to *Hist. Libr. Gen.*, c. 39.

<sup>8</sup> *caput* after *sui*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *et*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *illam*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *nam . . . fundaverat*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *qui . . . Bactriæ*] qui adhuc vivens regnabat in Bactria, qui etiam dicebatur Zoroastes, magicæ artis inventor, C.D. *Zoroastes* is the classical form.

<sup>13</sup> *etiam*, ins. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *regem . . . artes*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *etiam*] om. B.E.

<sup>16</sup> 18, D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 9.

<sup>17</sup> *Scripsit quidem*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *magicæ*, A.

cruel lyf fifty þere in al Asia in werre and in bataille, and aroose out of þe soup and from þe reed see, and destroyed in þe norþ vppon þe see þat hatte Eusinum þat streccheþ from the ryver Thanay to þe endes of Hiberia<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> Armenia. And so þis kyng Nynus ouer come men of Scitia barbarica, þat were þit no warriours, but stille men and esy,<sup>3</sup> and made hem knowe strengþe, and tauzte hem to lyue by manis blood þat lyvede toforhonde by<sup>4</sup> melke of bestes; and at þe laste he slow Zoroastes<sup>5</sup> kyng of Bactrians þat was fyndere of wycchecraft, but at þe laste dede, while he bysegede a citee þat was tornede from hym, he was i-hit wip an arewe, and so he was i-slawe. *Petrus*, 36°. Nynus Belus his sone, whanne his fader was dede, [hadde]<sup>6</sup> Assiria and þe citee Ninyue i-nemped by his name, and made þat citee Ninyue [chef of his kyngdom, and made the citee]<sup>7</sup> huger and more by þre iorneyes. For Nemproth hadde toforehonde i-founded þat citee, and slow also Cham, þat hete Zoroastes<sup>5</sup> also, kyng of Bactria, þat wroot the seuene<sup>8</sup> science in fourtene pileres, in seuene of bras and seuene of brent<sup>9</sup> tyle, forto saue hem azenst eiper flood,<sup>10</sup> but Nynus brende his bookes. *Isidorus*, libro 8°. Aristotil of Zoroastes he wroot þat he made twenty hondred þowsand vers of wicchecraft, and Democritus made

TREVISA.

gedrede an hoste, ledenge a cruelle lyfe by l<sup>ii</sup> yere, thro alle Asia, in batelles, begynnenge from the meridiē and the redde see, made tame the cruelle peple of Scitia; sleenge also at the laste Zoroastes, kyng of Bactria, and the firste fynder of wicchecraft. And at the laste Ninus was sleyne with an arowe at the seege of a cite. *Petrus*, 16° *capitulo*. Ninus, the son of Belus, after the dethe of his fader opteynede Assiria, and the cite of Niniuen, callede so after his name, and made hit the principalle place of his realme, makenge that cite more large by the iourneye of thre daies, whom Nemproth founded firste, ouercommenge Cham and Zoroastes kyng of Bactria, whiche did write ageyne eicher grete floode vij. artes liberalle in xiiij. pyllors, vij. of brasse and vij. of tylestones. The bookes of whom Ninus brente also. *Isidorus libro octavo*. The grete clerke Aristotille wrytethe of Zoroastes, that he made xx<sup>ii</sup> tymes a c.m<sup>i</sup> versus of wicche craft, whiche

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> *Heberia*, MS.<sup>2</sup> *an*, *a*.<sup>3</sup> *pesible*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *with*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> So *a*. and Cx.; *Zorastes*, MS., but *Zoroastes* below (once).<sup>6</sup> Added from *a*. and Cx.<sup>7</sup> Added from *a*.; so also in Cx. (nearly).<sup>8</sup> So *a*. and Cx. (who has *sciences* below); *seuenþe*, MS.<sup>9</sup> *brand*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *ayenste fyre and water*, Cx.

posuerit; quam artem Democritus<sup>1</sup> postmodum tempore Hippocratis<sup>2</sup> ampliavit. *Petrus tricesimo sexto.*<sup>3</sup>

De ortu  
idololatriæ.  
Beli simulacrum a  
Nino  
adoratum.

Ab isto Nino orta sunt idola in hunc modum. Mortuo Belo, Ninus filius ejus in solatium doloris imaginem patris fecit. Cui tantam reverentiam exhibuit, ut quibuslibet<sup>4</sup> reis ad eam<sup>5</sup> confugientibus parceret. Hujus rei<sup>6</sup> exemplo plures suis caris imagines fecerunt. Et sicut ab idolo Beli cetera idola originem traxerunt, sic ab ejus nomine derivatum est<sup>7</sup> generale nomen idolorum secundum diversitatem idiomatum. Nam aliqui Beel, aliqui Baal, aliqui Baalim<sup>8</sup> dixerunt. Immo et nomina specificaverunt; alii Beelfegor, alii Belzebub<sup>9</sup> dicentes.<sup>10</sup> *Alexander in Mythologia.*

Alii aliter  
rem  
tradunt.

De ortu idololatriæ omnia pene figmenta manarunt. Nam cum<sup>11</sup> Cirophanes<sup>12</sup> Ægyptius dilecti filii sui jam defuncti simulacrum, quod ob specimen<sup>13</sup> doloris idolum dicitur,<sup>14</sup> in memoriam defuncti filii<sup>15</sup> confinxisset,<sup>16</sup> ac multipliciter a servis adoratum reorum confugium<sup>17</sup> statuisset, dum tristitiæ remedium quærit, seminarium doloris invenit. Nam error inveteratus<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *philosophus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Ypocratis* or *Ipocratis*, MSS.

<sup>3</sup> 26, A.; 16, B.; 38, C.D. The true reference is to c. 40.

<sup>4</sup> *quibuscunque*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *ipsam*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *rei*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *derivatur*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> So A.; *balim*, E.

<sup>9</sup> So A.B.; *Belsebub*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *dixerunt*, C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *cum*] om. E.

<sup>12</sup> So A.E.; *Sirophanes*, B.D.; *Strophanes*, C. Perhaps Chephrenes, also written Sephres, is intended. See Osburn's *Monumental Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i., pp. 305-311.

<sup>13</sup> *specem*, A.E.

<sup>14</sup> *quod...dicitur*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *fili*] om. D.

<sup>16</sup> *confixisset*, B.D.

<sup>17</sup> *refugium*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *intricatus*, B.

pat craft more afterward in Ypocratis<sup>1</sup> tyme. *Petrus* 36°. TREVISA.  
 Of þis Nynus mawmetrie<sup>2</sup> bygan in þis maner.<sup>3</sup> Whan Bellus  
 was dede his sone Nynus, for to have som comfort of his  
 sorwe, made an ymage of his fader, and he dede þat ymage so  
 grete worschippe and reuerence þat he spared al eucl doeres  
 þat fliþe to þat ymage; by ensample of þis doynge meny men  
 made ymages to her leue frendes, and so by ensample of Belus  
 his mawmet come forþ opere mawmettes. [Also of Belus his  
 name come forþ þe comoun names of mawmettis]<sup>4</sup> in dyuerse  
 longages and tonges; for som men clepeþ her mawmet Beel,  
 som Baal, and som Baalim, and som þaf here mawmettes<sup>5</sup> a  
 surname, and cleped hir names<sup>6</sup> Belphegor, and som Belsebub.  
*Alexander in mythologia.*<sup>7</sup> Of þe bryngynge forþ of mawme-  
 trie com wel nyh al þe feyninge of poetrie, for whanne Siro-  
 phanes of Egipt hadde an ymage of his sone þat was dede, þat  
 ymage is i-cleped<sup>8</sup> Ydolum, þat is, likenesse and schappe, for  
 liknes of sorwe. Whanne þey<sup>9</sup> hadde i-made þat image in mynde  
 of his sone, þat ymage was hugeliche<sup>10</sup> i-worschipped of his  
 seruauntes; it was refute and socour to mysdoeres as he hadde  
 i-ordeyned; and while þey souþte helpe and remedye of sorwe  
 þei fond seed and springynge of wel more sorowe; for þe old

arte Democritus amplifiede in the tyme of Ypocras. *Petrus*, MS. HARL.  
*tricesimo sexto capitulo.* Ydoles toke begynnege of þis 2261.  
 Ninus in this maner. Belus fader to Ninus dedde, Ninus  
 made an ymage to the similitude of his fader in to the Of ydola-  
 solace of his sorowe. To whom he þafe so grete reuerence trye.  
 that he sparede gilty men fleenge to hit. Thro exemple  
 of whom other nowble men made ymages of their frendes;  
 and lyke as other ydoles toke begynnege of the ydole of  
 Belus, soe a generalle name of ydoles is deriuat of the  
 name of hym, after diuersite of speches. For men calle  
 somme ydoles Beel, somme Baal, somme Baalim, specifienge  
 somme names, as somme men Beelzabub, somme men Beel-  
 phegor. *Alexander in Mythologia.* Alle figmentes toke  
 begynnege allemoste of ydolatri, for when Sirophanes of  
 Egipte hade made an ymage of his son for grete sorowe.  
 worschippede moche of his seruauntes, ordeinede hit to be  
 a refute of gilty men fleenge to hit. Whiche inquirenge a  
 remedy of hevynesse founde a grete place of sorowe, for  
 olde erreure began to be diffudedde thro the worschippenge

<sup>1</sup> *Ypocrat his, a.*; *Ypocras, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *Mawmetrye first, a.*

<sup>3</sup> So *Cx.*; *tyme, MS. and a.*

<sup>4</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *mawmett, a.*

<sup>6</sup> *mawmett, a.* (not *Cx.*)

<sup>7</sup> *Mitologia, MS., a.*; *Mytilog., Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *he cleped, Cx.,* which is better.  
 (*β.* and *γ.* agree with *MS.* and *a.*)

<sup>9</sup> *he, Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> *gretely, Cx.*

in idolorum cultura cœpit diffundi. Nec tamen eosdem ritus cuncti recipiendos<sup>1</sup> statuerunt.<sup>2</sup> Nam philosophi unum Deum colunt; quem pro<sup>3</sup> multiplici dispositione, qua variis modis mundum regit, variis vocabulis appellant; utpote<sup>4</sup> Vitumnus, quia vitam præstat; Sentinus, quia sensum dat;<sup>5</sup> Jupiter, quia iuvat. Refert etiam Plato in libro qui intitulatur *Philosophus*, quod poetæ lucri causa et favoris rationes, scientias,<sup>6</sup> et potentias ad usum vivendi concessas membratim effigiaverunt, et propriis nominibus assignaverunt; utpote scientiam colendi agros vocaverunt Cererem, scientiam colendi vineas Bacchum.<sup>7</sup> Et etiam turpes actus hominum inter deos numeraverunt.<sup>8</sup>

Dii ethnicorum homines fuerunt, secundum Isidorum.

*Isidorus, Etymolog., libro octavo.* Quos pagani deos asserunt homines fuerunt, et pro uniuscujusque vita meritis vel magnificentia coli apud suos post mortem cœperunt. Sed etiam<sup>9</sup> dæmonibus persuadentibus<sup>10</sup> quos illi pro sola memoria honoraverant, successores existimabant<sup>11</sup> deos. Et ad ista magis extollenda accesserunt figmenta poetica. *Ra-*

Tres differentiarum numinum, secundum Labeonem.

*nulphus.* Et sicut innuit Augustinus de Civitate, libro secundo, capitulo undecimo, poeta Labeo<sup>12</sup> tradidit tres differentias numinum. Nam quosdam

<sup>1</sup> *recipiendo*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *recipientes censuerunt*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *ex*, C.; om. D.

<sup>4</sup> *utpote*] ut, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> For *Vitumnus* and *Sentinus*, see *Aug. de Civ. Dei*, vii., 2, and 3.

<sup>6</sup> *et scientias*, A.; om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *vocaverunt Bacchum*, A.; *Bacchum nuncupantes*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *numerantes*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.E.

<sup>10</sup> *persuadentibus*] so A.C.D.; om. E.; *suadentibus*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *æstimabant*, A.; *exæstimantes* C.; *existimarent*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Labeo*, E. (not A.). This clerical error sufficed to lead Trevisa astray, and the Harleian translator also apparently.



errour in worschippe of mawmettis gan to sprede. Noþeles þe same manere doynge was nouȝt<sup>1</sup> i-ordeyned of al men. For filosofres worschipped oon<sup>2</sup> God and ȝaf hym many names for meny manere doynge and worchynges þat he worcheþ; lyveþ,<sup>3</sup> for he ȝeueþ lyf; feleþ, for he ȝeueþ felynge; Iupiter, þat is, helper, for he helpeþ. Also Plato, in þe booke þat hatte Philosophus, seiþ þat poetes, by cause of wynnyng and of fauour, peyntede resouns sciens and myȝt þat were i-graunted to þe vse of lyuynge in meny manere schappes, and ȝaf euerich a propre name. And so konnyng of telienge<sup>4</sup> of feeldes þey cleped Cereres,<sup>5</sup> konnyng of telienge of vynes þey clepede<sup>6</sup> Ba[c]chus, and accountede foule dedes of men amonge goddes.<sup>7</sup> *Isidorus, Etymologia, libro 8º.* Þey þat payenis<sup>8</sup> clepiþ goddis, þey were men. And as þey bere hem in her lif, better or wers, so þey were i-worschipped after her deef. Bote by false lore of fendes men þat come afterward worschipped hem for goddis, þat were first i-worschipped onliche for mynde; and þan forto make it more solempne com feynynges of poetes. R. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro ij. capitulo xi.* Þe poete wip his lippe spekeþ of þre manere of goddes; for som þey clepeþ

TREVISIA.

of ydoles, neuerthelesse that rite was not ordeynede for alle men. For philosophers worschippede oon God, whom thei namede by diuerse names for the monyfolde disposicion thro whom he gouernethe the worlde in diuerse maneres; as Vitumnus,<sup>9</sup> in that he ȝiffethe life; Sentinus, in that he ȝiffeth wytte and felenge; Iupiter, for he helpeþ. Also that grete clerke Plato rehersethe in a booke of his callede Philosophus, that poetes for cause of lucre and of fauore haue chaungede reasones, sciences, and powers to the vse of lyvenge grauntede a fore tyme to the actes and vile operaciones of men, callenge Sereris the science of tyllenge feldes, and Bac[c]hus of vynes, nowmbrenge these symple actes amonge goddes. *Isidorus, libro octavo.* The goddes, that paganes do worschippe, were men somme tyme, and began to be worschippede after their merites and magnificence in this lyfe; but, thro the persuasion of the deuel, their successorres trawede theyme to be goddes, whom men afore worschippede oonly for a memory; whiche thynges the figmentes of poetes helpede moche. R. And as Seynte Austyn semethe to reherse, *De Civitate Dei, libro secundo, capitulo undecimo,* poetes in wrytynge ȝafe iij. differences and diuersites of ydoles, callenge somme of

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> So a. and Cx.; now, MS.

<sup>2</sup> o, a.; oo, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> and lyveþ, MS. a. β. γ. Probably we should read *lyver* (and *feler* below).

<sup>4</sup> tellynge, a.; tillyng, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> So MS.; and the error may be safely set down to Trevisa himself,

who elsewhere imagines *Appolyn* to be the nominative of *Apollo*. The Harl. version is somewhat worse.

<sup>6</sup> So a.; clepe, MS.

<sup>7</sup> So Cx.; goode, MS.; gode, a.

<sup>8</sup> paynyns, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *Victimus*, Harl. MS.

dixit deos, ut Jupiter, Mars; quosdam semideos, ut Hercules, Romulus; quosdam heroes, id est, virtuosos et morigeratos homines, qui putabantur aliquid divi-

Ex idololatria ortæ superstitiones.

nitatis habere, ut Hector, Achilles. Ex idolatria ortæ sunt variæ superstitiones et multæ, qualis est illa de qua loquitur Hieronymus super Isaiam decimo<sup>1</sup> octavo, dicens quod Ægyptii et pene omnes orientales colunt Fortunam, cujus idolum loco nominatissimo ponunt; dextræ ejus cornu repletum hydromelle apponunt,<sup>2</sup> de quo omnes<sup>3</sup> circumsedentes nituntur gustare in ultimo die Novembris; quo tempore, si cornu plenum invenerint,<sup>4</sup> pronosticant copiam rerum toto anno illo affuturam; si econtra invenerint, gemunt.<sup>5</sup> *Trogus, libro primo, capitulo septimo.*<sup>6</sup> Mortuo Nino

Semiramis uxor Nini.

successit uxor sua<sup>7</sup> Semiramis cum filio impube Nino sive Ninian relicto; quæ non ausa immaturo puero regnum tradere, nec ipsa quidem regnum palam tractare, simulat se<sup>8</sup> pro matre filium, pro femina puerum. Nam vox utrique<sup>9</sup> gracilis et statura mediocris. Igitur brachia et crura velamentis, caput tiara tegit. Et

<sup>1</sup> So A.B.; *vicesimo*, E. The text is correct. See lib. xviii. c. 65. (tom. iv. p. 639. Ed. Migne).

<sup>2</sup> *ponunt*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *omnes*] *homines*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *invenerunt*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *Ranulphus . . . gemunt*] om. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *cap. septimo*] om. A.C.D.; *primo*, B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 1. and c. 2.

<sup>7</sup> *sua*] *ejus*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *se*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *utriusque*, D.

goddes, as Iupiter<sup>1</sup> and Mars; som half goddes, as Hercules and Romulus; and som vertuous men þat me trowede þat hadde somewhat of godhede, as Hector<sup>2</sup> and Achilles. Of mawmetrie come meny cuel manere of doynge; such is þat þat<sup>3</sup> Ierom spekeþ vpon Isay [decimo] octavo,<sup>4</sup> and seiþ þat Egipcians and wel nyh alle men of est<sup>5</sup> londes worschippeth Fortune, þat is, god of happes, as þey meneþ; the ymage of Fortune<sup>6</sup> is i-sette in a place þat is wel i-knowe, and hap in his riȝt hond an horne ful of mede; alle þat sitteþ aboute fondeþ<sup>7</sup> to taste of þat horne þe laste day of Nouembre; and ȝif þey fyndeþ þan þe horne ful, it bodeþ a good corn ȝere, and ȝif þey fyndeþ it empty,<sup>8</sup> þanne þey makeþ sorwe. *Trogus, libro primo.* Whanne Nynus was dede, his wyf Semiramis, wiþ hir sone Nynus, þat heet Nynyan also, reignede in þis manere: þe womman durste<sup>9</sup> nouȝt bytake þe kyngdom to þe ȝong childe, noþer sche durste hir self regne openliche; þerfore sche desigised hir self in þe childes liche, þe moder for þe sone, a womman in stede of þe childe, for eiper hadde a small voys and [was]<sup>10</sup> mene of stature. Þerfore sche<sup>11</sup> hidde hir armes and hir þyȝhes wiþ dyuers helynges, and here heed wiþ a cappe. And for me schulde nouȝt seie þat sche hidde<sup>12</sup> eny þing wiþ þe<sup>13</sup>

TREVISA.

theyme goddes, as Iupiter, Mars; somme halfe goddes, as Hercules and Romulus; and somme vertuous as hauenge parte of godhede, as Hector and Achilles. Also diuerse supersticionen began of ydolatry, as Seynte Ierom spekethe on the xviii<sup>th</sup> chapitre of Ysay, seyenge that men of Egipte and of the este partes worschippe Fortune. The ydole of whom thei sette in the chiefe place, holdenge an horne in the ryȝtehonde replete with hony, of whom alle men syttenge aboute do taste in the laste day of Nouember; and if thay fynde the horne fulle at that tyme thei prenosticate grete habundaunce of goodes to comen in that yere foloenge, and if hit be voide thei waile and sorowe. *Trogus, libro primo.* Ninus dedde, Semiramis his wife, lefte with Ninus other Niinian his son tendre in age, began to reigne, whiche wyllenge not here childe to reigne for infaney, feynede here as a son, beenge the moder. For thei were of an egalle stature, and lyke of speche. Wherefore sche made clothes for here hedde, legges, and armes of purpose, commaundenge the

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> So *a.*; here, and elsewhere sometimes, MS. has *Iupiter*.

<sup>2</sup> So *a.*; *Ector*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> þa, MS.

<sup>4</sup> 18<sup>o</sup>, *a.*, Cx., correctly.

<sup>5</sup> þe est, *a.*

<sup>6</sup> the ymage of Fortune] twice repeated in MS.

<sup>7</sup> foundeth, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> leer, *a.*; voyd or empty, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> þurste, *a.*

<sup>10</sup> Added from *γ.*; *a.* *β.* and Cx. agree with MS.

<sup>11</sup> they, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> had, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> þe] om. *a.*

ne novo habitu aliquid<sup>1</sup> occultare videretur, populum suum simili modo vestiri jubet.<sup>2</sup> Quem quidem<sup>3</sup> morem vestis gens illa adhuc<sup>4</sup> tenet. Magna deinde hæc mulier gessit; at<sup>5</sup> cum cunctorum invidiam superasset, quæ et qualis fuerit fatetur. Quod quidem factum magnam illi gloriam adauxit.<sup>6</sup> Nam et<sup>7</sup> Æthiopiam subjugavit, Indiam debellavit. Ad<sup>8</sup> postremum, cum concubitum proprii filii<sup>9</sup> expetisset, ab eodem interfecta est, cum quadraginta duobus annis regnasset.

Ninus, Nini filius.

Filius vero ejus<sup>10</sup> Ninus, paternis ac maternis laboribus contentus, raro a viris visus est;<sup>11</sup> in turba fœminarum consenuit. Posterique sui ejus<sup>12</sup> exemplum<sup>13</sup> secuti responsa<sup>14</sup> gentibus per internuntios dabant. *Ranulphus*.<sup>15</sup> Quod et usque ad tempora Sardanapali observatum est.<sup>16</sup>

## CAP. X.

### *De Abraha*.<sup>17</sup>

Abraham nascitur.

*Genesis*. Thare, cum septuaginta esset annorum, genuit Aram,<sup>18</sup> Nachor, et Abram.<sup>19</sup> Natusque est Abram

<sup>1</sup> *Quæ novo habitu ut aliquid*, A.; *Et ne habitu quid*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *populum similiter vestiri jubet*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *quidem*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *adhuc*] om. D.

<sup>5</sup> *at*] et, C.D.; ac, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Quod . . . adauxit*] varied in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. B.C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Ac*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *ipsius filii*, A.; *proprii sui*, C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *ejus*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *est*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *ejus*] om. D.

<sup>13</sup> *exemplar*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *responsum*, C. (not D.)

<sup>15</sup> Reference added from A.B.C.

<sup>16</sup> *Quod . . . est*] om. D.; in margin

of C.

<sup>17</sup> Title wanting in MSS.

<sup>18</sup> So MSS., for Aran (Haran).

<sup>19</sup> *Abraham*, A.B.C.D., and so below.

newe manere of cloþinge, sche hi<sup>z</sup>te þat hir peple schulde TREVISA.  
 goo i-cloped in þe same array, and <sup>z</sup>it þat peple vseþ þe same  
 manere cloþinge. Þanne þis womman dede meny grete dedes,  
 and whanne<sup>1</sup> sche had ouercome þe envie<sup>2</sup> of alle enemyes,  
 þanne sche knowlechede what sche was and how sche hadde  
 i-doo. Þan þe doynge torned hire to ful<sup>3</sup> greet worschippe ;  
 for sche ouercome Ethiopia, blew men lond, and Ynde also.  
 And at þe laste sche desired hir owne sone, and bad him forto  
 ligge by here ; and he slow here, whan sche hadde i-reigned  
 two and fourty <sup>z</sup>ere. But hir sone Nynus helde hym apaied  
 wip þe trauaille<sup>4</sup> of his fader and moder, and was afterward  
 selde i-seie amonge men, and leuede and wax olde among  
 wommen. And his successoures, kynges þat come after hym,  
 folwede þat ensample of hym and <sup>z</sup>euen<sup>5</sup> answeere to þe  
 peple by messangers þat schulde goo by twene. R. Þat manere  
 doynge was i-vsed anon to þe kyng Sardanapallus his tyme.

*Capitulum decimum.*

*Genesis.* Thare whanne he was þre score <sup>z</sup>ere olde and ten,  
 þan he gat Aaram, Nachor, and Abraham; [and Abraham]<sup>6</sup> was

---

peple to be clothede in that maner also, whiche consuetude MS. HARL.  
 peple of that cuntre vse in to this tyme presente ; whiche 2261.  
 woman did grete thynges in here reigne. For sche made  
 subiecte Ethioppe, and fau<sup>z</sup>hte soore ageynes Ynde, whiche  
 desirenge to haue hade the pleasure of the flesche with here  
 awne son was sleyne by hym. And when Ninus, son to  
 Semiramis, hade reignede xliij<sup>ti</sup> yere, contente with the labores  
 of his fader, [he] was seen but selde of men, drawenge and  
 taryenge moche in the company of women ; whose succes-  
 soures vsenge the seide condicion <sup>z</sup>a<sup>z</sup>e answeeres to peple by  
 messyngers betwene. R. Whiche thyng was obseruede and  
 keptede vn to the tymes of Sardanapallus.

*Capitulum decimum.*

THARE beenge of lxx<sup>ti</sup> yere in age gate Aaram, Nachor,  
 and Abraham ; whiche Abraham was borne in the xliij<sup>ti</sup> yere

<sup>1</sup> and whan repeated in MS.

<sup>2</sup> enemy, Cx,

<sup>3</sup> right, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> transuaille, MS. ; trauail, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> <sup>z</sup>eue, a. ; yaf. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

quadragésimo tertio anno Nini regis Assyriorum, ducentésimo nonagesimo secundo<sup>1</sup> anno post diluuium secundum Josephum. *Ranulphus*. De numero annorum istius secundæ ætatis vide supra.<sup>2</sup> *Genesis*. Porro Aram<sup>3</sup> genuit Loth, Sarai,<sup>4</sup> et Melcham. Sed<sup>5</sup> mortuus est Aram ante patrem suum Thare<sup>6</sup> in Ur Chaldæorum. Ex quibus liquet quod<sup>7</sup> anno undecimo Abrahæ mortuus est Ninus. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo*. Cujus uxor Semiramis, ut regnare posset post maritum,<sup>8</sup> nupsit proprio filio,<sup>9</sup> quem ex Nino marito<sup>10</sup> susceperat; et ex eo filium suscepit,<sup>11</sup> qui Babyloniam ampliavit. *Genesis*. Inde Thare, non valens ferre injurias sibi illatas de adorando igne, in Chaldæa, ubi et Aram primogenitum suum<sup>12</sup> extinxerant, peregrinatus est cum Abram et Nachor et familia Aram usque ad Charram<sup>13</sup> Mesopotamiæ,<sup>14</sup> ubi completis ducentis quinque annis mortuus est.<sup>15</sup> Abram, mortuo patre suo Thare,<sup>16</sup> descendit de Charra in Sichem, et inde Pentapolim; postmodum<sup>17</sup> collocans tabernaculum inter Bethel et Hai,<sup>18</sup> fame invalescente descendit in Ægyptum, dicens Sarai fore<sup>19</sup> sororem suam.<sup>20</sup> *Josephus, libro primo,*<sup>21</sup> *capitulo septimo*. Abraham, apud Chaldæos prius

Abraham  
de Charran  
in Ægyptum  
descendit.

Anno  
Abrahæ  
75.

<sup>1</sup> 293, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Ranulphus . . . supra*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> So A.B.; *Abraham*, E.

<sup>4</sup> So A.; *Saray*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *Sed*] et, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Thare*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Ex quibus . . . quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *maritum*] eum, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *filio suo*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *marito*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *suscepit*] genuit, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *filium suum pr.* B.; *filium suum* C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *in Carram*, A.B.C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> *Mesopotamiæ*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *moritur Thare*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *suo Thare*] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *postea*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> So A.; *Hay*, D.E.

<sup>19</sup> *esse*, B.C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *dicens Sarray uxorem suam esse sororem*, C.D., which is better.

<sup>21</sup> *primo*] om. E. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 8.

i-bore þe ʒere of Nynus kyng of Assiria þre and fourty, two hondred ʒere foure score and twelue after Noe his flood, so seip Iosephus. R. Þe nombre and þe somme of þis secunde age loke to fore in þis book. *Genesis*. Þan Aram<sup>1</sup> gat Looth, Sarray, and Melcham: Aaram deide to fore his fader Thare in Ur Caldeorum, a place in Caldea: and so Ninus deide þe ʒere of Abraham his age eleuene. *Petrus* 60°. Semyramis Ninus his wif, for sche wolde reigne after hir housbonde Ninus, sche wedded hir owne sone þat sche hadde by hir housbonde Nynus, and hadde by hir sone a childe þat eched<sup>2</sup> Babilonia and made it more. *Genesis*. Þanne Thare myʒte nouʒt suffre þe wrong þat hym was doo of worschippyng of fuyr in Caldea, þere þei hadde i-slawe his eldest sone Aaram. He wente out of þe<sup>3</sup> contre wip Abraham and Nachor and Aaram his meyny anon to Charram in Mesopotamia, and deide þere after two hondred ʒere and fyue. Abraham whanne<sup>4</sup> his fader Thare was dede he wente doune out of Charra in to Sichem, and þennes into Pen[ta]polis; <sup>5</sup> afterward he piʒt his pauyloun bytwene Bethel and Hay. And hongre wax<sup>6</sup> strong he went doune in to Egipte, and tolde þere þat Sarray was his suster. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo* 7°. Abraham lernede in

TREVISA.

of Ninus kyng of Assiria, cc.xcij. yere after the grete floode, after Iosephus. R. Beholde in the vj<sup>th</sup>e chapitre afore of the nowmbre of the yeres of the secunde age. *Genesis*. Aaram gate Loth, Saray, and Melcha, but Aaram diede afore Thare his fader, in the cite of men of Caldea, wherefore hit doth appere that Ninus diede in the xj<sup>th</sup>e yere of Abraham. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo*. The wife of whom, Semiramis by name, did wedde here awne son, that sche myʒhte reigne, whom sche hade by Ninus here howsebonde, hauenge a childe by here son, whiche did ampliate Babilony. Thare hauenge not powere to suffre iniuryes doen to hym as for fire to be worschippede in Caldea, where he pereschede, Aaram his firste son wente furthe with Abraham and Nachor, and with the meyne other seruauntes of Aaram, to Carra in Mesopotamia, whiche diede there, cc. and v. yere complete. Thare ded, Abraham wente from Carra to Sichem, and afterwarde to Pentapolis, fixenge his tabernacle betwene Bethel and Hay. After that for hungre he wente in to Egipte, taking Saray with hym, sayenge here to be his sustyr. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo septimo*. Abraham, erudite

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> So a. and Cx.; Aaron, MS.<sup>2</sup> eched and enlarged. Cx.<sup>3</sup> þat, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> So a. and Cx.; was, MS.<sup>5</sup> Pentapolis, a., Cx.<sup>6</sup> was, Cx.

eruditus, in Ægyptum descendens<sup>1</sup> docuit Ægyptios primus<sup>2</sup> arithmetice<sup>3</sup> et astrologiam prius<sup>4</sup> illis ignotam. *Genesis*.<sup>5</sup> Abraham plurimum ditatus rediens de Ægypto<sup>6</sup> ad locum prioris tabernaculi, propter jurgium pastorum recessit a Loth usque ad convallem Mambre juxta Hebron. *Petrus, quadragesimo secundo.*

Abraham juxta Hebron revertitur.

De civitate Hebron. Hebron vel Chebron est<sup>7</sup> civitas, quæ et Cariatharbe dicitur<sup>8</sup> a *cariath* quod est civitas, et *arbe* quod est quatuor. Nam ibi<sup>9</sup> sepulti<sup>10</sup> sunt<sup>11</sup> quatuor patriarchæ maximi; Adam, Abraham, Isaak, et Jacob. *Ranulphus.* Sed Joseph sepultus est in Sichimis juxta Montem Ephraim,<sup>12</sup> sicut supra dictum est, et in libro Josuæ ultimo capitulo patet.<sup>13</sup> *Genesis.* Abraham cum redisset de cæde<sup>14</sup> quatuor regum dedit decimas de omnibus acquisitis occurrenti<sup>15</sup> sibi Melchisedech, regi Salem, qui obtulit panem et vinum. *Hieronymus in epistola ad Evangelium, et Petrus capitulo quinquagesimo secundo.*<sup>16</sup> Decimæ leguntur primum datæ ab Abraham, sed primitiæ prius dabantur ab Abèl. Hunc etiam<sup>17</sup> Melchisedech tradunt Hebræi fuisse Seem,<sup>18</sup> primogenitum<sup>19</sup> Noe, et vixisse usque ad

Decimæ Melchisedech.

<sup>1</sup> *veniens*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *primus*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *arithmeticam*, A. ; *arithmetricam*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *antea*, C.D., which, after *ignotum*, add, *a quibus postmodum istæ scientiæ pervenerunt ad Ægyptios.*

<sup>5</sup> Reference added from A.

<sup>6</sup> *Abraham* after *Ægypto* in E.

<sup>7</sup> *est*] om. D.

<sup>8</sup> *dicitur*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *ibi enim*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sepulte*, D.E.

<sup>11</sup> *sunt*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> Various written in MSS.

<sup>13</sup> *Ranulphus . . . patet*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *occisione*, C.D., which vary the sentence.

<sup>15</sup> *occurrente*, A.

<sup>16</sup> 43, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 46. and c. 47.

<sup>17</sup> *autem*, C. (not D.)

<sup>18</sup> *Sem*, A.

<sup>19</sup> *filium*, D.



Caldea and wente doun in to Egipte, and was þe firste þat tauȝte þe Egiptians ars metrick<sup>1</sup> and astrologie, þat was vnknowe to hem to fore honde. *Genesis*. Abraham was ful riche, and went aȝen out of Egipt to þe place of þe forseide paubloun, and for strif of herdes he departede from Loth, and wente from hym anon to þe vale of Mambre besides Ebron. *Petrus* 42, *Hebron*. Hebron, þat hatte Chebron also, is<sup>2</sup> a citee, and hatte [also]<sup>3</sup> Cariatharbe, of *Cariath*, þat is a citee, and *Arbe*, þat is foure; for foure þe grettest patriarkes were i-buried þere, Adam, Abraham, Isaac, and Iacob; but Ioseph is i-buried in Sichem besides Mount Ephraym, as it is i-seide aboue in libro Iosue, capitulo ultimo. *Genesis*. Whan Abraham come aȝen from þe batayle of foure kynges, he ȝaf tepyng of al þat he hadde i-gete to Melchisedek<sup>4</sup> king of Salem; and Melchisedek offred bred and wyn. *Hieronymus in Epistola ad Evangelum, et Petrus* 43, *Decimæ Melchisedek*.<sup>5</sup> Men<sup>6</sup> spekeþ and<sup>7</sup> demep þat Abraham ȝaf first tethynges; but Abel ȝaf rapen þe firste þat God sente hym of alle manere kynde. Þe Hebrewes telle þat Melchisedek was Sem, Noe his sone,

firste amonge men in Caldea, goenge in to Egipte tawȝhte theyme arismetrik and geometry, and also astrology, not knowen amonge theyme afore that tyme. *Genesis*. Abraham, made ryche, returnede to the place of the firste tabernacle; whiche taryenge þer, a debate was movede betwene his schepardes and the schepardes of Loth, wente from Loth vn to the vale of Mambra nye to Hebron. *Petrus, capitulo* 42°. Hebron other Chebron is a cite other wise callede Cariatarbe whiche is diriviede of *Cariat*, that is a cite, and *tarbe*, that is iiij.; for the iiij. grete patriarkes were beryede there, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac and Iacob. R. But Ioseph was buriede in Sichimis, nye to the mownte of Efraym, as hit is schewede in libro Iosue, ultimo capitulo. *Genesis*. When Abraham hade returnede from the seete of iiij. kynges he ȝafe the x<sup>th</sup>e parte of his goodes to Melchisedech kyng of Salem, metenge hym, whiche offrede to hym brede and wyne. *Hieronymus in Epistola ad Evangelum; et Petrus, capitulo quadragesimo secundo*. Hit is redde that tithes were ȝiffen firste by Abraham, but firste getten frutes were ȝiffen firste of Abel. Men of Hebrewe afferme Melchisedech to haue be the firste son of Sem, the firste son of Noe, and to have lyvede vn to

<sup>1</sup> *arithmetryk, a.* (not Cx.)

þere is, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>3</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Melchesedech, a.; Mechysedech, Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *Decimæ Melchisedek]* om. a.

<sup>6</sup> *Me, a.*

<sup>7</sup> *spekeþ and]* om. a.; *Me redeth that, Cx.*

Isaak ; et omnes primogenitos a Noe usque<sup>1</sup> ad Aaron<sup>2</sup> fuisse sacerdotes, qui in conviviis et oblationibus benedicebant populo, quibus et primogenita dabantur ;<sup>3</sup> et hæc esse<sup>4</sup> primogenita, quæ Esau vendidit Jacob fratri suo. Ab<sup>5</sup> ista etiam victoria Abrahæ tradunt quidam annum Jubileum sumpsisse primordium<sup>6</sup> pro hac remissione<sup>7</sup> captivorum. *Jobel* enim dicitur remissio, vel<sup>8</sup> initium. Unde *Jobeleus*<sup>9</sup> vel *Jubileus* instituitur in quinquagesimo anno, eo quod Loth tunc fuerit<sup>10</sup> quinquaginta annorum,<sup>11</sup> vel quod<sup>12</sup> Abraham astrorum peritus noverat quod intemperies, quæ proveniunt<sup>13</sup> ex planetis elevatis seu depressis usque ad quinquagesimum annum ad temperiem redeunt. Et quod Abraham<sup>14</sup> vidit in astris imitatus est in terris. *Petrus, quinquagesimo tertio.*<sup>15</sup> Abrahæ natus est Ismael de ancilla Agar, qui<sup>16</sup> tertiodecimo ætatis suæ anno circumcisisus est.<sup>17</sup> Quem ritum adhuc sequuntur Arabes, quorum auctor Ismael fuit.<sup>18</sup> *Genesis.* Hic postmodum vir sagittarius effectus progenuit ex sua uxore Ægyptia<sup>19</sup> duodecim populorum duces, Saracenos,<sup>20</sup>

Iubileus.

Ismael.

Circum-  
cisio.<sup>1</sup> usque] om. C. (not D.)<sup>2</sup> So A.D. ; Aron, E.<sup>3</sup> debebantur, B.<sup>4</sup> et illa fuerunt, C.D.<sup>5</sup> *Petrus*, c. 41, ins. C.D. (in marg.)<sup>6</sup> initium, C.D.<sup>7</sup> redemptione, C.D.<sup>8</sup> et, C. (not D.)<sup>9</sup> *Jobelius*, A.<sup>10</sup> fuerat, B.<sup>11</sup> eo quod ... annorum] om. D.<sup>12</sup> quia, A.B.C.D.<sup>13</sup> provenient, B.<sup>14</sup> Adam, A.B. ; Abram, E.<sup>15</sup> The true reference is to c. 50.<sup>16</sup> in, ins. C.D. (omitting ætatis suæ).<sup>17</sup> erat, D.<sup>18</sup> auctor fuerat, D.<sup>19</sup> ex ... Ægyptia] om. C.D.<sup>20</sup> *Sarracenos videlicet*, C.D.

and telleþ þat he leuede anon to Isaac. Þey telleþ also þat TREVISA.  
 from Noe anon to Aron<sup>1</sup> alle þe eldest sones were preostes, and  
 blessid þe peple in offrynges [and festes],<sup>2</sup> and fenge and hadde  
 þe firste burþe of bestes, and me seiþ þat suche were þe  
 firste burþes þat Esau solde to his broþer Iacob. Also  
 som men menep þat annus Iubileus,<sup>3</sup> þat is þe 3ere of grace  
 as<sup>4</sup> is i-ordeyned þe fifþe 3ere, took þe bygynnyng of  
 þe victorie for þe delyueraunce of prisoneres. Iobel is<sup>5</sup>  
 for3ifnes oper bygynnyng; perof comeþ Ioboleus oper  
 Iubileus, þe 3ere of grace, as is<sup>6</sup> i-ordeyned þe fiftiþe<sup>7</sup> 3ere;  
 for Looth was þoo fifty 3ere olde. For Abraham, þat  
 was konnyng in þe craft of knowleche of þe planetes  
 and sterres, knewe þat þe temperure<sup>8</sup> þat comeþ of hi3nesse  
 and lownesse of sterres and planetes,<sup>9</sup> comeþ a3en to tem-  
 perure at þe fiftiþe 3ere; and so Abraham ordeyned som  
 liknesse here in erþe þat he say in þe sterres and planetes.  
*Petrus 53.* Abraham hadde a sone Ismael i-bore of his  
 seruaunt Agar, þe whiche Ismael was i-circumcised<sup>10</sup> whan  
 he was þrittene 3ere olde. Þe Arabes vseþ 3it þat manere  
 of doynge. Ismael was hire auctor. *Genesis.* Þis Ismael  
 was afterward an archer, and gat on his wif þat was of  
 Egipt twelue dukes, lederes of peple, þat cleped hem self

Ysaac, and alle the firste geten childer from Noe vii to MS. HARL.  
 Aaron to haue be prestes, whiche blessede the peple in 2261.  
 festes, and in oblaciones; to whom the firste geten thynges  
 were 3iffen, whom Esau solde to Iacob his brother. From  
 whiche victory of Abraham, somme men say the yere of  
 Iubile to haue taken originalle, for that remission of captif  
 men; for Iobel is callede remission other begynnenge, where-  
 fore the yere of Iubile is ordeynede in the 1<sup>u</sup> yere. Other  
 elles Abraham, experte in astronomy, knowenge by the  
 planetes the intemperance of wedre eleuate and depres-  
 sede to returne to temperance at the 1<sup>u</sup> yere, folowede in  
 erthe that he vnderstode by the disposicion of bodies supra-  
 celestiale. *Petrus 53<sup>o</sup> capitulo.* Abraham gate Ismael of  
 Agar seruaunte, whiche Ismael was circumsidede in the  
 xiiij<sup>the</sup> yere of his age, whiche rite men of Araby kepe  
 vn to this tyme, the auctor of whom Ismael was. *Genesis.*  
 Whiche, made an archer, gate of his wife of Egipte xij.

<sup>1</sup> Aaron, a.

<sup>2</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Iubilemus, a.

<sup>4</sup> and, a. Cx. has omissions here.

<sup>5</sup> So a.; his, MS.

<sup>6</sup> and is, a.

<sup>7</sup> L (i.e. 50), Cx.; fifteenþe, MS.

<sup>8</sup> temperure of þe fiftiþe 3ere, MS.  
(not a. or Cx.)

<sup>9</sup> planetes and sterres, a.

<sup>10</sup> i-circumcided, a.

ex parte Saræ<sup>1</sup> se vocantes;<sup>2</sup> cum verius sint Agareni, ab Agar matre Ismaelis, sive Ismaelitæ ex patre sic dicti, seu<sup>3</sup> Madianitæ. Indixit Deus Abrahæ\* et semini \* Anno Abr. 99. suo circumcisionem, quasi quodam caractere volens populum suum distinguere a cæteris nationibus.<sup>4</sup> *Petrus, quadragesimo septimo.*<sup>5</sup> Quia tempore circumcisionis mutatum est nomen Abrahæ, ideo Hebræi octavo die, quando circumcidunt<sup>6</sup> pueros,<sup>7</sup> nomina illis imponunt. In veteri<sup>8</sup> testamento quatuor nomina leguntur prænuntiata, scilicet,<sup>9</sup> Ismaelis, Isaak, Sampsonis, et Josiæ; et in novo<sup>10</sup> solummodo<sup>11</sup> Johannis Baptistæ, et Christi. *Ranulphus.*<sup>12</sup> Quod quando fit, singularis meriti aut virtutis indicium est, sicut legitur in vita Remigii.<sup>13</sup> *Genesis.* Hoc anno subversa<sup>14</sup> est Sodoma, et Loth inde liberatus transiens in<sup>15</sup> Segor, modicam urbem juxta montem, vinoque inebriatus genuit ex seniore filia Moab; de quo Moabitæ descenderunt. Et ex altera<sup>16</sup> filia genuit Amon, de quo Amonitæ descenderunt. *Ranulphus.* De loco Sodomæ, qui nunc Mare Mortuum dicitur, vide<sup>17</sup> supra, libro primo de provinciis Asiæ, capitulo Judæa.

Tempore  
circum-  
cisionis  
nomina  
mutantur.

Sodoma  
subversa.

<sup>1</sup> *Sarra*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *revocantes*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *sive*, B.

<sup>4</sup> C.D. add: *Promisitque ei filium, quem Ysaac vocaret.*

<sup>5</sup> The true reference is to c. 50.

<sup>6</sup> *circumciderunt*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *pueros suos*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *veteri quoque*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *scilicet*] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *et in novo testamento duo tantum*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> So A.; *solomodo*, E.

<sup>12</sup> Added from A.B.

<sup>13</sup> C.D. have in the margin, *In vita Remigii*, omitting *sicut*, &c. from the text.

<sup>14</sup> *submersa*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *in*] om. E., which (with A.) has *modica urbe*; C.D. omit these words, and otherwise vary the sentence.

<sup>16</sup> *alia*, E.

<sup>17</sup> *quare*, C.D.

Saraceny, as þogh þey<sup>1</sup> were i-come of Sarra; but þey beþ TREVISA.  
verrailliche Agarenes, for þey come of Agar [Ismael his  
moder. Also þey beþ cleped]<sup>2</sup> Ismaelites, for þey come of  
Ismael; and beþ Madianites<sup>3</sup> also. R. Oure Lorde ʒaf  
Abraham and his children þe circumcisioun forto make and  
departe<sup>4</sup> his peple from oþer naciouns. *Petrus* 47. For  
Abraham his name was i-chaunged whan he was circum-  
sised, þefore þe Hebrewes ʒeue hir children names þe  
eiʒtþe<sup>5</sup> day whan þey beþ circumcided. In þe olde testa-  
ment me redeþ þat men were i-warned of foure men names  
to fore þe burþe: of Ismael, Isaac, Sampson, and Iosyas.  
In þe newe testament onliche of Iohn Baptiste and Crist. R.  
And whan þat [þat]<sup>6</sup> was i-doo it bodid grete merite and  
vertue; so me redeþ in Remigius his lyf. *Genesis*. Þis ʒere  
Sodoma was destroyed, and Looth delyuered, and wente into  
Segor, a litel citee þere besides an hul; and was wyndronken;  
and in his sleep he gat Moab on his eldest douʒter and<sup>7</sup> Amon  
on his oþer douʒter. Of Moab come þe Moabites, and of Amon  
come<sup>8</sup> Amonytes. R. Of þe place of Sodoma, þat hatte now  
þe dede see, loke above in þe firste book, in þe prouince of  
Asia, in þe chapitre Iudea, þat is þe Iewerye.

dukes and gouernoures of peple, callenge theyme Saracenes, MS. HARL.  
as commenge of Sara, but in trawthe thei awe to be 2261.  
namede raper Agarenes, of Agar moder of Ismael, other elles  
Ismaelites after Ismael, as Madianites were namede of Madian.  
R. God commaundede to Abraham the vse of circumcision,  
and to his sede, wyllenge to make a distinccion, as by a  
carecte, betwene his peple and other naciones. *Petrus*,  
47<sup>o</sup> *capitulo*. And for cause that the name of Abraham  
was chaungede in the circumcision, þefore men of Hebrew  
name their childer in the viij<sup>th</sup> day, when the childer be  
circumcisede. And iiij. names be pronunciate in the olde  
testamente, that is to say, Ismael, Ysaac, Sampson, and  
Iosias, and ij. oonly in the newe testamente, Iohn Baptiste  
and Criste. R. Whiche thyng is a specielle schewenge  
of a singuler merite and vertu, as hit is reddē in the life  
of Seynte Remigius. *Genesis*. Sodoma was destroyede  
that yere, and Loth delyuerede; and salvede, goenge in to  
Segor, a litel cite nye to the hille, drunke þro wyne gate  
of his elder doʒhter Moab, of whom Moabites come. Of  
Sodoma, whiche is callede the dedde see, loke in the firste  
boke, *capitulo* 14<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> þei þeiʒ, a.<sup>2</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> Madiamites, MS. and a.<sup>4</sup> departed, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>5</sup> eiʒtþe, a.<sup>6</sup> Added from a.; not in Cx.<sup>7</sup> an, a.<sup>8</sup> come] the, c. and Cx.

## CAP. XI.

*De Isaac et ejus familia; et de mythica Græcorum historia.*<sup>1</sup>Isaac  
nascitur.

*Petrus quinquagesimo tertio.*<sup>2</sup> Natus est Isaak\* de \* Anno Abr. 100.  
Sara nonagenaria,<sup>3</sup> qui trimus effectus<sup>4</sup> ablactatus est;  
et tunc factum est convivium eo quod tunc primo<sup>5</sup> acces-  
serit<sup>6</sup> ad mensam patris. Cres cœpit regnare in Creta,† † Anno Abr. 130.  
a quo et Creta insula<sup>7</sup> dicta est; quem aiunt fuisse Anno Isaac, 30.

Moritur<sup>10</sup> Sara,‡ ‡ Anno Abr. 136.  
annorum, sepultaque est<sup>11</sup> in Hebron.<sup>12</sup> Et cito post Anno Isaac 36.

Eleezer,<sup>13</sup> procurator Abrahæ, missus ad quærendum  
uxorem pro Isaak,<sup>14</sup> adduxit Rebeccam. Duxit quoque<sup>15</sup>  
Abraham Cethuram in<sup>16</sup> uxorem, ex qua genuit sex  
liberos, quos omnes separavit a filio suo Isaak.<sup>17</sup>

A filiis  
Cethuræ  
separatur.

*Petrus, quinquagesimo nono.*<sup>18</sup> Dicunt Hebræi Cethu-  
ram esse<sup>19</sup> nomen appellativum quod interpretatur  
*copulata*, quam dicunt etiam<sup>20</sup> fuisse Agar, quæ de  
concupina post mortem Sarai transivit in conjugem;  
ne, si senex aliam quam prius a se cognitam duceret,<sup>21</sup>  
lascivire videretur. Isaak quadraginta§ erat annorum, § Anno Abr. 140.  
quando duxit Rebeccam in uxorem; quæ mansit Anno Isaac 40.

Isaac  
Rebeccam  
ducit in  
uxorem.<sup>1</sup> Title wanting in MSS.<sup>2</sup> Reference added from A.C.D.  
The true reference is to c. 56.<sup>3</sup> *vetula*, D.<sup>4</sup> *effectus*] om. D.<sup>5</sup> *postea*, B.<sup>6</sup> *accessit*, D.<sup>7</sup> *insula*] om. C.D., which have  
in margin *Dionisius*.<sup>8</sup> *Curitarum*, A.<sup>9</sup> *qui . . . educavit*] a quo Jupiter,  
ut ferunt, absconditus fuit et nu-  
tritus, C.D.<sup>10</sup> *Petrus* 56, ins. C.D. in marg.<sup>11</sup> *et sepulta est*, B.<sup>12</sup> Sentence slightly varied in C.D.,  
as also the following.<sup>13</sup> *Eliezer*, A.; *Elcazar*, B.D.<sup>14</sup> *Isaac*, A.; *Ysaac*, C.D.; and  
so usually.<sup>15</sup> *que*, A.<sup>16</sup> *in*] om. D.<sup>17</sup> *quos separavit ab Ysaac*, C.D.<sup>18</sup> The true reference is to c. 62.<sup>19</sup> *fuisse*, C.D.<sup>20</sup> *etiam dicunt*, A.<sup>21</sup> *novis imperitiis*, ins. C.D.

*Capitulum undecimum.*

TREVISA.

ISAAC was i-bore of his moder Sarra whan sche was foure skore zere olde and ten. *Petrus* 53. Isaac was i-wened whan he was pre zere olde, and po<sup>1</sup> was i-made a grete feste; for po he wente firste to his fader bord. Crees bygan to regne in Creta; of hym pat ilond Creta hap pat name Creta. Som men telleþ pat<sup>2</sup> Crees was oon of þe gouernours pat norsched and hidde Iupiter. Sarra deide whan sche was sixe score zere olde and seuene, and was i-buried in Hebron. And sone pere after Eleeser Abrahams seruauant was i-sent forto fecche<sup>3</sup> a wyf for Isaac, and brouzhte Rebekka.<sup>4</sup> Also Abraham wedded Cethura to wyf, and gatt on hire sixe children, and departed hem alle from his sone Isaac. *Petrus* 59.<sup>5</sup> Hebreus seiþ<sup>6</sup> pat Cethura is a comyn name, and is to menyng<sup>7</sup> i-coupled; and seiþ pat pis Cethura was Agar, and of a lemman was i-made a wyf after þe deep of Sarra, anaunter<sup>8</sup> leste þe olde man schulde be holde a lceehour, and he hadde i-take anoper þan he hadde i-lay by to fore honde. Isaac was fourty zere olde whan he wedded Rebekka, pat bare

*Capitulum undecimum.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

YSAAC was borne of Sara beenge of xc. yere in age, whiche, hauenge iij. yere in age, was weynede, and then a grete feste was made, in that Ysaac comme that tyme firste to the burde of his fader. Crees began to reigne in the yle callede Creta, of whom that yle tooke name, whom thei seye to be oon of theym whiche did hyde Iupiter and noryschede hym secretely. Sara beenge of a cxxvij. yere diede, and was beriede in Hebron: after that Heleser, proctor of Abraham, was sende to gette a wife for Ysaac, whiche brouzhte Rebecca. Abraham did wedde Cethura in to his wife, of whom he gate vj. childer, whom he departede from Ysaac his son. *Petrus*, 59<sup>o</sup> *capitulo*. Men of Hebrewe say Cethura to be a nowne appellatiue, as cowplede, by interpretacion, whom thei say Agar, whiche beenge his concubyne, was made his wife after the dethe of Sara. Ysaac was of xli<sup>ti</sup> yere in age when he did wedde Rebecca,

<sup>1</sup> þoo, a.<sup>2</sup> say, Cx.<sup>3</sup> fette, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Rebecca, a.; Rebecka, Cx.<sup>5</sup> 5, a. (not Cx.)<sup>6</sup> siggeþ, a.<sup>7</sup> vnderstandyng, Cx.<sup>8</sup> lest perauenter, Cx., who varies the rest of the sentence.

sterilis<sup>1</sup> per viginti annos. *Augustinus de Civitate*,  
 De Pallade. *libro octavodecimo*. \*Apud lacum<sup>2</sup> Tritonidem appa-  
 ruit virgo<sup>3</sup> Tritona<sup>4</sup> nomine, quam Græci Miner-  
 vam dicunt, quæ etiam dicta est Pallas a Pallante,<sup>5</sup>  
 insula Thraciæ, ubi nutrita fuit, sive a Pallante  
 gigante, quem interfecit. *Ranulphus*. Hic nota quod  
 iste Pallas gigas alius est ab illo Pallante gigante,  
 filio Evandri, quem Turnus occidit sub tempore  
 Æneæ.<sup>6</sup> *Augustinus*.<sup>7</sup> Hæc virgo Pallas sive Mi-  
 nerva<sup>8</sup> plures artes adinvenit, potissime lanificium;  
 quæ tanto proclivius dea credita est, quanto minus  
 innotuit ejus origo. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo*.<sup>9</sup>  
 Nati sunt Isaak† duo gemelli filii ex Rebecca,<sup>10</sup> Esau †  
 et Jacob. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo*.<sup>11</sup> Regnum  
 Argivorum exortum est in Græcia sub Inacho patre  
 Isidis, quæ<sup>12</sup> et Io dicebatur, et regnavit Inachus<sup>13</sup>  
 quinquaginta annis. Duravitque hoc<sup>14</sup> regnum quin-  
 gentis quadraginta quatuor annis sub regibus qua-  
 tuordecim usque ad ultimum Acrisium, quem occidit  
 Perseus,<sup>15</sup> licet non sponte, duodecimo scilicet anno  
 Deeboræ<sup>16</sup> judicis Israel; et inde timens sibi Perseus  
 agros<sup>17</sup> relinquens transtulit regnum ad Mycenæ.<sup>18</sup>

De regno  
 Argivo-  
 rum.

<sup>1</sup> *postmodum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Apud lacum apud*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *virgo*] om. A.E.

<sup>4</sup> *Tritonia*, B.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Pallene*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Hic nota . . . Æneæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Augustinus*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *virgo . . . Minerva*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> A.B.C.D. omit reference.

<sup>10</sup> *fili ex Rebecca*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Hoc anno*, ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *qui*, E.

<sup>13</sup> *Inachus*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *hoc*] Argivorum, C. (not D.)

<sup>15</sup> So D.E.; but E. has *Persius*  
 below. *Percius* A., and *Persius*  
 below.

<sup>16</sup> So MSS. and versions for *Deb-*  
*boræ*.

<sup>17</sup> *Argos*, A.C.; *Arguos*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *Micnæ*, MSS. C.D. add, *ubi*  
*Danaus postmodum regnavit*.



no childe twenty ȝere after. *Augustinus, libro 18<sup>o</sup>.* At þe lake Tritonides was i-seie a womman þat heet Tritona; þe Grees clepeþ hir Mynerua; and hatte Pallas also of Pallas þe ilond of Tracia, þere he<sup>1</sup> was i-norsched, oper of Pallas þe geant þat he<sup>2</sup> slowh. *R.* Here take hede þat pis geant Pallas was anoper geant þan þe geant Pallas, þat Turnus Euander is sone slowh in Eneas his tyme. *Augustinus, ut<sup>3</sup> supra.* Dis mayde Pallas, þat heet Mynerua also, fonde vp meny craftes, and specialliche wolcraft,<sup>4</sup> and was þe liȝtloker<sup>5</sup> i-trowed a goddes. For me wiste wel litel whennes sche come.<sup>6</sup> Isaac hade tweye twynnes i-bore of Rebecca, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* Þe kyngdom of Argyues bygan in Grecia vnder Inachus Isis his fader. Isis heet [Io]<sup>7</sup> also, and Inachus regnede fifty ȝere, and þat kyngdom durede fyue hondred ȝere and foure and fourty vnder fourtene kynges anon to þe laste Acrisius: hym slow Persius, þeȝ it were nouȝt wiþ<sup>8</sup> his wille, þe twelfþe ȝere of Delbora iugge of Israel. And þerfor Persius dradde ful sore, and

TREVISA.

whiche was bareyne by xx<sup>ti</sup> yeres. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* A woman callede Tritona apperede at a water callede Tritonides,<sup>9</sup> whom men of Grewe calle Minerua, whiche was callede also Pallas, of an yle in Tracia of that name, where sche was norischede, other elles of Pallas the gigante, whom sche did slee. *R.* Hit is to be attendede that this gigante, called Pallas, was an other then Pallas son of Euander, whom Turnus did sle in the tyme of Eneas. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* That virgyn callede Pallas other Minerua founde mony artes, and specially of makenge clothe, þe originalle of the byrthe of whom is not knowen, wherefore sche is callede a godesse. Ysaac gate ij. childer of Rebecca, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* The realme of men callede Argyues, in Grece, began vnder Inachus fader of Ysides, otherwise callede Io, whiche Inachus reignede l<sup>ti</sup> yere; and that realme contynude by v<sup>c</sup>. and xliij<sup>ti</sup> yere, under xiiij. kynges, vn to the laste, Acrisius, whom Persius did sle ageyne his wille, in the xij<sup>the</sup> yere of Delbora iugge of Israel. Wherefore Persius dredenge

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> *heo, B.; a., γ.; she, Cx.*, quite rightly, who notwithstanding has *he slough*. The pronouns are so strangely employed by Trevisa or his scribes, that the concordant readings of MS. and *a.* have been rarely corrected.

<sup>2</sup> So MS., *a., β., Cx.*; *heo, γ.*

<sup>3</sup> *ubi, a., Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *wolle craft, a., Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *lightyer, Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *cam, Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *by, Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> *Tratonides, Harl. MS.*

Moritur Abraham\* centum septuaginta quinque annorum existens, et<sup>1</sup> sepelitur<sup>2</sup> in<sup>3</sup> Hebron.<sup>4</sup> *Petrus, sexagesimo sexto.* Idioma Hebræi sermonis et mos antiquæ Latinitatis est,<sup>5</sup> ut prius<sup>6</sup> supputetur minor numerus, deinde major sequatur;<sup>7</sup> verbi gratia, nos dicimus juxta proprietatem linguæ nostræ: Vixit Abraham<sup>8</sup> centum septuaginta quinque annis. Illi e contrario dicunt sic:<sup>9</sup> Vixit Abraham quinque septuaginta centum annis. <sup>10</sup>*Augustinus*<sup>11</sup> *de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* Argivorum† secundus rex Foroneus filius Inachi cœpit regnare, et regnavit sexaginta annis. Iste Foroneus Argolicus primus Græciæ leges dedit,<sup>12</sup> et sub judice causas agi instituit, unde et locum judiciorum a nomine suo appellavit Forum;<sup>13</sup> cujus frater Fogous<sup>14</sup> astrologus ad deos colendos invenit sacellos, ob quod deificatus est.<sup>15</sup> Horum soror fuit Isis sive Io, quæ ad Ægyptum navigans literas et agriculturam eos docuit; unde et post mortem apud illos<sup>16</sup> deificata est.<sup>17</sup> *Isidorus, libro tertio, capitulo sexto.*<sup>18</sup> Isis primo sistrum invenit, unde et Amazones cum sistris exercitum vocabant ad bellum.

Phoroneus  
et Phegeus.

† Anno Abr. 211.  
Anno Isaac 111.

De Iside.

<sup>1</sup> *et*] om. A.B.

<sup>2</sup> *sepultus est*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *spelunca duplici in*, ins. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ebron*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *est*] ita se habent, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *prior*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *sequitur*, B. ; *ut*, ins. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Abraham*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *Illi . . . sic*] Illi e contra, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Item*, ins. A.

<sup>11</sup> C.D. omit reference here, and place it before *Iste Foroneus*.

<sup>12</sup> *edidit*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *appellavit Forum*] dictum forum denominavit, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Fegous*, D. August. (*C. D.* xviii. 3) has *Phegous*. The classical forms of the names are *Phoroneus* and *Phegeus*.

<sup>15</sup> *est*] Added from B.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *eos*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *honorum . . . est*] om. B.

<sup>18</sup> *capitulo sexto*] om. A.B.C. ; libro 13, D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 22.

lefte þe Argus and tornede þe kyngdom to þe Mycenēs.<sup>1</sup> TREVISA.  
 Abraham lyuede fiftene ʒere þre skore and an hondred ʒere,  
 and was i-buried in Ebron. *Petrus* 66. Þe longage of  
 Hebreu<sup>2</sup> and þe vsage of olde Latyn is forto acounte the  
 lasse nombre to fore þe more, contrarye to þe manere þat  
 Latyn vseþ now, for now we seiþ in Latyn, Abraham lyuede  
 an hondred ʒere þre skore and fiftene; but þe Hebrewes  
 seiþ in þis<sup>3</sup> manere, Abraham lyuede fiftene ʒere þre skore  
 and an hondred ʒere. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro* 18.  
 Feroneus, Inachus his sone, was þe secunde kyng of þe  
 Argiues,<sup>4</sup> and reignede sixtene<sup>5</sup> ʒere. Þis Feroneus Argolicus  
 ʒaf first lawes in Grees, and ordeynede þat causes schulde  
 be i-pledged<sup>6</sup> to fore iuges. Þerfore þey cleped þe places of  
 domes Forum after his owne name. His broþer heet Fogous,<sup>7</sup>  
 and kowþe<sup>8</sup> moche astrologie, and ordeyned temples to  
 worschip þe<sup>9</sup> false goddes ynne; þerfore he was acounted a  
 god amonge hem þat worschipped suche goddes. His suster  
 heet Isus,<sup>10</sup> and Io also: he<sup>11</sup> seilled into Egipt and tauʒte men  
 here lettres and telynge of feeldes;<sup>12</sup> þerfore after her deth  
 sche was i-made a goddesse among.<sup>13</sup> *Isidorus, libro* 3. Isis  
 ordeynede firste trompes, þerfore þe Amazones cleped hire

lefte the Argyues, and translate that realme to Micenas. MS. HARL.  
 Abraham beenge of a clx. and xv. yere in age, diede and 2261.  
 was beryede in Hebron. *Petrus, 66 capitulo.* The maner  
 of men of Hebrewe is to accompte the lesse nowmbre afore  
 the more nowmbre, as by grace of exemple we say, that  
 Abraham lyvede an c. yere lxxv. Men of Hebrewe say,  
 that Abraham lyvede v. xx. l. and a c. yere. *Augustinus de*  
*Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo.* Foroneus, the secunde  
 kyng of the Argiues, began to reigne, continuenge by lx.  
 yere. This Foroneus ordeynede firste lawes amonge the  
 Grekes, whiche ordeinede also causes to be ventilate afore  
 a iugge, callenge the secte and place of the iugge Forum,  
 after his name; whiche hade a sustyr, callede Isis other Io,  
 whiche sayleng to Egipte tauʒhte theyme firste letters,  
 and to tylle the londe, wherefore sche was made a goodesse

<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Mecenes*, MS., in which (as well as in *a.*) several words are wrongly inserted from below.

<sup>2</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Ebron*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *his*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *arnes*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *sixty*, *Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *pleted*, *Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> So *a.*; *Fogronis*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> and the *Fogons coude*, *Cx.*, who varies the sentence.

<sup>9</sup> *þe*] om. *a.*

<sup>10</sup> *Ysis*, *Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> *she*, *Cx.* (not *a.*)

<sup>12</sup> *jildes*, *a.*

<sup>13</sup> *Cx.* adds *theym*.

De fabu-  
loso Epa-  
phi ortu.

*Ranulphus.* Quod legitur<sup>1</sup> Jovem rapuisse Io et Epaphum genuisse, fabula est et figmentum poeticum propter utriusque personæ<sup>2</sup> famosam excellentiam.<sup>3</sup> Nam<sup>4</sup> fingunt poetæ nonnullos illustres personas<sup>5</sup> ex Jove progenitos, ut ex hoc genus illorum amplius illustretur.<sup>6</sup> Io namque fuit sub diebus Isaak, et

Thessalus  
in Thes-  
salia reg-  
nat.

Jupiter postmodum sub diebus<sup>7</sup> Josuæ. Thessalus Græci filius regnavit in Thessalia.\* Jacob\* post empta

\* Anno Abr. 257.  
Anno Isaac 137.

Benedictio  
Isaac a  
Jacob.  
surrepta.

primogenita<sup>8</sup> post benedictionem surreptam<sup>9</sup> a patre, juxta matris suæ consilium descendit in Mesopotamiam.

De primo-  
genitis.

*Petrus, sexagesimo quarto.* Primogenita dicuntur quædam dignitates et prærogativæ quas habebant filii primogeniti in suis cognationibus usque ad Aaron, videlicet quod induerentur veste<sup>10</sup> speciali in sacrificiis offerendis, quod etiam paternam reciperent benedictionem, quod etiam<sup>11</sup> duplam reciperent portionem in conviviis et in divisione hæreditatis, et quod<sup>12</sup> suis minoribus benedicerent. Jacob genuit ex Lya<sup>13</sup> Reuben<sup>14</sup> primogenitum suum.† Hoc anno<sup>16</sup> factum est diluvium particulare in Achaia sive in Attica terra, sub Ogyge<sup>17</sup> rege, qui urbem

Diluvium  
sub  
Ogyge.

† Anno Abr. 265.  
[Anno Isaac  
165.]<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *sequitur*, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *personam*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *excellentiam*] om. A.B.

<sup>4</sup> *Nam*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *personas*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *illustrarent*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *diebus*] tempore, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *a fratre suo*, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *susceptam*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *veste*] om. A. ; speciali indu-  
mento, B.

<sup>11</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *et quod*] quod etiam, C. ; quod  
minoribus suis, D. (omitting *et*.)

<sup>13</sup> *ex Lya* after *suum*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Reuben*] om. E. D. has in  
margin the dates 245, 145.

<sup>15</sup> Supplied according to the mind  
of Higden. The date is wanting al-  
together in A. ; D. has 251 and 151.

<sup>16</sup> *Hoc anno*] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Ogyge*, D.

ofte to batailleward<sup>1</sup> wip trompes. [R.]<sup>2</sup> Pat me redeþ þat TREVISA.  
 Iupiter ravesched Io and gat Epaphus, it is but a fable and ---  
 feynynge of poetes for noble fame<sup>3</sup> of eyþer persone.<sup>4</sup> For  
 poetes feyneþ meny noble persones i-gete of Iupiter, for þe  
 kyn schulde be<sup>5</sup> þe more gentil and noble i-holde.<sup>6</sup> But  
 Io was in Ysaac his tyme, and Iupiter was afterward in  
 Iosue his tyme. Thessalus, Grecus his sone, reignede in  
 Thessalia. Iacob, after þat he hadde i-bouzt þe firste  
 birþe, and slyliche i-gete his fader blessynge by his moder  
 counsaile þey<sup>7</sup> wente down in to Mesopotamia. *Petrus* 64.  
 Þe furste burþe<sup>8</sup> of hem<sup>9</sup> were special profyzt<sup>10</sup> and  
 worschippes<sup>11</sup> to the eldest sones,<sup>12</sup> hadde in hire kynrede  
 anon to Aaron; for þey were cloped in special clopyng in  
 offryng of sacrefice, and hadde hire fader blessynge, and  
 double porcioun in festes and in delyng of heritage, and he<sup>13</sup>  
 schulde blesse hire lasse.<sup>14</sup> Iacob gat his firste sone Ruben  
 on his wyfe Lya. Þis zere was a litel flood in Achaia, þat  
 hatte Athica þat lond, vnder<sup>15</sup> Ogiges þe kyng, þat renewede

after here dethe. *Isidorus, libro 3º, et R.* That men say MS. HARL.  
 Iupiter to have rauesched Io, and to haue geten Epaphus, 2261.  
 is but a fable, and a fenyng of poettes, for the famos  
 excellence of bothe persones. For poetes feyne mony  
 nowble men to haue ben geten by Iupiter, that the kynde  
 of theyme myzhte be made more nowble þere by. For Io  
 was in the tyme of Ysaac, and Iupiter was after the tyme  
 of Iosue. Thessalus the son of Grecus reignede in Grece.  
 Iacob wente in to Mesopotamy,<sup>16</sup> after the counselle of his  
 moder, after that he hade bouzhte the fyrste frutes of  
 Esau, and after the blessenge of his fader. *Petrus, sexa-*  
*gesimo quarto capitulo.* The firste geten thynges were  
 callede certeyne dignites and prerogatifes, whom the firste  
 childer hade in their cognaciones vn to Aaron; that is to  
 say, they were induede with a specialle vesture, in sacrifices  
 and oblaciones to be offrede, that thei scholde receyve also  
 the benediccion of the fader, and thei scholde haue also a  
 dowble portion in festes, and in the diuision of inheritaunce,  
 and that thei scholde blesse the yongers of theyme. Iacob  
 gate of Lia Ruben his firste son. A particuler floode was  
 that yere in Achaia, vnder Ogiges<sup>17</sup> kyng, whiche renewenge

<sup>1</sup> batayward, a.

<sup>2</sup> Added from a.

<sup>3</sup> ffame, MS. (not a.)

<sup>4</sup> persoon, a.

<sup>5</sup> holde, added in a.

<sup>6</sup> i-holde] om. a.

<sup>7</sup> he, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> burþes, a., Cx.

<sup>9</sup> of hem] om. a., Cx.

<sup>10</sup> profyzt, a. (not Cx.)

<sup>11</sup> worschippe, a., Cx.

<sup>12</sup> oldest sonne, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> they, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> þe lasse, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>15</sup> was vnder, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> Egipte, Harl. MS. (first hand).

<sup>17</sup> Ogides, Harl. MS.

De strophis Jacob.  
 Atthen innovans,<sup>1</sup> etiam<sup>2</sup> Eleusim condidit. Hoc anno\* \* Jacob xci. annorum existens genuit Joseph ex Rachel.<sup>3</sup> Petrus, septuagesimo quarto. Finitis quatuordecim<sup>4</sup> annis, quibus Jacob servivit pro uxoribus,<sup>5</sup> pepigit Laban cum<sup>6</sup> eo quod quicquid varium nasceretur de unicolore merces sua foret. Unde et<sup>7</sup> tulit Jacob virgas virides populeas, amygdalinas, et plataninas, quas per loca decorticans<sup>8</sup> posuit in canalibus aquarum ante<sup>9</sup> conspectum ovium in<sup>10</sup> ipso fervore coitus, ut<sup>11</sup> sic tales foetus conciperent quales umbras ascendentium arietum in aquarum speculo videbant. Et ne<sup>12</sup> omnes foetus varii coloris fierent et sic<sup>13</sup> dolus deprehenderetur, in verno conceptu ponebat virgas, sed in serotina admissura non ponebat. <sup>14</sup> Sicque novam naturæ stropham commentatus est Jacob, qua contra naturam arte naturali pugnaret. *Ranulphus.*<sup>15</sup>

\* Anno Abr. 251.  
 Anno Isaac 151.

<sup>1</sup> *innovatur*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Apparuit etiam virgo Minerva sive Pallas apud lacum Tritonidem*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *novem*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *suus*, ins. B.

<sup>6</sup> *cum*] om. A.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *decorticavit et*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *in*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *in*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *ut*] unde, C. (not D.)

<sup>12</sup> *Et ne*] Ne autem, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *sic*] om. D.

<sup>14</sup> *Petrus*, ins. C.D. (The latter omits several words.)

<sup>15</sup> *Ranulphus*] In the place of this next passage the following occurs in C.D.: "*Hugutio, capitulo Molo.* "Talem autem\* ferunt fœminarum "esse naturam, ut quales formas in "extremo voluptatis æstu conspexerint dum concipiunt talem sobo-

lem procreant. Etenim anima "in usu venereo formas extrinsecas "intus transmittit, earumque satiatata typis species rapit in propriam qualitatem. Sic solent in Hispania objicere generosos equos obtutibus equarum concipientium, et etiam pulchras depingere columbas in locis ubi columbæ conversantur. *Hieronymus.* Et Quintilianus matronam accusatam quod Æthiopem peperisset, ex imagine tempore conceptionis conspecta hoc contigisse argumentans defendebat.† *Petrus.* Et in libris Hippocratis reperitur scriptum quandam fore puniendam quia pulcherrimum puerum utriusque parenti dissimilem peperisset, nisi monuisset Hippocrates‡ quærere si talis forte pictura esset in cubiculo parentum tempore conceptionis." See above, p. 198.

\* *etiam*, D.

† *defensabat*, D.

‡ *Ypocras*, MSS.

pe citee Atthen and bulde Eleusis. Dis zere Iacob foure score TREVISA.  
 zere olde and enleuene gat Ioseph on Rachel. *Petrus* 74. —  
 Whanne pe fourtene zere were i-doo in pe whiche Iacob ser-  
 uede for his wifes, Laban made couenant wip hym pat alle  
 pe splekked lamberne<sup>1</sup> and kedess pat schulden be i-zened<sup>2</sup>  
 durynge his couenant schulde be Iacob his<sup>3</sup> mede, and al pat  
 were of oon colour whyte oper blak, schulde be Laban his  
 owne. Perfore Iacob took grene zertes of populers of almand  
 trees and of platans,<sup>4</sup> and pyled of pe rynde in som place of pe  
 zertes, and in som place pyled hem nouzt; and so he made pe  
 zertes splekked,<sup>5</sup> and leyde hem in pe waterynge place to fore  
 pe schepes eyzen, whan pey schulde conceyue<sup>6</sup> lambren liche  
 to pe schadewes pat pey seie of rammes in pe merroure of  
 pe water in pe conceyunge. And for pey schulde not al be  
 splekked leste pe gyle were i-knowe, perfore in pe firste  
 conceyunge tyme he leyde so zertes, but not in pe latter  
 conceyunge tyme, and so Iacob fonde a newe manere  
 tornyng of kynde,<sup>7</sup> wip kyndeliche craft to fihte agenst kynde.  
 R. Loke more of pis mater aboue, libro ejus, capitulo

the cite of Athenes made the cite of Eleusis. Iacob, beenge MS. HARL.  
 that tyme of xcj. yere, gate Ioseph of Rachel. *Petrus*, 2261.  
 74<sup>o</sup> *capitulo*. The xiiij. yere ypaste in whom Iacob did  
 seruyce for his wifes, he made a couenant with Laban that  
 he scholde haue alle lammes of diuerse coloures that comme  
 of ewes of oon coloure. Wherefore Iacob gate roddes of  
 almonde trees, of populer, and of other trees, whiche takenge  
 barke from peim putte the roddes in the places of water,  
 afore the sighte of schepe when thei scholde be blissomede,  
 that thei myzhte haue lammes of diuerse coloure, lyke to

<sup>1</sup> *lambren, a.; lammes, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *yzened, a.; ewed, Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *Iacobys, a.*

<sup>4</sup> *So Cx.; plauntes, MS.*

<sup>5</sup> *spekeld, Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *for they shold conceyue, added in Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *kyunge, MS.*

Vide residuum de materia ista <sup>1</sup> supra, primo <sup>2</sup> libro, capitulo primo. Reverso Jacob\* cum uxoribus et liberis,<sup>4</sup> priusquam ad patrem veniret, duodecimo anno ante mortem Isaak, Joseph, sexdecim annorum puer existens, venditus est in Ægyptum; ubi mansit viginti duobus annis, antequam pater suus Jacob ad eum veniret. Joseph itaque<sup>5</sup> sic venditus a fratribus, denuo venditur a mercatoribus Ismaelitis<sup>6</sup> in Ægyptum Putiphari eunucho, magistro militum Pharaonis. *Augustinus super Genesim.* Iste Putiphar non erat de talibus eunuchis, qui parvuli castrantur; nam<sup>7</sup> uxorem habuit et liberos; ejus etiam filiam Joseph desponsaverat;<sup>8</sup> sed iste Putiphar videns Joseph fore elegantem emit eum, ut eo abuteretur more<sup>9</sup> sodomitico; sed Deus<sup>10</sup> ita infrigidavit eum, ut deinceps foret<sup>11</sup> impotens<sup>12</sup> ad coitum,<sup>13</sup> ac si eunuchus castratus fuisset. Unde, tanquam ex hoc habitus<sup>14</sup> est<sup>15</sup> honorabilior, factus est pontifex Heliopoleos.<sup>16</sup> *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo, capitulo quarto.* Argivorum† tertius rex<sup>17</sup> Apis, filius Foronei,<sup>18</sup> cœpit regnare, et regnavit viginti duobus annis. Moritur Isaak centum octoginta annorum<sup>19</sup> existens,† et sepultus est<sup>20</sup> in speluncâ duplici in Hebron.<sup>21</sup> Quo in anno Pharaovidit somnium de septem spicis et septem bobus.

\* Anno Abr. 268.  
Anno Isaac 168.<sup>3</sup>

Joseph in Ægyptum venditur.

De Putiphari eunucho.

† Anno Abr. 271.  
Anno Isaac 171.

‡ Anno Abr. 230.  
Anno Isaac 130.

<sup>1</sup> ista] in materia, A.

<sup>2</sup> quarto, A. ; eodem, B.

<sup>3</sup> Date added from A.D. The dates in E. below are corrected from other MSS.

<sup>4</sup> in itinere exeunte, ins. C.D. (existente, D.)

<sup>5</sup> igitur, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> a mercatoribus Ismaelitis] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> quia, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> desponsavit, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> modo, C. ; ut abuteretur eo (only) D.

<sup>10</sup> Deus autem, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> esset, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> impotens] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> vitium, B.

<sup>14</sup> factus, B.

<sup>15</sup> est] om. B.C.D., and the sentence slightly transposed.

<sup>16</sup> Eliopoleos, B.

<sup>17</sup> rex] om. A.D.E. (D. has secundus.)

<sup>18</sup> Feronei, A.

<sup>19</sup> annorum] so B. ; annis, E. ; an., A.D.

<sup>20</sup> cum patre suo Abraham, ins. C. D.

<sup>21</sup> in Hebron] om. C.D.



primo. Whanne Iacob was i-come aze wip his wyfes and his children, or pey come to his fader, twelue<sup>1</sup> zere to fore Isaac his deef, Ioseph sextene zere olde was i-solde in to Egipte to oon pat heet Putyphar, pat was eunuchus,<sup>2</sup> and maister of Pharao his knyghtes. *Trevisa*. Eunuchus is he pat is i-gilded,<sup>3</sup> and suche were somtyme i-made wardeynes of ladyes in Egipt. *Augustinus super Genesim*. Pis Putiphar was<sup>4</sup> not so eunuchus as pey pat were i-gilded in hir childhode, for he hadde a<sup>5</sup> wyf and children, and Ioseph hadde i-wedded his douzter. But pis Putiphar [say pat Ioseph was fayre,<sup>6</sup> and bouzte him forto mysuse hym, perfore God made pis Putyphar]<sup>7</sup> so colde pat he myzte neuere after haue to doynge flescheliche wip his owne wyf na more pan pey he were eunuchus<sup>8</sup> i-gelded, and perfore, as he pat was most worschipful, he was i-made bisshop of God Heliopoleos. Apis pe pridde kyng of Argiues was Foroneus his sone, and regned two and twenty zerc. Isaac an hondred zere [olde]<sup>9</sup> and four skore<sup>10</sup> deyde, and was i-buryed in pe double graue of<sup>11</sup> Ebron. Dat zere Pharao sigh<sup>12</sup> pe sweuene of the seuene corn eres, and of pe seuene kuyn.

TREVISA.

the coloure of the water whom thei did beholde. Iacob returnede, or that he come to his fader in the xij<sup>the</sup> yere afore the dethe of Ysaac, Ioseph a childe of the age of xvj. yere, was solde in to Egipte, where he tariede xxij<sup>ti</sup> yere or that his fader Iacob comme to hym. Ioseph solde of his breder to Ismaelites merchaundes, was solde ageyne in to Egipte to Putiphar maister of knyghtes of Pharao. *Augustinus super Genesim*. This Putiphar was not of theyme whiche were geldede when thei were childer, for he hade a wife and childer, whose dozhter Ioseph did wedde. But this Putiphar seenge the beawte of Ioseph, bouzte hym, that he myzhte vse hym after the vse of sodomy. But Godde made hym so colde of nature that he myzte not fulletylle the luste of the flesche, whiche was made after that the bisshop of Heliopolis.<sup>13</sup> Apis the son of Foroneus, the thrydde kyng of Argiues, began to reigne, contynunge hit by xxij<sup>ti</sup> yere. Ysaac of clxxx. yere in age, diede and [was] beriede in the dowble denne in Hebron. In whiche yere Pharao hade the dreame of vij. eieres of corne, and of vij. oxen.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> twelf, a.<sup>2</sup> eunuch-s, MS. (not a. or Cx.); sone after eunuches in MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>3</sup> gelded, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So Cx. ; pat was, MS. and a.<sup>5</sup> a] om. a., Cx.<sup>6</sup> so fayre, a. (not Cx.)<sup>7</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> eunuches, a.<sup>9</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>10</sup> zere olde, added in MS.<sup>11</sup> in, Cx.<sup>12</sup> syze, a.<sup>13</sup> Oliopolis, Harl. MS.

CAP. XII.<sup>1</sup>

*De reliqua patriarcharum historia. Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.*

Jacob in Ægyptum descendit.

Apis, postea Serapis dictus, in Ægypto moritur.

Isto anno, qui fuit secundus annus famis, Jacob centum triginta annorum<sup>2</sup> existens descendit cum filiis suis in Ægyptum. *Augustinus, libro octavo-decimo, capitulo decimo.*<sup>3</sup> Hoc anno Apis<sup>4</sup> rex Argolicus navibus vectus in Ægyptum moritur, et Serapis dictus est. Cujus rationem reddit Varro sic dicens: Arca sive sarcophagus<sup>5</sup> in quo Apis ponebatur Græce vocabatur<sup>6</sup> *sonon*; inde dictus est *Soronapis*; postmodum,<sup>7</sup> ut assolet, dempta<sup>8</sup> una litera, dicebatur Serapis. Ille itaque bos maculis albis<sup>9</sup> distinctus, quem colebat Ægyptus, quia vivus colebatur, Apis dicebatur. Quo mortuo quærebatur alius vitulus albus<sup>10</sup> similibus maculis distinctus, delicate<sup>11</sup> nutritus et cultus. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* Apis dicebatur taurus ille, qui de Nilo solebat exire et gesticulatione sua<sup>12</sup> ventura prænotare.<sup>13</sup> *Petrus.* Dicunt quidam quod in

<sup>1</sup> Not marked as a new chapter in B.C.D., indeed not even a new paragraph. No title in MSS.

<sup>2</sup> So B.; *annis*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *capitulo x<sup>o</sup>.*] om. A.C.D.; the whole reference omitted in B. It should be Lib. xviii. c. 5.

<sup>4</sup> *Apis*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *sarcophagum*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *dicebatur*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *postea*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *commutata*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *bos albus maculis*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *albus*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *delicate*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *sua*] sui corporis, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *prædicere*, C.D.; *prænoticare*. B.; *provocare* (sic), A.

*Capitulum duodecimum.*

TREVISA.

THIS<sup>1</sup> zere, þat was þe secunde zere of hunger,<sup>2</sup> Iacob, an hondred zere olde and pritty, wente wip his children doun in to Egipte. *Augustinus, libro 18<sup>o</sup>.* Þis zere Apis þe kyng Argolicus seilede in to Egipt and deyde, and was i-cleped Serapis. [Varro tellith why he was cleped Serapis,]<sup>3</sup> and seip þat þe chiste þat he was i-putte inne was i-cleped Seron<sup>4</sup> in Grewe, and þerfore Apis was i-cleped [Seronapys],<sup>5</sup> and afterward by wip drawynge of lettres, as me vseþ, he was i-cleped Serapis. Þat whyte splekked oxe þat men of Egipt hadde,<sup>6</sup> ffor it was [i-worschipped onlyve, hit was]<sup>7</sup> i-cleped Apys; and whan þat oxe was deed, þey ordeyned hem anoper oxe þat was also whyte splekked and tenderliche i-norsched and i-worschipped. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* Þat bole heet Apis, þat was i-woned to come out of þe ryuer Nylus, and warne by his pleyenge and startelynge<sup>8</sup> what was to comynge. *Petrus.* Som men telleþ þat eueriche zere in Serapis feste come vp a bole out

*Capitulum duodecimum.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

IACOB, beenge of a c. and xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere in age, wente in to Egipte that yere, whiche was the secunde yere of the hungre. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* Apis, kynge Argolicus, cariede in to Egipte with schippes, diede that yere, otherwise callede Serapis. The poete Varro schewethe a cause and a reason as for that name. For Senaropis in Grewe sowndethe as a beryalle, in whom Apis was putte. And after hit was callede Serapis, ij. letters taken awaye. That oxe distincte with white spottes, whom Egipte worschippede, was callede Apis, in that Ninus<sup>9</sup> was worschippede; whiche oxe other bulle dedde, an other calfe was inquirede that was like to hit, whiche founde thei norischede hit tenderly. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* That bulle was callede Apis, whiche was wonte to swimme ouer the floode callede Nilus, and to schewe thynges to comme thro his gesticulation. *Petrus.* Somme men say that bulle aperede above the water in the feste of Serapis, whiche

<sup>1</sup> *Yis, a.*<sup>2</sup> *Fanus, a., Cx.; Phanus, γ.*<sup>3</sup> Added from *γ., Cx.*<sup>4</sup> *Soron, γ.*<sup>5</sup> Added from *a. and Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *hadde*] om. *a. β. γ., Cx.* For*hadde* we should perhaps read *hadde in worschip.*<sup>7</sup> Added from *a. and Cx.*<sup>8</sup> So *a. β. γ. and Cx.; stelynge, MS.*<sup>9</sup> The Harleian translator has misread his MS.

Serapis festo annuatim<sup>1</sup> emergebat<sup>2</sup> ille de<sup>3</sup> Nilo flumine,<sup>4</sup> habens in humero dextro signum candidum instar lunæ corniculatum, ad quem cum Ægyptii statim confluerunt<sup>5</sup> omni genere musicorum psallentes, taurus ille levabatur in aere tanquam psallens; ad cuius motum seu stationem Ægyptii in terra movebantur seu stabant, sed eadem die evanescebat. Igitur Ægyptii taurum pro Ape, vaccam pro Iside, ovem pro Hammone, id est Jove, adorabant. Unde et abominabile fuit apud eos hujusmodi<sup>6</sup> animalia<sup>7</sup> occidere aut edere.<sup>8</sup>

Argivorum quartus<sup>9</sup> rex Argus cœpit regnare, et regnavit quadraginta sex annis; sub quo etiam<sup>10</sup> Græcia, allatis aliunde seminibus, segetes habere cœpit.<sup>12</sup> Anno Abr. 293.  
Anno Jacob 133.<sup>11</sup>

Jacob<sup>13</sup> centum quadraginta septem annorum existens,<sup>14</sup> Anno Abr. 307.  
Anno Jacob. 147.  
benedictis filiis suis ac filiis filiorum<sup>15</sup> <sup>16</sup> singulis benedictionibus, moritur;<sup>17</sup> servatusque est<sup>18</sup> et conditus triginta diebus. Tandem delatus est<sup>19</sup> ad<sup>20</sup> Hebron in spelunca duplici tumulandus. *Petrus, capitulo decimo.* Mos erat ethnicorum incondita servare corpora novem diebus, quibus deplangerent<sup>21</sup> et corpora aqua calida foverent;<sup>22</sup> ut sic sciretur an<sup>23</sup> anima esset egressa vel<sup>24</sup>

Jacob  
moritur.

<sup>1</sup> *annuatim*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *taurus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *sub*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *flumine*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *confluerent*, B.D.

<sup>6</sup> So D.; *hujus*, A.E.

<sup>7</sup> *aut*, ins. B.

<sup>8</sup> *comedere*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *tertius*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *et*, A.

<sup>11</sup> In the Harleian MS. the years of *Isaac* (not *Jacob*) are computed; thus giving 193, &c. instead of 133, &c.

<sup>12</sup> *segetes habuit*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *autem*, ins. C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> *postquam mansisset in terra illa septemdecim annis*, ins. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *filiorum*] Joseph, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *suorum*, ins. B.

<sup>17</sup> *mortuus est*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *est*] om. B.D.

<sup>19</sup> *defertur*, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *ad*] in, C.D.; ab, B.

<sup>21</sup> *quibus deplangerent*] et singulis diebus plangere, C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *fovere*, C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *utrum*, C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *an*, C.D.

of þe ryuer Nilus, and hadde a whyte mark in þe riȝt schuldre i-schape as a newe mone, and whanne þe Egipcians come to hym wip alle manere musyk and merþe, þat bole was i left vp in to þe ayer as it were wip iolyte, and at þe meuyng and styntyng of þat boole þe Egipcians meued and stynte vp on þe erthe, but þat bole vanished out of hir siȝt þe<sup>1</sup> same day. Þerfore þe Egipcians worschipped þe<sup>2</sup> bole for þat man Apis, and a kowe in stede of Isis<sup>3</sup> þat womman, and a bole also for Iupiter. Þerfore it was a grete abhomynacioun among þe Egipcians to sle reþeren<sup>4</sup> or<sup>5</sup> ete reþeren flesche. Argus þe fourþe kyng of Argiues bygan to regne, and regnede sixe and fourty ȝere. In his [tyme]<sup>6</sup> Grece hadde seed i-brouȝt out of oper londes, and gan to ere and sowe and haue corne i teled pere ynne. Iacob, an hondred ȝere olde and seuene and fourty, blessed his children, and ȝaf eueriche his blessyng, and deyde. and was anoynt, and i-kept pritty dayes, and at þe laste i-bore in to Ebron, and i-buried pere in þe double graue. *Petrus.* Hit was þe manere of mysbeleued men forto kepe a dede body nyne dayes wip oute oignement, and make sorwe for hym nyne dayes, and wasche þe body nyne daies, for to wete wheþer þe soule were apassed oper no. Afterward þey

TREVISA.

water was callede Nilus, hauenge in the ryȝhte schulder a white signe other merke cornerede lyke to the moone; whom men of Egipte attendenge syngenge with alle kyndes of musikes, that bulle was eleuate anoon in to the aier, as makenge a melody; at the mouenge or stondenge of whom men of Egipte were movede other stode; whiche bulle euaneschede a weye the same day. Therefore men of Egipte worschippede a bulle for Apis, a kowe for Isis, and a schepe for Iupiter; wherefore to slee eny of those bestes was an abhominable thyng amonge theyme, other elles to eite eny of theyme. Argus, the iiij<sup>th</sup> kyng of Argyues, began to reigne, whiche reignede xlvj. yeres, in whiche tyme the londe of Grece began to sawe corne. Iacob beenge of a c.xlvij<sup>th</sup>. yere in age, blessenge his childer with single benedicciones, and the childer of his chiuder, diede, whiche kepede xxx<sup>i</sup> daies, was brouȝhte at the laste to Hebron, and beriede in a thrcfolde denne. *Petrus, decimo capitulo.* The maner and consuetude of Ethnikes was to kepe bodies dedde by ix. daies, in whom they myȝhte sorowe theire dethe, and norische the body with hote water, that thei myȝhte haue perfecte knowlege wheder thei were

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> þat, Cx.  
<sup>2</sup> þat, a., Cx.  
<sup>3</sup> Isus, MS.

<sup>4</sup> reþeren] neet, Cx.  
<sup>5</sup> oper, a.  
<sup>6</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

sopita. Postmodum<sup>1</sup> corpora condita quadraginta diebus servabantur. Sed mos erat Judæis<sup>2</sup> septem diebus incondita corpora servare, et post triginta diebus servare condita. *Augustinus, libro octavo-decimo.*

Prometheus  
homines  
fecisse  
fertur.

Prometheus filius Iapeti et frater Atlantis astrologi secundum Ovidium in Magno fertur fecisse homines, [tum quia de rudibus doctos fecit<sup>3</sup> (*Isidorus libro tertio-decimo*), tum quia legitur fecisse imagines hominum,<sup>4</sup> quas arte quadam ambulare<sup>5</sup> fecit. Et etiam iste<sup>6</sup>

Annulum  
invenit.

invenit primus annulum ferreum, cui<sup>7</sup> gemmam inclusit et unguulum vocavit; quia sicut unguis carne sic gemma metallo circumdatur.<sup>8</sup> *Hugutio, capitulo*

Annulus  
derivatur.

*Annulus.*<sup>9</sup> Item<sup>10</sup> annulus dicitur ab ano, quia olim deprehensi in homicidio vel furto solebant portare<sup>11</sup> simiam in collo, ad cujus anum tenebant ora sua. Sed hac<sup>12</sup> consuetudine turpi cessante ferebant tales sic<sup>13</sup> deprehensi annulum ferreum in digito, ad cujus<sup>14</sup> rei distinctionem nobiles viri fecerunt<sup>15</sup> sibi annulos

<sup>1</sup> *Postmodum*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Hebræis*, C.D., and the passage transposed and abbreviated.

<sup>3</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *homines*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *deambulare*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Et . . . iste*] *Iste etiam*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *in quo*, B. ; *et*, D.

<sup>8</sup> Slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Anulus*, MSS., here and everywhere.

<sup>10</sup> *Item*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *deferre*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *hac*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *sic*] om. D.

<sup>14</sup> *cujus*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *fecerunt*] om. E.

kepte þe bodies fourty dayes anoynt.<sup>1</sup> But it was þe manere of TREVISA.  
Iewes forto kepe dede bodyes seuene dayes wip oute oyne-  
mentis, and afterward pritty dayes anoynt. *Augustinus*,  
*libro* 18°. Me seip þat Prometheus<sup>2</sup> Rapetus<sup>3</sup> his sone, and  
Atlas<sup>4</sup> þe astronomere, his broþer, made men; so seip Ouidius  
in Magno; nopeles þat is i-seide, for of men þat were vnkonnyng  
and boistous as bestes he made konnyng [men]<sup>5</sup> and wise.<sup>6</sup>  
*Isidorus* 13°. Also for me redeþ þat he made ymages of  
men goo and walke in<sup>7</sup> þe grounde by a certeyn craft. Also  
þese fonde first a ryng of iren, and closed þerynne a precious  
stoon, and cleped it a nayle, for as þe nayle is i-closed in  
þe flesche, so is suche<sup>8</sup> a stoon i-closed in þe metal. *Hugutio*,  
*capitulo Anulus*. Anulus is a ryng i-seide of anus an ers, for  
somytyme þeues and mansleers, whan þey were i-take, scholde  
bere an ape on hire nekke and holde hir mouþ to þe apes<sup>9</sup> ers.  
But þis foule vsage cesed, and þeues and mansleers whan þey  
were i-take schulde bere rynges of iren on hire fyngres. And  
perfore gentil men, for to haue dyuersite and distinccioun from

dedde other nay. After that thei dressede the bodies with MS. HARL.  
spices, and kepede theyme by xl<sup>ti</sup> dayes, other elles thei 2261.  
kepede theyme after thei were beriede by xl<sup>ti</sup> daies. But the  
consuetude of the Iewes was to kepe the bodies vnberiede by  
vij. dayes, and kepede theym by xxx<sup>ti</sup> daies after theire berie-  
enge. *Augustinus*, *libro octavo decimo*. Prometheus, the  
son of Iapetus,<sup>10</sup> and brother to Atlas<sup>4</sup> the astronomier,  
after Ouidus in Magno, is seide to haue made men, in  
that he made discrete men of rude peple. *Isidorus*, *libro*  
*tertio decimo*. And also for cause that he made the  
ymages of men to walke by craft. Also he fonde firste  
a ryng of yrne, puttenge a gemme in hit, callenge hit  
vngulum, for like as the nayle of a fynger is cloosed with  
flesche, so he compassede that gemme with metalle. *Hugutio*,  
*capitulo Anulus*. Also anulus, whiche is callede a ryng,  
toke begynnenge of this worde, anus; for somme tyme men  
taken in manslaught other in thefte were wonte to bere  
an ape in their necke, holdenge their mowthes to the  
hynder partes of that ape. That vile consuetude y-ceasede,  
suche men taken in felony were wonte to bere a ryng of  
yrne in their fynger, vn to the distinccion of whom now-

<sup>1</sup> enoynted, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So *a.*; *Prometheus*, Cx. (and so MSS. often); *Ptholomeus*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> So MSS. (including *β.* and *γ.*) and Cx., for *Iapetus*.

<sup>4</sup> *Athlas*, MSS. and Harl. MS., and so below.

<sup>5</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *wise men*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *on*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *suche is*, MS.

<sup>9</sup> *ape his*, *a.*

<sup>10</sup> *Tapetus*, Harl. MS.

aureos et argenteos<sup>1</sup> quos ponebant in quarto digito, quem medicum<sup>2</sup> appellant, causa ornatus dignioris; eo quod in<sup>3</sup> illo digito vena quædam a<sup>4</sup> corde protenditur.<sup>5</sup> Sed apud Romanos annuli quondam dabantur ex publico sed nobilibus viris; cæteris autem dabantur solidi, unde et liberi utebantur annulo aureo, libertini argenteo, servi ferreo. Et quidem apud veteres ultra unum anulum 'uti<sup>6</sup> infame fuit.<sup>7</sup> *Isidorus, libro vice-*

Atlas.

*simo*<sup>8</sup> *in fine.*<sup>9</sup> Hujus Promethei frater<sup>10</sup> Atlas astrologus<sup>11</sup> fuit; quapropter cælum portare fingebatur; unde et mons enormis<sup>12</sup> in Africa ab ejus<sup>13</sup> nomine Atlas dicitur, et<sup>14</sup> cælum portare a vulgo creditur.<sup>15</sup>

Triptolemus et Ceres.

*Petrus.* Eo in<sup>16</sup> tempore dicitur Tri[p]tolemus<sup>17</sup> in nave<sup>18</sup> dracone<sup>19</sup> depicta Græciam intrasse, et agri culturam ampliasset.<sup>20</sup> Tunc quoque Ceres, quæ a Græcis Demetra<sup>21</sup> dicitur, præter instrumenta arandi etiam<sup>22</sup> mensuras tritici adinvenit, cum tamen prius triticum<sup>23</sup> per acervos numeraretur.<sup>24</sup> *Ranulphus.*<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A.B.C.D. rightly introduce here the reference to *Isidore* below. See Lib. xix. c. 32.

<sup>2</sup> *medicus*, B.; *medium*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *ab*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *ad cor protendens*, A.

<sup>5</sup> So B.; *pertingit*, D.; *praten-*  
*ditur*, E.

<sup>6</sup> *uti ultra uno anulo*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *fuit*] erat, A. The whole extract considerably varied and transposed in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> 19<sup>o</sup>, C.; 9, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18*, A.B.C.D. correctly. See Lib. xviii. c. 8.

<sup>10</sup> *frater*] originally *filius* in C.; but corrected in the margin in another ink.

<sup>11</sup> *quidam*, ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *unde et mons enormis in Africa*] Mons etiam in Libia, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *hujus*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *et*] quem propter enormem altitudinem, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *vulgus credit*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *in*] om. B.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Tritholomus*, B., and versions.

<sup>18</sup> *nave sua*, A.B.

<sup>19</sup> *draco*, A.

<sup>20</sup> Extract altered verbally and transposed in C.D.

<sup>21</sup> So Higden writes for Demeter.

<sup>22</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *triticum*] om. C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *numerabant*, B.; *numerarent*, D.

<sup>25</sup> *Ranulphus . . . habere*] om. C.D.



suche briboures, made hem rynges of gold other of siluer. TREVISA.  
*Isidorus, libro 19<sup>o</sup>, in fine.* Gentile men vsede here rynges of  
gold and of siluer<sup>1</sup> on þe fourþe fynger, þat is y-cleped þe leche  
by cause of þe more hiȝtyng and fairenesse, for in þat fynger  
is a veyne þat streechþ to þe herte. But Romayus hadde  
rynges of þe common tresour<sup>2</sup>: gentil men hade rynges, and  
opere hadde solidy þat were hole and sownde. Fremen of blood  
vsede [rynges of gold; free men that came of bonde men  
vsed]<sup>3</sup> rynges of siluer, but bonde men vsede rynges of iren.  
Somtyme it were a greet diffamacioun for a man to vse more  
rynges þan oon. *Augustinus de Civitate.* Þis Prometheus  
hadde a broþer þat het Atlas, and was an astronomer; þerfore  
me feynede þat he bare heuene; also a greet hille in Affrica,  
þat<sup>4</sup> hatte Atlas by þis man Atlas his name; and þe lewed peple  
weneþ þat þat hylle bereþ vp heuene. *Petrus.* Me seiþ þat  
Tritholomus wente þat tyme in his schippe þat was i-peynt  
wiþ a dragoun into Grees, and made þere more craft of telienge  
of feeldes. Also þat tyme Ceres, þe womman þat þe Grees  
clepeþ Demetra, wiþ oute instrumentes þat sche fonde vp of  
erynge craft, sche fonde vp also mesures of whete; for to fore-  
honde þey delede whete by hepes<sup>5</sup> smal oper greet. R. After

---

ble men made rynges of golde and of syluyr. *Isidorus, MS. HARL.*  
*libro decimo nono, in fine.* Whom thei putte in the iij<sup>the</sup> 2261.  
fynger, whiche is callede the fynger medicinale, for cause  
of more dignite, in that a veyne is protendede from that  
fynger to the herte. Also rynges were ȝiffen to nowble  
men in Rome, and schilenges were ȝiffen to other men.  
Wherefore free men vsede rynges of golde, libertynes  
rynges of syluyr, and seruauentez<sup>6</sup> rynges of yrne. For hit  
was somme tyme as a thyng of grete infamy to haue  
werede moo rynges then oon amonge olde men. *Augustinus de civitate Dei, libro 18<sup>mo</sup>.* Atlas, the astronomier,  
and broder to Prometheus, was seide to bere heuyn, where-  
fore there was a grete hille in Affrike callede Atlas after  
hys name, whiche hille by the estimacion of commune peple  
is supposede to bere heuyn. *Petrus.* Tritholomus, peynt-  
enge a dragon in his schippe, is seide to haue entrede in  
to Grece, and to haue amplifiede the tyllenge of londe; and  
Ceres, whiche is callede Demetra of the Grekes, founde  
diuerse mesures of whete, for whete was nowmbrede afore  
that tyme by grete hepes. R. And after Isidorus, libro

<sup>1</sup> of seluer and of gold, a. β. γ.,  
Cx.

<sup>2</sup> tresorye, a. β. γ., Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Added from β. γ., Cx.

<sup>4</sup> þat] om. a. β. γ., Cx.

<sup>5</sup> huples, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> So Harl. MS.

Et ex tunc,<sup>1</sup> secundum Isidorum libro quinto, Græcia  
cœpit segetes habere.<sup>2</sup>

Joseph  
moritur ;  
item  
fratres.

Joseph centum et decem annorum existens<sup>3</sup> moritur  
in Ægypto, et conditus aromatibus conservatus est  
usque ad exitum Hebræorum de Ægypto per centum  
quadriginta<sup>4</sup> quatuor<sup>5</sup> annos, quibus Hebræi servierunt  
Ægyptiis. Fratres quoque Joseph, prout singillatim  
moriebantur, sepeliebantur<sup>6</sup> in Hebron ; ossa tamen  
eorum cum<sup>7</sup> ossibus Joseph postmodum<sup>8</sup> translata  
sunt in Sichem,<sup>9</sup> quæ modo dicitur Neapolis, urbs  
Samaritanorum. Et sic a descensu Jacob in Ægyptum  
usque ad exitum Hebræorum sunt anni ducenti  
quindecim.<sup>10</sup>

Anno Abr. 361.  
Anno Jacob. 110.

### CAP. XIII.

#### *De Moyse.*<sup>11</sup>

Moyse  
nascitur.

Amram, filius Caath,<sup>12</sup> filii Levi,<sup>13</sup> ex uxore sua  
Jochabeth,<sup>14</sup> cum esset quadraginta<sup>15</sup> annorum, genuit  
Moysen. *Petrus.* Pharao ille,<sup>16</sup> sub quo fuit Joseph,  
proprio nomine dictus est Nephros ;<sup>17</sup> post quem octavus  
dictus est Amonophis, sub quo Moyses natus est.  
*Josephus, libro secundo.* Iste Pharao<sup>18</sup> odiebat<sup>19</sup> Israel

Anno Abr. 424.  
Anno Moysi 1.

<sup>1</sup> *hoc*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *habere*] om. E.

<sup>3</sup> *existens*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *sexaginta*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *quinque*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *sepulti sunt*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *postmodum cum*, A. ; *cum*, om. E.

<sup>8</sup> *postmodum*] om. A.B.

<sup>9</sup> *Sichen*, A.

<sup>10</sup> Paragraph slightly transposed  
in C.D.

<sup>11</sup> No title in MS.

<sup>12</sup> So A.B.C.D. (and Vulg. 1  
*Okron. vi. 2.*) ; *Gath*, E.

<sup>13</sup> *Levy*, E.

<sup>14</sup> *Jocabet*, A.

<sup>15</sup> *sexaginta*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *ille*] om. B.

<sup>17</sup> *Nephres*, B.D.

<sup>18</sup> *Iste Pharao*] Hic rex, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> So MSS.

pat tyme Grees by gan to haue tilpe and<sup>1</sup> corne; so seyp TREVISA.  
 Isidre, libro 5<sup>o</sup>. Ioseph, an hondred zere olde and ten, deyde  
 in Egipte, and was anoynt wip swete oynementis, and i-kepte  
 anon to þe goynge of þe children of Israel out of Egipte, an  
 hondred zere and foure and fourty, in þe which tyme þe  
 Hebrewes seruede þe Egipcians; also as Ioseph his breperen  
 deide eueriche after oper, they<sup>2</sup> were i-buried in Hebron.  
 Nopeles afterward hire bones were i-bore in to Sychem wip  
 Ioseph his bones: pat place hatte now Neapolis, þe citee of  
 Samaritans: and so from pat tyme pat Iacob come into Egipte  
 anon to pat tyme pat þe Hebrewes þe children of Israel went  
 out of Egipte were two hondred and fiftene zere.

*Capitulum tertium-decimum.*

Amram was Caath is sone, Caath was Leuy is sone. Þis  
 Amram, sixty zere olde, gat Moyses on his wif Iocabeth.  
*Petrus*,<sup>3</sup> libro 2<sup>o</sup>. Pharao, vnder wom Ioseph was, heet  
 Nephres by his owne propre name; þe eiȝtþe Pharao after  
 hym heet Amonophis, in his tyme Moyses was i-bore. *Iose-*  
*phus*,<sup>4</sup> libro 2<sup>o</sup>. Þis Pharao hatede þe children of Israel for

quinto, from that tyme the londe of Grece began to haue MS. HARL.  
 cornes. Ioseph, beenge of a cx. yere in age, dyede in 2261.  
 Egipte, whiche dressede with spices, was kepede there vn to  
 the goenge furthe of men of Ebrewe from Egipte, that was  
 by c. and xliij<sup>ti</sup> yere, in whom men of Hebrewes seruede  
 men of Egipte. But the breder of Ioseph were beriede  
 in Hebron, but the boones of them were translate with the  
 boones of Ioseph in to Sichen, now callede Neapolis, the  
 cite of Samaritanes. And so hit was that cc. yere a pas-  
 sede and xv. from the commenge of Iacob in to Egipte  
 vn to the goenge furthe of men of Hebrewes from hit.

*Capitulum tertium-decimum.*

AMRAM, the son of Caat, the son of Leui, beenge of lxx<sup>ti</sup>  
 yere, gate of Iocabeth his wife Moyses. *Petrus*. The pro-  
 pre name of Pharo, vnder whom Ioseph was, was Nemphers;  
 the viij<sup>the</sup> Pharao after whom was callede Amonophis, vnder  
 whom Moises was borne. *Iosephus, libro secundo*. This  
 Pharao did hate moche the peple of Israel, for the vertu of

<sup>1</sup> and] of, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So γ., Cx.; and were, MS. and  
 a. (without sense); also Ioseph hys  
 breȝron(sic), ashy deyde, &c. were, β.

<sup>3</sup> *Petrus*] So a., Cx.; *Iosephus*,  
 MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Iohannes*, Cx.

propter virtutem ingenii, laboris industriam, opum affluentiam, et sobolis elegantiam; unde et callide ex-cogitavit filios<sup>1</sup> Israel opprimere, ne multiplicatus contra eum<sup>2</sup> insurgeret. Imposuitque eis angarias operum multimodorum, scilicet lateres<sup>3</sup> coquendi, fossata circa rivulos Nili faciendi, lutum exportandi, sed paleas tantum ad victum præbens; quibus operibus populus<sup>4</sup> confractus et fame confectus amplexibus non vacaret, et per consequens proles sic deficeret.<sup>5</sup> Insuper et quidam scriba sacrorum præscius futurorum nunciavit Pharaoni unum quemdam de<sup>6</sup> Hebræis nasciturum, qui principatum Ægypti<sup>7</sup> humiliaret et genus Israel exaltaret. Qua<sup>8</sup> de causa jussi sunt infantes necari. *Petrus*.<sup>9</sup> Sed his non obstantibus, populo<sup>10</sup> adhuc<sup>11</sup> multiplicato,<sup>12</sup> præcepit<sup>13</sup> Pharao obstetricibus Ægypti<sup>14</sup> masculos infantes necare, fœminas<sup>15</sup> verò reservare; tanquam sexum invalidum ad rebellandum,<sup>16</sup> delicatum tamen ad libidinem Ægyptiorum. Sed cum

<sup>1</sup> *filios*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *eum*] om. E.

<sup>3</sup> *lateris*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *populus*] om. E.

<sup>5</sup> Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *de*] om. E.

<sup>7</sup> *Ægypti*] ejus, A.C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *Hac*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *capitulo primo*, ins. C.D. In the Lyons edition of 1543 it is c. 3.

<sup>10</sup> *populo*] *populoque*, A.C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *adhæc*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *multiplicante*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *præcepit* after *necare*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Ægypti*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *fœminasque*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *bellandum*, B.

vertu of witte, ffor konnyng of trauaille, ffor plente of richesse<sup>1</sup> and for fairnesse of children; þerfore he byþouȝt hym felliche and gilefulliche to bere a doun þe children of Israel, and holde hem lowe, leste þey wolde multeplie to swiþe<sup>2</sup> and aryse aȝenst hym; also he putte vpon hem charges of many manere works forto make brend tyle forto digge diches aboute þe rennyng stremes of þe ryuer of Nilus, and for to bere fen and clay; and ȝaf hem nouȝt to mete but smal chaf, for he wolde so ouercome hem wip trauaille and wip hunger, þat þey schulde haue no wille to ligge by here wyfes; and so it schulde folowe þat children schulde faile. Also oon, þat was a writere of holy lettres and wiste what was<sup>3</sup> to comynge, warnede Pharao þe kyng of Egipt þat oon schulde [be i-bore of þe Hebrewes þat schulde]<sup>4</sup> bere adoun þe principat of Egipt, and arere þe kynde of Israel, and make hem ful grete. Þerfore it was i-hote þat<sup>5</sup> þe knaue<sup>6</sup> children of Israel schulde be i slawe whan þei were i-bore. *Petrus.* But ȝit for al this þe peple multeplied wel faste, and Pharao heet þe mydwyfes of Egipte þat þey schulde kylle<sup>7</sup> alle þe knaue children of Hebrewes, and kepe þe mayde children; ffor he heelde womman kynde ful feble to be rebel, and nopeles wel likynge to þe leccherye of<sup>8</sup> þe Egipcians. And whan Pharao myȝt nouȝt so haue<sup>9</sup> his wille, he heet þe children þat were

TREVISA

the witte of theyme, for the affluence of richesse, for the beaute of their childer; where fore he thouȝhte to slee theyme priuely, that their multiplicacion and frute scholde not be able to resiste them. Where fore he putte to theyme diuersites of labores, to make tyle stones, diches abowte ryueres, and to make clay, ȝiffenge to their fyndenge but chaffe, that peple oppressed with labore and hungre scholde refuse multiplicacion, and so their frute scholde decrease and faile. But a scribe, hauenge prenostication of thynges to comme, schewede to kynge Pharao oon childe to comme of men of Hebrewes, that scholde make Egipte meke and tame, and exalte the kynde of Israel. Where fore the infantes of theyme were commaundede to be sleyne. *Petrus.* This not withstondenge and the peple causenge multiplicacion, kynge Pharao commaundede the mydde wifes of Egipte to slee the male childer and to kepe the childer female, as a kynde not apt to make batelle, and pleasaunte to the luste of men of Egipte, commaundenge the childer to be caste

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> *riches, a.*  
<sup>2</sup> *fast, Cx.*  
<sup>3</sup> *was to done and]* MS. (not *a.*  
*β. γ., Cx.*)  
<sup>4</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *þat* So *a.* and *Cx.*; þe, MS.  
<sup>6</sup> *men, Cx.*  
<sup>7</sup> *slee, Cx.*  
<sup>8</sup> *of lechery to, Cx.*  
<sup>9</sup> *haue so]* MS. (not *a.* or *Cx.*)

nec sic prævaleret, jussit recenter natos in flumine projici. Pro hoc peccato creditur Ægyptios in hunc errorem incidisse, ut Apim<sup>1</sup> pro deo colerent. *Genesis*.<sup>2</sup>

Filia Pharaonis  
Moysen  
adoptat.

Quapropter natus Moyses tribus mensibus absconditus est,<sup>3</sup> sed tandem in fiscella scirpea bituminata conclusus projectus est in carecto fluminis; quem filia Pharaonis Thermut reperiens in filium adoptavit, Moysenque appellavit.<sup>4</sup> *Josephus, libro secundo.* Quod Græce componitur a *moy*,<sup>5</sup> quod est aqua, et *esis*, quod est salvatus; quasi per aquam salvatus.<sup>6</sup> Hic quoque omnem mammam Ægyptiarum abhorrens a propria matre prudenter lactatus est; at cum trimus effectus esset,<sup>7</sup> speciem ejus et<sup>8</sup> staturam<sup>9</sup> Deus auxit; ut, ubicunque per plateas efferretur,<sup>10</sup> circumstantes relictis occupationibus suis, quantumcunque severi aut turbati essent animi,<sup>11</sup> in eum intenderent.<sup>12</sup> Die igitur quadam cum<sup>13</sup> Thermuth<sup>14</sup> eum Pharaoni inspiciendum offerret<sup>15</sup> ut et ipse<sup>16</sup> adoptaret in filium, admirans rex pueri venustatem coronam suam

Moyses  
Pharaonis  
coronam  
conculcat.

<sup>1</sup> So B.; *Apum*, A.E.

<sup>2</sup> *Genesis*] om. E.

<sup>3</sup> *est*] added from B.

<sup>4</sup> Extract slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *moys*, B.D.

<sup>6</sup> Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.; *quasi . . . salvatus*, om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *esset*] om. E.

<sup>8</sup> *in*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *ita*, ins. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *deferretur*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *animi essent*, B. Probably we should read *animos*, placing the comma after *essent*.

<sup>12</sup> Sentence slightly varied in D.

<sup>13</sup> So B.; *dum*, D.E.

<sup>14</sup> *Theremuth*, B.

<sup>15</sup> So B.; *obtulisset*, E., after *Thermuth*.

<sup>16</sup> *Moysen*, ins. C.D.; *eum*, B.

knaue children<sup>1</sup> in to a ryuere anoon as þey were i-bore. Me trowep þat for þat synne þe Egipcians fille in to pat errour for to worschippe pat<sup>2</sup> oxe þat þey clepeþ Apis, instede of God. *Genesis*. Þerfore Moyses was i-hydde þre monþes whanne he was [i-bore, but at þe laste he was]<sup>3</sup> i-doo in a scaf of risshes<sup>4</sup> i-schape as a litel boot i-glewed wel a boute, and i-þrowe in þe ryuer. Þanne Thermit, Pharao his douzter, fond hym, and took hym up of þe water, and made hym as it were hire owne sone, and cleped hym Moyses. *Iosephus*,<sup>5</sup> *libro* 2<sup>o</sup>. Moyses is a name i-made of tweie names of Grewe, of *moy*, þat is water, and *esis*, þat is i-saued; and so Moyses is i-seide as he þat is i-saued by water. Also þis childe Moyses hatede alle þe wommen brestes of þe Egipcians, and wolde souke no woman breste of þe Egipcians, but he was sliche i-brouzt to his owne moder, and sche fed hym; and whan he was þre<sup>6</sup> zere olde, God Almyzty made hym so fayre of schap and of stature, þat whanne they were i-bore<sup>7</sup> by stretes al þat were aboute lefte [of]<sup>8</sup> hire work and occupaciouns for to loke and byholde on þat childe, were þey neuere so sterne ne so angry. Þan in<sup>9</sup> a day Thermuth, Pharao his douzter, brouzt þe childe to Pharao, for he schulde see þe childe and make hym as hit were his owne sone. Þanne the

TREVISA.

freschely or newly in to the water after theire byrthe, leste that he scholde not preuayle in þat other wyse. For whiche synne hit is trawede men of Egipte to haue fallen in to that erroure that thei scholde worschippe Apis for Godde. *Genesis*. But Moyses borne was hidde iij. monethes, at the laste he was putte in a weele made of rishes dressede with picche, and caste in to the water, whom Thermuth, þe dozhter of kynge Pharao, fyndenge, desirede hym in to here childe. *Iosephus, libro secundo*. That name Moyses is compoude of thys worde *moy*, that is, water, in Grewe, and *esis*, that is saluede, callede Moyses, as saluede by water. Whiche aborrenge the noryschenge of men of Egipte, was norischede of his awne moder, and when he was of iij. yere in age, God encreasede soe the beaute and stature of hit, that men movede thro labore, other in trowble, wolde refuse their occupacion to beholde pat childe. In a tyme when Thermuth offrede that childe to kynge Pharao here fader, vn to beholde hym, and that he scholde

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> the men childer, Cx.<sup>2</sup> an oxe, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from a. β. γ. and Cx. (β. γ. Cx. have *atte last*.)<sup>4</sup> resches, a.<sup>5</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Isidorus*, MS.<sup>6</sup> so þre, MS. (not a.)<sup>7</sup> So MS. and a.; *he was born*, Cx.; *he were y bore*, β.; *a wer y bore*, γ.<sup>8</sup> Added from a. β. γ. and Cx.<sup>9</sup> on, Cx.

(in qua Hammonis, id est Jovis, imago insculpebatur)<sup>1</sup> capiti infantis apposuit; quam<sup>2</sup> statim puer pedibus conculcavit. Astansque<sup>3</sup> sacerdos Heliopoleos exclamavit dicens:<sup>4</sup> “Hic est puer, quem nobis occidendum Deus<sup>5</sup> monstravit, ut de cetero timore careamus.” Et sic in puerum irruisset, nisi persuasione cujusdam sapientis, qui hoc per insipientiam puerilem<sup>6</sup> factum asseverabat, liberatus fuisset. *Petrus, libro secundo,*<sup>7</sup> *capitulo xlj<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>8</sup> In cujus rei argumentum allatæ sunt prunæ ardentes<sup>9</sup> coram puero, qui statim eas<sup>10</sup> ori apponens linguæ summitatem ardore corrupit. Unde et ipsum in antea impeditioris linguæ fuisse Hebræi autumant. Tantæ autem fuit pulchritudinis, ut<sup>11</sup> intuentes aspectui ejus hæerent, rigorem animi deponerent, occupationes<sup>12</sup> dimitterent. Circa hæc tempora<sup>13</sup> Hercules fertur Antæum lucta vicisse. <sup>14</sup>*Josephus libro secundo.*<sup>15</sup> Æthiopicis Anno Moysi 20.  
 Ægyptum infestantibus,<sup>16</sup> augures Ægyptii responsum Anno Abr. 444.  
 acceperant,<sup>17</sup> ut uterentur<sup>18</sup> duce Hebræo; et vix obtinuerunt<sup>19</sup> ut Moysen sibi<sup>20</sup> præficerent, qui tamen<sup>21</sup> in

Contra  
 Æthiopes  
 Moysen  
 sibi præfi-  
 ciunt  
 Ægyptii.

<sup>1</sup> *fabrefactu fuerat*, C.D. (with other slight variations).

<sup>2</sup> *tamen*, ins. A.B.

<sup>3</sup> *Astans quoque*, A.D.

<sup>4</sup> *dicens*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Deus* before *nobis*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *puerilem*] om. C.D. (with other slight variations).

<sup>7</sup> *libro . . . xlj<sup>o</sup>.*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *xj<sup>o</sup>.* A. See Pet. Com. *Lib. Exod.* c. 5. (fol. 36, b. Lugd. 1543).

<sup>9</sup> *ardentes*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *eas*] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> *cuncti*, ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *si quas haberent*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *circa hæc tempora*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Capitulum tertium decimum*, A.

<sup>15</sup> B. omits reference; *Cum ad-  
 tus esset Moyses*, ins. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *vastantibus*, C.D.; *vastantibus  
 vel infestantibus*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *acceperunt*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *verterentur*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *obtinerint*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *sibi*] om. C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *tamen*] om. C.D.



kyng wondrede<sup>1</sup> of þe childes fairnesse, and took his owne crowne in þe whiche the ymage of Iupiter was i-graue, and sette it on þe childes heed; but þe childe anon prewe down<sup>2</sup> þe crowne, and tradde þeron spitousliche wip his feet. And þere stood one þat was god Eleopoleos his preoste, and cride and seide: “Þis is þat childe þat oure god heet vs slee, þat we “ drede na<sup>3</sup> more; ” and wolde anon haue i-slave þe childe; but þere was a wise man and seide þat þe childe hadde so i-doo by vnkonnynge of childhode, and so he saued þe child. *Petrus, libro 2º.* In euydence of þis excusacioun of þe childe were brennyng cooles i-brouzt to fore þe childe Moyses, and anon he putte hem in his mouþe and scaldede þe poynt of his tonge. Þe Hebrewes troweþ þat bycause þerof he hadde<sup>4</sup> a lette of his tonge. Þis childe Moyses was so faire, þat men þat by helde hym took so great hede to þe fairnesse of hym<sup>5</sup> þat þey putte away<sup>6</sup> alle anger and tene,<sup>7</sup> and toke hede to þe fairnesse of the childe.<sup>8</sup> Me seip þat aboute þis tyme Hercules ouercome Anteus<sup>9</sup> in wrastlyng. *Iosephus, libro 2º.* Þe Ethiopes, blewe men, werred vpon Egipt, and þe dyuy-nours of Egipt fenge answere þat þey schulde take a ledere of Hebrewes; and vnneþe þey gat Moyses, and made hym hire

TREVISA.

desire hym in to his son, Pharao meruellenge the beaute of þe childe, put the crowne on his heede, in whom an ymage of Iupiter was graven, whom that childe did trede with his feete. A preste stondenge þer by seide, “ This ys the childe “ whom Godde willethe to be sleyne of vs, that we scholde “ not be in drede afterwarde.” And so he wolde haue pereschede that childe, but that a discrete man was by and seide contrary, excusenge that thyng by the insolence of the childe. *Petrus, libro secundo.* For the probacion of whiche thyng hote cooles of fire were brouzhte a fore the childe, whiche takenge oon of theym, putte hit to his mowthe, and brente the extremite of his tonge. From whiche tyme men of Hebrewes suppose Moyses to haue had an impedimente in his tonge. Hercules is seide to haue geten victories at Athenes abowte these tymes. *Iosephus, libro secundo.* Men of Ethioppe guerrenge ageyn men of Egipte, their wicches zafe answere that thei scholde take a man of Hebrewes in to their gouernoure, whiche hauenge grawnte made Moyses their gouernoure. Whiche beenge

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> had wonder, Cx.<sup>2</sup> it down, MS. (not a.)<sup>3</sup> no, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> a. and Cx. add *afterward.*<sup>5</sup> *hym*] so a. and Cx.; *the childe*, MS.<sup>6</sup> away] of, a. β. γ., Cx.<sup>7</sup> *teone*, β.<sup>8</sup> Text as in a. and Cx.; MS. has several words repeated.<sup>9</sup> *Antheus*, MSS.

bellicis rebus peritus, relicto itinere per aquam Nili, circumduxit exercitum per loca serpentibus plena; quibus tamen de nocte objecit ibices, id est, ciconias Ægyptias, quæ naturaliter infestæ sunt serpentibus, sed mites sunt hominibus.<sup>1</sup> Et sic improvisos conclusit Æthiopes in Saba civitate regia, quam postmodum Cambyses rex ex nomine sororis<sup>2</sup> Meroen nuncupavit. Est autem civitas illa ratione murorum, fossarum, et circumfluentium aquarum fortissima; poniturque in confinio Ægyptiorum et Æthiopum super Nilum fluvium.<sup>3</sup> Tharbis vero filia regis Æthiopum, respiciens in elegantiam Moysi, tradidit ei ex conducto urbem, ita ut eam duceret in uxorem.<sup>4</sup> *Petrus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto.* Hæc est illa Æthiopissa, pro qua jurgati sunt Maria et Aaron contra Moysen<sup>5</sup> in deserto. Cum autem<sup>6</sup> Moyses<sup>7</sup> redire voluisset<sup>8</sup> ad Ægyptum, non adquievit<sup>9</sup> uxor. Proinde Moyses, tanquam vir astrorum peritus, duos annulos fecit; unum memoriae, quem secum retinuit; alterum oblivionis, quem uxori tradidit, et sic<sup>10</sup>

Moyses  
duos an-  
nulos facit.

<sup>1</sup> Sentence slightly abbreviated in D.

<sup>2</sup> *sue*, ins. A.B.D.

<sup>3</sup> *flumen*, B.

<sup>4</sup> Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *postmodum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *vero*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Moyses* after *voluisset*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *coluit*, A.D.

<sup>9</sup> *quievit*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *in Ægyptum*, ins. C.D. (omitting *ad Ægyptum* above).

ledere and cheueteyn.<sup>1</sup> Moyses was konnyng in dedes of batayle, and forsook þe wey by þe water Nilus, and ladde his oost by a wildernesse þat was ful of serpentes; nopeles he putte ciconias<sup>2</sup> by nyȝte aȝenst þe serpentes; ciconie<sup>3</sup> beep briddes<sup>4</sup> of the lond of Egipt, þat hateþ and destroyeþ serpentes, þat<sup>5</sup> beep mylde i-now to mankynde; and so com vnwar vpon þe Ethiopes, and closed hem in a rial citee Saba. Afterward Cambyses<sup>6</sup> þe kyng cleped þat citee Meroen after his owne [suster]<sup>7</sup> name. Þat citee is ful strong by cause of walles of diches and wateres þat rennep aboute þat citee, þat<sup>8</sup> is i-sette bytwene þe Ethiopes and þe Egipcians vpon þe ryuer Nilus. Tharbis,<sup>9</sup> þe kynges douȝter of Ethiopes, sigh þe fairnesse of Moyses, and bytook hym<sup>10</sup> þe citee vpon a couenant þat he schulde wedde hir to wif. *Petrus, libro 2<sup>o</sup>*. Þis is þe<sup>11</sup> womman of Ethiopia for þe whiche Mary and Aaron stryue<sup>12</sup> with Moyses in desert. Whan Moyses wolde torne aȝen in to Egipte, his wif wolde not assente; perfore Moyses, as a man þat was konnyng in þe cours of<sup>13</sup> worchyng of þe sterres and planetes, made tweie rynges, oon of mynde and anoper of forȝetyngnesse; and kepte þe ryng of mynde wip hym self, and took his wif þe ryng of forȝet-

TREVISA.

wise in batelle, lefte the iourney by water, and brouȝhte his hoste thro places fulle of serpentes, to whom he putte bryddes callede snypes, odious to serpentes and amiable to men. And so he concluded men of Ethioppe, as without deliberacion, in the regalle cite of Saba, whom kyng Cambyses<sup>6</sup> callede Meron afterwarde, after the name of his sustyr. That is a stronge cite, by reason of the diches of waters rennenge abowte hit, and of stronge walles, whiche is sette in the costes of Egipte, on that floode callede Nilus. Tharbis, the douȝter to the kyng of Ethioppe, seenge the beawte of Moyses, toke to hym that cite, that he scholde wedde here to his wife. *Petrus, libro secundo*. That is the woman of Ethioppe for whom Maria and Aaron were at debate, and stryved ageyne Moises in deserte. And when Moyses wolde haue goen in to Egipte, his wife wolde not condescende; wherefore Moises causede ij. rynges to be made, reteynenge with hym a ryng of memory, [and] ȝafe to his

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *capitayne*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *ciconyas*, MS.<sup>3</sup> So *a.*; *cicoine*, MS.<sup>4</sup> So *a. β. γ.*; *brydde*, MS.<sup>5</sup> [þat] and, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Cambises*, MS. and Harl. MS.<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.*, &c.<sup>8</sup> and, *a.*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *Tharbys*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *delyuered him*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *that*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> So *a. β. γ.*; *stryueþ*, MS.; *stroof*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> and, Cx.

rediit.<sup>1</sup> *Genesis*. Quo in tempore dum Moyses visitaret fratres suos in terra Gessen, occidit virum Ægyptium, qui percusserat virum Hebræum,<sup>2</sup> abscondens eum<sup>3</sup> sub sabulo.<sup>4</sup> Quod cum<sup>5</sup> die sequenti<sup>6</sup> sibi improperaretur a viro Hebræo,<sup>7</sup> tremens<sup>8</sup> fugit in terram Madian, ubi desponsavit Sephoram,<sup>9</sup> filiam sacerdotis; ex qua genuit Gersan et Eliezer.<sup>10</sup> *Petrus, libro secundo. capitulo sexto.*<sup>11</sup> Sacerdos iste primas fuit in terra Madian circa<sup>12</sup> Mare Rubrum, cujus nomen proprium fuit<sup>13</sup> Raguel, agnomen<sup>14</sup> Jethro,<sup>15</sup> cognomen Cineus; habuitque<sup>16</sup> septem filias pastrices; nam<sup>17</sup> officium alendorum gregum tunc erat mulieribus commendatum,<sup>18</sup> maxime in regione Trogloditarum.<sup>19</sup>

Cecrops. Regnum Atheniense inceptum sub Cecrope, ex cujus uxore Latona et<sup>20</sup> Jove ferunt fabulæ Apollinem deum sapientiæ<sup>21</sup> progenitum fuisse. Anno Moysi 39.  
Anno Abr. 463.

Deucalion. Deucalion cepit regnare in Thessalia,<sup>22</sup> cujus anno duodecimo<sup>23</sup> factum est tertium<sup>24</sup> diluuium particulare<sup>25</sup> in Thessalia, et incendium<sup>26</sup> sub Phaethonte.<sup>27</sup> *Augus-* Anno Moysi 60.  
Anno Abr. 484.

<sup>1</sup> *quievit*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *occisum*, ins. B.

<sup>3</sup> *eum*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *abscondens . . . sabulo*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *dum*, A.E.

<sup>6</sup> *dum*, ins. B. (omitting *cum*).

<sup>7</sup> *a viro Hebræo*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *timens*, A.B.

<sup>9</sup> *Zephoram*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *Eliesar*, A.; *Eliezar*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *capitulo sexto*] om. C.

<sup>12</sup> *contra*, C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *dictus nomine proprio*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *agnomine*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> So A.; *Getro*, E.

<sup>16</sup> *habens*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *enim*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *commendatum*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *Trogoditarum*, MSS.

<sup>20</sup> *ex*, C. (not D.)

<sup>21</sup> *deum sapientiæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *in*, ins. C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *Moysi 42º*, ins. C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *tertium*] om. C.D.

<sup>25</sup> *particulare*] om. C.D.

<sup>26</sup> *incendia*, D.

<sup>27</sup> This and other classical proper names in this chapter are variously corrupted in MSS.

nesse ;<sup>1</sup> and so sche<sup>2</sup> tornede home aȝen. *Genesis.* þat TREVISA.  
 tyme, whanne Moyses visited his breþeren in þe lond of  
 Iessen, he slowȝ a man of þe Egipcians, and hydde hym in  
 þe sonde ; for he hadde i-smyte a man of þe Hebrewes. A  
 morwe<sup>3</sup> a man of Hebrewe putte þat aȝen Moyses berd, and  
 Moyses dradde sore, and fliȝe<sup>4</sup> into þe lond of Madian, and  
 wedded Zephora a preostes douȝter of þat lond, and gat on  
 hire Gersan<sup>5</sup> and Eliezer. *Petrus, libro 2º.* Þis preost was  
 primat in þat<sup>6</sup> lond of Madyan aboute þe Rede See ; his propre  
 name [was]<sup>7</sup> Raguel ; and hadde tweie surnames, Jethro and  
 Cineus ; and hadde seuene douȝters þat were herdes and kepte  
 bestes. For þe office of keþynge of bestes was þat tyme  
 i-ordeyned to<sup>8</sup> wommen, and specialliche in þe lond of Trog-  
 [1]oditees.

The kyngdom of Athenes bygan under Cecrops.<sup>9</sup> Fables  
 telleþ þat on his wife Latona<sup>10</sup> Apolyn lord of witt and of  
 wisdom was i-gete of<sup>11</sup> Iupiter. Deucalion bygan to reigne  
 in Thessalia ; in his twelfþe ȝere was þe þridde particuler  
 flood in Thessalia,<sup>12</sup> and þe brynnynge vnder Feton.<sup>13</sup> *Augus-*

wife that other ryng of obliuion and forgetenge. *Genesis.* MS. HARL.  
 In whiche tyme, when Moises visitte his brether in the 2261.  
 londe of Gessen, he did sle a man of Egipte, whiche hade  
 smyten a man of Hebrewe, hidenge hym vnder sonde. Whiche  
 dredenge in the day folowenge, when that thyng was seide  
 to hym by a man of Egipte, fledde in to the londe of Madian,  
 where he did wedde Zephora, of whom he gate Gersan  
 and Eliezer. *Petrus, libro secundo.* That priste, fader to  
 Zephora, was the moste nowble man in the londe of Madian,  
 abowte the Redde See ; the proprur name of whom was Raguel,  
 by an other name Ietro, hauenge vij. doȝhters, and kepers of  
 bestes. For that office of keþenge and norischange bestes  
 was commendede to women, and specially in the region of  
 Trog[1]odites. The realme of men of Athenes began vnder  
 Cecrops,<sup>9</sup> of Latona the wife of whom, and of Iupiter, fables  
 reherse Apollo to haue be geten. Deucalion began to reigne  
 in Thessalia ; in the xij<sup>th</sup> yere of the reigne of whom the  
 thrydde particuler floode was made in Thessalia, and a  
 brennenge under Pheton. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.*

<sup>1</sup> oblyuion, Cx. (who has however  
 forgetyngnesse above).

<sup>2</sup> he, a. β. Cx. ; a, γ.

<sup>3</sup> On the morue, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> auoyded for drede in to, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> So a. and Cx. ; Tersan, MS.

<sup>6</sup> þe, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> for, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Cicrops, MS. and Harl. MS.,  
 and so below.

<sup>10</sup> Lathona, MS.

<sup>11</sup> by, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> in Thessaliu] om. Cx.

<sup>13</sup> Pheton, Cx. ; but Feton below.

*tinus, libro octavodecimo.*<sup>1</sup> Istud diluvium magnam partem Græciæ absumpsit; unde<sup>2</sup> qui ad regem Thesaliæ Deucalionem, tunc temporis Parnassum montem occupantem, ratibus advecti confugerant, salvabantur. *Ranulphus.*<sup>3</sup> Ex isto eventu finxerunt poetæ quod Deucalion et Pyrrha uxor sua jactis lapidibus homines renovaverint.<sup>4</sup> *Isidorus, libro tertiodecimo.*<sup>5</sup> Cum flumina supra modum inundant,<sup>6</sup> non solum præsentia damna inferre, sed<sup>7</sup> aliqua futura significare consueverunt. *Orosius, libro primo.* Eo quoque tempore sol fervescens non solum Æthiopiam, sed et<sup>9</sup> Scythiam<sup>10</sup> intolerabiliter exussit. Qua de causa gentiles fabulam Phaetontis confinxerunt.

## CAP. XIV.

*Historia Moysi concluditur. Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.*<sup>11</sup>

Moyses et Aaron Pharaonem alloquuntur.

MOYSES octoginta annorum existens,<sup>12</sup> una cum Aaron fratre suo octoginta trium annorum tunc<sup>13</sup> existente, Pharaonem alloquitur, ut populum Dei dimittat; quo indurato percussa est Ægyptus decem plagis. *Augustinus, libro xviii.* Ea tempestate quidam Ægyptiorum,

Anno Moysi 80.  
Anno. Abr. 504.

<sup>1</sup> B. omits reference.

<sup>2</sup> et, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Ranulphus . . . . . renovaverint]*  
om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *renovaverunt*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *capitulo ultimo*, ins. A.B. (correctly).

<sup>6</sup> *habundant*, D., which omits *supra modum*.

<sup>7</sup> *sed etiam*, D.

<sup>8</sup> Instead of this next passage C.D. have, *Corinthus condita est, quæ prius Epira dicebatur.*

<sup>9</sup> et] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *Cicium*, B.

<sup>11</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>12</sup> *post visionem rubi flammei in monte Oreb*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *tunc*] om. E.

*tinus, libro 18°.* Þis flood destroyed a greet deel<sup>1</sup> of Grees, pere meny men fleiþ in<sup>2</sup> schippes to Deucalion, kyng of Thesalia, and were i-saued. Deucalion occupied þat tyme þe hil Parnas[s]us. For þis happe poetes feynede þat Deucalion and his wyf Pyrrha<sup>3</sup> þrewe doum stoness and arered men. *Isidorus, libro 13°, capitulo 61°.* Whan reueres wexep<sup>4</sup> ouer mēasures<sup>5</sup> þey doop not harme onliche in þe arisyng, but þey bodeþ<sup>6</sup> also harme þat schal come afterward. *Orosius, libro 2°.* Also þe sonne þat tyme brende nouzt onliche Ethiopia blewe men lond, bote he brende also the lond of Scythia<sup>7</sup> so greuoussliche, þat men myzte nouzt endure. Bycause þerof mysbeleued men feynede þe fable of Feton.<sup>8</sup>

TREVISA.

*Capitulum quartumdecimum.*

MOYSES foure skore þere olde, wip his broþer Aaron foure skore þere olde and þre, spak to Pharao kyng of Egipt, for he schulde delyuere God Allemyþty his peple and lete<sup>9</sup> hem goo to<sup>10</sup> doo sacrifice to God. But Pharao was harde and faste in his malice,<sup>11</sup> and wolde nouzt lete goo þe peple. And Egipte

This floode destroyed a grete part of Grece, in whiche tyme men fleenge to Deucalion in schippes, to that grete mownte callede Parnassus,<sup>12</sup> occupyenge hit were saluede. R. Thro whiche chaunce poetes feyne that Deucalion and Pyrrha<sup>3</sup> his wife renewede men of stoness caste vp with the water. *Isidorus, libro tertio, capitulo sexto.* Where and when floodes be more habundante then thei were wonte, thei be wonte to signifie not oonly hurtes presente but also to come. *Orosius, libro primo.* In whiche tyme the son beenge of feruente heete, brende not oonly Ethioppe, but also Scyttica<sup>7</sup>; for whiche thynges the fable of Feton is feynede of the Gentiles.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Capitulum quartumdecimum.*

MOYSES beenge of lxxx. yere in age, and Aaron his brother of lxxxiiij. yere in age, spake to Pharao that he scholde suffre the peple of God to goe and to do sacrifice; whose herte was made harde, wherefore Egipte was smyten

<sup>1</sup> *partye*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *fledde into*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Pirra*, MSS. Similar slight errors in this chapter have been tacitly corrected.

<sup>4</sup> *waxen*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *mesure*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *bode and bitoken*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *Scicia*, MSS.

<sup>8</sup> This form, though unclassical, has been allowed to stand, as being in a manner anglicised.

<sup>9</sup> So *α. β.*, Cx.; *hete*, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *goo to*] om. Cx., who has other slight variations.

<sup>11</sup> *malys*, *α.*

<sup>12</sup> *Pernasus*, Harl. MS.

Ægypti  
plagæ.

Exodus  
Israel.

timentes Ægyptum perituram, egressi sunt, ut Cecrops, qui<sup>1</sup> navigans Græciam urbem Atthen condidit, quæ postmodum dicta est Athenæ. *Ranulphus*. De qua vide<sup>2</sup> supra libro primo,<sup>3</sup> capitulo Græcia,<sup>4</sup> scilicet Helladia.<sup>5</sup> Veruntamen<sup>6</sup> Corinthus, quæ prius Ephyra<sup>7</sup> vocabatur, quinque annis ante Atthen condita est. *Petrus*, libro secundo, capitulo vicesimo<sup>8</sup> tertio.<sup>9</sup> Multæ aliæ fuerunt Ægypti plagæ præter illas decem famosas plagas;<sup>10</sup> unde et quidam dies in kalendario Ægyptiaci vocantur, quia in illis diebus<sup>11</sup> passa est<sup>12</sup> Ægyptus aliquas plagas. Ex quibus duos solummodo dies<sup>13</sup> singulis mensibus annotamus ad memoriam; quamvis<sup>14</sup> fortassis plures fuerint.<sup>15</sup> Nec est credendum quod Ægyptii, quamvis<sup>16</sup> astrorum periti, deprehenderent hos dies<sup>17</sup> nefastos in inchoatione operis vel<sup>18</sup> itineris seu munitionis.<sup>19</sup> *Genesis*.<sup>20</sup> Igitur<sup>21</sup> Moyses, cum<sup>22</sup> octoginta esset<sup>23</sup> annorum, quo die<sup>24</sup> Israel in Ægyptum<sup>25</sup> ingressus est, eo die eduxit eum de<sup>26</sup> Ægypto, luna existente quintadecima, post quadringentos triginta annos egressionis Abrahæ de Carra<sup>27</sup> Mesopotamiæ in

<sup>1</sup> qui] om. B.  
<sup>2</sup> vide] urbe quære, C.D.  
<sup>3</sup> libro primo] de provinciis, C.D.  
<sup>4</sup> Græcia . . . Helladia] vicesimo secundo, B. See vol. i. p. 190, where for *Atthen* we have *Acten*, which is probably right. The similarity of *c* and *t* in MSS. is a source of great confusion.  
<sup>5</sup> Elladia, MSS. (*s* usually stands for *scilicet*, but *sice* would be better. The standard MS. of Trevisa has *scilicet* at length.)  
<sup>6</sup> C.D. transpose this passage to the end of previous chapter.  
<sup>7</sup> Epira, MSS.  
<sup>8</sup> decimo, B.  
<sup>9</sup> libro . . . tertio] om. C.D.  
<sup>10</sup> et ideo forte tucentur, ins. C.D.  
<sup>11</sup> diebus] om. C.D. (with other slight variations.)

<sup>12</sup> patiebatur, B.  
<sup>13</sup> dies] om. C.D.  
<sup>14</sup> licet, C.D.  
<sup>15</sup> fuerant, B.  
<sup>16</sup> licet, C.D.; om. A.  
<sup>17</sup> duos, A.  
<sup>18</sup> vel] om. B.  
<sup>19</sup> immvssionis, B.  
<sup>20</sup> A.B.C.D. omit reference.  
<sup>21</sup> Igitur] om. C.D.  
<sup>22</sup> cum] om. B.  
<sup>23</sup> esset] om. B.  
<sup>24</sup> die quo, B.  
<sup>25</sup> in Ægyptum] om. B.  
<sup>26</sup> ex, C.  
<sup>27</sup> Charram, B.; Carram, D. *Carrhis* would be more classical, if Haran or Charran is identical with Carrhæ.



was i-smyte wip ten grete wreches.<sup>1</sup> *Augustinus, libro 18°.* TREVISA.  
 Pat tyme pat God took wreche in Egipte, som of þe Egipcians dradde leste Egipte schulde be lost for euere more, and fleyze<sup>2</sup> into oper londes. . And so oon Ceerops scillede in to Grees, and bulde þe citee Athen, pat heet afterward Athenes.<sup>3</sup>  
 Loke more of Athen in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia, scilicet Alladia.<sup>4</sup> Nopeles Corinthus þe firste heet Epira, and was i-bulde fyue zere to fore Athen.<sup>5</sup> *Petrus, libro 2°.* Þere were meny wreches in Egipt wip oute þe ten grete wreches. Þerfore some dayes in þe kalender beep i-cleped dayes of Egipt, [for þilke dayes fil wreches in Egipt.]<sup>6</sup> Of þe whiche dayes we setteþ in þe kalender but in cueriche monthe tweyne in mynde of þe wreches pat God took of Egipt.<sup>7</sup> Neuerþeles þere were meny moo wreches i-take of Egipt. Hit is nouzt to trowyng,<sup>8</sup> þey þe Egipcians were konnyng in knowleche of sterres and planetes, pat þei founde pat þese dayes beep perilous and forbode in þe bygynnyng of werkes and of weyes and in blood letyng. Þaune whanne Moyses was foure skore zere olde, he ladde the folk of [Israel out of]<sup>9</sup> Egipt þe same day of þe zere pat Iacob and his children entrede in to Egipt. Whan Israel wente out of Egipte þe mone was fiftene dayes olde, and was foure hondred zere and þretty after þat Abraham wente out of Charran,<sup>10</sup> pat was in Mesopotamia,<sup>11</sup> in þe lond of

with x. plages and diseases. *Augustinus; libro 18°.* In MS. HARL. 2261.  
 whiche tyme somme men of Egipte dredenge hit to peresche, wente furthe with Ceerops; whiche sailenge in to Grece made a cite callede Atthen, and after that Athenes. R. Of whom hit is declarede afore, libro j°, capitulo 22°. Elladia other Corinthus, callede afore Epira, was edifede v. yere afore the cite of Athenes. *Petrus, libro secundo.* There were many other plages of Egipte, those x. famos plages excepte, wherefore somme daies be callede in the kalendary, the daies of men of Egipte, in whom Egipte was smyten with somme plages; for whiche cause ij. daies of theyme be annotede in the kalendary in euery monethe, thauzhe þer were moo. Moyses ledde furthe the peple of Israel from Egipte in the xv<sup>the</sup> day of the moone, after cccc.xxx<sup>ii</sup> yere of the goenge furthe of Abraham from Carra Mesopotamie in to the londe of promission. As vj<sup>c</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *wreches and pynysshmentes*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *fley*, a. : sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Athenes*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So MS. for *Helladia*, the barbarous form in the Latin text.

<sup>5</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Added from a. β. and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *in Egipt*, Cx., and so below.

<sup>8</sup> *to be demed ne trowed*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *Carram*, MSS.

<sup>11</sup> *Mesopotaneu*, MSS. and Cx.

terram promissionis. Egressi autem de Ægypto<sup>1</sup> quasi DC. milia<sup>2</sup> viri portaverunt secum ossa Joseph et ossa<sup>3</sup> undecim fratrum ejus, qui vocantur patriarchæ. Et condiderunt ea in Sichem,<sup>4</sup> prout dicit Hieronymus. Tulerunt etiam secum<sup>5</sup> farinam conspersam, qua usi sunt triginta diebus.<sup>6</sup> Columna<sup>7</sup> nubis præcessit eos de die, et columna, ignis de nocte. Ad introitum quoque Hebræorum divisum est Mare Rubrum, quod quidem submersit Ægyptios sequentes.<sup>8</sup> *Josephus, libro septimo.*<sup>9</sup> Hujus maris divisio non est<sup>10</sup> discredenda, cum mare Pamphylicum legatur divisum fuisse coram Alexandro Macedone et etiam coram<sup>11</sup> ejus exercitu in persequendo<sup>12</sup> Darium. *Petrus, libro secundo,*<sup>13</sup> *capitulo tricesimo.* Aqua maris hujus non est rubea, sed ex terra rubra circumjacente gurges ipse et quod ex<sup>14</sup> eo sumitur inficitur. Ob hoc<sup>15</sup> gemmæ ibidem sunt rubræ,<sup>16</sup> et minium acutissimum inde<sup>17</sup> sumitur. Dividiturque<sup>18</sup> in duos sinus, Persicum et Arabicum. *Josephus, libro tertio.* Post triginta dies egressionis deficiente annona, dedit eis Dominus coturnices, manna, et aquam de petra

Mare  
Rubrum  
diffunditur.

Israel in  
deserto.

<sup>1</sup> *autem de Ægypto*] sunt, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *milia*] om. A.E. and versions. Added from C.D. and Cx. See Ex. xii. 37. The Latinity is awkward, but is given as in D.

<sup>3</sup> *ossa . . . secum*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Sichen*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *secum*] om. E.

<sup>6</sup> *diebus*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *vero*, ins. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *insequentes*, A.B.; *prosequentes*, C.D. (placing *submersit* last).

<sup>9</sup> *libro septimo*] om. A.B.C.D. The reference is to *Ant. Jud.* ii. 16.

<sup>10</sup> *est*] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> *etiam coram*] om. B.; *etiam*, om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *in persequendo*] *prosequente*, C.; *persequente*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *libro secundo*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *de*, B.

<sup>15</sup> E. places the point after *hoc*.

<sup>16</sup> *rubicæ*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *inde*] om. E.

<sup>18</sup> *Dividitur autem*, C.D.

byheste. Whanne Israel wente out of Egipt, aboute sixe<sup>1</sup> hondred [powsand]<sup>2</sup> men bare<sup>3</sup> wip hem Ioseph his bones and his enleuene breperen bones, that beep i-cleped patriarkes, and buried hem in Sychem, so seiþ Ierom. Israel toke wip hem mele and floure i-spronge wip oyle, and vsed þat þritty dayes. A pyler of a cloude wente to fore Israel, and ladde hem by day; and a pyler of fuyre by nyzte. Whanne Israel wente out of Egipt, þe Reede See openede and lete hem passe, and drenche<sup>4</sup> alle þe Egipcians þat took þe same weye in þe openyng of þis<sup>5</sup> see forto pursewe. *Iosephus*. Þe openyng of þis see schal not ben vntrowed, for me redeth þat þe see Pamphylicum openede to fore kyng Alexander Macedo and also to fore his oost whan he pursewed Darius. *Petrus, libro 2<sup>o</sup>*. Þe water of þis see is nouzt rede of kynde, but is i-dyzed<sup>6</sup> of reed clyues and erthe þat lieþ pere aboute. Þerfore also pere beep i-founde reed precious stoones, and pere is i-founde scharpe fermyloun.<sup>7</sup> Þis see is i-deled atweyne; þat oon is cleped þe see Persicus and [þat oper]<sup>8</sup> þe see Arabicus. *Isidorus, libro 2<sup>o</sup>*.<sup>9</sup> Þritty dayes after þat Israel wente out of Egipt, hem faillede corn; <sup>10</sup> and oure Lorde gaf hem corleues and <sup>11</sup> manna and water of

TREVISA.

men goenge furthe from Egipte bare the boones of Ioseph with theyme, and also the boones of his xj. brether, whiche ar called patriarkes, and beriede theyme in Sicheim, as Seynte Ierom seythe. They toke floure with theyme, whiche thei did vse; and a pylloure off a clowde wente a fore theyme xxx<sup>ti</sup> daies in the day, and a pilloure of fire in the nyzhte. And the Redde See was diuidede at the entrence of men of Hebrewes, and drowned the men of Egipte folowenge theyme. *Iosephus*. The diuision of that see is not be ziffen to diffidence, sythe hit is redde the see Pamphilyke to haue bene diuidede afore grete Alexander the Conqueroure, and afore his hoste, in the persecucion of Darius. *Petrus, libro secundo*. The water of that see is not redde, but that water is infecte of the redde grownde beenge abowte hit, where gemmes be founde of redde coloure; whiche water is diuidede in to partes, as in to Persia and in to Arabia. *Iosephus, libro tertio*. The corne of the childer of Israel faylunge after the xxx<sup>ti</sup> day of the goenge furthe of theyme from Egipte, God sende to them certeyne bryddes, angelles foode, and water from the ston of Oreb.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *an sixe, a. β.*<sup>2</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>3</sup> *hy (i.e. they) bar, γ.*, which is better.<sup>4</sup> *drenched, a., Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *the, a., Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *dyled, a.*<sup>7</sup> *vermyloun, a.*<sup>8</sup> Added from Cx.; but absent from MS., *a. β. γ.*<sup>9</sup> *Johannes, libro tercio, Cx.* The true reference is to Joseph. *Ant. Jud. iii. 1.*<sup>10</sup> *they faylled corne, Cx.*<sup>11</sup> *and] om. a.*

Oreb. Adhuc autem sic<sup>1</sup> rigatur locus ille imbribus, sicut tunc per Moysen Deus ministravit.<sup>2</sup> Post tres menses egressionis eorum<sup>3</sup> ascendit Moyses in montem,<sup>4</sup> ubi jejunando quadraginta diebus et quadraginta noctibus legem accepit,<sup>5</sup> et tabernaculum secundum quod sibi ostensum fuerat<sup>6</sup> in monte<sup>7</sup> septem mensibus construxit. Et sic<sup>8</sup> secundo anno egressionis, prima die mensis Aprilis, erectum est tabernaculum. *Ranulphus.*<sup>9</sup> Ab hoc<sup>10</sup> loco usque ad ædificationem templi<sup>11</sup> numerantur anni quadringenti octoginta. Sub hoc etiam tempore secundum quosdam<sup>12</sup> Io profecta est ab Argivis<sup>13</sup> usque<sup>14</sup> Ægyptum, ubi et<sup>15</sup> Isis appellata est; quæ et nupsit Telegono<sup>16</sup> et Epaphum genuit.<sup>17</sup> *Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo sextodecimo.* Post secundum annum egressionis missis duodecim exploratoribus ad terram promissionis et reversis ob murmur populi et desperationem, prohibiti sunt filii Israel ulterius procedere. Unde et<sup>18</sup> reversi ad solitudinem, per quadraginta annos<sup>19</sup> afflicti; ex quibus nullus ingressus est<sup>20</sup> terram promissionis, exceptis Caleph et Josue. Hoc<sup>21</sup>

Io vel Isis  
Ægyptum  
venit.

<sup>1</sup> sic] om. C. (not D.); si, A.

<sup>2</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> eorum] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Synay, ins. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> accepit] So A.B.D.; suscepit, E.

<sup>6</sup> fuerat] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> secundum . . . monte] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> Et sic] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> Dionysius, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> isto, B.

<sup>11</sup> templi] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> Argivorum, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> Arivis, B.

<sup>14</sup> ab . . . usque] ad, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> ibi quoque, B.

<sup>16</sup> Thelegoni, MSS.

<sup>17</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>18</sup> et] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> jugiter, ins. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> ad, ins. B.

<sup>21</sup> Hoc] om. C.D. (having *Dionysius* in margin).

þe stone in Oreb. **¶** It þat place is i-watered wip reyn, as God TREVISA.  
 ʒaf water þat tyme by Moyses hond. [Pre monthes]<sup>1</sup> after  
 þat<sup>2</sup> Israel went out of Egipt, Moyses wente vp in to the  
 hille, and fasted fourty dayes and fourty nyztes, and fenge þe  
 lawe ; and seuen monþes he made þe tabernacle [by ensample  
 þat was i-schewed hym on þe hille ; and so þe tabernacle]<sup>3</sup> was  
 arered þe firste day of Auerel in þe secounde ʒere of here out  
 goynge of Egipt. From þis tyme to þe buldynge of the temple in  
 Ierusalem is acounted foure hondred ʒere and foure skore. Also  
 þis tyme, as some men telleþ, Io that womman wente from þe  
 Argiues in to Egipt, and þere sche was i-cleped Isis,<sup>4</sup> and  
 was i-wedded to Telegon,<sup>5</sup> and hadde a childe þat heet  
 Epaphus. *Petrus, libro 4º, [capitulo 16º.]*<sup>6</sup> After þe sec-  
 ounde ʒere of þe out goynge of Egipte twelue spyes were  
 i-sente to the londe of byheste, and come aʒen ; and for  
 grucchyng of þe peple and despeyre and wanhope þe chil-  
 dren of Israel were forbode to goo forþere. Þefore þey  
 tornede aʒen in to wildernesse, and were þere i-punished  
 fourty ʒere ; and noon of hem entrede into þe lond of byheste  
 outake Caleph and Iosue.

Whiche place is habundaunte with water vn to this tyme, MS. HARL.  
 as God ministrede hit in that tyme by Moyses. Whiche 2261.  
 Moyses ascendede in to the mownte of Syna, after iij.  
 monethes of the egression of the peple of Israel from  
 Egipte, fastenge by xl<sup>ti</sup> daies afore and xl<sup>ti</sup> nyzhtes, toke  
 a lawe of God, settenge his tabernacle þere by vij. monethes,  
 as he was commaundede to do ; and so the tabernacle was  
 erecte in the secounde yere of the goenge furthe of the  
 peple of Israel from Egipte, in the firste day of Aprile.  
 From whiche tyme ccc.lxxx. yere be annumerate other  
 nowmbrede vn to the edificacion of the temple. In whiche  
 tyme, after somme men, Io goenge furthe from the Argyues  
 vn to Egipte, callede there Isis, and mariede to Theolo-  
 genes,<sup>7</sup> gate Epaphus. *Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo decimo*  
*sexto.* After the secoude yere of þe egression of the peple  
 of Israel from Egipte, xij. meassengers sende to the londe  
 of promission, and returnede ageyne ; for þe murmur and  
 desperation off the peple, the childer of Israel hade in com-  
 maundemente that thei scholde returne, whiche returnenge  
 were afflicte in deserte by xl<sup>ti</sup> yere, of whom eny entrede  
 not in to the londe of promission, Iosue and Caleph ex-

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a. β. γ.* and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> þat tyme, MS. (only).

<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So *a.* ; *Iesus*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Thelegon*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Here and below the proper names, which are considerably corrupt, have been left unaltered.

Varia de  
Græcia.

sexto anno egressionis templum Apollinis Delphici ab Aristone<sup>1</sup> ædificatur. Quo etiam anno Atheniensium secundus Cranaus cœpit regnare, et regnavit novem annis; ex cujus filia Athis<sup>2</sup> Attica terra<sup>3</sup> nuncupatur.<sup>4</sup> *Ranulphus*. Vide supra libro primo,<sup>5</sup> capitulo Græcia, scilicet<sup>6</sup> Helladia. Quo in tempore<sup>7</sup> Hebræi ceperunt<sup>8</sup> literas, et Græcia vites.<sup>9</sup> <sup>10</sup>Lacedæmonia quoque<sup>11</sup> a Lacedæmone filio Semelis condita est. Et Atheniensium quartus Erichthonius regnavit quinquaginta annis. Et Argivorum nonus Sthenelus. Et Sicyoniorum Erichthonius. Argivorum rex Arcas Arcadiam a nomine suo<sup>12</sup> nominavit, quæ prius Sicyonia dicebatur.<sup>13</sup> Ægyptus, quæ prius<sup>14</sup> Aerea<sup>15</sup> dicebatur, ab Ægypto<sup>16</sup> tunc regnante,<sup>17</sup> Ægyptus dicta est.<sup>18</sup> Argivorum decimus Danaus regnavit quinquaginta annis. *Orosius, libro primo*. Danaus et Ægyptus<sup>19</sup> fratres fuerunt; Danaus autem per quinquaginta filias suas quinquaginta filios Ægypti una nocte interfecit, uno<sup>20</sup> filio solummodo relicto, qui post illum regnaret.<sup>21</sup> Inde ipse Danaus tot malorum fabricator Argos conscendit; ubi per fraudem expulso Sthenelo, qui eum exulem et inopem

Anno Moysi 86.  
Anno Abr. 510.

Anno Moysi 93.  
Anno Abr. 522.  
Anno Moysi 102.  
Anno Abr. 526.

Danaus et  
Ægyptus.

Anno Moysi 111.  
Anno Abr. 535.

<sup>1</sup> So A.; *Eristone*, D.E. (and versions). There is, however, no doubt that *Erysiethone* is the true reading. See Eusebius *Chron.* (*Vers. Armen.*), vol. ii. p. 61. (*Vers.* 1818.)

<sup>2</sup> *nomine terra*, ins. C.D. Higden should have written *Atthide*.

<sup>3</sup> *terra*] om. E.

<sup>4</sup> *nominatur*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Vide . . . primo*] Quære supra de provinciis, C.D.—See vol. i. p. 190.

<sup>6</sup> *scilicet*] om. E.; *capitulo* 22, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Tempore ducatus Moysi*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> So A.B.; *ceperunt*, C.D.E.; *habere*, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *vitem*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *Dionisius*, ins. C.D. (in marg.)

<sup>11</sup> *quoque*] om. B.C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *a nomine suo*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *quæ . . . dicebatur*] so B.; cm. C.D.; *dicitur*, E.

<sup>14</sup> *prius*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *Aera*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *rege*, ins. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *in ea*, ins. B.

<sup>18</sup> *vocabatur*, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *Egistus*, A.B.; and so E. below.

<sup>20</sup> *unico*, B.

<sup>21</sup> *regnavit*, B.

Dis sixe zere after þe out goynge of Egipt Eriston bulde þe temple of Appolyn Delphicus. Also þat zere Cranaus þe secounde of Athenes bygan to reigne, and reigned nyne zere. His douzter heet A[t]this; of hir Attica<sup>1</sup> þat lond hap þat name. Looke to fore in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia, scilicet El[l]adia. Þat tyme þe Hebrewes feng lettres, and Grecia vynes. Also Lacedemon Semelis sone bulde Lacedemonia þat citee, and þe ferþe Ericthonius of Atthene reignede fifty zere olde, and þe<sup>2</sup> nynþe St[h]enelus of the Argyues and Eric[h]onius<sup>3</sup> of Sciciones. Arcas<sup>4</sup> kyng of þe Argyues, zaf his name to þat lond Arcadia,<sup>4</sup> and cleped it so after his owne name; but þat lond Arcadia heet raper Scicionia. Egipt heet rather Aerea, and hadde þat name Egipt of oon Egiptus þat reigned þerynne. Danaus þe tenþe of Argyues reigned fifty zere. *Orosius, libro primo.* Danaus and Egiptus<sup>5</sup> were tweye breþeren; and Danaus by his fifty douzters slowz Egiptes fifty sones in oon nyzht, outake oon þat schulde reigne after hym. Danaus doere of meny euel dedes wente vp to þe Argyues, and by gile putte out St[h]enelus, þat hadde ofte i-saued hym whiles he was nedý

TREVISA.

---

cepte. The temple of Apollo Delphicus was edifiede of MS. HARL. Heristones in the vj<sup>th</sup> yere of the egression of the childer of Israel. In whiche yere also Cranaus, the secounde kyng of men of Athenes, began to reigne, and reigned ix. yere. Of Athis, the dozhter of whom, that londe callede Athica was namede, as hit is schewede afore, libro j., capitulo 22<sup>o</sup>., Elladia. In whiche tyme men of Hebrewes receyvede letters, and men of Grece vynes. Lacedemonia was edifiede oones of Lacedemon. Eructonius, the iiij<sup>th</sup> kyng of men of Athenes, reignede l<sup>ti</sup> yere. Archas, kyng of Argyues, namede Archadia after his name, whiche was callede afore Scicionia. Egiptus toke the name of hit of a man callede Egiptus reignenge in hit, for hit was callede afore Aeria. Danaus, the x<sup>th</sup> kyng of Argyues, reignede l<sup>ti</sup> yere. *Orosius, libro primo; et Petrus, li. 2, 6<sup>o</sup> capitulo.* Danaus and Egistus were brether, but Danaus, by his l<sup>ti</sup> dozhters, did slee in oon nyzhte l<sup>ti</sup> sonnes of Egistus, oon childe lefte oonly, whiche scholde reigne after hym; wherefore Danaus, the causer of that mischefe, wente to the Argyues, expellede S[th]enelus by fraude, whiche norischede

2261.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Atthica*, MSS.<sup>2</sup> *in þe MS.* (not *a.*): Cx. has some omissions here.<sup>3</sup> So *a.*; *Erictorius*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *Archas* and *Archadia*, MSS.<sup>5</sup> Here and below MSS. and Cx. have *Egistus*.

foverat, ipse quoque regnavit.<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>Sub ea tempestate egressus creditur Liber pater, qui et Dionysus Bacchus; qui Argos condidit, et usum vineæ Græcis dedit.

*Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18*.<sup>3</sup> His temporibus Mercurius. major ille Mercurius<sup>4</sup> fuisse perhibetur<sup>5</sup> nepos Atlantis, ex Maia filia Atlantis progenitus,<sup>6</sup> multarum artium peritus; unde et<sup>7</sup> deificatus est. Posterior illo<sup>8</sup> quodammodo fuit Hercules ille major,<sup>9</sup> qui cognominatus est Dasaneus secundum<sup>10</sup> Marianum, libro primo, capitulo xlv.<sup>11</sup> Iste etiam est Hercules ille (*Ranulphus*)<sup>12</sup> qui<sup>13</sup> secundum Ovidium occidit Busirim<sup>14</sup> tyrannum. *Josephus*. Iste Hercules desponsavit Etheam,<sup>15</sup> filiam Afer, filii Madian; qua de<sup>16</sup> causa profectus est cum eo ad subjugandum Libyam, quæ ex Afer conquestore dicta est Africa.<sup>17</sup> Quadragesimo anno egressionis<sup>18</sup> Israel de Ægypto<sup>19</sup> Aaron centum viginti trium annorum existens obiit in Oreb;<sup>20</sup> eodemque anno Moyses, cum quadraginta annis in Ægypto, quadraginta annis in Madian, et quadraginta annis, triginta diebus minus, in eremo<sup>21</sup> præfuisset, centesimo vicesimo ætatis suæ anno<sup>22</sup> obiit in monte Abarim contra Jherico. Sepultus<sup>23</sup> est a Domino in valle Moab.

Anno Moysi 120.  
Anno Abr. 514.

<sup>1</sup> *Orosius* . . . *regnavit*] om. C.D.; *regnavit*, om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *Petrus*, ins. C.D. (in margin; varying also the sentence).

<sup>3</sup> *Alfridus xvij*º., A.E. The reference is to Aug. *de Civ.* xviii. 8.

<sup>4</sup> *qui*, ins. B.

<sup>5</sup> *prohibetur*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *ex* . . . *progenitus*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *eo*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Ꝛ*, ins. B.

<sup>10</sup> *sicut dicit*, B.

<sup>11</sup> 45] added from B.

<sup>12</sup> *Ꝛ*] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> *qui* . . . *qui*] om. A.C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Busirim*, MSS.

<sup>15</sup> *Ethiam*, A.; *Ethinam*, B.; *Otheam*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *de*] om. A.

<sup>17</sup> Sentence altered verbally and transposed in C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *filiorum*, ins. B.

<sup>19</sup> *Israel de Ægypto*] om. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *Oreb*] in Arabia in monte Asini (for Sinai?; D. has Asi.) qui nunc Oreb dicitur, C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *populo*, ins. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *anno*] om. A.

<sup>23</sup> *sepultusque*, A.B.D. In this chapter several slight errors of MSS. in the spelling of proper names have been tacitly corrected.



and outlawe, and reigned hym self. Me trowep þat in þat tempest went out þat man þat heet Liber pater and heet Dionysus<sup>1</sup> [Bacchus]<sup>2</sup> also; he made vp Argiues, and ʒaf þe Grees vse of vynes. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei*. Me seiþ þat þe grete Mercurius was in þat tyme; þis Mercurius was Maia Atlas<sup>3</sup> is douʒter sone. Þis Mercurius was connyng in meny craftes, and þere he was i-made among hem as it were a god. But þe grete Hercules<sup>4</sup> was somdel lattre þan he. R. Þis grete Hercules hadde a surname Dasaneus, so seiþ Marianus, libro primo, capitulo fyue hondred fourty and fyue. Also þis is þat Hercules þat slowh Busiris<sup>5</sup> þe tyraunt, so seiþ Ouyde. *Iosephus*. Þis Hercules weddede Ethea Affer<sup>6</sup> his douʒter. Affer was Madian his sone. Þerfore Hercules wente wip Affer to wynne Libya, and þat lond was þanne i-cleped Affrica by Affer þe conquerour his name. Þe fourty ʒere after þe out goynge of Egipt Aaron an hondred ʒere olde and þre and twenty deyde in Oreb. Also þe same ʒere Moyses when he hadde i-lyued fourty ʒere in Madian, and fourty ʒere saue pritty dayes in desert, sex score ʒere old almost, he deide in þe hil Mont Abarim, aʒenst Ierico þat town, and was i-buried of oure Lord in þe valey of Moab.

TREVISA.

Danaus when he was in exile and pouerte, that he myʒhte reigne þer. Dionysus Bacchus is trawede to haue bene that tyme, whiche made feldes, and began the vse of vynes, amonge men of Grece. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo*. The nowble Mercury is seide to haue bene in this tyme son to the doʒter of Atlas, geten of Maia, wise in mony artes, wherefore he was callede a godde after his dethe. After whom grete Hercules was. R. Whiche was otherwise callede Dasaneus, as Marianus rehersethe, libro j<sup>o</sup>, capitulo cxlv<sup>to</sup>. Also that is Hercules, whiche did slee Busiris<sup>5</sup> the tyraunte, as Ouidius the poete dothe rehearse. *Iosephus*. This Hercules did mary Stea, the doʒter of Affer, son of Madian; wherefore he wente furthe with Affer to make Libya subiecte to hym, whiche was callede after Affrica, after the name of Affer. Aaron hauenge a cxxiiij<sup>ti</sup> [yere] in age, in the xli<sup>ti</sup> yere of the egression of the childer of Israel from Egipte, diede in Oreb; and Moises the same yere, in the c. and xx<sup>ti</sup> yere of his age, diede in Abarim, ageynes Iherico, and was beriede of oure Lorde in the vale of Moab.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Dyonisius*, MSS.<sup>2</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.* (*Bac-*  
*hus*).<sup>3</sup> *Athlas a.*; *Athalas*, MS.<sup>4</sup> Text as in *a.* and *Cx.*; MS.  
has words repeated from below.<sup>5</sup> *Busirus*, MSS. and *Cx.*<sup>6</sup> So *β. γ.*, *Cx.*; *after*, MS., *a.*

## CAP. XV.

*De gestis et morte Josue; varia de Jove et Saturno aliisque.*<sup>1</sup>

Josue populum in Chanaan introducit.

*Isidorus, Etym., libro quinto.* Josue, minister Moysi, per viginti sex annos rexit populum secundum Josephum<sup>2</sup>; Scriptura tamen de annis tacet; qui<sup>3</sup> primo anno ducatus sui, patefacto Jordane, populum ad terram promissionis introduxit, Phase, id est Pascha, immolavit, circumcisionem per quadraginta annos intermissam innovavit; ac comedentibus illis de fructu<sup>4</sup> terræ illius<sup>5</sup> manna, quod per quadraginta annos duraverat, tunc defecit. *Petrus.* Secundum Euse-

De Jubileo. bium in chronica sua annus ille erat Jubileus, et erat Anno Abr. 545. Anno Josue 1. quinquagesimus primus<sup>6</sup> inter Jubileos annos; ac si<sup>7</sup> fluxissent ab initio mundi usque ad tunc<sup>8</sup> duo milia quingenti quinquaginta anni, singulis Jubileis<sup>9</sup> per annos quinquagenos computatis; sed secundum LXX. interpretes<sup>10</sup> longe plures anni fluxerant.<sup>11</sup> Beda vero sequens Hebraicam veritatem probat a<sup>12</sup> prædicta summa annorum septem annos deficere.<sup>13</sup>

Erichthonius.

Anno primo Josue Erichthonius,<sup>11</sup> quartus<sup>15</sup> rex Athe-

<sup>1</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>2</sup> Most MSS. of Josephus give 25 years. See *Ant. Jud.*, v. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *Hic*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *fructibus*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *illius*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *annus*, ins. B.

<sup>7</sup> *annos; ac si*] quasi, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *usque ad tunc*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *annis*, ins. B.

<sup>10</sup> *interpretes*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *fluxerunt*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *de*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *defuisse*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Erichtonius*, MSS.

<sup>15</sup> *quartus*] om. C.D.

*Capitulum quintumdecimum. Iosue.*

TREVISA.

IOSUE, Moyses seruauant, rulede þe peple sixe and twenty 3ere, so seiþ Iosephus. Neuerþeles þe Scripture rekenep not þe 3eres. Iosue,<sup>1</sup> þe firste 3ere of his ledynges<sup>2</sup> ladde þe peple into þe londe of byheste; and þe ryuer flom<sup>3</sup> Iordan oponede, and lete hem passe, and Iosue offrede þe Ester offrynge, and renewede þe circumsicioun þat was forbode fourty 3ere in wyldernesse. And whanne þey ete of fruyt of þat londe, þanne manna faillede þat hadde i-dured fourty wynter. *Petrus.* Eusebius in his book<sup>4</sup> seiþ þat<sup>5</sup> 3ere was Iubileus, þe 3ere of grace, and was þat oon and fyfty 3ere of grace, as þey 3 poo were apassed from þe bygynnyng of þe world two þowsand þere fyue hondred and fifty, þat is oon and fifty [sipes fifty]<sup>6</sup> 3ere. Ðan forto take of eueriche fifty 3ere oon 3ere of grace it comeþ to oon and fifty 3eres of grace; but by þe Seenty þere were apassed meny mo 3eres. And Beda folweþ þe Hebrewes, and preueþ<sup>7</sup> þat þere lakkede seuene 3ere of two þowsand fyue hondred and fifty. Þe firste 3ere of Iosue Erichthonius,<sup>8</sup> þe fourþe kyng of Atthene, was þe firste þat

*Capitulum quintumdecimum.*

IOSUE, the minister of Moyses, rewlede the peple of Israel, MS. HARL. 2261. after Iosephus, xxvj<sup>th</sup> yere; neuertheles Scripture expressethe not the yeres. Whiche ledenge the peple þro the water of Iordan, in the firste yere of his gouernayle, vn to the londe y-promysede, offrede Ester, and renewede circumcision, refusede by xl<sup>th</sup> yere; and then the noryschenge that was 3iffen of God to theyme failede, after xl<sup>th</sup> yere. *Petrus.* That yere was the yere of iubile, after Eusebius in his cronicle, and hit was the firste l<sup>th</sup> yere amonge other yeres, as if ij. m<sup>l</sup> yere v<sup>c</sup>. and l<sup>th</sup> hade bene from the begynnege of the worlde, alle the yeres of the iubile acomptede by l<sup>th</sup> yere: but after the lxx<sup>th</sup> interpretatores, there were mony moo yeres from the begynnenge of þe worlde vn to that tyme. Bede, folowenge the trawthe and the trewe acompte of men of Hebrewes, provethe vij. yere to faile from the nowmbre rehersed. Erichthonius<sup>9</sup> the iiij<sup>th</sup> kyng of men of Athenes, in the firste yere of Iosue,

<sup>1</sup> of Iosue, MS. (not Cx.)<sup>2</sup> ledynge, a., Cx.<sup>3</sup> flum, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> cronike, a., Cx.<sup>5</sup> that that, a., Cx.<sup>6</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>7</sup> proued, Cx.<sup>8</sup> Eructonius, MSS.<sup>9</sup> Erutonius, Harl. MS., twice.

niensis, primus in Græcia quadrigam junxisse creditur.<sup>1</sup> Erat tamen quadriga prius apud alias nationes. *Augustinus, libro xvij<sup>o</sup>*. Hic primus instituit ludos Apollini et Minervæ.<sup>2</sup> Eoque<sup>3</sup> tempore Busiris<sup>4</sup> tyrannus, rex Ægypti, tyrannidem exercuit in hospites suos. Nam diis suis homines immolavit, quem ferunt fuisse filium Neptuni ex Libya, filia Epaphi. <sup>5</sup> Josue<sup>6</sup> distribuit Anno Abr. 555.  
Anno Josue 10. genti Judææ terram Palæstinorum. Eo tempore<sup>7</sup> Phœnix Anno Abr. 563.  
Anno Josue 18. et Cadmus fratres de Thebis Ægyptiorum Syriam profecti, apud Tyrum et Sidonem regnaverunt.<sup>8</sup> Jupiter Anno Abr. 567.  
Anno Josue 22. rex Cretæ rapuit Europam, filiam Agenoris regis Libyæ, quam postmodum Asterius<sup>9</sup> rex Cretensium uxorem sibi fecit.<sup>10</sup> *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo*. Jupiter ex Europa quam rapuit genuit Radamanthum, Sarpedon,<sup>11</sup> Minois, qui post eum regnavit in Creta. *Ranulphus*. Veruntamen Marianus, libro primo, capitulo dex<sup>o</sup>, dicit quod Asterius<sup>12</sup> genuit ex Europa hos tres filios.<sup>13</sup> *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo*. Agenor, rex Libyæ, genuit tres filios, Cilicem,<sup>14</sup> Phœnicem et Cadmum, et unam<sup>15</sup> filiam nomine Europam; quam cum Jupiter<sup>16</sup> rapuisset, navi suæ,<sup>17</sup> quæ taurum

<sup>1</sup> fertur, B.C.D.

<sup>2</sup> primusque currum junxisse fertur, ins. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> Eo quoque, B.

<sup>4</sup> Busirus, MSS. and versions.

<sup>5</sup> Dionysius (marg.). Anno decimo, ins. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> Joseph, E.

<sup>7</sup> Eoque tempore, A.; Eo quoque tempore, B.; Anno 18<sup>o</sup> C.D.

<sup>8</sup> Anno 22 Josuæ, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> Astinus, B.; Astrius, E.D.

<sup>10</sup> duxit in uxorem, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> et, ins. C.D. Higden's inflections have been left unchanged.

<sup>12</sup> Astinus, B.

<sup>13</sup> *Ranulphus . . . filios*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> Silicem, MSS.

<sup>15</sup> unamque, B.

<sup>16</sup> rex Cretæ, ins. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> suæ] om. B.

brouz̄te charioth<sup>1</sup> in to Grees, as me seiþ. Nopeles to fore TREVISA.  
 honde were chariottes in oper londes. *Augustinus, libro 18<sup>o</sup>.* —  
 Þis ordeyned first playes to Appolyn, and to Minerua. Also  
 pat tyme Busiris þe tyraunt, kyng of Egipt, he kydde<sup>2</sup> his  
 tyrauntyse<sup>3</sup> on his gestes; for he slowh men, and offred hem  
 to goddes. Me seiþ pat he was Neptunus his sone i-gete on  
 Libya, Epaphus his douzter. Iosue departed þe lond of  
 Palestines to þe Iewes. Also pat tyme Fenix and Cadmus,<sup>4</sup>  
 tweyne breperen of Thebe, pat is in Egipt, wente into Syria,<sup>5</sup>  
 and reigned at Tyrus and at Sidon, tweie citees pat so hatte.  
 Iupiter, kyng of Creta, rauesched Europa, þe douzter of  
 Agenor,<sup>6</sup> kyng of Libya. Afterward Asterius, kyng of Creta,  
 wedded<sup>7</sup> Europa to his<sup>8</sup> wyf. *Augustinus, libro 18<sup>o</sup>.* Iupiter  
 on Europa pat he rausched he gat Radamanthus, Sarpedon,  
 and Minos,<sup>9</sup> pat reigned after hym in Creta. Nopeles, Marianus,  
*libro primo, capitulo 610,<sup>10</sup>* seiþ pat Asterius on Europa gat  
 pese þre sones. *Isidorus, libro 14<sup>o</sup>.* Agenor, kyng of Libya,  
 gat þre sones, Silix,<sup>11</sup> Phenix, Cadmus, and oon douzter pat heet  
 Europa. Whan Iupiter hadde i-rausched hire, he dede hire in

ordeinede firste a carte with iiij. wheles in Greece; neuerthe- MS. HARL.  
 lesse thei were afore in other places. *Augustinus, libro 2261.*  
*decimo octavo.* The seide Erichthonius ordeynede plaies  
 to Apollo and to Minerua. In whiche tyme Busiris, the  
 tyraunte and kynge of Egipte, exercisede cruellenesse, for  
 he offrede men to his goddes, whom men say to haue  
 bene the son of Neptunus of Libya the dozter of Epaphus.  
 Iosue distribute to the peple of Iewes the londe of Pales-  
 tines. In whiche tyme Fenix and Cadmus brether, goenge  
 from Egipte to Syria, reignede at Tyrus and Sidon. Iu-  
 piter kynge of Creta toke a weye Europa the dozter of  
 Agenor kynge of Libya, whom Asterius kynge of men of  
 Creta did wedde. Iupiter gate of Europa, whom he toke  
 aweye, Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos,<sup>9</sup> whiche reignede  
 after hym in Creta. R. Neuertheles Marianus rehersethe,  
*libro i<sup>o</sup>. capitule vj<sup>co</sup> x<sup>o</sup>,* that Asterius gate those iiij. childer  
 of Europa. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Agenor kynge  
 of Libya gate thre sonnes, Cilix,<sup>12</sup> Fenix and Cadmus, and  
 oon dozter, Europa by name. But when Iupiter hade taken

<sup>1</sup> chariot, a. β. γ.; charyote, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So a.; hidde, MS.; used, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> tyrannye, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Candmus, MS. (not a.)

<sup>5</sup> Sciria, MS.

<sup>6</sup> Agenore, MS.

<sup>7</sup> wedde, a.

<sup>8</sup> his] om. a., Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Minois, MS.; Minoys, Harl. MS.

<sup>10</sup> 61, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> So MSS. for Cilix.

<sup>12</sup> Silix, Harl. MS.

Cilix,  
Phœnix et  
Cadmus  
Ciliciam,  
Phœniciam  
et Bœotiam  
condunt.

Varia de  
Jove et  
Saturno.

habebat depictum eam imposuit. Qua de causa<sup>1</sup> fingunt poetæ Jovem in taurum<sup>2</sup> fuisse<sup>3</sup> transmutatum. Præcepit itaque<sup>4</sup> Agenor tribus filiis suis sororem suam sic raptam quærere, sub interminatione redeundi nisi eam reducerent. Sed cum eam non invenissent,<sup>5</sup> patris iram formidantes, Cilix in loco resedit<sup>6</sup> quem a suo nomine Ciliciam<sup>7</sup> nominavit. Phœnix quoque apud Phœniciam, Cadmus vero apud Græciam exilium elegit, ubi sequens vestigium bovis conspectæ<sup>8</sup> sedem posuit, et Bœotiam<sup>9</sup> nominavit; ubi et postmodum Thebas construxit.<sup>10</sup> *Ranulphus*. De quo vide supra libro primo, capitulo Græcia.<sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup> *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo.*<sup>13</sup> Eo tempore apud Cretam insulam<sup>14</sup> regnavit Jupiter, patre suo Saturno expulso ad Italiam. *Henricus*. Hic cum esset scelestissimus et bellicosissimus<sup>15</sup> Græciam conquisivit,<sup>16</sup> ubi post mortem a Græcis semper mendacissimis dominus<sup>17</sup> cœli putatus est, et Deus deorum ob magnitudinem potentiæ nominatus.<sup>18</sup> Cretenses vero, apud quos sepultus est, quando de sepultura ejus loquuntur<sup>19</sup> a Græcis dicuntur<sup>20</sup> mendaces.<sup>21</sup> *Alexander*

<sup>1</sup> *Quamobrem*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *habebat . . . taurum*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *fuisse*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Recessitque*, B. ; *igitur*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *fili*, ins. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *recedit*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Ciliciam*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *conspecti*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Boetiam*, MSS.

<sup>10</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *De . . . Græcia*] Quære supra de provinciis, capitulo Boetia, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> C.D. here introduce the following passage:—“*Petrus*. Eoque tempore Danaus decimus Argivorum

“ per quinquaginta filias suas quin-  
“ quaginta filios Egisti fratris sui  
“ interfecit, uno solummodo super-  
“ stite relicto, qui post eum regna-  
“ vit.”

<sup>13</sup> B. omits reference.

<sup>14</sup> *Asie*, ins. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *et bellicosissimus*] om. B.

<sup>16</sup> *acquisivit*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Deus*, A.B.

<sup>18</sup> *nominatus*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *loquitur*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *dicunt*, E.

<sup>21</sup> *apud Græcos mendaces putantur*, C.D.

his schippe pat was i-peynt wip a bole; and perfore poetes feyneþ pat Iupiter was i-torned in to a boole. Agenor heet<sup>1</sup> his pre sones pat they schulde goo and seche her suster pat was so i-rauissed and i-lad away, and forbede hem forto come aʒen, but ʒif þey brouʒte hir suster wip hem. And for<sup>2</sup> þey myʒte not fynde hir, þey dredde þe wreppe of here<sup>3</sup> fader. Silex abood in a contray and cleped hit Scilicia<sup>4</sup> after his owne name, and Phenix<sup>5</sup> abood in Phenicia. But Cadmus chees his exilynge in Grecia. Þere he folowede þe fore<sup>6</sup> of an oxe, and come to a contray, and aboode þere, and cleped it Boecia, Oxelond. Afterward he bulde þere þe citee of Thebe. R. Loke more here in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia. *Augustinus, libro 18º.* Iupiter regned in þe ilond Creta, and his fader Saturnus was i-put out, and wente to Itali. *Henricus.* Þis was a wicked man and a greet werriour, and conquered Grees. Þere after his deth, þe Grees pat were ful of lesynges hilde hym god of heuene, and nempned hym god of goddes for his grete power and myʒt. Þe men of Creta, fore he was i-buried among hem, wolde speke of his buriels. Perfore þe Grees cleped hem lyʒers. *Alexander in Myth.*<sup>7</sup>

TREVISA.

here away, he putte her in a schippe in whom he hade a bulle depicte, wherefore poetes feyne Iupiter to be transmutate in to the similitude of a bulle. Wherefore Agenor commaundede his thre sonnes that thei scholde inquire for their sustyr, and not to comme to hym in eny wyse with owte here. Whiche childer not fyndenge here and dredenge the wrathe of their fader, Cilix returnede to Cilicia, namenge that cuntre after his awne name, and Fenix to Fenicea, and Cadmus to the londe of Grece, where he desirede exile; whiche folowenge the stappes of an oxe made a place, namenge hit Boetia, where he made Thebas afterwarde. R. Beholde more of this mater afore, libro jº, capitulo 22º, Boetia. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* Iupiter reigned that tyme in the yle called Creta, Saturnus his fader expulsede to Ytaly. *Henricus.* Whiche beenge wyckede and bellicose gate the londe of Grece by conqueste; wherefore he was callede of men of Grece, that he and were the greteste lyers, a god, after his death, and namede as godde of alle goddes for the magnitude of his power. *Alexander in Mythologia.* The trewe story hathe

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> bad, Cx.<sup>2</sup> by cause, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; the, MS.<sup>4</sup> So a. and Cx. (for Cilicia); Scilicia, MS.<sup>5</sup> So a.; Fenix, MS.; and Fenicea below.<sup>6</sup> steppe, Cx.<sup>7</sup> So Cx. (Mith.); Math., a.; Mattheum, MS.

*in Mythologia.* Vera historia habet Saturnum patrem et Jovem filium regna contigua in Creta habuisse; inter quos bello pro<sup>1</sup> finibus agrorum exorto<sup>2</sup> prævaluit<sup>3</sup> Jupiter; Saturnusque fugatus Italiam petiit, ubi<sup>4</sup> a Jano<sup>5</sup> regnante ob usum vinearum, falcis, et agriculturæ in partem imperii admissus est, dictusque<sup>6</sup> Saturnus a saturitate, quam ibidem promovit.<sup>7</sup> *Eutropius.* Hic Saturnus<sup>8</sup> fugiens filium suum Jovem e Græcia,<sup>9</sup> in finibus Tusciæ<sup>10</sup> non procul a loco<sup>11</sup> Romæ latuit, in loco quem Saturniam a nomine suo, et postmodum Latium<sup>12</sup> a latebra sua denominavit, ubi rudes populos ædificare, colere, et<sup>13</sup> plantare docuit, cum tamen<sup>14</sup> antea glandibus sustentarentur et sub frondibus contextis habitarent. Hic etiam nummos æreos instituit, quamobrem a multitudine rustica<sup>15</sup> deus putatus est. *Ranulphus.* Et quamvis poetæ<sup>16</sup> contentant Jovem<sup>17</sup> castrasse Saturnum,<sup>18</sup> ne in sui supplantationem<sup>19</sup> filios generaret; tamen historia Romana dicit<sup>20</sup> Saturnum<sup>21</sup> genuisse Picum in Italia. *Alex-*

<sup>1</sup> *de*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *orto*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *cum prævaluisset*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *ubique*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *tunc*, ins. D.

<sup>6</sup> *est*, ins. B.D.

<sup>7</sup> Sentence slightly varied in C.D., which omit *quam . . . promovit*.

<sup>8</sup> *Saturnus*] quoque, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Creta*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Thussia*, A.; *Thusia*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *a loco*] ab urbe, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Lacia*, E.

<sup>13</sup> *et*] om. D.E.

<sup>14</sup> *tamen*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *rusticana*, C. (not D.)

<sup>16</sup> *aliqui* C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *eunuchasse sive*, ins. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *patrem suum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *alios*, ins. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *narrat*, C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *post fugam suam*, ins. C.D. (with slight transpositions).



Verrey storie seiþ þat Saturnus þe fader [and Iupiter]<sup>1</sup> þe sone TREVISA.  
 hadde tweie kyngdoms ioynnye to gidres in Creta, and for  
 endes and bondes of feeldes was a bataile bytwene hem; and  
 Iupiter hadde þe maistrie, and Saturnus was i-chased out and  
 wente into Ytaly; and þere Ianus þe kyng feng hym to a part  
 of þe empere, by cause þat he koupe skile of vynes<sup>2</sup> and<sup>3</sup>  
 in repynge and in telyenge of feeldes. And he was i-cleped  
 Saturnus of *saturitas*, þat is plente; for he made a<sup>4</sup> grete  
 plente in þat lond. *Eutropius*. Þis Saturnus fly<sup>5</sup> his sone  
 Iupiter out of Grees to þe endes of Tuscia nouzt fer from  
 þe place of Rome; he hidde hym þere in a place, and cleped  
 þe place Saturnia after his owne name; and afterward he  
 cleped hit Latium, þat is his hydyng place. Þere he tauzt  
 boistous men to bulde and to erylde and sowe, and to sette vynes.  
 For to forehonde þey lyued by acres,<sup>6</sup> and wonede vnder bowes  
 and twigges i-wounde<sup>7</sup> to gidres. Also þis ordeyned pannes  
 of bras; þerfore þe vplondische men hilde hym a god. R.  
 And þey poetes mene þat Iupiter gildede<sup>8</sup> Saturnus, for he  
 schulde not gete children to supplaute hym, neuerþeles  
 þe storie of Rome seiþ þat Saturnus gat Picus in Itali.

Saturnus to the fader, and Iupiter to the son, and to MS. HARL.  
 haue hade realmes contiguate in Creta; but at the laste a 2261.  
 batelle movede betwene theyme for certeyn londe, Iupiter  
 hade the victory, and Saturnus fleenge wente to Ytaly,  
 whiche was receyvede of Ianus, reignenge there in to  
 parte of thempyre, for the vse of vynes and off tillenge  
 of londe, that he brouzhte in to Ytaly, where he was  
 callede Saturnus, for the plentuousnesse that he brouzhte  
 in to that cuntre. *Eutropius*. This Saturnus fleenge Iu-  
 piter his son lay priuely in a parte of Tuscia not ferre  
 from Rome, whiche place he callede Saturnia, after his  
 name, where he tauzhte rude peple to edifye, to tulle felde,  
 and to sette vynes, whiche peple lyffede afore with akornes,  
 and inhabite places made with bowzes of trees. Also he  
 institute penyes of brasse, wherefore he was trowede to  
 haue bene a godde of the rusticalle peple. R. And thauzhe  
 poetes feyne Iupiter to haue geldede Saturnus leste that he  
 scholde gette eny childer to his supplantacion, neuerthe-  
 less the story of the Romanes seithe that Saturnus gate

<sup>1</sup> Added from a. β. γ., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So a. β. γ., Cx.; *wyne*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *and*] om. a.

<sup>4</sup> a] om. a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> So a.; *fleeþ*, MS.; *flemed*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *akres*, a.; *akornes*, β., Cx.;  
*akkarns*, γ.

<sup>7</sup> *i-weue*, a.; *wouen*, β., Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *geldede*, a.

*ander in Mythol.*<sup>1</sup> Hunc<sup>2</sup> Jovem post patris expulsionem pacem quoque<sup>3</sup> perturbantem alii potentes tyranni expellere sunt conati; quos quia bellicis machinis superavit, gigantes fingitur fulminasse. *Genesis.*<sup>4</sup>

Josue ante mortem suam fœdus renovat.

Josue, antequam<sup>5</sup> moreretur, effudit aquam in terram coram populo<sup>6</sup> in signum fœderis initi inter<sup>7</sup> Deum et populum;<sup>7</sup> quod<sup>8</sup> scilicet<sup>9</sup> populus<sup>10</sup> verum Deum

Anno Abr. 570.  
Anno Josue 45.

De fœderibus veterum.

elegisset. *Petrus.* Mos erat gentibus in signum fœderis contracti<sup>11</sup> sanguinem suillum effundere. *Hugutio, capitulo Fœdus.* Inde dicitur fœdus a fœda, porca scilicet<sup>12</sup> mactata, quasi diceretur: sic effundatur sanguis ejus,<sup>13</sup> qui violaverit hoc fœdus. *Petrus, capitulo sextodecimo.*<sup>14</sup> Sed Hebræi aquam fuderunt<sup>15</sup> in signum quod, sicut aqua effunditur totaliter absque vestigio sui relicto, ita violator fœderis pereat cum tota progenie sua. Solebant etiam veteres<sup>16</sup> aliqua durabilia erigere, utpote<sup>17</sup> lapides aut cumulos, ut diuturnitate sui initum fœdus posteris memorarent.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *in Mythol.*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Hinc*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *etiam*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> C.D. omit reference.

<sup>5</sup> *priusquam*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *coram populo*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *inter . . . populum*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *quia*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *scilicet*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *populus*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *initi*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *sic*, A.D.

<sup>13</sup> *illius*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *capitulo sextodecimo*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *effuderunt aquam*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *veteres*] om. D.

<sup>17</sup> *ut*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

*Alexander in Mythologia.* Opere myzty tyrauntis fondede to putte out þis Iupiter, þat<sup>1</sup> was ful cruel and desturbed þe pees, after þat his fader was i-put out, and ouercome þe geantes wip gynnes of werre. Me feyneþ þat he liʒtnede out geantes. *Petrus.* Iosue, or he deide,<sup>2</sup> helte<sup>3</sup> water on þe erþe to fore þe peple in tokene of þe couenante þat was i-made bytwene God and þe peple; [þat was, þat þe peple]<sup>4</sup> hadde i-chose þe soopfast God. *Petrus.* Mysbyleued men vsede to helde out<sup>5</sup> and schede out<sup>6</sup> þe blood of a sowe þat is i-slawe<sup>7</sup> in tokene of couenant i-made. *Hugutio, capitulo Fedus.* Fedus, þat is a couenant, is i-seide of *feda*,<sup>8</sup> a sowe þat is so<sup>9</sup> i-slawe, as it were to mene, þat is blood þat brekep þe couenant schulde in þat manere be i-sched. *Petrus.* But þe Hebrewes hilde out water in token þat as þe water is al i-schad and nouʒt i-left, so he þat brekep þe couenant schulde be ded, and al his kyn.<sup>10</sup> Also men in olde tyme vsede to arere signes and tokenes þat myʒte longe dure in mynde of couenant to<sup>11</sup> hem þat come afterward; and so somme arered<sup>12</sup> stones and hepes of stones in mynde of couenantes.

TREVISA.

Picus in Italy. *Alexander in Mythologia.* Other myzhty tyrrauntes trowblenge peace were abowte to expelle Iupiter, whom he ouercome, wherefore hit is feynede of poetes Iupiter to haue sleyn diuerse gigantes. *Petrus.* Iosue afore that he diede schedde water in to the erthe, in to a signe of luffe begunne betwene God and the peple, that the peple hade chosen a trewe Godde. But the gentiles vsede to caste downe the bloode of a sowe in to a signe of luffe. *Hugutio, capitulo Fedus.* Fedus is callede so of a fowle swyne sleyn per, as if hit scholde be seide, his bloode be schedde in lyke wyse that dothe violate and breke this bonde of luffe. *Petrus, capitulo decimo sexto.* But men of Hebrewes schedde water in to a signe, for like as water is schedde holly with owte eny signe or stappe apperenge afterwarde, soe in lyke wise the breker of that bonde scholde peresche with alle his progeny. Also olde men were wonte to clecte thynges durable in to the signe of luffe, as stonies and beryelles, that men succedenge myʒhte remembre the seide token of luffe.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> þat] þis Jupiter, a., Cx.<sup>2</sup> Some words repeated in a.<sup>3</sup> *lyeld*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> *out water*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>6</sup> *out*] om. a. β. γ.<sup>7</sup> *þat is i-slawe*] om. a. β. γ., Cx.<sup>8</sup> So a., Cx.; *pheda*, MS.<sup>9</sup> So a. β. γ.; *is i-slawe*, MS., Cx.<sup>10</sup> So a. and Cx. (MS. has repetitions from above).<sup>11</sup> *to*] of, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *arered and enhaunced*, Cx. Slight corrections of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly made in this chapter for both versions.

## CAP. XVI.

*De Chusan, rege Mesopotamiae, et Othoniel. De nati-  
vitate Apollinis et Bacchi. Varia de Cadmo et  
litteris Graecis.*<sup>1</sup>

Chusan.

Post mortem Josue filii Israel servierunt Chusan regi Mesopotamiae octo annis, qui tamen anni junguntur temporibus<sup>2</sup> Othoniel, fratris Caleph, secundum Hebraeos. *Petrus.* Nisi anni quietis et servitutis simul comprehenderentur sub diebus judicum, non staret veritas computationis in historia. *Augustinus, libro xvij<sup>o</sup>.* Circa istud<sup>3</sup> tempus Latona peperit Apollinem apud insulam Delos. *Ranulphus.*<sup>4</sup> Non autem<sup>5</sup> illum Apollinem Delphicum, qui diu ante extiterat, sed illum Apollinem qui cum Hercule posteriore<sup>6</sup> servivit Admeto<sup>7</sup> regi. Hanc Latonam dicunt esse Isidem.<sup>8</sup>

Apollo nascitur.

Othoniel.

Igitur Othoniel annumeratis octo annis servitutis praecedentis dux fuit super Hebraeos quadraginta annis.<sup>9</sup>

Anno Abr. 571.  
Anno Othoniel 1.

Bacchus nascitur.

Atheniensium rex quintus regnavit nomine<sup>10</sup> Neptunus. Cadmus regnavit Thebis, ex cujus filia Semele<sup>11</sup> natus est Dionysus Bacchus,<sup>12</sup> qui etiam<sup>13</sup> dicitur Liber Pater, cujus tempore Linus Thebaeus musicus claruit. Bithynia condita est a Phoenice, quae prius Marian-dyna<sup>14</sup> vocabatur.<sup>15</sup> *Isidorus, libro secundo et quinto.*<sup>16</sup>

Anno Abr. 581.  
Anno Othoniel 11.  
Anno Abr. 583.  
Anno Othoniel 13.Anno Abr. 591.  
Anno Othoniel 21.<sup>1</sup> No title in MSS.<sup>2</sup> *junguntur temporibus*] annis, B.<sup>3</sup> *idem*, C.D.<sup>4</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. A.C.D.<sup>5</sup> *autem*] om. C.D.; *tamen*, B.<sup>6</sup> *cum . . . . . posteriore*] Hercule posterior, C. (not D.)<sup>7</sup> *servierat Meoto*, B.<sup>8</sup> *Hanc . . . Isidem*] om. C.D.<sup>9</sup> Sentence varied in C.D.<sup>10</sup> *nomine*] om. A.B.C.D., placing *Neptunus* before *regnavit*.<sup>11</sup> *Semela*, MSS., and so below.<sup>12</sup> *Dionisius Bachus*, MSS., and so below; similarly the versions.<sup>13</sup> *Latine*, ins. B.<sup>14</sup> *Marandina*, B.<sup>15</sup> The whole sentence slightly varied in C.D.<sup>16</sup> In vol. i. p. 128, the same passage is quoted from "*Isido, us, libro "secundo, capitulo quinto,"*" but the reference is false. Cf lib. i. c. 3., but this does not contain all here quoted.

*Capitulum sextumdecimum. Othoniel.*

TREVISA.

AFTER Iosue his deth Israel seruede Chusan,<sup>1</sup> kyng of Mesopotamia, eiȝte ȝere. Neuerpeles pese eiȝte ȝere beep acounted wiȝ Othoniel his tyme, Caleph his broȝer, by þe Hebrewes; but þe ȝeres of reste and of þraldom were acounted to gidres vnder iuges of Israel þe sothnesse of acountes wolde not stonde in þe storie. [*Augustinus, libro 18º.*]<sup>2</sup> Aboute this tyme þat womman Latona baar Appolyn in þe ilond Delos.<sup>3</sup> R̄. But nouȝt þat oper Appolyn Delphicus, þat hadde i-be longe to forehonde, but þat Appolyn þat seruede þe kyng Admetus<sup>4</sup> wiȝ þe lattre Hercules. Me seiȝ þat þis Latona<sup>5</sup> was þe same womman [that heet]<sup>6</sup> Isis. Þanne Othoniel was ledere of Israel fourty ȝere forto rekene þe forseide eiȝte ȝere of þraldom. Neptunus regnede and was þe fifte kyng of Athene. Cadmus<sup>7</sup> regnede in þe citee Thebes; of his douȝter Semela was i-bore Denys Bacchus, þat heet also Liber Pater, þat is þe Fre Fader. In his tyme was Linus<sup>8</sup> of Thebe in Egipt, þe grete chauntour, in his floures. Fenix bulde Bithynia, þat heet somtyme Mariandyna.

*Capitulum sextumdecimum.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

The childer of Israel did seruyce to Chusan, kyng of Mesopotamia, viij. yere after the death of Iosue, whiche yeres be ioynede to the yeres<sup>10</sup> of Othoniel the brother of Caleph, after men of Hebrewes. *Petrus*. But if the yeres of the quietnes and seruitute be comprehended to geder vnder the daies of the iugges, the trawthe of computacion scholde not be in the storye. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo*. Latona childede Apollo abowte this tyme at the yle of Delos, whiche was not Apollo Delphicus, for he was longe afore, but this Apollo seruede kyng Admetus, with the later Hercules. The viij<sup>th</sup> yere of the seruitute of men of Israel annumerate, Othoniel was gouernoure of men of Hebrewes xli<sup>th</sup> yere. Neptunus the v<sup>th</sup> kyng of men of Athenes reignede. Cadmus did reigne in Thebis, of þe doȝter of whom, Semela by name, Dionysus Bacchus was geten, other Liber pater. In þe tyme of whom Thebeus the musicion was. Bithynia was made of Phenix, callede afore

<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Chusan*, MS.<sup>2</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>3</sup> So *Cx.*; *Dolos*, MS.<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Admetrius*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *Lathona*, MS., and so below.<sup>6</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>7</sup> So *a.*; *Cudynus*, MS., *Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *Lynus*, MS. Similar *slight* errors have been tacitly corrected in this chapter and the following.<sup>9</sup> *yereres*, MS.

Litteræ  
Græcæ.

Et sicut Cadmus litteras septemdecim Græcis tradidit,<sup>1</sup> ita Phoenix frater suus quasdam litteras vermiculatas tradidit Phœnicibus.<sup>2</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>3</sup> De quo vide supra libro primo, capitulo quintodecimo, scilicet Phœnicia.<sup>4</sup> *Isidorus, libro secundo*. Græcorum litteræ, quas Cadmus tradidit, et verba componunt et numeros efficiunt. *Ranulphus*.<sup>5</sup> In quoto enim<sup>6</sup> numero alphabeti a<sup>7</sup> prima usque<sup>8</sup> decimam littera ponitur, talem numerum apud Græcos designat;<sup>9</sup> quia prima littera Græca signat unum, secunda duo,<sup>10</sup> tertia tria, et sic deinceps usque ad decem; quia decima littera signat decem, sed undecima littera signat viginti, duodecima triginta, teritiadecima quadraginta; et ita deinceps usque ad centum, quod designatur<sup>11</sup> per nonamdecimam litteram. Inde vicesima littera designat<sup>12</sup> ducenta; vicesima prima trecenta; vicesima secunda quadringenta;<sup>13</sup> et sic deinceps.<sup>7</sup>

Varia de  
Ægypto et  
Græcia.

Usus ferri<sup>14</sup> apud Ægyptios repertus est.<sup>15</sup> Et<sup>16</sup> ea, Anno Abr. 595.  
quæ de Demetra<sup>17</sup> et Danae, matre<sup>18</sup> Persei, dicuntur, Anno Othoniel 25.  
contigerunt.<sup>19</sup> Civitas Corinthi condita est.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *tradidit*] primo dedit, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> Transposed in C.D., which add—  
“ unde et color ille Feniceus dictus  
“ est qui postea litera mutata puni-  
“ ceus dicitur. *Hugutio, capitulo*  
“ *Fenix*. Et quia Fenices fuerunt  
“ primi literarum inventores, adhuc  
“ literas capitales rubeo colore  
“ scribimus, ut sic representemus  
“ eos fuisse literarum repertores.”

<sup>3</sup> *Ran. . . Phœnicia*] om. C.

<sup>4</sup> *ubi Fenicia*, B. See vol. i. p. 128.

<sup>5</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.

<sup>6</sup> *enim*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *a . . . deinceps*] ponitur, littera Græca talem numerum significat,

C.D., omitting the rest of the extract.

<sup>8</sup> *ad*, ins. A.

<sup>9</sup> *designant*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *duo*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *denotatur*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *signat*, A.

<sup>13</sup> *vicesima secunda quadringenta*] om. A.

<sup>14</sup> *designat . . . ferri*] *deferri*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *reperta est*, B. ; *reperitur*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Et*] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> So Higden, for *Demetre*, who has also *Dane*.

<sup>18</sup> *de Metru Dianæ matre*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *factu fuerunt*, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *conditur secundum quosdam*, C.D.

*Isidorus, libro 2º, capitulo 5º.* And as Fenix ʒaf þe Fenices TREVISA.  
 some reed lettres. R. þerof loke more in þe firste book, —  
 capitulo quintodecimo,<sup>1</sup> in Fenicia. *Isidorus, libro 2º.* Þe  
 lettres of Grees þat Cadmus ʒaf hem speleþ wordes, and  
 stondeþ for nombres. [R.]<sup>2</sup> Þe lettres of Grees from þe firste to  
 þe tenþe as þey stondeþ in ordre [in þe A.B.C., so þey stondeþ]<sup>3</sup>  
 for nombre among þe Grees; for þe firste stondeþ for  
 oon; þe secounde for tweyne, [and]<sup>3</sup> þe þridde for þre, and so  
 forþ<sup>4</sup> anon to þe tenþe. But þe eleueþe lettre stondeþ for  
 twenty, þe twelfþe for þritty, þe þrittene<sup>5</sup> for fourty, and so  
 anon to an hondred. For an hondred stondeþ þe nyntenþe<sup>6</sup>  
 lettre; þanne þe twentype lettre stondeþ for two hondred;  
 þe oon and twenty for þre<sup>7</sup> hondred,<sup>8</sup> and so forþ. *Petrus.*  
 Craft and vse of iren was i-founde in Egipte. Þe dedes þat  
 me telleþ of Demetra<sup>9</sup> and of Dan, Persius his moder, byfel  
 þat tyme. And þe citee Corinthi was i-bulde þat tyme.

Mariandyna.<sup>10</sup> *Isidorus, libris 2º et quinto.* And lyke as MS. HARL.  
 Cadmus toke to men of Grece xvij. letters so in like 2261.  
 maner, Phenix, brother to hym, toke certeyne letters of a  
 redde coloure to the Pheniceanes. R. Attende to this pro-  
 cesse afore, capitulo 15º, Phenicia. *Isidorus, libro 2º.* The  
 letters of men of Grece, whom Cadmus toke to þeim, com-  
 pounde wordes and make nowmbres. R. And in what  
 nowmbre a letter is putte from the firste letter to the x<sup>the</sup>,  
 hit signifieth a like nowmbre amonge men of Grewe, for the  
 firste letter signifieth oon, the secounde tweyne, and so vn  
 to x., for the x<sup>the</sup> letter signifieth x. and the xj<sup>the</sup> letter  
 xx<sup>ti</sup>, the xij<sup>the</sup> xxx<sup>ti</sup>, the xiiij<sup>the</sup> letter xl<sup>ti</sup>, and so on to  
 a c., whiche is signifiede by the xix<sup>the</sup> letter. The xx<sup>ti</sup> letter  
 signifieth cc., xxj<sup>ti</sup> ccc., and so furthe. *Petrus.* The vse of  
 yrne was founde this tyme amonge men of Egipte, and  
 also those thinges happede whiche be seyde of Metria and  
 Dana,<sup>11</sup> the moder of Perseus. The cite of Corinthus was  
 made, whom thei say to be Isis.

<sup>1</sup> So Cx., rightly; 5, MS. Trevisa's version is evidently mutilated here.

<sup>2</sup> Reference added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *the fourth*, Cx.; badly.

<sup>5</sup> *þrittenþe*, *a.*

<sup>6</sup> So *a.*; *nyntþe*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> So Cx.; *four*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> Cx. adds: *the xvij. for four hundred.*

<sup>9</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Demetra*, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *Morienduna*, Harl. MS.

<sup>11</sup> So Harl. MS. for *Demeter and Danae.*





*Capitulum septimumdecimum. Aioth.*

TREVISA.

AYOTH was ledere of Israel foure score þere, forto acounte eiþetene þere in þe whiche Israel seruede Eglon þe fatte king of Moab; also forto rekene oon þere of Sangar, þe duke and ledere<sup>1</sup> þat slow sixe hondred men wip a plowh schare. Þis Aioth vsede eiper hond for his riþt hond, and was Ihera his sone; Ihera was Geminus<sup>2</sup> his sone. *Petrus.* Som telleþ þat Geminus was a vile persone of þe lynage of Beniamyn, and was ofte i-nempned in reprofte to al his ofspringe, for he was so fyle<sup>3</sup> and so vnworpy. Nopeles þe Hebrewes menep þat þis Geminus was Beniamyn, as þey he were<sup>4</sup> so i-nempned by chaungynge oper wipdrawing of somewhat of þe begynnynge of þe name. For þey we setteþ Geminum þe Hebrewes setteþ Iamyn, þat is a rynge þat longep to þe riþt side, and may be side<sup>5</sup> Geminus in<sup>6</sup> Latyn. Ritholomus<sup>7</sup> com yn a longe schippe to Eleusis, and delede pere whete; and Orcus, kyng of Molos and of Thracia, rauesched Proserpina; hire hound, þat heet Cerberus, swelowede vp a man, þat heet Piritoun, þat come with Theseus to rauysshe Proserpina; and þe same hound Cerberus wolde have i-ete Theseus also, but Hercules hadde i-come þe mene tyme and i-saued hym, and perfore he was i-fonge in to helle. Acheus

*Capitulum decimum septimum.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

Then xvij. yere annumerate in whom the peple of Israel ministrede to Eglon the fatte kynge of Moab, and also oon yere of Sangar the duke, which did sle vj<sup>c</sup>. men with the cultur of a plowe, Aioth reignede on the peple of Israel lxxx<sup>i</sup> yere. This Aioth, son of Ihera, the son of Geminus, vsede either honde as the ryþhte honde. *Petrus.* Somme men say Geminus to haue bene a vile person in the tribe of Beniamyn, callede so as by effresis; for þei putte Iamyn where we putte Geminus, whiche sowndethe as pertenge to the ryþhte parte, whiche may be called welle in Latyn Geminus. Tritholomus commenge to Eleusis in a longe schippe, and the kynge of Thracia, raueschede and toke away Proserpina, whose dogge callede Cerberus deuoured Pirotonus, which come with Theseus to the takenge aweye of Proserpina; whiche hade deuouered Theseus also, but that Hercules delyuereð hym, for whiche thyng he was receyvede of helle. Achaia was foundede of Acheus,

<sup>1</sup> þe ledere, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>2</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Gominus*, MS., which has *sometimes Gemynus* below.<sup>3</sup> vyle, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So a. β. γ.; and þey were, MS.<sup>5</sup> seid, a.<sup>6</sup> in] a, β. γ.<sup>7</sup> Here and elsewhere in this chapter the orthography of the versions has been left unaltered; to correct them in such cases is to re-write them. The MSS. of Trevisa agree.

et Atheniensium dux, Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater dicitur, secundum quosdam, nascitur ex Semele; et mysteria de Perseo ceperunt, qui occidit Gorgonem meretricem quæ ob nimiam pulchritudinem obstupescit<sup>1</sup> aspicientes in eam.<sup>2</sup> Sub<sup>3</sup> qua etiam ætate Phrixus<sup>4</sup> et Helle<sup>5</sup> soror<sup>6</sup> sua fugientes insidias nocentes submersi sunt in mari, quod usque hodie a nomine sororis vocatur Hellespontus; at quia<sup>7</sup> insigne navis eorum fuit aries, ideo finguntur per aerem vehi ariete<sup>8</sup> velleris aurei.<sup>9</sup> Laomedon, Sicyoniorum<sup>10</sup> rex octavus decimus,<sup>11</sup> regnavit<sup>12</sup> quinquaginta annis. Amphion et<sup>13</sup> Zethus<sup>14</sup> regnabant<sup>15</sup> apud Thebas<sup>16</sup> Græcorum expulso Cadmo.<sup>17</sup> Tros, a quo dicuntur Trojani, regnavit in Dardania, quæ est Phrygia,<sup>18</sup> et postmodum indixit bellum Tantalos, regi Atheniensium, propter raptum Ganymedis filii sui. *Ranulphus*.<sup>19</sup> Frustra ergo Jovis fabula et raptrix aquila confingitur.<sup>20</sup> Perseus, frater Erechthei,<sup>21</sup> dimicavit adversus Persas capite Gorgonis<sup>22</sup> desecto. Pegasus equus velocissimus cujusdam mulieris seu Bellerophontis<sup>23</sup> navis fuit. Ion vir fortis ex suo vocabulo appellavit<sup>24</sup> Athenienses Iones. Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater, debellando Indos<sup>25</sup> urbem Nysam<sup>26</sup> construxit. Iste Dio-

Anno Abr. 646.  
Anno Ayoth 16.

Anno Ayoth 47.  
Anno Abr. 657.  
Anno Ayoth 54.  
Anno Abr. 664.

Anno Ayoth 62.  
Anno Abr. 672.

<sup>1</sup> *obstupesciebat*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *in eam*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Sub*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Fixus* or *Frixus*, MSS.

<sup>5</sup> *Elles*, MSS.

<sup>6</sup> *cum Helle sorore*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *atque*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *ab ariete*, A.

<sup>9</sup> Slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Scicionorum*, MSS.

<sup>11</sup> *finguntur . . . xvij.*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *regnare cepit*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *Zephus* or *Zepus*, MSS. and versions.

<sup>15</sup> *regnaverunt*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *apud Thebas*] Thebis, A.B.

<sup>17</sup> Transposed in C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *Frigia*, MSS.

<sup>19</sup> Added from B.

<sup>20</sup> *Tros . . . confingitur*] Varied in C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *Erietei*, MSS.

<sup>22</sup> *meretricis*, ins. C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *bellofrontis*, A.

<sup>24</sup> *vocavit*, A.

<sup>25</sup> *debellando Indos*] adversus Indos dimicans, C.D.

<sup>26</sup> *juxta Indum fluvium*, ins. C.D.

bulde Achaia. Denys Liber Pater, duke of Athene, was i-bore of Semela, as som men telleþ, and took misteria of Perseus, þat slowþ þat hore Gorgon, þat was so faire, [that she]<sup>1</sup> astonyed men þat byhelde hire wip hir fairnesse. Also þat tyme Frixus and his suster Elles flyþe þe malice and þe pursute of here stepdame, and were adraynt<sup>2</sup> in þe see þat heet Ellespontus. And for a weþer was i-peynt in þe signe of here schippe, þerfore me feynede þat a wether wip gildene flees bare hem forþ by þe ayer. Laomedon, þe eiþte kyng of Sciciones, regnede fifty þere. Amphion and Zethus regned in Thebe, þe<sup>3</sup> citee of Grees, and put out Cadmus. Tros<sup>4</sup> regnede in Dardania, þis is Frigia,<sup>5</sup> and werred afterward aþenst Tantalus, kyng of Athene, for þe rauyschyng of Ganymedes. Of þis Tros þe Troians haueþ þat name, and hatte Troians. [B.]<sup>6</sup> þan þe fable of Iupiter is i-feyned; and so þe rauyschyng of an egle is i-feyned and<sup>7</sup> ydul. Perseus, Ericteus his broþer, fauþt aþenst þe Perses, and<sup>8</sup> smoot of þe heed of þat hoor Gorgon. Pegasus was a ful swift hors of a womman, oper<sup>9</sup> heet Bellefrontys his schip. Ion<sup>10</sup> þe strong man cleped þe men of Athenes Iones by his owne name. Denys, that hatte Liber Pater also, werred wip þe Indes, and bulde þe

TREVISA.

and Dionysus<sup>12</sup> Bacchus, other Liber Pater, gouernoure of men of Athenes, was borne abowte this tyme of Semela. And the misterys of Perseus began, whiche did slee a strumpette other hore, Gorgones by name, makenge men beholdenge to meruayle the excellent beaute of here. In whiche tyme Frixus, and Elle his sustyr, dredenge the watches of theire steppemoder, were drownede in the see whiche is callede vn to this tyme Ellespontus,<sup>11</sup> after the name of his sustyr. Laomedon, the kyng of men of Scitia, the xvij<sup>th</sup> kyng, reignede l<sup>ti</sup> yere. Amphion and Zethus reignede at Thebas in Grece, Cadmus expulsede. Tros, of whom the Troianes toke name, reignede in Dardania, otherwise called Frigia, after that þiffenge batayle to Tantalus kyng of Athenes, for the rape of Ganymedes his son. Perseus, the brother of Eruteus,<sup>13</sup> þafe batelle ageyne men of Persia for the sleenge of Gorgones. That stronge man called Ion namede men of Athenes Iones after his name. Dionysus,<sup>12</sup> other Liber

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> Added from Cx.; þat (only), β.; heo, γ.

<sup>2</sup> drowned, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> in þe, MS. (not α. β. γ.)

<sup>4</sup> So α. β. γ.; Troos, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Frisia, MS.

<sup>6</sup> Added from α. and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> an, α. γ.; in, Cx.; on, β.

<sup>8</sup> he, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> oper] that, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> So α. and Cx.; Ione, MS.

<sup>11</sup> Elespontus, Harl. MS.

<sup>12</sup> Dionisius, Harl. MS. Similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in both versions.

<sup>13</sup> Clerical error for Ericteus (Erechtheus).

Pelops. nysus<sup>1</sup> fœminas cum viris primus in exercitu habuit.<sup>2</sup> Pelops, primus Peloponnesensibus<sup>3</sup> regnans, Olympiis quoque præfuit; qui tamen postmodum<sup>4</sup> adversus Ilium<sup>5</sup> rebellans<sup>6</sup> a Dardano superatur.<sup>7</sup> *Augustinus*, *libro octavodecimo*. Temporibus Ayoth, ducis Israel,<sup>8</sup> floruit Hercules posterior; plane [diversus] ab illo Hercule superius memorato. *Trogus*.<sup>9</sup> Iste Hercules<sup>10</sup> fortis fuit,<sup>11</sup> orbis domitor, Amazonum contritor,<sup>12</sup> Indiæ penetrator, Trojanorum expugnator, Libyæ invasor, Hispaniæ dominator. *Ranulphus*.<sup>13</sup> Iste Hercules<sup>14</sup> secundum Ovidium in Magno, libro octavo, Antæum<sup>15</sup> gigantem<sup>16</sup> Libyæ<sup>17</sup> devicit, Geryonem<sup>18</sup> gigantem regem Hispaniæ occidit, armenta ejus in signum victoriæ per Italiam duxit; ex filia Fauni Latinum regem procreavit; leonem<sup>19</sup> interfecit; hydram serpentem in Lerna palude extinxit; stadium itineris uno<sup>20</sup> anhelitu percurrit; agonem<sup>21</sup> Olympicum instauravit; Centauros contrivit; apud Gades insulas columnas posuit; duodecim immensos labores consummavit. *Augustinus de Civitate*, *libro octavo decimo*. Et cum post insignes virtutes

<sup>1</sup> *pariter in armis*, C.D. (*ad arma*, D.)

<sup>2</sup> *primus . . . habuit*] sociavit, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Peloponensibus*, MSS.

<sup>4</sup> *tamen postmodum*] postea, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *illum*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *rebellando*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *superantur*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *ducis Israel*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> So A.B.C.D.; *Titus*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *Iste Hercules*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *fuit*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Hercules*, ins. C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *Hic*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Antheum*, A.; *Atheum*, E.

<sup>16</sup> *regem*, ins. A.

<sup>17</sup> *Libyæ*] om. B; *Libiæ*, MSS., as usual.

<sup>18</sup> *Cerionem*, A.

<sup>19</sup> *leonem*] om. B.

<sup>20</sup> *unico*, B.

<sup>21</sup> *Aganum*, A.B.; *Aganem*, E.

citee Nisan.<sup>1</sup> Þis Denys ordeyned first wommen in his oost TREVISIA.  
 wip<sup>2</sup> men. Pelops,<sup>3</sup> þe firste kyng of Peloponens, was heed of  
 þe Olimpies; <sup>---</sup><sup>4</sup> neuerpeles afterward he was aʒenst Troye, and  
 ouercome of Dardanus. In Aioth his tyme, duke of Israel,  
 þe latter Hercules, anoper þan we spak of raper, was in his  
 floures. *Trogus.* Þis Hercules was strong, and temede þe  
 world, and ouercome þe Amazones, and passed in to Inde  
 and werred þere, and ouercome þe Troians, and werred in  
 Libya, and was lord of<sup>5</sup> Spayne. R. Þis Hercules ouer-  
 come Anteus,<sup>6</sup> þe geant of Libya, so seiþ Ouyde, in Magno,  
 libro octavo; and slowʒ Geryon þe geaunt, kyng of Spayne,  
 and ladde his catel and his bestes þorw Italy in tokyn of þe  
 maistrye; and he gat þe kyng Latyn on þe douzter of Fau-  
 nus;<sup>7</sup> and he slowʒ a leon; he slowʒ þe serpent Ydra in þe  
 water Lerna; and he ran a furlong at oon breep; and he re-  
 stored þe tornementis and ioustes of Mont Olymp; he ouer-  
 come þe Centaures; and piʒte his pilers in þe see at þe Ilondes  
 Gades; and he dede twelue grete dedes. *Trevisa.* Þe Cen-  
 taures were men of Thessalia; þey were þe firste þat chastede<sup>8</sup>  
 hors, and ladde hem wip brydels, and ride<sup>9</sup> on hors bakkes.  
*Augustinus, libro 18º.* And after his grete dedes he fille in a

Pater, fiʒhtenge ageyne men of Ynde, made that cite callede MS. HARL.  
 Nisan. This Dionysus hade firste women mixte with men 2261.  
 in his hoste. Pelopos reignede firste amonge men of Pello-  
 ponens, and also at Olympus, whiche rebellenge ageyne  
 Troianes was ouercommen by Dardanus. The later Her-  
 cules was in the tymes of Aioth, duke and governoure of  
 Israel. This myʒhty Hercules was the tamer of the worlde,  
 the victor of þe Amazones, the perescher of Ynde, the  
 expugnator of Troianes, the entrer of Libya, the lorde of  
 Speyne. R. This Hercules, after Ouidius, in Methamor-  
 phoseon libro octauo, ouercome the gigaunte of Libia at  
 Athenes, and did sle Geryon the gigaunte and kyng of  
 Speyne, causenge his bestes to be brouʒhte thro Ytaly in a  
 signe of victory, gettenge of the doʒhter of Faunus<sup>10</sup> Latinus  
 the kyng; whiche did slee also a lyon and a grete serpente  
 in a marras callede Lerna, rennenge the space of a fore-  
 longe with oon brethe, settenge pillores at the yle of Gades;  
 whiche finischede xij. huge labores. *Augustinus, libro de-*  
*cimo octavo.* Whiche hauenge as a disease intollerable  
 after his grete labores, commaundede hym selfe to be easte

<sup>1</sup> So all the MSS.

<sup>2</sup> *her men*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)

<sup>3</sup> *Pelopis*, MS. (not *a.*)

<sup>4</sup> So *a.*, Cx.; *Olimpus*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *of*] in, MS. (only).

<sup>6</sup> *Antheus*, MSS., and so below.

<sup>7</sup> So *γ.*; *Fanus*, MS., *a. β.*

<sup>8</sup> *chastised*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *rode*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *Fannius*, Harl. MS.

Hercules  
seipsum  
comburit.

morbum, quo vehementer languebat, ferre non posset, seipsum in Oeta<sup>1</sup> monte Hispaniæ<sup>2</sup> cremandum flammis tradidit. *Ranulphus*. Qui sunt isti duodecim<sup>3</sup> im-  
mensi sive inhumani labores, quos<sup>4</sup> consummavit, patet per Claudianum libro sexto de raptu Proserpinæ, et<sup>5</sup> per Virgilium *Æneidos*<sup>6</sup> octavo, et per Ovidium *Met.* nono libro. Quorum primus labor fuit de Centauris quos devicit; secundus fuit<sup>7</sup> interfectio et excoriatio leonis in Nemeæa<sup>8</sup> silva; tertius<sup>9</sup> effugatio Harpyiarum;<sup>10</sup> quartus tangitur in Lucano, libro nono, scilicet<sup>11</sup> ablatio pomorum aureorum de horto septem filiarum Atlantis,<sup>12</sup> sopito dracone custode; quintus catenatio Cerberi devorantis Pirithoum<sup>13</sup> in raptu Proserpinæ; sextus oppressio Diomedis regis Thraciæ, qui pavit equos suos carne humana; septimus extinctio hydræ serpentis in Lerna palude; octavus devictio Acheloi<sup>14</sup> in varias formas se mutantis;<sup>15</sup> nonus prostratio Antæi<sup>16</sup> gigantis Libyæ, qui terram tangendo semper<sup>17</sup> vires resumebat; decimus occisio Caci,<sup>18</sup> qui dicebatur<sup>19</sup> ig-

<sup>1</sup> *Ceta*, A.B.D.; *Creta*, E.

<sup>2</sup> So MSS. for *Thessalia*; but the error may be due to Higden.

<sup>3</sup> *xii.*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Hercules*, ins. B.D.

<sup>5</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Æneidos*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *fuit*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Nemeæa*, MSS.

<sup>9</sup> *est*, ins. A.

<sup>10</sup> *Erpiarum*, A.; *Arpiarum*, D.E.

<sup>11</sup> *scilicet*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Atthlantis* or *Athlantis*, MSS., and similarly elsewhere.

<sup>13</sup> *Pirotheum*, B.; *Pritonem*, C.; *Piritheum*, D.E.

<sup>14</sup> *Achiloi*, A.; *Archeloi*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *mutans*, E. (clerical error.)

<sup>16</sup> *Anthei*, MSS., and so below.

<sup>17</sup> *super*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *Casi*, A.; *Eaci*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *dicitur*, C.D.

grete siknesse þat was so hard<sup>1</sup> and sore þat he myȝte not endure. Þerfore he þrewe hym self in to a fuyre, and brend hym self. [B].<sup>2</sup> Claudianus, libro 6<sup>o</sup>, de raptu Proserpinæ, and Virgil, Æneidos 8<sup>o</sup>, and Ouide, Methamorphoses, libro 9<sup>o</sup>, rekeneþ þe grete dedes þat Hercules dede. Of þe whiche dedes þe firste was þe victorie þat he hadde of þe Centaures. Þe secunde þe sleynge and þe hildynge of a leon in a wode þat hatte Nemea.<sup>3</sup> Þe þridde þe chasyng of þe foules þat hatte Arpies. Þe ferþe þe takynge of goldene apples out of þe orcheȝerd of þe senene douȝters of Atlas<sup>4</sup> þe geant, and þe sleynge of the dragon þat kepte þe place.<sup>5</sup> Þe fifte þe chaynyng and teienge of þe grete hound Cerberus þat deuoured Pirithous<sup>6</sup> in þe rauschyng of Proserpina. Þe sixte þe berynge doun of Diomede, þe kyng of Thracia, þat fedde his hors wip manis<sup>7</sup> flesche. The seueneþe þe destroyenge of Ydra þe serpent in þe water Lerna.<sup>8</sup> Þe eiȝþe<sup>9</sup> þe ouercommynge of Achelous, þat chaunged ofte tyme in to dyuers liknes and schappes. Þe nynþe þe þrowynge doun of Anteus, þe geant of Libya, þat took aȝen myȝte and strengþe as ofte as he touched þe erpe. Þe tenþe þe sleynge<sup>10</sup> of the cat þat cast out fuyre of his mouþ,

TREVISA.

in to a grete fire, in Ceta an hille of Speyne. R. Whiche labores were not like to be the labores of man, as hit is schewede by the poete Claudianus, libro vj<sup>to</sup> de raptu Proserpinæ, and by Virgilius, Eneyd, libro viij<sup>o</sup>, and by Ouidius in Metamorphoseon libro nono. The firste was takenge aweye of apples of golde from the gardyn of þe vii. doȝhters of Atlas,<sup>4</sup> the dragon and keper of theyme beenge in slepe. The secunde was of the grete bestes callede Centauri, whom he ouercome. The thridde was the sleenge of a lyon, in a woode callede Menena. The iiij<sup>the</sup> was the chasenge of Arpines. The v<sup>the</sup> was the chenenge of the grete dogge callede Cerberus, whiche did sle Pirithous<sup>6</sup> in the takenge aweye of Proserpina. The vj<sup>the</sup> was the oppression of Diomedes kyng of Thracia, whiche fedde his horse with the flesche of man. The vij<sup>the</sup> was the sleenge of the serpente in that marras callede Lerna. The viij<sup>the</sup> was the victory of Achelo[u]s, chaungenge hym in to diuerse formes. The ix<sup>the</sup> was the victory of Anteus the gigaunte of Libya, whiche encreasede in strenghte as he towchede the erthe. The x<sup>the</sup> labore was the sleenge of Cacus, whom men seide to enomette fire. The xj<sup>the</sup> was the sleenge of

MS. HARL.  
2261.Hoc Lu-  
canus af-  
firmat libro  
suo nono.<sup>1</sup> *hard*] payneful, Cx.<sup>2</sup> Added from *α*. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> *Nenia*, Cx.; *Menia*, MSS.<sup>4</sup> *Atlas*, MSS., as usual; which conversely have *Tracia* below.<sup>5</sup> *palce*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Pynytheus*, and *Peritheus*, MSS.<sup>7</sup> So *α*.; *maris*, MS.; *mennis*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> So *α*.; *Berna*, MS.<sup>9</sup> *echt*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *slyngge*, MS. (clerical error.)

nem evomere;<sup>1</sup> undecimus interfectio apri Arcadiæ; duodecimus supportatio cœli, donec Atlas fatigatus respiraret. Sed<sup>2</sup> in tertiodecimo labore, videlicet<sup>3</sup> induendo se<sup>4</sup> interulam<sup>5</sup> Dejaniræ,<sup>6</sup> extinctus est. In quo notandum<sup>7</sup> est quod isti labores Herculi attributi vel solam<sup>8</sup> sonant historiam, ut secundus de leone et undecimus de apro; vel solummodo spectant ad integumentum morum,<sup>9</sup> et tunc fabulosum est quod explicant, quamvis<sup>10</sup> veritatem implicent, quales sunt tertius de fuga Harpyiarum, et quartus de raptu pomorum; vel etiam<sup>11</sup> sonant historiam mixtam cum fabula, ut cæteri omnes labores. Est etiam hic<sup>12</sup> advertendum quod non videtur unus et idem Hercules fuisse, cui<sup>13</sup> isti duodecim labores<sup>14</sup> attribuuntur; tum<sup>15</sup> quia Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo,<sup>16</sup> dicit<sup>17</sup> quod alius fuit Hercules cui ista duodecim attribuuntur et alius qui<sup>18</sup> Antæum in palestra<sup>19</sup> devicit, et tamen Boethius<sup>20</sup> in fine quarti libri de consolatione narrat istud<sup>21</sup> de Antæo<sup>22</sup> inter duodecim labores<sup>23</sup> Herculis; tum etiam quia Augustinus<sup>24</sup> ubi supra et etiam<sup>25</sup> in capitulo xix<sup>o</sup>. dicit multos fuisse Hercules; et etiam<sup>25</sup> dicit quod Sampson propter mirabilem fortitudinem putatus est Hercules.

Quid de  
ejus labo-  
ribus sta-  
tuendum.

Hercules  
varii.

<sup>1</sup> *evomuisse*, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *Sed*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *videlicet*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *se*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *interulam*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *Dejaniris*, B.; *Dianira*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *sciendum*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *solam*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *moralem*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *licet*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *etiam*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *hic*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *omnes*, ins. B.

<sup>11</sup> *ingentia facta*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *etiam*, ins. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> 9<sup>o</sup>, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 12.

<sup>17</sup> *dicit*] om. B.

<sup>18</sup> *qui*] om. E.

<sup>19</sup> *palustra*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *Boecius* or *Boetius*, MSS.

<sup>21</sup> *illud*, B.D.

<sup>22</sup> *de Antæo*] om. C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *labores*] om. B.

<sup>24</sup> *alius*, A.

<sup>25</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.



as me seide. Þe enleueneþ þe sleynge of þe boor in Arcadia.<sup>1</sup> TREVISIA.  
 Þe twelfþe þe berynge and þe holdynge vp of heuene, while  
 Atlas þe geant reste hym, whan he was wery. But in þe  
 prittenþe he dede on a corsette of Ianyr,<sup>2</sup> and deide. Here  
 take hede þat þis<sup>3</sup> twelfe dedes þat beþ acounted to Hercules  
 sowneþ þe storie as it is i-tolde; soo doop the secoude of þe  
 leon, and þe enleueneþ of þe boor; oper he perteyneþ onliche  
 þe couerynge of þewes; and þanne þe tale is a fable, but þe  
 menyng is ful of trowþe and of sopnesse. So is þe þridde  
 of þe arpies, and þe fourþe of þe takynge and rauyschyng of þe  
 goldene apples. Other he tokeneþ and sowneþ the storye medled  
 wip a fable; so doop alle his oper dedes of þese twelue.<sup>4</sup> Also  
 here take hede, it semeþ þat it is nouzt al oon Hercules þat  
 þese twelfe dedes beþ acounted to; fore<sup>5</sup> Seint Austyn, de  
 Civitate, libro 18, capitulo 14<sup>o</sup>, seiþ þat it was an oper Hercules  
 þat [þese dedes beþ acounted<sup>6</sup> to, and anoper Hercules þat]<sup>7</sup>  
 ouercome Anteus þe geant in wrastlyng. And also Boecius,  
 in fine quarti libri de Consolatione telleþ þe<sup>8</sup> same of Anteus  
 among þe twelue dedes of Hercules. Also Seint Austyn, ubi  
 supra, et capitulo 19<sup>o</sup>, seiþ þat þere were meny Hercules; and  
 also Sampson for his wonder strengþe was acounted Hercules.

the boore of Arcadia.<sup>1</sup> The xij<sup>th</sup> labore was the suppor- MS. HARL.  
 tation of heuyn while that Atlas beenge wery did reste; 2261.  
 whiche diede or that he hade fullefyllde the xij<sup>th</sup> labore. ---  
 Of whom hit is to be attendede, þat these labores attribute  
 to Hercules sounde other a story, as that of the lyon, and  
 the xj<sup>th</sup> of the boore; other elles thei longe oonly to the  
 couerenge of maneres, and then hit is a fable that thei  
 expresse, þauzhe thei do implicate trawthe, as the thrydde  
 and iiij<sup>th</sup> labore were of the takenge aweye of the apples;  
 other elles thei sownde a story mixte with a fable, as alle  
 other labores. Also hit is to be attendede, that þese xij.  
 labores be not to be attribute to oon Hercules, for as Seynte  
 Austyn seythe, De Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo,  
 capitulo quarto decimo,<sup>9</sup> that there was an other Hercules  
 to whom these xij. labores were attribute, then that  
 Hercules whiche ouercome Antheus the gigaunte of Pales-  
 tria.<sup>10</sup> And Boecius, quarto libro de Consolatione Philo-  
 sophiæ, rehersethe that of Antheus among the xij. labores of  
 Hercules. Also Seynte Austyn seithe that þer were mony  
 Hercules, and also Sampson was trawede to haue be namede

<sup>1</sup> *Archadia*, MSS., as usual.

<sup>2</sup> So MSS.; *Dianier*, Cx. (i.e.,  
*Dejanira*.)

<sup>3</sup> *these*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *twelue dedes*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *too*, for, *a.*

<sup>6</sup> *aretted*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *þe*] *that*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> The numbers are so written at  
 length.

<sup>10</sup> It is possible that the translator's  
 Latin text was corrupt.

Et in libello<sup>1</sup> Phrygii Daretis de bello Trojano Jason ipse qui quæsivit pellem<sup>2</sup> auream apud Colchos<sup>3</sup> cognominatus est Hercules. Unde illud Ovidii tertio-decimo Metamorphoseon :

Moenia sub furti Trojana<sup>4</sup> sub Hercule,<sup>5</sup>

et cætera. Et<sup>6</sup> Ovidius octavo Met. attribuit interfec-tionem<sup>7</sup> apri Arcadiæ Meleandro,<sup>8</sup> et etiam Met. septimo attribuit fugam Harpyiarum filiis Boreæ, scilicet<sup>9</sup> Zoe et Calai.<sup>10</sup> Unde dicitur a nonnullis sciolis<sup>11</sup> quod Hercules sit potius cognomen virorum illustrium, qui virtute et audacia singulares apparuerunt,<sup>12</sup> quod etiam nominis hujus interpretatio sonare videtur. Dicitur enim<sup>13</sup> Hercules ab *heros*, quod est vir, et *cleos*, gloria; quasi vir gloriosus.

Hercules  
quid  
significet.

#### CAP. XVIII.

*De Græcorum fabulis, tempore potissimum Aod in-ventis.*<sup>14</sup>

Fabularum  
inventor  
Æsopus.

*Eusebius in Chronicis.* Tempore Ayoth potissime in Græcia inventæ sunt fabulæ; et dicitur quod Æso-pus primus<sup>15</sup> eas invenerit ad exornandum<sup>16</sup> veritatem

<sup>1</sup> bello, E. ; libro, D.

<sup>2</sup> vellus, B.

<sup>3</sup> apud Colchos] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Trojana] So D. ; Trojani, A.E.

<sup>5</sup> The true reading is :

“Mœnia qui forti Trojana  
sub Hercule cepit.”

Ov. *Met.* xiii. 23.

<sup>6</sup> Similiter, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> illud, B.

<sup>8</sup> So MSS. for *Meleagro*. See Ovid. *Met.* viii. 270.

<sup>9</sup> scilicet] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> Zethes and Calais, sons of Boreas, are mentioned by Ovid, *Met.* vi. 716; but Higden's statement is a mere blunder.

<sup>11</sup> dicitur . . . sciolis] videtur ple-risque, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> videbantur, the rest of the chapter being omitted, in C.D.

<sup>13</sup> autem, A.

<sup>14</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>15</sup> primus] om. E.

<sup>16</sup> exorandum, B.

And Frigius Dares,<sup>1</sup> in his book of bataille of Troye, seip pat Iason pat gat<sup>2</sup> pe weper wip the<sup>3</sup> goldene flees at Colchos had a surname, and was i-cleped Hercules. Perfore Ouid, Methamorphoses 13<sup>o</sup>, seip : Menia vnder furt<sup>4</sup> and pe Troians vnder Hercules. And Ouidius, 8<sup>o</sup> Methamorphoses, acountep<sup>5</sup> the sleyng of pe boor of Arcadia to Meleandrus ;<sup>6</sup> and also 7<sup>o</sup><sup>7</sup> Methamorphoses acountep pe chasyng of pe arpies to Boreas his sones, pat heet Zoas and Calaius.<sup>8</sup> Perfore meny wise men tellep pat Hercules is pe surname of noble men and stalworpe, pat passed oþer men hugely<sup>9</sup> in boldenesse and in strengpe. And so hit semeþ al by kyndeliche menyng of pat name ; for Hercules is i-seide of heros,<sup>10</sup> pat is *a man*, and of cleos, pat is *blisse* ; as þey Hercules were to menyng a blisful man and glorious.

TREVISA.  
—*Capitulum octavumdecimum.*

*Eusebius in Cronica.* In Aioth his tyme, nameliche in Grees ffables were i-founde, and<sup>11</sup> me seip pat Esopus fonde first fables for to hiʒte<sup>12</sup> kyndeliche soopnesse ;<sup>13</sup> ffor pe

Hercules, for his meruellous strenʒhte. Also hit is expressede in the boke of Frigius Daretis, of the batelle of Troy, that Iason, whiche did feche the fleece of golde at Colchos, was callede Hercules. Also Ouidius, in libro octavo Metamorphoseon, ʒiffethe that labore of the sleenge of the boore of Arcadia to Melandrus other Melander. For that name of Hercules was ʒiffen to nowble men for a singuler vertu and audacite, whiche thyng semethe to appere by interpretation of that name. For this worde, Hercules, is seide of this worde, eros, whiche is *a man*, and cleos, that is *joy*, as a glorious man.

MS. HARL.

2261.  
—*Capitulum decimum octavum.*

*Eusebius in Cronica.* Fables were founde specially in Grece in the tyme of Aioth, and hit is seide that Ysopus fonde them firste to onorne trawthe naturalle, leste the secrete

<sup>1</sup> So Cx. ; Daret, MS. *a. β. γ.*<sup>2</sup> *wan*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *the*] om. *a.*<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and Cx. ; *fruit*, MS. Trevisa cannot be blamed for making no sense of a corrupt text ; nor the Harleian translator for leaving it out.<sup>5</sup> *arreteth*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Meleandris*, MS. (only).<sup>7</sup> So *a. β. γ.*, Cx. ; 17, MS.<sup>8</sup> So *a. β. γ.*, Cx. ; *Calcanis*, MS.<sup>9</sup> *greetely*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> So Cx. ; *eros*, MS.<sup>11</sup> *as*, MS. (only.)<sup>12</sup> So *a. β. γ.* ; *hiʒte wip*, MS.<sup>13</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

De varia  
fabularum  
ratione.

naturalem, ne scilicet vilescerent secreta naturæ. Unde secundum diversas rerum naturas et qualitates confinxerunt deorum nomina et actiones. *Alexander in Mythol.* Utpote quod post diluvium homines de saxis et de arboribus<sup>1</sup> nasci dicuntur, ab antiquissima<sup>2</sup> hominum cohabitatione confictum est. Nam ante factas domos homines aut in cavis arboribus aut saxeis<sup>3</sup> speluncis manebant; vel certe, dum deerat usus casarum, ipsi homines more pecorum vagabantur.<sup>4</sup> *Augustinus de Civitate, libro xviii<sup>o</sup>., capitulo xiii<sup>o</sup>.* Post mortem<sup>5</sup> Josue usque ad bellum Trojanum confictæ sunt fabulæ in Græcia; ut quod ex impetuosa libidine Vulcani cum Minerva Erichthonius<sup>6</sup> cum pedibus dracontinis fuerit progenitus,<sup>7</sup> fabulosum est et poeticum. Re autem vera in templo Vulcani et Minervæ, quod ambo Athenis commune habebant,<sup>8</sup> inventus est puer expositus, dracone involutus, qui eum significabat<sup>9</sup> magnum futurum. Et sic<sup>10</sup> propter commune amborum templum dicebatur utriusque filius; cum tamen ejus parentes fuissent<sup>11</sup> ignoti. Item de Triptolemo,<sup>12</sup> quod jubente Cerere anguibus portatus alitibus indigentibus terris frumenta volando contulerit. Item de Minotauro, quod fuit bestia inclusa labyrintho,<sup>13</sup> quo cum intrassent<sup>14</sup> homines,

Expositio  
fabulæ de  
Erich-  
thonio ;

et de Trip-  
tolema ;

et de Mino-  
tauro et  
Centauris.

<sup>1</sup> Transposed in B.

<sup>2</sup> *antiqua*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *in saxeis*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Post mortem*] A diebus, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Erichthonius*, MSS.

<sup>7</sup> *esse progenitum*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *habeant*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *signavit*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sic*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *essent*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Tritolomo*, MSS.

<sup>13</sup> *labyrintho* or *laborinto*, MSS.

<sup>14</sup> *transissent*, D.

priuite of kynde schulde nouzt be despised: perfore [by]<sup>1</sup> kynde of pinges and by dyuerse manere of doynge þey feyned names and worchyng of goddes. *Alcyn.*<sup>2</sup> in *Mythologia*. And so he<sup>3</sup> feyned þat after þe flood men come of stoones and of trees; bote þat was i-feyned for þe manere wonynge of men in olde tyme; for, ere<sup>4</sup> housynge were i-made, men wonede in holownesse of treen oper in dennes of erþe and of stonnes, and som wente aboute as it were bestes. *Augustinus, libro 18º, capitulo 13º*. After Iosue his deef anon to þe bataille of Troye fables were i-feyned in Grecia. As þat Vulcanus<sup>5</sup> in grete hete and brennyng of lecherie wip Minerua gat Eructonius<sup>6</sup> i-foted as a dragon, þat is a fable and a poetes feynynge and sawe. But þe soop menyng is þat in þe citee Athene was oo temple of Vlcanus and of Minerua; in þat temple was a childe i-founde byclipped aboute wip a dragoun. Þat bytokened þat þe childe schulde be greet; and for þe childe was i-founde in here bope temple, perfore þe childe was i-cleped hir bope sone. Also Tritholomus, þat was i-bore of fleyng address in to nedy londes at þe heste of Cereres<sup>7</sup> and brouzt hem whete, it is a fable. Also of Minotaurus,<sup>8</sup> þat was a best i-closed in laborintus, Dedalus his hous; and

TREVISA.

thynges of nature scholde wexe vile. Wherefore thei feynede diuerse names and actiones of goddes after diuerse natures and qualites of thynges. *Alexander in Mythologia*. As thei seide men to haue bene made of stonnes after the grete floode; whiche was a thyng feynede of olde men, for men inhabite other in dennes made of ston, other in holo trees, afore that they had howses made; other elles, if thei had not suche habitaciones, thei wente abowte in the maner of bestes. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo 13º*. Fables were made in the londe of Grece after the dethe of Iosue vn to the batelle of Troy, as Vulcanus to haue tariede with Minerva, and that Erutonius was geten with the feete of a dragon, whiche is but a fable and a feynede thyng of poetes. Neuerthelesse there was a childe founde in the temple of Vulcanus and of Minerua at Athenes, sette þer compassede and wrappede abowte with the tayle of a dragon, whiche signifiede the childe to be a grete man in tyme to comme, whiche childe was callede the childe of Vulcanus and of Minerva, the faders of whom were not knowen in trawthe. Also hit is seide off Tritho-

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> Added from conjecture only.

<sup>2</sup> So also *a. β. γ.*, Cx. Read *Alexander*.

<sup>3</sup> *he*] om. MS.

<sup>4</sup> So *a.*; *here*, MS.; Cx. omits twenty words.

<sup>5</sup> *Vlcanus*, MS.. *a. β.*; and so below (not *γ.*).

<sup>6</sup> So *a. β. γ.* (for Erichthonius); *Eructorius*, MS.; *Eruconius*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So all MSS. (or *Cereres*.) The error is certainly due to Trevisa.

<sup>8</sup> So *β.*; *Mynatuuurus*, MS., *a. γ.*

inextricabili errore non possent<sup>1</sup> exire. Item de Centauris, quod equorum hominumque natura fuerint commixta.<sup>2</sup> Item de Cerbero, quod sit triceps inferorum canis. Item de Phrixo et Helle sorore,<sup>3</sup> quod vecti ariete volaverint.<sup>4</sup> Item de Gorgone meretrice,<sup>5</sup> quod fuit crinita serpentibus et aspicientes vertebat<sup>6</sup> in lapides. <sup>7</sup> De Bellerophonte, quod equo pennis volante vectus sit,<sup>8</sup> cujus equus dicitur<sup>9</sup> Pegasus. <sup>10</sup> De Amphione,<sup>11</sup> quod<sup>12</sup> citharæ suavitate lapides mulserit et attraxerit. <sup>13</sup> De fabro Dædalo et ejus filio Icaro<sup>14</sup> quod pennis coaptatis volaverint.<sup>15</sup> <sup>16</sup> De Antæo quem necavit Hercules, quod sit<sup>17</sup> filius Terræ propter<sup>18</sup> quod cadens fortior surrexit.<sup>19</sup> *Isidorus Etymologiarum, libro undecimo.*<sup>20</sup> Item quod Geryon gigas, rex Hispaniæ ab Hercule occisus, triplici forma constare describitur, fabula<sup>21</sup> est. Nam fuerunt ibi tres fratres tantæ concordiæ, ut in illis quasi unus animus videretur.<sup>22</sup> Quod Gorgones meretrices, crinitæ ut serpentes, unumque oculum habentes, convertebant aspicientes in lapides, fabula est. Sed fuerunt tres sorores unius pulchritu-

Etiam de Cerbero, Phrixo, Bellerophonte, aliisque.

Vera Geryonis historia explicatur;

ut et Gorgonum meretricum.

<sup>1</sup> poterant, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> conjuncta, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> ejus, ins. B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> volaverunt, A.

<sup>5</sup> meretrice] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> convertebat, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> Item, ins. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> volante pennis vectus est, B.  
dictus est, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> Item, ins. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> Orpheone, C. (not D.)

<sup>12</sup> et, B.

<sup>13</sup> Item, ins. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> Ychario, B.; Ycaro, F.

<sup>15</sup> volaverunt, A.

<sup>16</sup> Item, ins. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> fuit, C.; fuerit, D.

<sup>18</sup> hoc, ins. C. (not D.)

<sup>19</sup> cadens in terram fortior surrexit, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> undecimo] 12<sup>o</sup>, capitulo 3, C.; li. 13. D. The true reference is to lib. xi. c. 3.

<sup>21</sup> So B.; *fabulata*, E., and so below, twice.

<sup>22</sup> Nam . . . videretur] om. C.D.

whan men wente into þat hous, þey were so i-briged<sup>1</sup> þat þey TREVISIA.  
coupe nouzt come out. Also of Centaures, þat were i-medled  
of mankynde and of hors kynde. Also of<sup>2</sup> Cerberus þe  
hound of helle, þat þadde þre heedes. Also of Frixus and  
his suster Elle, þat were i-bore of a wether by þe ayer and flih<sup>3</sup>  
as foules. Also of Gorgon þe hore,<sup>4</sup> þat sche was i-hered wip  
adres and torned in to stones men þat byhelde her. Also of  
Bellifront, þat he was i-bore of a fleynge hors wip feperes and  
wynges; his hors heet Pegasus. Also of Amphion, þat he  
plesed stoones, and drew hem to hym wip swetnesse of his<sup>5</sup> har-  
pyng. Also of Dedalus þe carpunter and his sone Iearus,  
þat made hem wynges of feperes and flize as foules. Also of  
Anteus; hym slowz Hercules. Anteus was þe sone of þe  
erpe; þefore, whan he fel down, he roos anon azen in wel more  
strengþe. *Isidorus, libro 11º.* Also Geryon, þe geant kyng of  
Spayne, þat was i-slawe of Hercules, and was descreued in þre  
liknesses and schappes, it is a fable. For þere were þre  
breþeren so wel acordynge to gedres þat it semed þat þey hadde  
oon soule, oon witte, and oon wil. Also þe hoore<sup>6</sup> Gorgons,  
i-hered as serpentis, hadde oon yze, and tornede in to stones  
men þat byhelde hem, it is a fable. But þere were þre sustres

lomis, that corne beenge skarse, he was brouzhte in to the MS. HARL.  
aier with bryddes, whiche flyenge brouzhte cornes to londes 2261.  
hauenge necessite þer of. Also that Cerberus scholde be  
a dogge of helle. Also that Frixus and Elle hys sustyr  
cariede with a weder did flye. Also that the ylle dis-  
posede woman, Gorgones by name, chaungede men be-  
holdenge here into stones. Also of Bellofrons, that he was  
cariede with an horse flyenge with wynges, þe horse of whom  
was callede Pegasus. Also of Amphion, that he attracte  
stones to hym thro the swetenesse off an harpe. Also of  
Dedalus, and Iearus his son, that they did flye. Also  
that Anteus was the son of the erthe, whom Hercules did  
sle, in that he fallenge and towehenge þe erthe was more  
stronge when he did aryse. *Isidorus, libro undecimo.* Also  
hit is but a fable that Geryon the gigaunte and kyng of  
Speyne, sleyne by Hercules, was of thre similitudes. For  
there were thre breþer of suche concorde that thei were  
alle as of oon sawle. That the commune women, Gorgones  
by theire names, turnede men beholdenge them in to stones,  
is but a fable. But there were iij. sustyrs as of oon pul-

<sup>1</sup> begyled, Cx.  
<sup>2</sup> of ] om. MS.  
<sup>3</sup> flewen, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> strompet, Cx.  
<sup>5</sup> his ] om. MS.  
<sup>6</sup> strompettes, Cx.

dinis, quasi unius oculi;<sup>1</sup> quæ spectatores suos, ac si<sup>2</sup> lapides essent, obstupeciebant. Item quod fingunt<sup>3</sup> tres Sirenes<sup>4</sup> fuisse ex parte virgines et ex parte volucres, habentes alas et ungulas; quarum una voce, altera tuba,<sup>5</sup> tertia lyra canebat, quæ navigantes trahebant ad naufragia,<sup>6</sup> fabula est. Sed fuerunt meretrices, quæ quia adhærentes sibi<sup>7</sup> ducebant ad inopiam, ideo naufragium ingerere dicuntur.<sup>8</sup> Item quod fingunt Scyllam<sup>9</sup> fuisse<sup>10</sup> fœminam succinctam capitibus caninis cum latratibus magnis, hoc dicitur<sup>11</sup> propter fretum<sup>12</sup> maris Siculi, ubi<sup>13</sup> navigantes, verticibus<sup>14</sup> concurrentium undarum<sup>15</sup> exterriti, undas latrare putabant.<sup>16</sup> Sic fingunt Hydram serpentem cum novem capitibus, ita<sup>17</sup> quod uno abscisso tria succrescant.<sup>18</sup> Constat Hydram fuisse locum quemdam aquas evoventem,<sup>19</sup> ubi uno meatu clauso multi erumpebant; quod videns<sup>20</sup> Hercules locum exussit,<sup>21</sup> et sic meatus

Sirenes  
meretrices  
fuerunt.

Quid de  
Scylla judi-  
candum;

et de  
Hydra.

<sup>1</sup> *quasi unius oculi*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *ac si*] velut, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *finguntur*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Sirenes*] om. E.; before *fingunt* in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *tibia*, A.C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *naufragium*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *sibi*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> So A. B. C. D.; *ingererebant*, (*ingerere* being followed by *bant* in another hand) E.; perhaps for *ingerere dicebant*.

<sup>9</sup> *Cillam*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *esse*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *fit*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *sevictum*, B. (*i.e. sævitum*.)

<sup>13</sup> *ubi*] in quo, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *virtutibus*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *aquarum*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *æstimant*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *ita*] om. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *succrescunt*, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *vomentem*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *quod videns*] quem, B.

<sup>21</sup> *excussit*, B.



all of oon fairnesse ; men þat byhelde hem [þei]<sup>1</sup> made hem as stille and as stedfast as stones. Also þe pre Sirenes, þat were half maydens, half foules, and hadde wynges and clawes<sup>2</sup> as haukes ; and oon of hem songe, þat oper pipede, and þe þridde harpede, and drow<sup>3</sup> to hemward schipmen þat seilled in þe see in to shipbruche ;<sup>3</sup> it is a fable. But þere were pre hoores<sup>4</sup> þat brou<sup>3</sup>te men þat vsede hem in to meschief ; and perfore me seide þat þey brou<sup>3</sup>te hem to shipbreche. Also [þat]<sup>5</sup> me feyneþ þat Scylla<sup>6</sup> was a womman byclipped aboute wip hedes of houndes and wip grete berkynges of houndes, þat is i-seide for þe<sup>7</sup> wawes of þe<sup>8</sup> see Siculus, þat flascheþ and wascheþ vppon a<sup>9</sup> rokke þat hatte Scylla, makeþ suche manere noyse þat men þat seilleþ þerby beep so aferd þat þey weneþ þat þe wawes berkeþ þat wascheþ on þat rokke.<sup>10</sup> So þey feyneþ þat þe serpent Ydra wip<sup>11</sup> nyne hedes ; and if oon hede were i-smyte of, þanne grewe vp pre for þat oon. Þe soop tale is þat Ydra was somtyme a place þat wonderliche and perillousliche caste vp water ; and <sup>3</sup>if oo water wey were i-stopped, þe water brak vp in meny places and weyes. Hercules seigh þat, and destroyed the swolwe and closede alle þe weies ; per-

TREVISA.

critude, whiche meruaylede theire beholders, as if thei were stones. Also that poetes feyne iij. meremaydes to be in parte virgines and in parte bryddes, hauenge wynges and talandes, of whom oon songe with here voyce, an other with a trumpe, þat other with an harpe, whiche drawede men in the see to grete perelles, hit is but a fable. But there were iij. commune women, whiche inducede men drawenge to theym to grete pouerte, wherefore thei were seide to induce men in to grete perelle. Also that thei feyne Scylla<sup>6</sup> to be a woman succincte with the hedes of dogges, with grete berkenge ; that is seide for the see of Scicille, where in men saylenge and dredenge the turnenges of water þer trawede the water to berke like a dogge. Soe in like wise men feyne Idra, þe serpente, to haue hade ix. hedes, so that oon kytte awei iij. increasede, whiche Idra was a place conteynenge water, and euometenge hit, where of oon place stoppede other broste vp in many places, whiche thyng Hercules perceyvenge schutte those goenges furthe ; wherefore hit is seyde that Hercules

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> Added from  $\beta$ . and Cx. ;  $\gamma$ . has and.

<sup>2</sup> *talentes*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So *a*. and Cx. (*shipwreke*) ; þe *shippe to breke*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> So *a*. and Cx. ; *hors*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Added from *a*.  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *Scilla*, MS., and *Silla* below.

<sup>7</sup> þe] om. MS.

<sup>8</sup> þat, *a*.  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . and Cx.

<sup>9</sup> a] that, *a*.  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> So *a*. and Cx. ; *rokkes*, MS.

<sup>11</sup> Probably we should read *was wip*, or if not, cancel þat.

illos <sup>1</sup> clausit; <sup>2</sup> unde et Hydram serpentem extinxisse fingitur. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo tricesimo.* <sup>3</sup>

De variis  
fabularum  
generibus.

Fabulæ dicuntur a fando, non quia sunt <sup>4</sup> res factæ, sed loquendo fictæ; quas poetæ primo induxerunt triplici de causa. Aut enim causa delectandi, quales sunt apud Plautum et Terentium, et illæ quæ vulgo narrantur; aut etiam ad naturam rerum velandam <sup>5</sup> seu exornandam, <sup>6</sup> ut quod Vulcanus sit claudus, quia per naturam nunquam rectus est ignis; et quod Chimæra, hominis ætatem exprimens, sit bestia <sup>7</sup> triformis; cujus prima pars, adolescentia, est ferox, ut leo; secunda, juvenus, acute videt, ut caprea, seu per luxuriã fervida foetet, <sup>8</sup> ut capra; tertia, senectus, casibus est inflexus, ut <sup>9</sup> draco. Sic fabula Hippocentauri, <sup>10</sup> ex homine et equo mixti, humanæ vitæ velocitatem exprimit. Tertio, fabulæ confinguntur ad mores componendos; ut cum res finguntur ad se loquentes, ut per narrationem fictam ad quod agitur vera significatio referatur; ut apud Horatium de mure et mustela, apud Æsopum <sup>11</sup> et Avianum de vulpe et lupo, et in libro

<sup>1</sup> *illos*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *clausit*] om. E.

<sup>3</sup> *capitulo* 27°, C.; 32, D.; *capitulo* 31, A.B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 40.

<sup>4</sup> *sunt*] om. D.

<sup>5</sup> *velando*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *exornandum*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *et*, ins. C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *fervida foetet*] fœtida, D.

<sup>9</sup> *ut caprea . . . inflexus ut*] om. E.

<sup>10</sup> *ypocentauri*, MSS.

<sup>11</sup> Various corrupted in MSS.

fore me feynede<sup>1</sup> þat he destroyed Ydra þe serpent. *Isidorus*, TREVISA.  
*libro primo, capitulo* 13<sup>o</sup>. Fables beep i-seide of *fando*, þat is  
 spekyng; nouzt for þei beþ soop indede, but i-feyned in  
 spekyng. Poetes bronzt in fables for pre skiles; for likyng  
 of<sup>2</sup> talkyng and of fayre spekyng; suche beep þe fables  
 [of Plautus and of Terentius and fables]<sup>3</sup> þat beep comoun-  
 liche i-tolde. Also for helyng and hiȝtinge<sup>4</sup> of kynde; so  
 me seiþ þat Vulcanus<sup>5</sup> halteþ, for<sup>6</sup> þe fuyre is neuere euene;  
 Vulcanus is i-feyned god of fuyr. So Chimera is i-feyned  
 a beest of pre manere schappe and kynde, and bytokeneþ þe  
 ages of mankynde; þe firste ȝowpe of manhede<sup>7</sup> is cruel  
 as a lyoun; þe secounde age of manhode is scharp of siȝt as  
 a goot, oper stynkeþ by lecherie as a goot; þe pridde age is  
 elde and boweþ as a dragoun, and wasteþ alle away. And so  
 þe fable of Ypocentaurus,<sup>8</sup> þat was feyned i-medled of hors  
 kynde and of mankynde, bytokeneþ þe swift passyng of manis  
 lyf. Also fables beep i-feyned for derke and faire manere  
 speking of pewes; as whan me feyneþ þat þinges þat konneþ no  
 resoun spekeþ hem self, þat by þe tale þat is i-feyned þe soop  
 by tokenyng may be remeued [to þat]<sup>9</sup> þat is soþeliche i-doo  
 in dede. So Oras<sup>10</sup> spekeþ of þe Mous and þe Wesel, and Esopus  
 and Avenet of þe Fox and of þe Wolf, and in libro Iudicum

did slee Idra the serpente. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo* MS. HARL.  
*tricesimo primo*. Hit is to be attended that poetes 2261.  
 inducede fables for iij. especialle causes. Oon was for cause  
 of pleasure and delectacion, as Plautus<sup>11</sup> and Terentius do  
 rehearse, and also the fables that be rehersed of commune  
 peple. An other cause was for nature to be couered and  
 onornede that as a figmente callede chimera, expressenge  
 the age of a man, scholde be of a triplicate nature. The  
 firste parte of whom, that is adolescency, is cruelle as a  
 lyon. The secounde is youthe, scharpe of siȝhte, or elles  
 ille sauoreng like to a goote. The thrydde is age, de-  
 clynenge to febleness like to a dragon. Therefore hit  
 may be schewede that fables were ordeined to the com-  
 posicion and cause of vertuous exercise, that thauȝhe  
 thynges be feynede the significacion of theyme is profit-  
 able, as in Oratius of the mowse and wesylle, in Ysope  
 and Arrian of the fox and of the wulfe, and Demosthenes<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *feyneþ*, *a. β. γ.*

<sup>2</sup> So *a. β. γ. Cx.*; and, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Added from *a. β. γ.* and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *helthe and enhauncing*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Vlcanus*, MS., here and below.

<sup>6</sup> for me seiþ, MS., *a.* (not *β. γ.*)

<sup>7</sup> *manhod*, *a.*

<sup>8</sup> Read *Hippocentaurus*, but the

barbarous form indicates the false derivation; cf. *Ypocras*, *Ypolitia*, &c.

<sup>9</sup> Added from *a. β. γ. Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> *Orace*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *Plauctus*, or *Plauttus*, Harl. MS., and so below.

<sup>12</sup> *Demostines*, Harl. MS.

Judicium de lignis Libani, et apud Demosthenem de lupis et canibus ad liberationem oratorum confictis.<sup>1</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>2</sup> Et hoc est quod dicit Augustinus libro De Mendacio: "Fabulæ," inquit, "licet<sup>3</sup> veritatem in se " non<sup>4</sup> habeant, faciunt tamen in re significata."<sup>5</sup> *Augustinus, libro tertio, capitulo tertio*.<sup>6</sup> Auctoritate etiam Romana firmatum est quod Æneas ex matre dea Venere sit genitus; quod Romulus ex patre deo Marte<sup>7</sup> sit genitus. Sed ego non credo, sicut nec Varro Romanus historiographus doctus credidit; dicens latenter utile esse civibus,<sup>8</sup> ut viri fortes, etiam si falsum sit, se credant ex diis progenitos, ut eo modo animus humanus, velut divinæ stirpis<sup>9</sup> fiduciam gerens, res majores aggrediendas præsumat audacius, agat vehementius, consummet<sup>10</sup> felicius. *Alexander in Mythol. Fabularum*, teste Macrobio super somnium Scipionis, aliæ causa<sup>11</sup> delectationis<sup>12</sup> confinguntur, quales<sup>13</sup> sunt<sup>14</sup> comœdiæ<sup>15</sup> Menandri et Terentii,<sup>16</sup> et hæc ad philosophos non pertinent. Aliæ vero utilitatis causa ad exhortationem confinguntur, in quibus aut ipsa materia aut<sup>17</sup> narra-

<sup>1</sup> Varied verbally and slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> Reference added from B.

<sup>3</sup> *quod licet fabulæ*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *non*] om. E.

<sup>5</sup> This passage is omitted in C.D. The words are the same but much transposed in B.

<sup>6</sup> 30, B. The text is correct.

<sup>7</sup> *Marte sit genitus*] et matre deo generetur, C.; ex patre deo Marte generetur, D.

<sup>8</sup> *civitatibus*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *divina stirpe*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *consummat*, E.

<sup>11</sup> *causa*] om. A.

<sup>12</sup> *tantum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *cujusmodi*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *sunt*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *quales*, ins. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Menander seu Terentius conscripserunt*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *et*, C.D.

of þe treen of Libanus ; and so spekeþ Demosthenes <sup>1</sup> of wolves and houndes i-feyned for þe delyueraunce of þe advoketes and ditoures.<sup>2</sup> R̄. And þat is þat Seynt Austyn seip in his book De Mendacio. Fables, as seip Seynt Austyn, þeyʒ þey haue no sopenesse in ham self, nopeles þey makeþ sopenesse in þing þat þei<sup>3</sup> betokeneþ.<sup>4</sup> *Augustinus, libro 3º, capitulo 3º*. By auctorite of þe Romayns it was affermed þat þe goddes Venus was Enyas his moder, and þat god Mars was Romulus his fader. But I trowe not so ; Varro <sup>5</sup> troweþ it nouʒt, þe writere of stories of Rome, þat seip priueliche, it were profitable to citeseyns þat stronge men and orpede trowe <sup>6</sup> þat þey ben i-gete<sup>7</sup> of goddes, þeyʒ it be false ; þat in þat manere þe men hertes schulde be þe boldere, and haue trust in þe lynage<sup>8</sup> of goddes, and auntre<sup>9</sup> hem to þe grettere dedes, and doon<sup>10</sup> grete dedes wip þe more boldenesse and myʒt in trist of gracious ende by cause þat þey holdeþ hem self of þe kynde of goddes.<sup>11</sup> *Alexander in Mythologia*. Macrobius super somnium Scipionis seip þat som fables beþ i-feyned by cause of likynge ; suche beþ of Menander and Terentius, and suche longeþ nouʒt to filosofres. And som fables beþ i-feyned by cause of profizt in excitynge and conforte ; in þe whiche fables þe matiere, þat me spekeþ of, oper þe

TREVISA.

of wulfes and dogges, made to the deliueraunce of poetes. Seynte Austyn acordethe to this, libro De Mendacio, seyenge, thauʒhe fables be not trewe, neuertheles thei cause trawthe in the thyng significate by theyme. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro tertio, capitulo tertio*. Also hit is confirmate by the auctorite of the Romanes that Eneas was geten of that goddesse callede Venus, and that Romulus was gotten of that godde callede Mars ; but y ʒiffe not credence to that seienge, neither Varro the writer of stories of the Romanes ʒaffe credence þerto, seyenge, Hit is profitable that men of nobilite ʒiffe to credence þeim to be geten of goddes, and also to citesynnes, that the herte of man bolde thro hit scholde presume and be more bolde to go to grete thynges. *Alexander, in Mythologia*. As Macrobius rehersethe of the dreames of Scipio, somme fables be feynede for cause of delectation, as the fables of Menander and of Terentius ; and thei do not perteyne to filosofres. Somme be feynede for cause of vtilite to the exhortacion of peple, in whom other þat mater, other

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Demostenes, MSS.<sup>2</sup> lawers, Cx.<sup>3</sup> hit, a. ; a., γ.<sup>4</sup> netheles they represente and enduce to mannes mynde sothnesse that they bitokene and signefye, Cx.<sup>5</sup> So Cx. ; Farro, MS.<sup>6</sup> trowed, Cx.<sup>7</sup> were bigeten, Cx.<sup>8</sup> lignage, Cx.<sup>9</sup> aaventure, Cx.<sup>10</sup> do, a. β. γ. and Cx.<sup>11</sup> Clause slightly varied in Cx.

tionis ordo de re ficta et<sup>1</sup> fecte,<sup>2</sup> (hoc est<sup>3</sup> falsum per falsum) narratur, ut patet in fabulis Æsopi et Aviani. Et nec istæ ad philosophos<sup>4</sup> spectant. Aut etiam res vera per ficta narratur, quales sunt fictitiæ Hesiodi et Orphei de deorum actu et progenie; et hujusmodi<sup>5</sup> non est fabula sed fabulosa narratio, quæ si fiat per obscœna, turpia, vel monstruosa, non spectat ad philosophos<sup>4</sup> nec ad theologos; sed illa quæ narrantur per pia et honesta ad philosophos pertinent. Sic Plato finxit quendam militem Er<sup>6</sup> nomine surrexisse a mortuis,<sup>7</sup> et multa de animæ immortalitate narrasse; sic<sup>8</sup> finxit Tullius Scipionem somniasse de animæ immortalitate.<sup>9</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>10</sup> Et Boethius finxit Philosophiam in specie puellæ sibi<sup>11</sup> apparuisse. <sup>12</sup> His modis<sup>13</sup> poterit theologus uti temperate, excepto penultimo<sup>14</sup> modo. *Petrus*.<sup>15</sup> Tempore Ayoth Apollo ille posterior,<sup>16</sup> filius Latonæ secundum traditionem Græcorum, artem medicinæ invenit, et lyram condidit.

Apollo  
medicinæ  
et lyræ  
inventor.

Alii lyræ  
conditorem  
Mercurium  
asserunt.

*Ranulphus*.<sup>17</sup> Veruntamen, secundum Isidorum libro tertio Etym., Mercurius postmodum sub diebus<sup>18</sup> Ge-

<sup>1</sup> *aut*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *et*, ins. B.

<sup>3</sup> *quando*, ins. B.

<sup>4</sup> *spectant . . . philosophos*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> So A.; *hujus*, E.

<sup>6</sup> *Eer*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *a mortuis*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *sicut*, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *sic . . . immortalitate*] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *sibi*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Omnibus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *prædictis*, ins. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *ultimo*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *Petrus*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Mercurius*, ins. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *tempore*, C.D.

ordre of tellynge of þe þing þat is i-feyned is feynngliche TREVISA.  
 i-tolde; þat is to menyng, oo fals is tolde by a noþer false. —  
 So it fareþ in Esopus his fables and in Auian his fables also;  
 and þese fables longeþ nouȝt to filosofres.<sup>1</sup> Also somtyme  
 a soþ sawe is i-tolde by a feynng<sup>2</sup> tale; and soche were þe  
 feynnges of Hesiodus<sup>3</sup> and of Orpheus, whan he spekeþ<sup>4</sup> of  
 dyuers dedes and kynde of goodes;<sup>5</sup> and such a tale is no fable,  
 but a tale liche a fable. And if suche a tale is i-tolde by lik-  
 nesse of foule þing and harlotrie, þan it longeþ nouȝt too phi-  
 losofres [neþer to dyuynes; but sicke as beþ tolde by liknesse  
 of feirnesse and of honeste perteyneþ to filosofhris].<sup>6</sup> So  
 Plato feynede þat a knyȝt, þat heet Er, aros from<sup>7</sup> dep to  
 lyue, and tolde meny þinges of þe euerlastyng lyf of manis  
 soule. R. And Boys<sup>8</sup> feynede þat Filosofye appered to  
 hym in þe lyknesse of a mayde; in þis manere may a deuyn<sup>9</sup>  
 vse ensamples manerliche in his talkyng and spekyng.  
*Petrus.* In Ayoth his tyme þe lattre Apollo,<sup>10</sup> þat was Latona  
 his<sup>11</sup> sone, as þe Grees telleþ, fond vþ þe art of phisik and made  
 harpe.<sup>12</sup> R. Nopelas Isidorus, libro 3<sup>o</sup>, Etym., seiþ þat Mercu-

the ordre of the narracion of the thyng y-feynede, that MS. HARL.  
 is feynede falsely, and telled by a fals thyng; and these 2261.  
 fables perteyne not to a philosophre; as the fables of Isop  
 and Auian. Other elles a trewe thyng is rehersed by a  
 feynede thyng, as the seyenges of Esiodus and of Orpheus  
 of the acte and progeny of goddes; and that is not a  
 fable, but a fabulous narracion; whiche perteyne not to  
 philosophres and to diuines. But fables whiche be re-  
 hersed by meke thynges and honeste, as Plato feynede a  
 knyȝhte, Er by name, to haue risen from dethe, and to  
 haue schewede mony thynges of the immortalite of the  
 sawle. Soe in lyke wise Tullius feynede Scipio to haue  
 dreamed of the immortalite of the sawle. R. Also Boe-  
 tius, the grete clerke, feynede philosophy to haue appered  
 to hym. A diuyn may vse these maneres, the laste  
 maner excepte but oon. *Petrus.* The latere Apollo, son  
 of Latona, after the wrytenge of men of Grewe, founde  
 the arte of medicines, and made an harpe, in the tyme of  
 Aioth. R. And, after Isidorus, Ethymol., libro 3<sup>o</sup>, that man

<sup>1</sup> Clause varied in Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *feyned*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Esiodus*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *they spak*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Goddes*, Cx.; the more usual  
 orm in MS. also.

<sup>6</sup> Added from B. γ.

<sup>7</sup> *som*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *Boece*, B. Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *dyuyn*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *Appollo*, MSS.

<sup>11</sup> *Latonaes*, Cx.; both forms are  
 instructive.

<sup>12</sup> *harpes*, Cx.

deonis ad lyram sic<sup>1</sup> inventam septem chordas addidit, et in<sup>2</sup> nervos sonum strinxit in hunc modum: Cum Nilus post suam inundationem regrederetur in<sup>3</sup> proprios meatus, variaque in campis animalia reliquisset<sup>4</sup> mortua, relictæ est et<sup>5</sup> testudo; quæ<sup>6</sup> putrefacta nervi extendebantur infra corium<sup>7</sup> conchæ, qui ad tenuem auram sonum<sup>8</sup> reddebant. Quod comperiens Mercurius ad ejus similitudinem<sup>9</sup> lyram condidit, et<sup>10</sup> Orpheo citharædo tradidit. *Petrus.* Illis etiam temporibus præfatus Mercurius syringas<sup>11</sup> invenit, quæ sunt musica instrumenta de fistulis seu calamis composita; quorum nomen tractum<sup>12</sup> est<sup>13</sup> a Syringe<sup>14</sup> uxore Cadmi,<sup>15</sup> quæ propter zelum harmoniæ a viro suo recessit.<sup>16</sup> Incertum est autem quis fuit iste Mercurius, an Hermes, an Trimegistus philosophus, an Mercurius ille major;<sup>17</sup> nam<sup>18</sup> apud Josephum tres leguntur Mercurii. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo vij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>19</sup> Eo

De sy-  
ringe.

<sup>1</sup> sic] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> in] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> ad, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> relictæ essent, C.; relictæ fuissent, D.

<sup>5</sup> etiam] om. B.; etiam et, D.

<sup>6</sup> quæ, B.; de qua, A.

<sup>7</sup> So D.E.; cornu, A.B., which is perhaps right.

<sup>8</sup> sibilum, A.B.C.D.

<sup>9</sup> speciem, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> et] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> seringas, B.

<sup>12</sup> tractatum, B.

<sup>13</sup> trahitur, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> Siringa, B.; Siringa, A.D.E.

<sup>15</sup> Cadene, B.

<sup>16</sup> recesserat, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> minor, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> nam . . . Mercurii] qui fuit nepos majoris Mercurii apud Josephum, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> capitulo vij<sup>o</sup>] om. B.C.D. The true reference is lib. v. c. 39.



rius afterward in Gedcon<sup>1</sup> his tyme putte seuene strenges to þe harpe, þat was to fore honde i-founde; and þey putte to þe strenges and streyned hem in þis manere. Þe ryuer Nilus<sup>2</sup> had be vppe and byflowe þe lond and was a falle<sup>3</sup> into þe chanel aȝen, þan lay many beestes dede on þe feeldes, and among opere lay a dede snayle. Whan þis snayl was i-roted, þe senewes<sup>4</sup> were i-streyned with ynne þe skyn of þe snayles hous, and sownede as þe wynde blewe þerynne<sup>5</sup> esiliche and softeliche. Þan Mercurius took hede<sup>6</sup> þerto and made an harpe to þe liknesse þerof, and took hit to Orpheus þe harpouer. *Trevisa*. I rede among þe wondres of Ynde, þat snayles beþ þere so grete and so huge þat a man may be herborwed in a snayles hous. *Petrus*.<sup>7</sup> Also þat tyme þe forseide Mercurius fonde vp an instrument of musyk þat hatte Syringa [by the name of that woman Syringa]<sup>8</sup> þat was Cadmus<sup>9</sup> his wif. She<sup>10</sup> wente away from hire housbonde for loue of musyk and melodie. It is vn-certeynte whiche Mercurius þis was; wheþer Mercurius Hermes, oper Mercurius Trimegistus þe filosofre, oper þe [grete]<sup>11</sup> Mercurius; for Iosephus spekeþ of þre, of þe whiche eueriche heet Mercurius. *Isidorus, libro quinto*.<sup>12</sup> Also þat tyme in Gres

TREVISA.

Mercurius did adde to the harpe vij. cordes, in the tyme of Gedeon, and streynede þeim in to a sownde in this maner folowenge. When that grete floode callede of Nilus after the flooenge of hit returnede ageyne, levenge diuerse bestes in the feldes, a schelle fische was lefte also, whiche putrefiede, the senowes of hit were extente within the couerenge of that fische, whiche ȝafe a lytelle sownde; Mercurius perceyvenge that, made an harpe vn to the similitude of hit, and toke hit to Orpheus the nowble harper. *Petrus*. The seide Mercurius fonde in that tyme siringas, whiche be musicalle instrumentes made of pipes other reedes, whiche name was taken of Siringa, wife to Cadmus, whiche departede from here howsebonde for the luffe of armony. But hit is not hade in certitude what Mercury this was, wheder hit was Hermes, other Trimegistus the filosofher, other elles grete Mercurius. For Iosephus rehersethe that there were thre nowble men callede by that name Mercurius. *Isidorus, Ethym., libro 5<sup>to</sup>, et*

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> So  $\gamma$ . Cx. ; *Gedion*, MSS.<sup>2</sup> *Salus*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *was ebbed*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *senwes*,  $\alpha$ .<sup>5</sup> *þeron*,  $\alpha$ .  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . and Cx.<sup>6</sup> *hede*] om. MS.<sup>7</sup> Reference added from Cx.<sup>8</sup> Added from  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ . Cx.<sup>9</sup> *Cadynus*, MS. (not Cx.) Various slight errors in spelling proper names have been tacitly corrected in this and the following chapters.<sup>10</sup> *he*,  $\alpha$ . ; *heo*,  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .<sup>11</sup> Added from  $\beta$ .  $\gamma$ .<sup>12</sup> So  $\alpha$ . and Cx. (who has *sexto*); *Petrus*, MS.

quoque<sup>1</sup> tempore chorus in Græcia repertus est.<sup>2</sup> *Petrus*, *vj*<sup>o</sup>.<sup>3</sup> Quod quidem instrumentum Strabus<sup>4</sup> dicit esse pellem cum duabus cicutis, per quarum<sup>5</sup> alteram inspiratur<sup>6</sup> et<sup>7</sup> per<sup>8</sup> alteram<sup>9</sup> sonus redditur.

## CAP. XIX.

*De Delbora, et de ultimis Argivorum, et de primis Laurentinorum regibus.*<sup>10</sup>

Delbora  
vel  
Debora.

*Augustinus de Civitate, libro xvij<sup>o</sup>., capitulo xvij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>11</sup> Delbora prophetissa de tribu Ephraim simul cum Barak de tribu Neptalim, connumeratis viginti annis quibus Jaby<sup>n</sup><sup>12</sup> rex Chanaan afflixit<sup>13</sup> Israel, rexit populum<sup>14</sup> quadraginta annis. In cujus diebus reges Argivorum defecerunt, qui quingentis quadraginta annis regnaverunt a primo<sup>15</sup> Inacho usque ad tempora Pelopis primi Peloponnesensium regis. Et tunc translatum est regnum ad<sup>16</sup> Mycen<sup>a</sup>s.<sup>17</sup> Eo<sup>18</sup> tempore cœpit regnum Laurentinorum in Italia, ubi post mortem Jani et Saturni, qui diu ibidem regnaverant, Picus filius Saturni<sup>19</sup> cœpit regnare. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo.* Circa illud tempus obiit Dionysus,<sup>20</sup> qui et Liber pater dicitur, qui ali-

Anno Del. 1.  
Anno Abr. 691.

Dionysus  
moritur ;  
ejus sepul-  
chrum  
adhuc  
ostenditur.

<sup>1</sup> *etiam*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *adinventus est*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *vj*<sup>o</sup>] om. A.D.

<sup>4</sup> So A.B.C.D. ; *Strabus*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *aquarum*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *inspirator*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *per*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *aliam*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>11</sup> A.B.C.D. omit reference. It should be lib. xviii. c. 15.

<sup>12</sup> *Jabin*, A.D.

<sup>13</sup> *oppressit*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *rexit populum*] So A.D. ; om. E. ; *regens populum Israel*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *scilicet*, ins. B.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> So A.B., om. E. ; *usque ad*, C. ; *usque*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *Mecenas*, A.B. ; *Micenas*, D.

<sup>18</sup> *quoque*, ins. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *jam*, ins. D.

<sup>20</sup> *Dionisius*, MSS. and Harl. MS. as usual.

was i-founde vp an instrument of musyk þat hatte chorus. TREVISA.  
*Petrus.* Strabus seiþ þat þat instrument is a skynne<sup>1</sup> wip tweie  
 pipes ; by oon pipe þe ayer gooþ yn, and by þe oþer þe soun  
 gooþ out.

*Capitulum nonum decimum.*

*Augustinus, de Civitate, libro 18º, capitulo 13º.* Delbora þat womman was a prophetes of the lynage of Effraym. Þis Delbora wip Barach of þe lynage of Neptalym rulede þe peple of Israel fourty ʒere, for to rekene twenty ʒere in þe whiche Iabyn kyng of Canaan pursued Israel. In hir tyme kynges of Argyues faillede þat hadde i-regned fyue hondred ʒere and fourty, þat was from þe firste Inachus to þe firste Pelops his tyme, kyng of þe Peloponenses ; and þanne þe kyngdom tornede to þe Mecenes.<sup>2</sup> Þat tyme bygan þe kyngdom of Laurentynes in Italy. After þe deth of Ianus and Saturnus þat hadde longe i-regned þere, þere regned Picus Saturnus his sone. *Augustinus de Civitate, ubi supra.* Aboute þat tyme deyde Denys þat heet also Liber Pater, þat werred in

---

*Petrus.* A instrumente callede chorus, other a chore, was MS. HARL.  
 founde in Grece, of fewe cordes and strynges, whiche is 2261.  
 callede nowe a crowthe or a crowde.

*Capitulum decimum nonum.*

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo tertio.* The xx<sup>ti</sup> yere of Barach annumerate, whiche was of the tribe of Neptalym, in whom Iabyn, kyng of Canaan, trowblede þe peple of Israel, Delbora, the prophetisse of the tribe of Effraym, gouernede the peple of Israel xl<sup>ti</sup> yere. In the dayes of whom the kynges of men callede Argyues began to fayle, whiche reignede v<sup>c</sup>. and xl<sup>ti</sup> yere from Inachus to Pelopis firste kyng of men of Peloponense ; and then the realme of Argyues was translate to Micenas. In whiche tyme the realme of Laurentines began in Ytaly, where Picus the son of Saturnus began to reigne after the dethe of his fader and of Ianus, whiche reignede there longe. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Dionysus other Liber pater diede abowte thys tyme, whiche ʒiffenge batelle to

---

<sup>1</sup> is a skynne] om. Cx. .

| <sup>2</sup> So a. and Cx. ; *Macenes*, MS.

quando Indiam debellans habuit foeminas cum viris mixtas in suo exercitu ; tandem tamen devincebatur<sup>1</sup> a Perseo. Ejus sepulchrum<sup>2</sup> aureum adhuc ostenditur in Thessalia juxta Apollinem Delphicum in<sup>3</sup> Parnasso. Rex Mida. Mida<sup>4</sup> rex dives sub hoc tempore regnavit in Phrygia, de quo poetæ multa confixerunt, sicut patet in Mythologia et<sup>5</sup> Fulgentii et Alexandri.<sup>6</sup> Et Ilium ab Ilium con- ditur. Ilio<sup>7</sup> filio Apollinis condita est in<sup>8</sup> Troja.

## CAP. XX.

*De Gedeon, Minoe, et Dædalo.*

Gedeon. Gedeon sive Jheroboal, connumeratis<sup>9</sup> octo annis Anno Ged. 1. Anno Abr. 731. quibus Israel servivit Madianitis et Amalechitis, rexit populum<sup>10</sup> Israel quadraginta annis; in cujus diebus, secundum Josephum, Tyrus civitas condita est ducentesimo quadragesimo circiter anno<sup>11</sup> ante templum Minos. Salamonis. Petrus, quarto.<sup>12</sup> Minos, rex Cretæ, filius Jovis, tunc temporis mare obtinuit, et legem Creten- sibus dedit.<sup>13</sup> Quo in tempore Theseus, filius Ægei regis Athenarum,<sup>14</sup> vir strenuus, Minotaurum in agone

<sup>1</sup> *vincebatur*, C.D., which trans- pose other words.

<sup>2</sup> *sepulchrum*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *monte*, ins. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Midas*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *et*] om. A.

<sup>6</sup> *de . . . Alexandri*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Ilio*, MSS.

<sup>8</sup> *in*] om. E.

<sup>9</sup> *annumeratis*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *populum*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *in . . . anno*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Petrus, quarto*] om. C.D.; *quarto*, om. A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *Petrus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *regis Athenarum*] om. C.D.

Inde, and hadde in his oost men and wommen i-medled to gedres. Nopeles at þe laste Perseus slowþ hym. His goldene buriels is ʒit i-seyn<sup>1</sup> in Thessalia bysides Appolyn Delphicus in mount Parnassus. Mida þe riche kyng regnede þat tyme in Frigia; of hym poetes feynede meny þinges, as it is i-write in Mythologia Fulgentii and Alexandri. And Ilus,<sup>2</sup> Appolyn his sone, bulde Ilium in Troye. TREVISA.  
—

*Capitulum vicesimum.*

GEDEON, þat heet Iheroboal, was ledere of Israel fourty ʒere, forto rekene<sup>3</sup> eiʒte ʒere þat Israel seruede Midianites and Amalachites. Iosephus seiþ þat þe citee Tyrus was i-bulde in Gedeon his tyme, aboute an<sup>4</sup> two hondred ʒere and fourty to fore Salomon his temple. *Petrus.* Minos, kyng of Creta, Iupiter his sone, occupied þe see þat [tyme and ʒaf lawe to þe men of Creta. þat tyme]<sup>5</sup> þe strong man Theseus, Egeus þe kynges sone of Athene, slowþ Minotaurus in þe tornemente. Þerfore

---

men of Ynde, hade wommen mixte with men in his hoste. But at the laste he was deuicte of Perseus, whose sepulcre of golde is schewed ʒitte in Thessalia, nye to Apollo Delphicus in Parnassus.<sup>6</sup> Mida, the riche kynge, reignede abowte this tyme in Frigia, of whom poetes feynede mony thynges, as hit is schewede in Methologe of Fulgentius and of Alexander. And also a cite callede Ilium was edificede and made in Troy by Ilus the son of Apollo. MS. HARL.  
2261.  
—

*Capitulum vicesimum.*

THE viij. yere connumerate in whom the peple of Israel seruene the Madianites, Gedeon other Iherobal gouernede the peple of Israel xl<sup>ii</sup> yere. In the thyme of whom, after Iosephus, that cite callede Tirus was made, abowte cc. and xl<sup>ii</sup> yere afore the makege of the temple of Salomon. *Petrus.* Minos kynge of Creta, son of Iupiter, obteynede that tyme the see, and ʒafe lawe to men of Creta. In whiche tyme Theseus, the son of Egeus, kynge of Athenes, a myʒhty man, whiche ouercome a beste

<sup>1</sup> *seie, a.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ilius, Cx.; Iulius, MS. and a.*

<sup>3</sup> *So a. and Cx.; reigne, MS.*

<sup>4</sup> *So MS. a. β. γ.*

<sup>5</sup> *Added from a. and Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *Parnasus, Harl. MS.*

interemit; quam ob causam Athenienses qui prius tributarii fuerant a præstatione vectigalis liberabantur.<sup>1</sup> Fuit autem Minotaurus vir quidam inhumanus multum valens in lucta palæstræ. Et etiam fuit carnifex regis Minois; qui ideo sic dictus est, quasi Minois<sup>3</sup> taurus, id est, Carnifex. Circa illud<sup>4</sup> tempus Theseus Helenam rapuit, quam rursus fratres sui Castor et Pollux re-duxerunt, capta matre<sup>5</sup> Theseoque peregre profugato.<sup>6</sup> Dædalus. Eo quoque<sup>7</sup> tempore Dædalus<sup>8</sup> fertur floruisse. Hic fecit aves metallinas volare artificioso spiritu incluso. Dicitur etiam fecisse simulacra sese moventia. Primus enim omnium pedes statuarum a se invicem divisit,<sup>9</sup> cum<sup>10</sup> cæteri eos conjungerent.<sup>11</sup> *Isidorus*,<sup>12</sup> *libro nono*.<sup>13</sup> Hic Dædalus habuit nepotem, Perdicem nomine, quem erudiendum susceperat; qui factus ingeniosus, dum materiæ dividendæ compendium quæreret, spinam piscis imitatus<sup>14</sup> laminam ferri exasperavit, quam<sup>15</sup> dentium<sup>16</sup> mordacitate armavit, quam modo<sup>17</sup> serram<sup>18</sup> nominamus. Hic quoque puer excogitavit primus usum circini; quamobrem Dædalus magister suus invidia

<sup>1</sup> So B.; *liberantur*, A.D.E.

<sup>2</sup> Transposed in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Minois*, A.E. (not D.); but *Minoys* or *Minois* above.

<sup>4</sup> *idem*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Thesei*, ins. A.C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *profecto*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *eoque*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *faber*, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *separavit*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *tamen*, ins. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *conjunctos eos fucerent*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Petrus*, B.

<sup>13</sup> 19<sup>o</sup>, A. correctly. See lib. xix. c. 19.

<sup>14</sup> *imitando*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *quam*] *quia*, E.

<sup>16</sup> *dentium*] om. B.

<sup>17</sup> *et*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *sarram*, A.D.

men of Athene þat were tributarii to forhonde<sup>1</sup> were quyt and free of al tribute. Minotaurus was a grete man and huge, myȝty and strong, and a wiȝt wrastlere,<sup>2</sup> and was kyng Minois his bocher. Þerfore he was i-cleped as it were Minois taurus, þat is a bocher. Aboute þat tyme Theseus rauesched Eleyne;<sup>3</sup> and here tweye breperen Castor and Pollux fette hir, and brouȝt hir aȝen, and took Theseus moder and chasede Theseus out of contray. Also me seiþ þat Dedalus was þat tyme in his floures. Þis Dedalus made briddes<sup>4</sup> of metal by craft of<sup>5</sup> spirit enclosed<sup>6</sup> for to flee aboute. Me seiþ also þat he made ymages þat meued hem self. He was þe firste þat departede feet of ymages atwynne; ffor oþer men ioyned hem to gidres. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Þis Dedalus hadde a newew þat heet Perdix,<sup>7</sup> and fenge hym to his lore. Þis Perdix wax sotil and connyng of craft, and hypouȝt hym<sup>8</sup> for to haue som spedful manere cleuyng of tymber, and took a plate of iren, and fyled it, and made it i-toped<sup>9</sup> as a rugge<sup>10</sup> boon of a fische, and þanne it was a sawe. Also þis childe hypouȝt hym and made þe firste compas, and wrouȝt þerwip. Þerfore his mayster Dedalus took greet envie to þe childe, and þrewe hym doun of an hiȝe toure,

TREVISA.

called Minotaurus; for whiche acte men of Athenes, whiche were tributaries afore, were delyuerede from that seruitute. Minotaurus was a myȝhty man, and as a gigante hauenge grete strenȝhte, whiche was the bocheor of kyng Minois, called Minotaurus, as the bocheor of kyng Minois. Theseus toke away Helena abowte this tyme, whom Castor and Pollux, breper to here, broughte ageyne with the moder of Theseus, Theseus fleenge in to other cuntres for helpe. In whiche tyme Dedalus is seide to haue bene, whiche made bryddes of metalle to flye thro spirittes includede in theyme. Also hit is seide that he made simi-lacres movenge theym selfe. Whiche diuidede firste the feete of ymages a sundre, for other men ioynede theyme to gedre. *Isidorus, libro nono.* This Dedalus hade with hym the son of his doȝhter, Perdix by name, whiche founde firste an instrumente whom men calle a sae. Also this childe founde firste the vse of a compasse, wherefore Dedalus his maister caste hym downe from a towre. Therefore Deda-

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> byfore, Cx.<sup>2</sup> and ful delyure in wrastling, Cx., who otherwise varies the sentence.<sup>3</sup> Eleyne, Cx.; Helen, a.<sup>4</sup> byrdes, Cx.<sup>5</sup> of] and, a. β. γ. Cx.<sup>6</sup> i-closed, a.; closed, Cx.<sup>7</sup> So Cx.; *Pardix*, MS., here and below.<sup>8</sup> Cx. adds, *in his ymaginacion.*<sup>9</sup> I topped, a.<sup>10</sup> rigge, Cx.

ductus præcipitavit eum de quadam arce.<sup>1</sup> Inde<sup>2</sup> Dædalus cum Icaro filio suo apud Cretam fugiens devenit Siciliam; ubi et<sup>3</sup> primo fecit labyrinthum.<sup>4</sup> *Petrus, sexto.*<sup>5</sup> Idcirco propter celerem<sup>6</sup> et investigabilem fugam ejus post homicidium perpetratum fingitur pennis volasse.<sup>7</sup> *Isidorus libro quintodecimo.* Labyrinthus<sup>8</sup> est ædificium quoddam ex perplexis parietibus compositum, ubi fuit Minotaurus inclusus; quo siquis sine glomere filii ingrederetur, exitum facile<sup>9</sup> non reperiret. Aperientibusque<sup>10</sup> in ea fores tonitrus terribilis audiebatur. *Hugutio, capitulo Labyrinthus.* Descenditur<sup>11</sup> quasi gradibus centum; transitus ibi sunt quasi innumeri<sup>12</sup> per tenebras. Et sunt quatuor tales domus in orbe:<sup>13</sup> una<sup>14</sup> Ægyptia,<sup>15</sup> secunda Cretica,<sup>16</sup> tertia in Lemno<sup>17</sup> insula, quarta in Italia. Omnes quidem ita constructæ<sup>18</sup> ut vix per sæcula dissolvi<sup>19</sup> queant. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.*<sup>20</sup> Denique cum Athenienses laborarent pestilentia pro morte Icaro et Erigones<sup>21</sup> filiæ suæ, et virgines Athenienses quasi ad laqueum compellerentur, responsum est ab<sup>22</sup> Apolline

Labyrinthus.

Quatuor Labyrinthi.

Mors Icaro; peste laborant Athenienses.

<sup>1</sup> *arce*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *Unde*, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *labyrinthum*, MSS. Various written below.

<sup>5</sup> *sexto*] om. A.B.D.

<sup>6</sup> So A.B.; *celebrem*, E.

<sup>7</sup> The two preceding sentences are varied and transposed in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Laberintum*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *facile*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *apparentibusque*, B.; *a parietibus quæ*, C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *in illo*, ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *centum . . . innumeri*] *innumerus*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *in orbe*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *una, &c.*] unus, &c., all masculine in MSS. It is harsh to understand *labyrinthus*; and Higden could hardly intend *domus* to be masculine. (See vol. I. p. 216, &c.)

<sup>15</sup> *apud Ægyptios*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *in Creta*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Lempo*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *constructi*, MSS.

<sup>19</sup> *solvi*, B.

<sup>20</sup> 2540, C. (not D.)

<sup>21</sup> *Erigonis*, MSS., and so below.

<sup>22</sup> *ab*] om. A.



and brak his nekke. Þerfore Dedalus wip his sone Icarus<sup>1</sup> at Creta flize and come in to Sicilia,<sup>2</sup> and þere he made first laborinthus.<sup>3</sup> *Petrus.* For Dedalus fliz away so swiftliche after þe manslauzt,<sup>4</sup> me feyneþ þat he fleyz wip wynges as a bryd by þe ayer. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo.* Laborinthus is a manere buldyng wonderliche i-bulde wip daungers<sup>5</sup> walles; þerynne Minotaurus was i-closed. 3if eny man wente þider yn wip oute a clewe of prede, it were ful harde to fynde a way out. Þey þat oponed þe 3ates schulde here dredful þondringe. *Hugutio, capitulo Labor.* Me goop adoun [as hit were]<sup>6</sup> by an hondred grees:<sup>7</sup> þere beep also in derkenesse wonder meny dyuers wyndynges and tornynges; and suche foure beep in þis worlde of suche hous;<sup>8</sup> oon in Egipt, anoper in Creta, þe þridde in þe ylond Lemno,<sup>9</sup> and þe ferþe in Italy; and beep so i-made þat vnneþe þey mowe be destroyed, while þe worlde dureþ. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.* Whanne þere fel a pestilence among men of Athene<sup>10</sup> for þe deth of Icarus and his douzter Erigon, and maydens of Athene were compelled as it were to snarles and greues, þanne þei hadde

TREVISA.

lus fleenge with Icarus<sup>1</sup> his son to that yle callede Creta, MS. HARL. come afterwarde to Sicilia,<sup>2</sup> and made a mase þere firste. 2261. *Petrus.* Whom men feyne to haue flyede, for the swifte flizhte of hym after that he hade doen that offense. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo.* A turnenge, other elles a mase, is a thyng made with mony turnenges, and a man entrence in to hit with owte a clewe of threde, can not comme furthe from hit ageyne li3htely, and also a thundre dothe appere to men openenge the dures of hit. *Hugutio, capitulo Labor.* To whom men goe downe as by a c. grees, the weies þer be as innumerable by derkenesse, and þer be iiij. suche places in the worlde; oon is in Egipte, an other is in Creta, the thrydde is in the yle callede Lemnus,<sup>9</sup> the iiij<sup>the</sup> is in Italy; whiche be made soe that thei can not be destroyede vn to the ende of the worlde. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.* When men of Athenes laborede in þe pestilence for the dethe of Icarus, and of Erigon his dozhter, and virgynes were compellede as vn to hongenge, hit was answerede to theyme by Apollo Del-

<sup>1</sup> *Icarus*, MSS., and so below.<sup>2</sup> *Scicilia*, MSS.; *Scilicia*, Harl. MS.<sup>3</sup> Cx. adds, *otherwysecallyd a mase.*<sup>4</sup> *after he had slayn his newew*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *daungerous*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> Added from *α.* and Cx.<sup>7</sup> *grees or steppes*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *houses*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *Lempno*, MS. Similarly Harl. MS.<sup>10</sup> MS. has some words repeated.

Pestis  
remedium.

Delphico illam pestem<sup>1</sup> sedari non posse<sup>2</sup> nisi<sup>3</sup> Ieari et Erigones cadavera requirerentur. Quæ cum<sup>4</sup> diu quæsita reperiri non possent, ad ostendendum devotionem quam ad inquirendum habuerant,<sup>5</sup> ut in alio elemento viderentur quærere quod in terra reperire non possent, Athenienses suspendebant funes in aëre, ad quos homines innexi huc et illuc agitabantur, ut sic viderentur quærere in aëre cadavera prædicta. At dum<sup>6</sup> inde<sup>7</sup> caderent homines et læderentur, statutum fuit apud illos<sup>8</sup> ut statuæ illis cadaveribus<sup>9</sup>

Oscillum  
unde  
derivatur.

similes imponerentur et sic moverentur. Ludus autem ille apud Latinos vocatur *Ocillum*, quod componitur a *cilleo -les* quod est moveo, et *os, oris*, quia sic agitati<sup>10</sup> in ora hominum<sup>11</sup> movebantur.

<sup>1</sup> *pestem*] So A.B.C.D. ; om. E.

<sup>2</sup> *non posse*] om. E. ; *posse*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *nisi*] so B.C.D. ; *si*, A.E

<sup>4</sup> *dum*, B.D.

<sup>5</sup> *quam . . . habuerant*] suam, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *cum*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Ac dummodo*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *eos*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *cadaveribus*] om. C.D., which is better.

<sup>10</sup> *innexi*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *trahentium*, C.D., which trans-  
pose various words in this extract.

answere of Appolyn Delphicus þat þe pestilence myȝt cese, TREVISA.  
 ȝif þey souȝte besiliche þe bodyes of Iearus and his douȝter  
 Erigon. Ðan þey souȝte besiliche, and whanne þey hadde  
 longe i-souȝt and myȝte nouȝt<sup>1</sup> fynde,<sup>2</sup> for to schewe þe  
 deuocion and wil þat þey hadde forto seche [and]<sup>3</sup> forto be  
 seie seche besiliche in anoper element þat þey myȝte nouȝt  
 fynde in erþe, men of Athene heng<sup>4</sup> vp ropes in þe ayer and  
 men totrede þeron and meued hider and þider; for þey wolde  
 be seie seche þe bodies in þe aier aboue þe erþe. And whan  
 men [fel]<sup>5</sup> of þe totres and were i-herre sore,<sup>6</sup> it was i-ordeyned  
 among hem þat images i-liche to þe bodies schulde be sette  
 in þe totros,<sup>7</sup> and meue and totery in stede of hem þat were  
 a-falle. Þat game is cleped ocillum in Latyn, and is com-  
 powned and i-mayde of tweyne, of cilleo cilles þat is forto  
 mene<sup>8</sup> *toterynge*,<sup>9</sup> and os oris þat is a *moup*; for þey þat  
 totred so mouede aȝenst men mouþes.

phicus that pestilence to be mitigate if thei wolde inquire MS. HARL.  
 the cariones and bodies of Iearus and of Erigon his 2261.  
 douȝter. Whiche inquirede longe cowthe not be founde,  
 men of Athenes schewenge a deuocion to the inquisicion  
 of theyme, as to make inquisicion to fynde in an oper ele-  
 mente that thei cowthe not fynde in the erthe, honged  
 ropes in the aier, to whom men fixede were seen to move  
 in the aier. And when that men felle downe and were  
 hurte, ymages were made lyke to theyme, and movede þer  
 in the ropes. And men of Latyn calle that play ocillum,  
 whiche worde takethe composicion of this worde *cilleo es*,  
 that is, to move, and of this worde *os oris* for a mowthe;  
 for men steryde in that wyse were mouede towarde the  
 mowthes of men.

<sup>1</sup> *nowther*, Cx. ; *nowhar*, B. γ.

<sup>2</sup> *fynde in erþe*, MS. (not a. β. γ. or Cx.)

<sup>3</sup> Added from conjecture; but perhaps the five words following should be cancelled.

<sup>4</sup> *hyng*, a.

<sup>5</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *i-hurt*, a.

<sup>7</sup> *totres*, a., Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *meoue*, a.

<sup>9</sup> *toterynge*] om. a. and Cx.

## CAP. XXI.

*Abimelech et Thola judicant Israel. De Fauno; item  
de Amazonibus.<sup>1</sup>*

De Abimelech. ABIMELECH, filius Gedeon<sup>2</sup> sive Jeroboal,<sup>3</sup> ex concubina natus, dux fuit<sup>4</sup> in Sichem<sup>5</sup> tribus annis post<sup>1</sup> patrem, et occidit septuaginta fratres suos ex variis uxoribus progenitos excepto uno.<sup>6</sup> Eoque<sup>7</sup> tempore Atheniense<sup>8</sup> bellum fuit inter Lapithas<sup>9</sup> et Centauros, quos Palæphatus libro De Incredibilibus dicit fuisse<sup>10</sup> nobiles equites Thessalorum, qui pugnabant contra<sup>11</sup> Thebæos.<sup>12</sup> Thola de tribu Isachar<sup>13</sup> judicavit Israel viginti tribus annis, cujus anno quarto Medea discessit<sup>14</sup> a viro suo Ægeio, Atheniensium<sup>15</sup> rege, usque ad Colchos insulam unde fuit oriunda. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio.* Circa hos dies Faunus filius Pici regnavit in Italia, sub quo Evander de finibus Arcadiæ<sup>16</sup> veniens agros<sup>17</sup> et montem Palatinum accepit. Huic Fauno fuit<sup>18</sup> uxor nomine Fatua, spiritu vatidico frequenter<sup>19</sup> repleta, unde et<sup>20</sup> adhuc qui inspirari solent fatuari<sup>21</sup> dicuntur. Ex filia<sup>22</sup> hujus<sup>23</sup> Fauni et Hercule,<sup>24</sup> qui tunc extincto Geryone gigante<sup>25</sup> rege

<sup>1</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>2</sup> So A.B.E.; *Gedeonis*, C.D.;

<sup>3</sup> *sive Jeroboal*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *regnavit*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Sichen*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *solo*, ins. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Eo quoque*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *apud Athenienses*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Lahitas*, B.; *Laphitas*, D.E.

<sup>10</sup> *centum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *adversus*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Thebas*, C.; *Thebes*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *Isacar*, A.

<sup>14</sup> *descendit*, C.D. (first hand.)

<sup>15</sup> *Atheniensium*] Atheniensi, D.

<sup>16</sup> *Arcadiæ*] om. B.

<sup>17</sup> *aros*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *præfuit*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *assidue*, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *et*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>21</sup> *fatuati*, C.D. (first hand.)

<sup>22</sup> *quoque*, ins. C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *hujus*] om. B.

<sup>24</sup> *Herculis*, A.

<sup>25</sup> *gigante*] om. C.D.

*Capitulum vicesimum primum.*TREVISA.  
-----

ABYMALECH, Gedeon<sup>1</sup> his son i-bore of a concubyn, was ledere in Sichein after his fader pre zere, and slow his owne broþern pre score and ten, outtake oon, þat were i-bore of diuers wiues.<sup>2</sup> Þat tyme was þe batayle of Athene bytwene þe Laphites and Centaures. Palefatus, libro De Incredibilibus, seiþ þat þe Centaures<sup>3</sup> were noble hors men of Thessalia, þat fauþt azenst þe Thebes men of Thebe in Egipt. Thola of þe lynage of Isachar was iuge in Israel pre and twenty zere. In his fourþe zere Medea<sup>4</sup> wente from hire housbonde Egeus, kyng of Athene, in to þe ilonde Colchos, þere sche was i-bore. *Trogus*, 43. Aboute þat tyme Faunus [Picus his sone regnede in Italy. In his tyme Euander come out of Arcadia and feng fildes<sup>5</sup> and þe hil mount Palatyn. Þis Faunus]<sup>6</sup> had a wyf þat heet Fatua, and hadde ofte a spirit of prophecie. Þerfore 3it ofte þey þat haueþ a spirit of prophecie beþ i-cleped Fatui. Þoo Hercules hadde i-slawe Geryon þe geant, kyng of Spayne, and ladde

*Capitulum vicesimum primum.*MS. HARL.  
2261.  
-----

ABIMALECH, the son of Gedeon, geten of a concubyne, was gouernoure in Sichein iij. yere after his fader, whiche did slee lxx<sup>ti</sup> brether to hym, geten of diuerse women, oon excepte. In whiche tyme the batelle of Athenes betwene Laphites and Centaures, whom Palefatus, libro De Incredibilibus, seithe to haue ben nowble horse men of Thessalia whiche did fichte ageyne the Thebes. Thola, of the tribe of Ysachar, reignede on Israel xxiiij<sup>ti</sup> yere. In the iiij<sup>the</sup> yere of whom Medea wente from here howsebonde Egeus, kyng of Athenes, vn to that yle callede Colchos, where sche was borne. *Trogus, capitulo quadragesimo tertio.* Fanus, the son off Picus, reignede abowte this tyme in Ytaly, vnder whom Euander, of the costes of Archadia, commenge to those costes, toke the feldes and the mownte Palatyne. This Fanus hade a wife, Fatua by name, whiche was vexede moche with a spiritte, whereof peple so vexede now in this tyme bene seide to be fatuate, after the name

<sup>1</sup> So a.; *Geon*, MS.<sup>2</sup> So a and Cx.; *a concubyn*, MS.<sup>3</sup> So a.; *Sentaures*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *Meda*, MS., and so below. A few similar slight errors have beentacitly corrected in this chapter; as *Gereon, Synope, Archadia.*<sup>5</sup> *receyued and toke feldes*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

Hispaniæ armenta ejus in signum victoriæ per Italiam duxerat, stupro conceptus est Latinus ; qui postmodum

Vesores,  
rex  
Ægypti, a  
Scythis  
invaditur.

regnavit ibidem. *Orosius*,<sup>1</sup> *libro primo*. Circa hunc

Anno Abr. 790.  
Anno Tholæ 17.

annum *Vezoses*<sup>2</sup> rex Ægypti Scythis<sup>3</sup> bellum primo<sup>4</sup>

indixit,<sup>5</sup> missis tamen prius legatis qui hostibus legem

parendi indicerent.<sup>6</sup> Ad quod Scythæ sic<sup>7</sup> responde-

runt : “ Stolide rex opulentissimus adversus inopes

“ bellum movet, præsertim cum dubius sit belli eventus,

“ præmia nulla, sed damna manifesta.” Nec mora<sup>8</sup> quin

dictis facta<sup>9</sup> subsequuntur. Nam regem ad regnum

Ægypti redire compellunt, exercitum ejus spoliant et

invadunt, totamque Ægyptum spoliassent, nisi Nili

paludibus impediti fuissent. Inde<sup>10</sup> redeundo per quin-

decim annos Asiam conterentes vectigalem fecerunt ;

quibus denunciatum est ab uxoribus quod, nisi redi-

rent, sobolem sibi a finitimis locis quærerent. Medio

tempore apud Scythas duo regii juvenes per factionem

optimatum domo<sup>11</sup> pulsus, contracta secum ingenti mul-

<sup>1</sup> *Orosius* ] The rest of this chapter is omitted in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Vezoses*, A ; *Vezores*, B. The MSS. of *Orosius* (lib. i. c. 14) similarly vary. *Sesostris* is presumed to be intended.

<sup>3</sup> *Scitis*, A. ; *Schitis*, B. ; *Shitis*, E., and similarly below.

<sup>4</sup> *primus*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *induxit*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *inducerent*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *sic*] om. A.

<sup>8</sup> *moris*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *acta*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *in*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *domo*] *denuo*, A. ; *viatorum denuo*, B.

his bestes poruȝ Italy in token of þe victorie; he lay by þis Faunus his douȝter vnlawfulliche and gat Latinus,<sup>1</sup> þat regnede afterward in Itali. *Orosius, libro primo.* Aboute þis ȝere Vesores, kyng of Egipt, werred first aȝenst þe Scites; noȝles<sup>2</sup> firste he sente messagers and heet [his]<sup>3</sup> enemyes be soȝet to his lawe; and þe Scites answerede: "A dal kyng and most riche  
 " meueȝ bataile aȝenst pore men and nedy, nameliche while it  
 " douteȝ what ende þe batayle schal haue; profite comeȝ perof  
 " noon, but grete and opoun harme and damage." And nouȝt longe after the dede acordede<sup>4</sup> wiȝ þe answer; for þey compelled þe kyng of Egipt forto flee aȝen, and chasede and spoylede his oost, [and wolde have i-spoyled]<sup>5</sup> al Egipt, hadde þey nouȝt be lette by watres of þe ryuer Nilus. Þanne in þe tornynge aȝen þey werred fiftene ȝere in Asia, and made Asia tributarie; and here wiȝes sent hem worde, þat but þei wolde come home þey wolde haue children by men of þe contrayes aboute. Þe mene tyme among þe Scites tweye real ȝongelynges by fraude and deceyt of þe grete werre<sup>6</sup> i-putte

TREVISA.

of þat woman. Of the doȝhter of whom Hercules gate a son, Latynus by name, whiche reignede after hym, not gotten in trewe matrimony. *Orosius, libro primo.* Abowte whiche yere Vesores, kyng of Egipte, ȝafe<sup>7</sup> intendede to ȝiffe batelle to men of Scitia, sendenge to theyme messengers afore commaundede theyme to obey him. To whiche messangeres the men of Scithia ansuerede, seyng, that the plentuous kyng of Egipte intendede a symple thyng to move batelle ageyne poore men, sythe the chaunce of victory in batelle is in dowte, where he knowthe to haue noon avayle but grete hurtes and losse. Whiche thyng happede accordenge to the seyenge of theyme; for they compelledde the kyng off Egipte to returne, and pereschenge a grete parte of his hoste hade spoylede a grete parte of Egipte, but that þe water of Nilus was an impedimente to theyme. That peple of Scitia, returnenge towarde their cuntre, fauȝhte myȝhtely ageyne men of Asia, and made them their tributaries. The wiȝes of whom sende worde to them that thei wolde take men to them of oper cuntres to cause multiplication, withowte thei wolde comme home. Wherefore ij. nowble men were electe amonge theyme,

MS. HARL  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Lathinius*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *yet*, *Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> Added from *Cx.* (only), who varies the clause.

<sup>4</sup> *acord*, *Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> So MS.; *were*, *Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> Sic Harl. MS. Probably the word should be cancelled; if not, or must be added: *which* seems to be omitted after *afore*.

titudine, oram<sup>1</sup> Ponti et Cappadociae occuparunt,<sup>2</sup> ubi post multam depopulationem factam a finitimis viris trucidabantur. Quorum uxores exilio ac viduitate permotæ arma sumunt, ultionem pro maritis faciunt.

Amazones. Tunc pace armis quæsitâ externos<sup>3</sup> concubitus<sup>4</sup> ineunt, editos mares enecant, fœminas inustis dextris mammis reservant. Harum tandem duæ fuerunt reginæ Marcepia et Lapeto;<sup>5</sup> quæ agmine diviso vicissim curam belli et domus custodiam sortiebantur. Igitur cum Europam magna ex parte perdomuissent, captis aliquibus Asiæ urbibus præcipuam exercitus sui partem spoliis onustam domi remisissent, reliquæ fœminæ ad tuendam Asiam relictæ cum regina sua<sup>6</sup> Marcepia ab hostibus trucidantur. Cujus filia Sinope post matrem regnum tenuit, singularem virtutis gloriam perpetua virginitate cumulavit. Hujus nempe tanta<sup>7</sup> admiratio gentes invaserat, ut cum Hercules juberetur a domino

<sup>1</sup> *coram*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *occupaverunt*, A.B.

<sup>3</sup> *exterios*, B.

<sup>4</sup> So A. ; *cubitus*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *Lampeto*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *sua*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *tam*, B.



from home, and took wip hem a grete multitude of peple and strengþe, and werred in þe contrayes of Pontus and Cappadocia.<sup>1</sup> And whanne þey hadde i-doo greet destruccioun, þan þey were i-kilde of men of þe contrays aboute. Þanne hire wifes exilede and wydewes armed hem, and toke wreche of hire housbondes deþ; and whanne þey hadde i-made pees by strengþe and by dedes of armes þey took men of oper londes to ligge<sup>2</sup> by hem forto haue children, and slow hire owne knaue children,<sup>3</sup> and kepte here mayde children, and brende of þe<sup>4</sup> riȝt brest. At þe laste tweyne of þese women were queenes, Marsepia and Lampeto, and departed hire oost, and kepte and mayntenede hem, and batailled<sup>5</sup> eiper by hir cours. Þan whanne þey hadde ouercome a grete dele of Europa and many citees of Asia, þey sent home þe bettre part of here oost wip prayes þat þey hadde i-take. Þan enemyes slow Marsepia þe queene and<sup>6</sup> þe opere women þat were i-left pere forto kepe Asia. And here douȝter Sinope regned after hir moder deþ, and gadered a singuler ioye of vertue by euerlastyng chasite. Men wondrede so hugeliche of this woman, þat whanne Hercules hadde heste of his lorde for to werre

TREVISA.

whiche, takenge with theyme a grete hoste, occupiede the londes of Pontus and Capodocia, whiche were destroyede at the laste by oper peple of ðerre cuntrees. The wifes of whom movede there with toke armoure, inquirenge vengeance for their howsebondes. So at the laste, peace made by grete batelles and conflicts, thei toke to theyme straunge men for cause of multiplicacion, sleenge the male childer, reseruede the childer female, brennenge the ryȝhte pappe of here. Of whiche women were ij. qwenes at the laste, Marsepia and Lampeto, whiche kepede batelles by course. And when thei hade made that londe of Asia tame, and taken the principalle cites in hit, thei sende the chiefe parte of their hoste to their cuntre with grete richesse and goodes. That other parte of women left with Marsepia to be the defence of Asia were sleyne. The douȝter of whom, Synope by name, kepede the realme after the dethe of here moder, in kepenge the glory of vertu with virginite perpetu-alle. Also thei were of so grete myȝhte, that when Hercules was commaundede of his lorde that he scholde brynge

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Capadocie*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *lye*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *men childer*, Cx.; who, however, has *childerer* above.<sup>4</sup> *her*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *hem in batel*, Cx.; *bataille*, *a. γ.*; *batel*, *β.*<sup>6</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *of*, MS.

suo arma reginæ inferre,<sup>1</sup> universam<sup>2</sup> Græciæ electam juventutem contraxit, novemque longas raves præparavit,<sup>3</sup> insperatas mulieres circumvenit, malens insidiando quam palam bellando congregari. Oppressis igitur subito duabus sororibus reginis,<sup>4</sup> Hercules Melanippen<sup>5</sup> sorori suæ Antiopæ<sup>6</sup> reddidit.<sup>7</sup> Hippolytam vero sororem ejusdem Theseo militi suo copulavit; arma reginæ pretio redemptionis accepit. Tandem post Orthiam reginam Penthesilea<sup>8</sup> regina Trojano bello interfuit, magnaue insignia suæ virtutis<sup>9</sup> contra Græcos dedit.

## CAP. XXII.

*De Jair; item de Carmente Nympha, litterarum Latinarum inventrice.*<sup>10</sup>

De Jair.

JAYR<sup>11</sup> Galadites de tribu Manasse judicavit Israel Anno Abr. 797 Anno Jair 1. viginti duobus<sup>12</sup> annis, habuitque triginta filios, quos fecit principes<sup>13</sup> supra<sup>14</sup> triginta civitates, quas denominavit a nomine suo Anat Jayr,<sup>15</sup> id est, oppida Jair. *Ranulphus.* Hujus Jayr<sup>16</sup> anno tertio secundum quosdam Carthago condita est; sed de hoc vide supra

<sup>1</sup> So A.; *afferre*, E.<sup>2</sup> So A.; *universitati*, E.<sup>3</sup> *reparavit*, B.<sup>4</sup> *reginis*] om. B.<sup>5</sup> *Monalippam*, MSS.<sup>6</sup> *Antrope*, B.<sup>7</sup> *reddit*, B.<sup>8</sup> *Pentaseilea*, MSS.<sup>9</sup> *suæ virtutis*] Added from A.B.<sup>10</sup> No title in MSS.<sup>11</sup> *Jair*, A.C.D.<sup>12</sup> *uno*, C.D.<sup>13</sup> *principales*, B.<sup>14</sup> *super*, C.D.<sup>15</sup> *Anat jair*, A.; *Anathe jair*, B.; *Anot jair*, D.<sup>16</sup> *Ranulphus. Hujus Jayr*] om. C. (D. omits *Ranulphus*.)

aʒenst þis<sup>1</sup> queene, he gadrede al þe grete strengþe of þe ʒong  
men of Grees, and ordeyned hym nyne longe schippes, and fil  
vppon þe wommen þat were vnarmed. For hym was leuere  
stele<sup>2</sup> vppon hem þan come vppon hem wip a bataile opoun-  
liche. Ðan, whanne þe tweie queenes þat were sustres were  
sodeynliche ouercome, Hercules ʒaf Menalippa to his suster  
Antiopa, and wedded hir suster Hippolyta<sup>3</sup> to his knyʒt  
Theseus, and fenge þe armure of þe queene in prys of redemp-  
cioun. At the laste after Orthia þe queene, Penthesilea<sup>4</sup> þe  
queene was in þe batayle of Troye, and ʒaf and<sup>5</sup> dede meny  
grete dedes aʒenst the Grees. TREVISA.  
—

*Capitulum vicesimum secundum.*

IAIR<sup>6</sup> of Galaad, of þe lynage of Manasse, was iuge of Israel  
two and twenty ʒere, and hadde pritty sones, and made hem  
princes vppon pritty citees, and cleped þe citees by his owne  
name, Anot Iair, þat is to mene, Iair is townes. R. Som  
telleþ þat Carthago<sup>7</sup> was i-bulde þe pridde ʒere of þis Iaire, but

---

to hym the armure of the qwene of theym, he toke with  
hym the nowble men of the londe of Grece in ix. schippes,  
whiche compassede the women as with owte deliberacion; hau-  
enge more pleasure to do soe then to make an open batelle  
ageyne theyme. The seide Hercules, those women oppressede,  
ʒafe Menalippa to his sustyr Antiopa, and mariede Ypolita,  
sustir to the same Menalippa, to Theseus his knyʒhte, tak-  
enge to hym the armure of the qwene as for a price of here  
redempcion. After that qwene callede Orthia, the qwene  
Penthesilea<sup>8</sup> was at the battelle of Troye, and schewede mony  
grete actes ageyne men of Grece. MS. HARL.  
2261.  
—

*Capitulum vicesimum secundum.*

IAIR GALATIDES, of the tribe of Manasses, reignede on the  
peple of Israel xxij<sup>u</sup> yere. whiche hade xxx<sup>i</sup> sonnes, whom  
he made princes of xxx<sup>i</sup> cites, whom he callede, after his  
name, Anot Iair, that is to say, þe cites of Iair. R. In the  
thrydde yere of whom, after diuerse men, that cite callede  
Carthago was edifiede, of whiche mater hit is rehersed afore,

<sup>1</sup> the, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> to stele, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Ypolita, MS., c. ; Ipolita, B. γ.

<sup>4</sup> Pentasilea, α. ; Pentafiles, MS.

<sup>5</sup> ʒaf and] om. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Lair, MS.

<sup>7</sup> Cartago, MSS. ; Cartage, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Pentisilia, Harl. MS.

Minos  
moritur.

Lingua  
Latina  
quadru-  
plex.

libro primo, capitulo *Africa*.<sup>1</sup> Anno Jayr sextodecimo Ægyptiorum [rex]<sup>2</sup> Minois<sup>3</sup> adversus Dædalum in<sup>4</sup> Sicilia arma corripens<sup>5</sup> a filiis Cocali<sup>6</sup> occiditur. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo decimo*.<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup> Carmentis nympa, quæ et Nicostrata, mater Latini regis, Latinas literas reperit.<sup>9</sup> *Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo viio*.<sup>10</sup> Latina autem lingua in quatuor fuit dispartita; nam<sup>11</sup> Prisca fuit<sup>12</sup> sub Jano et Saturno; Latina sub rege Latino et cæteris regibus Tusciæ, ex qua lingua<sup>13</sup> fuerunt duodecim tabulæ legum conscriptæ; item<sup>14</sup> Romana, quæ post exactos reges cœpit; qua usi sunt Plautus, Tullius, Virgilius, Cato; sed mixta lingua post dilatam imperium crevit.<sup>15</sup> Post<sup>16</sup> mortem Jayr,<sup>17</sup> Israel servivit Philistiim et Ammonitis xvij. annis; qui deputantur annis Jepte subsequentibus.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *sed . . . Africa*] *Isidorus, libro primo, C.D.*; *Africa, scilicet Numidia, A.* (See vol. i. p. 164.)

<sup>2</sup> The text has manifestly suffered. The Harl. tr. seems to have had *rex*.

<sup>3</sup> *Minoys, E.* Read *Minos*.

<sup>4</sup> *in*] om. *A.*

<sup>5</sup> So *A.E.*; *arripiens, B.C.D.*

<sup>6</sup> *filiis Dedali, B.*; *filiabus Dedali, C.*; *filiabus Cocali, D.*

<sup>7</sup> *capitulo decimo*] om. *A.B.C.D.*

<sup>8</sup> *Anno Jayr viccsimo secundum quosdam, ins. C.D.*

<sup>9</sup> Slightly varied in *C.D.*

<sup>10</sup> *capitulo septimo*] om. *C.D.*; *libro quarto decimo, A.B.* Read lib. ix. c. 1.

<sup>11</sup> *nam*] om. *C.D.*

<sup>12</sup> *fuit*] om. *C.D.*

<sup>13</sup> *lingua*] om. *B.C.D.*

<sup>14</sup> *item*] om. *C.D.*

<sup>15</sup> Slightly varied in *C.D.*

<sup>16</sup> *Post . . . subsequentibus*] om. *C.D.*

<sup>17</sup> *Jayr*] om. *E.*

<sup>18</sup> *sequentibus, A.*

look in þe firste book, capitulo Affrica, scilicet Numidia.<sup>1</sup> Þe TREVISA.  
 sextenþe zere of Iaire, Mynois of Egipt amendede armure  
 azenst Dedalus in Sicilia, and was i-kyld of Cocalus his sones.  
*Isidorus, libro primo.* Carmentis Nympha, þat heet also  
 Nicostrata,<sup>2</sup> kyng<sup>3</sup> Latyn his moder, fond and brouzt vp<sup>4</sup>  
 Latyn lettres. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Þe longage of Latyn was  
 departed in foure: for þe firste was vnder Ianus and Saturnus,  
 and was i-cleped Prisk; and Latyn vnder þe<sup>5</sup> kyng Latyn and  
 oper kynges of Thuscayn;<sup>6</sup> in þat longage were þe twelue  
 tables of lawe i-write; also Romayn þat bygan after kynges  
 were i-made suget; and þat longage vsede Plautus and Tullius,  
 Virgilius and Caton; but medled<sup>7</sup> longage encreased after þat  
 þe Emperre encresede and was huge. After þe deeth of Iaire  
 Israel seruede þe Philistinis and Ammonitys eiʒtene zere, þat  
 beep accounted to þe zeres of Iepte þat was duke afterward of  
 Israel.

---

libro j<sup>o</sup>. Minois, kyng off Egipte, movenge batelle ageyne MS. HARL.  
 Dedalus, was sleyne of the sonnes of Cocalus in the xvj<sup>th</sup> 2261.  
 yere of the reigne of Iair. *Isidorus, libro primo.* Nicos-  
 trata, the moder of Latinus kyng, founde letters of Latyne.  
*Isidorus, libro nono.* The langage of Latyn was departede  
 in to iiij. For the olde tonge or langage of Latyn was in  
 the tyme of Ianus and of Saturnus. And in the tyme of  
 that kyng callede Latinus, and of other kynges of Tuschia,  
 of whiche langage xij. tables were wryten of the lawes of  
 theyme. Also the Romanes vsede that langage whom Plau-  
 tus, Tullius, Virgilius, and Cato vsede; but langage that  
 was mixte encreasede after the increase of thEmpyre.  
 Israel, other the peple of hit, seruede the Philistes xvij.  
 yere after the dethe of Iair, whiche be deputed to the  
 yeres of Iepte folowenge.

<sup>1</sup> So β.; *Mundia*, a. γ., Cx.;  
*Mundia*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Nichostrata*, MSS.

<sup>3</sup> *kyng of*, MS., and so below.

<sup>4</sup> *vp*] om. Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *þe*] om. a., Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *Tuscayn*, a.

<sup>7</sup> *melled*, a.; *myrt*, Cx.

## CAP. XXIII.

*De Jepte; item de Sibyllis, et de rebus Trojanis.*<sup>1</sup>

Jepte.

JEPTE Galatides de tribu Gad, filius meretricis, judi- Anno Abr. 819.  
Anno Jepte 1.

cavit Israel sex annis; cujus anno primo Latinus  
filius Fauni cœpit regnare in Italia, in qua regnavit  
triginta duobus annis, a quo regnum Latinorum sump-  
sit initium, cessante ex tunc vocabulo Laurentinorum.

Rex  
Latinus.

De decem  
Sibyllis.

*Isidorus, libro octavo.* Tempore hujus Latini floruit  
Sibylla Erythræa,<sup>2</sup> nomine Herophila,<sup>3</sup> de Babylone  
oriunda, quæ Græcis Ilium petentibus<sup>4</sup> prædixit Tro-  
jam evertendam et Homerum mendacia postmodum  
scripturum. Et cum decem fuerunt<sup>5</sup> Sibyllæ, hæc  
ponitur quinta in numero, et cæteris antefertur;  
quarum<sup>6</sup> prima<sup>7</sup> fuit Persica, secunda Libyca, tertia  
Delphica, in templo Apollinis<sup>8</sup> progenita ante bellum  
Trojanum, cujus plurimos versus Homerus inseruit in  
suis opusculis.<sup>9</sup> Quarta fuit Cimmeria<sup>10</sup> de Italia;  
quinta<sup>11</sup> Erythræa,<sup>12</sup> de qua nunc agitur;<sup>13</sup> sexta fuit  
Samia, in Samos insula nata; septima Cumana, de

<sup>1</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>2</sup> *Eritrea*, MSS.

<sup>3</sup> *Erosiba*, B.; *Erofila*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *potentibus*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *fuerint*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *et . . . quarum*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *enim*, ins. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Delphici*, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *suo opusculo*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Cimerica*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *fuit*, ins. B.

<sup>12</sup> *Eritrea*, MSS.

<sup>13</sup> *dictum est*, C.D.

*Capitulum vicesimum tertium. Iepte.*

TREVISA.

IEPTE of Galaad, of the lynage of Gad, an hoore<sup>1</sup> sone, was iuge of Israel sixe zere. Kyng Latyn, Faunus is sone, bygan to regne in Ytaly; and regned pere two and pritty zere. Of hym þe kynges of<sup>2</sup> Itali hadde þat name, and were i-cleped kynges of Latyns, and þan cesed þe name of Laurentines, and torned into þe name of Latyns.<sup>3</sup> *Isidorus, libro octavo.* In þis kyng Latyn his tyme was Sibil Eritrea in hir floures, þat heet Erofila, and was i-bore in Babilon. Sche warnede þe Grees þat wente to Troye þat Troye schulde be destroyed, and þat Homerus schulde write lesynges afterward. Pere were ten Sibillis, and þis is þe fifte in nombre, and is i-putte tofore opere. Þe firste Sibille was of Pers, þe<sup>4</sup> secoude of Libya, þe þridde was Delphica ya Appolyn his temple to fore þe bataile of Troye. Homerus wroot meny of hir vers in his bookes. Þe fourþe was Cimeria of Italy. Þe fifte was Eritrea, of hire is now oure speche. Þe sixte was Samia, i-bore in þe ylond<sup>5</sup> of Samos.

*Capitulum vicesimum tertium.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

IEPTE GALATIDES, son of an hoore of the tribe of Gad, was iugge in Israel vj. yere. In the firste yere off whom, Latinus the son of Fanus began to reigre in Ytaly, in whom he reignede xxxij<sup>ti</sup> yere, from whiche tyme the realme of Latines toke begynnenge, and the name off the Laurentynes decreasede and faylede. *Isidorus, libro octavo.* Sibilla Eritria, Erifola by name, borne in Babilon, was in the tyme of Latinus, whiche seide to the Grekes Troy to be destroyed, and that the poete Omerus scholde write mony lesenges afterward. But þer were x. Sibilles, amonge whom sche was putte the v<sup>the</sup> in ordre, and is preferredde afore other. The firste of whom was callede Sibilla Persica. The secoude Sibilla Libica. The thrydde Sibilla Delphica, whiche was geten in the temple of Apollo afore the batelle of Troy, of the versus of whom Omerus toke mony and putte theyme in his werkes. The iiij<sup>the</sup> was Sibilla Temeria,<sup>6</sup> of Ytaly. The v<sup>the</sup> was Sibilla Eritria, of whom we spake of afore. The vj<sup>the</sup> was callede Sibilla Samia, of that yle callede Samos.

<sup>1</sup> a comyn womans, Cx.<sup>2</sup> of] om. MS. (only.)<sup>3</sup> and þan . . . of Latyns] om. Cx.<sup>4</sup> Pierse, a.<sup>5</sup> londe, MS. (only.)<sup>6</sup> Sic Harl. MS. for *Cimmeria*.

Campania oriunda, quæ novem libros attulit Tarquinio Prisco, Romano regi,<sup>1</sup> Romanis decretis conscriptos;<sup>2</sup> octava fuit<sup>3</sup> Hellespontia,<sup>4</sup> in agro Trojano nata, quæ legitur Cyri regis<sup>5</sup> et Solonis<sup>6</sup> temporibus extitisse; nona fuit Phrygia, quæ legitur vaticinata Anchisæ; decima Tiburtina, dicta Albunea.<sup>7</sup> Quarum<sup>8</sup> omnium carmina extolluntur, eo quod de Deo, de Christo, de gentibus multa scripsisse comprobantur.<sup>9</sup> *Ranulphus*. Veruntamen Augustinus octavo<sup>10</sup> libro De Civitate capitulo sextodecimo videtur velle, quod Sibylla Erythræa floruerit<sup>11</sup> tempore Romuli; de qua etiam dicit quod multa de Christo manifeste scripsit, sicut patet in illis ejus<sup>12</sup> versibus:<sup>13</sup>—

Judicii signum tellus sudore madescet;<sup>14</sup>

E cœlo rex adveniet per sæcla futurus.

Scilicet in carne præsens ut judicet orbem,<sup>15</sup> et cætera.<sup>16</sup> Quorum versuum capitales litteræ hunc reddunt sensum: JESUS CHRISTUS DEI FILIUS SALVATOR. *Isidorus, libro quarto, capitulo sexto.*<sup>17</sup> Sibylla nomen est officii, non personæ. Dicitur enim a *Syos*,<sup>18</sup> quod est deus, et *Bele*, quod est mens, quasi<sup>19</sup> habens

<sup>1</sup> *Romano regi*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *inscripto*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *oriunda . . . fuit*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *Ellespontea*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *regis*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Salonis*, A.; *Salamonis*, B.D.; *Salonis*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *Albunia*, E.

<sup>8</sup> *Quorum*, E.

<sup>9</sup> Extract slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *decimo octavo*, A. The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 23.

<sup>11</sup> *floruit*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *ejus*] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> *qui sic incipiunt*, ins. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *madescit*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *E . . . orbem*] om. C.D. (D. having instead: sicut Augustinus illos ponit seriatim in omelia quadam de adventu.)

<sup>16</sup> *Scilicet . . . cætera*] om. B.

<sup>17</sup> *capitulo sexto*] om. A.B.

<sup>18</sup> *Scios*, A.; *Sios*, D.

<sup>19</sup> *quasi*] om. A.



De seuenpe [was]<sup>1</sup> Cumana, i-bore in Campania; sche<sup>2</sup> brouzete TREVISA.  
 nyne bookes to Torquynus Priscus, kyng of Romayns, in þe  
 whiche were i-write þe domes of Rome. Þe eiȝpe was Elles-  
 pontia, i-bore in a feeld of Troye. Me redeþ þat sche<sup>3</sup> was in  
 kyng Cyrus and [in]<sup>4</sup> Solon<sup>5</sup> his tyme. Þe nynpe was Frigia.  
 Me redeþ þat he<sup>6</sup> prophecied in Anchisa. Þe tenpe was Tybur-  
 tina, and heet also Albymea.<sup>7</sup> Þe bookes of hem alle beep  
 i-preysed, for þey writen moche of God, of Crist, and also of  
 Payenis.<sup>8</sup> R. Noþeles it semeþ þat Seynt Austyn, 18<sup>o</sup> libro,  
 capitulo 16<sup>o</sup>, wil mene þat Sibille Eritria was in Romulus his  
 tyme, and sche wroot moche of Criste, and þat openliche, as in  
 þis vers of heroes :

“Token of doome þe erþe schal wiþ swoot<sup>9</sup> by come weet,

“Out of heuene þe kyng endeles schal come to siȝte.

“And þat in flesche present forto deme þe world.”

And so forþ Sibil haþ many mo vers. Þe heed lettres of þese  
 þre vers, and of þe opere as þey beep i-write in Latyn, spelep  
 þis menyng: <sup>10</sup> Ihesus Crist, Goddes sone, Sauyour. *Isidorus,*  
*libro 14<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>11</sup> Sibille is a name of offys, and nouȝt of persone, and  
 is i-seide of *syos*, þat is God, and of *beele*, þat is pouȝt; and so

where sche was borne. The vij<sup>the</sup> was callede Sibilla Cu- MS. HARL.  
 mana, borne in Campania, whiche brouzhte to olde Tarqui- 2261.  
 nius, kyng of the Romanes, ix. bokes of the decretes of the  
 Romanes. The viij<sup>the</sup> was callede Sibilla Ellespontia, borne  
 in the cuntre of Troye, whiche was seide to haue bene in  
 the tyme of kyng Cyrus and Salomon. The ix<sup>the</sup> was callede  
 Sibilla Frigia. The x<sup>the</sup> was callede Sibilla Tiburtina, the  
 wrytenges of whom be extolde in that thei didde wryte  
 mony thynges of God, of Criste, and of other peple. R.  
 Neuerthelesse Seynte Austyn semethe to expresse, De Civi-  
 tate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo sexto decimo, that  
 Sibilla Eritria was in the time of Romulus, of whom he  
 seithe that sche did write mony thynges of Criste. *Isidorus,*  
*libro octavo.* That name Sibilla is a name of an office, not  
 of a person, for hit is seide of this worde, *scios*, þat is, God,  
 and *bele*, that is a mynde, and þefore Sibilla is seide, a

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *he, a.*

<sup>3</sup> *he, a.*

<sup>4</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Salon*, MSS.

<sup>6</sup> *she*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *Albumea*, Cx. Some proper

names in this chapter being very  
 corrupt, have been left unaltered.

<sup>8</sup> *Paynes*, Cx. (who varies the  
 sentence.)

<sup>9</sup> *of swete*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *speketh thus*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *9, a.*; *quarto*, Cx. The true  
 reference is to lib. viii. c. 8.

mentem Dei ; unde sicut vir prophetans dicitur vates seu<sup>1</sup> propheta, sic fœmina prophetans Sibylla vocatur.<sup>2</sup> Sub his diebus tempore regis Latini<sup>3</sup> facta est Argonautarum navigatio, quæ<sup>4</sup> fuit occasio belli Trojani, quod sic introducitur. *Trogus, libro secundo.*

Ægeus et  
Medea.

Post Neptunum successorem Ericthonii regnum Atheniensium ad Ægeum descenderat, qui ex priore uxore filium Theseum genuerat ; tandem, uxore illa mortua, desponsavit Medeam filiam regis Colchorum, ex qua genuit filium suum Medum. Medea tandem sibi<sup>5</sup> timens<sup>6</sup> propter adultam Thesei privigni sui ætatem, ad patrem suum cum filio<sup>7</sup> Medo Colchos rediit.<sup>8</sup>

Theseus.

Post<sup>9</sup> Ægeum apud Athenas regnavit filius suus Theseus, qui aliquando cum Hercule profectus Amazonas contrivit. Post Theseum Demophon<sup>10</sup> filius ejus successit, qui adversus Trojanos Græcis opem tulit

Demo-  
phon.

Pelias.

*Phrygius*.<sup>11</sup> Igitur Pelias rex Peloponnesensis<sup>12</sup> seu Thessaliæ,<sup>13</sup> timens sibi ne Jason illustris filius Æsonis fratris sui regnum<sup>14</sup> invaderet, se expulso, suadet

<sup>1</sup> *vel*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *dicitur*, C.D. B. adds *quia habens mentem Dei*.

<sup>3</sup> *regis Latini*] Latini prædicti, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *et*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *sibi*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *metuens*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *suo*, ins. B.

<sup>8</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Post . . . Phrygius*] om. C.D. ;

for *Phrygius*, B. has *Trogus libro xjº*. ; A. has *Trogus 42*.

<sup>10</sup> *Demefon*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Frigius*, E. The text is correct. See *Dar. Phryg.* § 1, which explains the absurd gloss, *seu Thessaliæ* ; but Higden has also borrowed from Justin, lib. xlii. c. 2.

<sup>12</sup> *Peloponensis*, MSS., as usual.

<sup>13</sup> *seu Thessaliæ*] om. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *suum*, ins. B.

Sibil is i-seide as it were a womman þat hap Goddes<sup>1</sup> pouzt. TREVISA.  
 Þerfore as a man þat prophecief is i-cleped a prophete, so a  
 womman þat prophecief is i-cleped Sibil. Vnder þis dayes in  
 kyng Latyns tyme was þe seylynge i-made þat is i-cleped þe  
 seylynge of Argonautes. Þat seillynge was cause and occasioun  
 of þe bataille of Troye, and bygan in þis manere. *Trogus, libro*  
*2º.* After Neptunus, þe successour of Erictonius,<sup>2</sup> þe kyngdom  
 of Athene fil to Egeus, þat hadde i-gete his sone Theseus on his  
 firste wif; and at þe laste whanne þat wyf was deed, he wedded  
 Medea, þe kynges douzter of Colchos, and gat on hire Medus.  
 At þe laste Medea dredde hir step sone<sup>3</sup> Theseus, whan he come  
 to age, and took wif here hir sone Medus, and wente hoom to  
 hire fader in to Colchos. After Egeus his sone Theseus  
 reignede in Athene; he wente somtyme wip Hercules and  
 werred, and ouercome þe Amazones. After Theseus his sone  
 Demophon regnede; he halp<sup>4</sup> þe Grees azenst þe Troians.  
*Trogus, libro 42º.* Þanne Pelias, kyng of Peloponens, þat is  
 of Thessalia, dredde leste Iason þe noble werriour<sup>5</sup> wolde  
 werre in his londes<sup>6</sup> and putte hym out. Iason was Eson his  
 sone; Eson was Pelias his owne broper. Pelias brouzte

---

woman hauenge the mynde of God. Wherefore like as a MS. HARL.  
 man prophecyenge is callede Vates, soe in lyke wise a 2261.  
 woman prophecienge is callede Sibilla. In this tyme of  
 Latinus the kyng, the Organautes seylede and keped the  
 see, whiche was an occasion of the batelle of Troy, whiche  
 was inducede in þis maner. *Trogus, libro secundo.* The  
 realme of men of Athenes descendede to Egeus, after Nep-  
 tunus, the successor of Erictonius, whiche gate of his firste  
 wife a son callede Theseus. That wife dedde, he did wedde  
 Medea, the dozhter of the kyng of Colchos, of whom he  
 gate a son callede Medus. Medea, dredenge Theseus when  
 that he was comen to age, turnede ageyne to Colchos to  
 here fader, with Medus here sonne. Theseus reignede at  
 Athenes after Egeus his fader, whiche, goenge furthe with  
 Hercules, hade the victory of the Amazones. Demophon,  
 the son of Theseus, succedede in that realme, whiche zafe  
 helpe to þe Grekes ageyne the Troianes. *Trogus, libro 42º.*  
 Pelias,<sup>7</sup> kyng of Peloponense other of Thessalia, dredenge  
 leste that the nowble man, Iason by name, son of Eson  
 his brother, scholde entre in to his realme, movede Iason

<sup>1</sup> God his, a.

<sup>2</sup> So a.; *Erictonius*, MS. Read  
*Erichthonius*.

<sup>3</sup> So a. β. γ., Cx.; *sone*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *halp and assisted*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *werriour*] om. a. β. γ. and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *lond*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *Peleas*, Harl. MS. here and below.

Argo-  
nautæ.

Jasoni quærare pellem auream apud Colchos insulam ; sperans per hoc juvenis interitum provenire aut ex longa navigatione aut ex bello barbariei.<sup>1</sup> *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.*<sup>2</sup> Insuper et Pelias fecit<sup>3</sup> Argum parare navem pulcherrimam huic profectioni congruentem. *Petrus.* Ab hoc nomine, Argon, Argonautæ descenderunt, qui fuerunt juvenes validi ad profectionem Jasonis undecumque<sup>4</sup> collecti, cum quibus Phrygiam primo applicuit,<sup>5</sup> regnante tunc ibidem Laomedonte. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.*<sup>6</sup> Sed et Jason de finibus Phrygiæ repulsus cum suis sodalibus<sup>7</sup> Colchos venit, regem devicit, filium regis Ægealium occidit, pellem auream abstulit, Medeam regis filiam abduxit, et uxorem sibi fecit, quam tamen postmodum repudiavit. Sed cum postea<sup>8</sup> a Pelia<sup>9</sup> regis filiis esset pulsus<sup>10</sup> e<sup>11</sup> Thessalia, reconciliata sibi Medea cum privigno<sup>12</sup> suo Medo de Ægeo rege Atheniensium suscepto,<sup>13</sup> ingentem juvenum multitudinem recollegit, Colchos repetiit, ubi socerum<sup>14</sup> suum regem regno<sup>15</sup> pulsum<sup>16</sup> viriliter restituit, nonnullas etiam civitates in recompensationem prioris injuriæ regno ejus adjecit. *Phrygius Dares.* Igitur Jason,<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *barbari*, A.B.; *barbaria*, Just. xlii. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Frigius Dares*, A.B.C.D., which is better. See § 1.

<sup>3</sup> *et . . . fecit*] fecit Pelleas, B.

<sup>4</sup> *ubicumque*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *applicavit*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *primo*, C. *libro quarto*, D. The text is correct. See lib. xlii. c. 2. and c. 3.

<sup>7</sup> *juvenibus*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *postea*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *Pellee*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *expulsus*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *e*] a, C. (not D.)

<sup>12</sup> *primogenito*, B.; *filio*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *de . . . suscepto*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *socium*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *suo quodam*, ins. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *expulsus*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Jason*] om. B.

Iason in witte forto fette<sup>1</sup> þe goldene flees at Colchos and hopede þerby þat þe ʒonge man schulde be deed oper for long seillynge in þe see oper in bataile aʒenst straunge naciouns. *Phrygius*<sup>2</sup> *Dares*. Þerfore Pelias made Argus ordeyne a wel faire schippe couenable to þis seillynge and passage. *Petrus*. Of þis name Argon comeþ þis name Argonaute. Argonaute were stalworþe ʒonge men i-gadred al aboute for Iason his viage; þanne Iason seillede forþ wip þese men and lodede first in Frigia. Þo Laomedon<sup>3</sup> reignede þere. *Trogus*. But Iason was put out of Frigia and come in to Colchos, and ouercome þe kyng and slowʒ his sone Egealius and took þe goldene flees, and had wip hym Medea<sup>4</sup> þe kynges douʒter, and made hire his wyf. Nopeles aftirward he forsook hire and putte hir away. But afterward whan kyng Pelias his sone was put out of Thessalia, Iason reconsiled<sup>5</sup> and took aʒen his wif Medea wip his stepsone Medus, and gaderede a stronge multitude of ʒonge men and wente in to Colchos and restored orpedliche<sup>6</sup> his wifes fader, þat was putte out of his kyngdom, and ʒaf hym meny citees to his kyngdom in<sup>7</sup> recompensacioun and amendement of þe olde wrong. *Phrygius*

TREVISA.

----

to goe to the yle of Colchos to seche the skynne of golde, supposenge that by that laboure he scholde be pereschede other in the see other pro batelle on londe. *Phrygius Dares*,<sup>2</sup> xxxij<sup>ti</sup>. Wherefore Pelias made Argus to ordeyne ryalle schippes apte and pleasaunt to theyme. *Petrus*. The peple that were callede Argonautes, toke name of Argon, whiche were myʒhty men, gedrede of alle costes to go with Iason. Whiche lodede firste in Frigia, Laomedon reignenge there in that tyme. *Trogus*. But Iason, expulsede from Frigia, come with his felowschippe to Colchos, and ouercome the kyng of hit, sleenge Egealius his son, and toke with hym the skynne of golde, and also Medea, the doʒhter of that kyng, and toke here to his wife, whom he refusede afterwarde. But when that Iason was expulsede from Thessalia by the sonnes of Pelias, and Medea his wyfe reconsiled to hym, with Medus here son, getten by Egeus kyng of Athenes, he gedrede a grete hoste and wente to that yle callede Colchos, and restored his fader in lawe vn to his realme, whiche was expulsede from hit, and brouʒhte to his realme mony oper cites, in recompensation of the wronge doen afore. *Phrygius Dares*. After that Iason hade

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> *fetche*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Frigius*, MSS. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; *Laomedon*, MS.<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; *Meda*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *recounseyllid*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *orpedly*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> So *α. β. γ.*, Cx.; *and*, MS.

Jason Tro- postquam Colchos subjugaverat, invitatis secum Castore  
 jam invadit et Hesio- et Polluce, Peleo<sup>1</sup> de Phthia,<sup>2</sup> Telamone de Sala-  
 nam rapit. mine,<sup>3</sup> paratis quindecim navibus Phrygiam<sup>4</sup> nocte  
 appulit, Laomedontem regem occidit, Ilium in<sup>5</sup> Troja<sup>6</sup>  
 vastavit, Hesionam regis filiam rapuit, quam Telamoni,  
 militi<sup>7</sup> suo, uxorem<sup>8</sup> dedit; eo quod primus Trojam  
 intraverat.<sup>9</sup> Præda quoque<sup>10</sup> facta, Jason ad sua cum  
 suis<sup>11</sup> rediit. Quo<sup>12</sup> audito Priamus Laomedontis pri-  
 mogenitus Ilium portis et muris firmavit et regnare  
 cœpit.

## CAP. XXIV.

*De Abessa; reliqua de bello Trojano narrantur.*<sup>13</sup>

Abessa. ABESSA Bedlemita<sup>14</sup> judicavit Israel septem annis; Anno Abr. 825.  
 Anno Abessa 1.  
 cujus<sup>15</sup> anno secundo Priamus rex Phrygiæ seu  
 Priamus Trojæ<sup>16</sup> misit Antenorem<sup>17</sup> ad Græcos, dicens se  
 Hesionam requirit. omnes injurias præteritas æquanimiter passurum, si

<sup>1</sup> *Pelleo de*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Scythia*, D.; *Scitia*, MSS. The emendation is certain. See Dar. Phryg. § 3.

<sup>3</sup> *Salmania*, B.; *Salomoniam*, D. *Salamina*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *de*, ins. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *in*] *de*, E.

<sup>6</sup> *Troya*, MSS., and similarly below.

<sup>7</sup> *militi*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *in uxorem*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *introierit*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Præduque*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> Transposed in A.B.

<sup>12</sup> *Hoc*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>14</sup> *Beethlemita*, A.; *Bethelemita*, B.; *Bethleemita*, D.; *mortuo Jepte*, ins. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *cujus*] om. B.

<sup>16</sup> *Trojæ*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Antheuorem*, MSS.

*Dares.* Whan Iason hadde<sup>1</sup> sodued Colchos, he hadde wip hym at his prayenge<sup>2</sup> Castor, Pollux, Peleus of<sup>3</sup> Scitia, Telamon<sup>4</sup> of Salomina,<sup>5</sup> and come yn wip fyue schippes by nyzte into Frigia and slow Laomedon þe kyng and destroyed Ilium in Troye. He rauysched Hesiona þe kynges douzter and ʒaf hire to his kniʒt Telamon of Salamina to wife;<sup>6</sup> for he was þe firste þat entrede in to Troye and<sup>7</sup> pere took<sup>8</sup> a grete pray. And Iason tornede aʒen wip his men. Whan Priamus<sup>9</sup> Laomedon his eldest sone herde and wiste of al þis, he strengpede Ilium þat is Troye wip ʒates and wip walles and bygan for to reigne.

TREV ISA.

*Capitulum vicesimum quartum. Abessa.*

ABESSA of Bethleem was iuge in Israel seuene ʒere. In his secounde ʒere Priamus kyng of Frigia, þat is kyng of Troye, sente Antenor to þe Grees,<sup>10</sup> and seide þat he wolde gladliche forʒeue al trespas þat was doo to forehonde,<sup>11</sup> ʒif þey wolde

made subiecte that yle of Colchos, desirede with hym Castor and Pollux, and Peleus of Scitia, and Thelamon of Salamina, with v. schippes entrede in to Frigia in the nyzhte, and did sle Laomedon the kyng of hit, and wastede Troy, and toke away Hesion the kynges dozhter, whom he toke to Telamon<sup>4</sup> his knyʒhte, to be his wife, in that he entrede in to the cite of Troy firste. And when thei hade taken preyes at their pleasure, Iason returnede with his felowshippe towarde his cuntre. Priamus the son of Laomedon, herenge of that treason, made that city of Troy stronge, dressenge hit with ʒates and walles, and began to reigne in hit.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Capitulum vicesimum quartum.*

ABESSA, of the cuntre of Bethleem, was iugge in Israel vij. yeres, and reignede per. In the firste yere of whom Priamus, the kyng of Frigia other elles Troy, sende Antenor vn to the Grekes, seyenge that he wolde suffre alle

<sup>1</sup> *Thanne Iason whanne he hadde,* a. β. γ.

<sup>2</sup> Cx. ins. *Hercules.*

<sup>3</sup> *and of,* MS., α. (not β. γ. Cx.) For *Scitia* read *Phthia.* See above.

<sup>4</sup> *Thelamon,* MSS. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> So β. γ.; *Salomina,* MS., α. Read *Salamis.*

<sup>6</sup> *wyve,* α.

<sup>7</sup> *and]* om. α.

<sup>8</sup> *was i-take,* α. β. γ.; *was taken,* Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *Pryamus,* MS. A few similar corrections have been made tacitly in this chapter.

<sup>10</sup> *Grekes,* Cx.; and so below.

<sup>11</sup> *trespasses that they had doo before,* Cx.

Hesiona soror sua dudum rapta sibi<sup>1</sup> redderetur. Negantibus<sup>2</sup> Græcis Priamus bellum instaurat, Hectorem primogenitum suum cæteris præficit. Id idem Alexander, qui et Paris,<sup>3</sup> frater Hectoris hortatur. Asserit enim,<sup>4</sup> dum quondam in Ida silva<sup>5</sup> venatum iret, vidisse se in somnis Mercurium<sup>6</sup> adduxisse Junonem, Venerem, et Minervam, ut inter illas de specie iudicaret; tuncque Minervam sibi<sup>7</sup> promississe sapientiam,<sup>8</sup> si ejus speciem præferret.<sup>9</sup> Helenus alter frater vaticinatur in contrarium, dicens, si Alexander uxorem de Græcia acciperet, Graios<sup>10</sup> venturos et Ilium vastaturos.

Paris cum  
Antenore  
ad Græcos  
mittitur.

Id idem vaticinata est Cassandra. Nihilominus naves parantur, et<sup>11</sup> Alexander cum Antenore<sup>12</sup> Græciam mittuntur. Ubi dum ad<sup>13</sup> insulam Cytheram<sup>14</sup> ad festum Junonis mulieres convenirent, Helenam regis Menelai uxorem ad videndum Alexandri formam ibi occurrentem Paris<sup>15</sup> rapuit, domumque rediit. Ad hæc Priamus<sup>16</sup> applaudit,<sup>17</sup> quasi Hesionam sororem suam

Helenam  
rapit.

<sup>1</sup> *sibi*] om. D.

<sup>2</sup> *de gentilibus*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Paris qui et frater*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Nam asseruit*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Idam silvam*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *sibi*, ins. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *sibi*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *sapientiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *daturam se ei uxorem que in Græcia pulchrior foret*, ins. C.D.; *et Venerem sibi promississe uxorem de mundo pulchriorem si ejus speciem*

*præferret*, A.B. and Harl. tr. The text is evidently incomplete. See Trevisa.

<sup>10</sup> *Græcos*, A.D.; om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *cæterisque pluribus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *in*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Cithaream*, MSS. (and versions).

<sup>15</sup> *Paris*] om. C.D., with other slight variations.

<sup>16</sup> *Priamus quoque*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *appellandi*, B.



sende aȝen his suster Hesiona, pat þey hadde i-rauesched. Þe TREVISA.  
 Grees wolde nouȝt. Priamus arrayed for þe bataille and made  
 his eldest sone Hector<sup>1</sup> ledere of opere men. Alisaundre,  
 pat heet Paris also, Hector his broþer, assentep her to, and  
 seip þat whanne he hontede some tyme in þe woode pat hatte  
 Ida,<sup>2</sup> he sleep<sup>3</sup> and mette<sup>4</sup> þat Mercurius brouȝte abowe to  
 fore hym Iuno, Venus, and Minerua, for he schulde deme whiche  
 of hem was fairest; and Minerua by heet hym wisdom, [Iuno  
 worship, and Venus behete him]<sup>5</sup> þe fairest wif of þe worlde,  
 ȝif he wolde deme pat<sup>6</sup> sche were þe fairest. Helenus þe oper  
 broþer prophecied þe contrarie; and seide pat ȝif Alisaundre,  
 pat heet Paris, took a wyf of Grees,<sup>7</sup> [þe Grees]<sup>8</sup> wolde come  
 and destroye Ilium, pat is Troye. Pat womman Cassandra  
 propheciede þe same. Noþeles schippes were arrayed, and  
 Alisaundre, pat heet Paris, wip Antenor<sup>9</sup> sent<sup>10</sup> into Grecia,  
 and whenne wommen come<sup>11</sup> into þe ilond Cythera to þe feste  
 of Iuno, Helena kyng Menelaus his wif come forto see þe  
 fairnesse of Paris, [and Paris]<sup>12</sup> rauesched hire and took hir  
 wip hym and torned home aȝen.<sup>13</sup> Þan was Priamus glad i-now,

iniuryes a-paste if that Hesiona his sustyr, taken aweye by MS. HARL.  
 theyme, myȝhte be restorede. The men of Grece denyenge 2261.  
 that, Priamus made redy to make batelle ageyne theyme,  
 makenge Hector, his firste son, gouernoure and rewlere of  
 hit, whiche thyng Alexander other Paris exhortede to be  
 fullefillede, seyenge that as he wente to hunte in a woode  
 callede Ida, he see in his slepe Mercury to haue brouȝhte  
 to hym Venus and Minerua to iugge of the beawte of  
 theyme. Then Minerua promisede to hym sapience, if that  
 he wolde preferre here beaute; and Venus promisede to  
 hym oon of the feireste women of þe worlde to his wife, if  
 þat he wolde preferre here beawte. Neuerthelesse schippes  
 were made redy, and Alexander with Antenor were sende  
 to the londe of Grece, whiche, commenge to an yle callede  
 Cythera, where women were gedrede to the feste of Iuno,  
 Paris toke away Helena, the wife of kyng Menelaus,  
 commenge to mete Paris to beholde his beawte, and broȝhte  
 here to Priamus. At whiche acte Priamus ioyede moche,

<sup>1</sup> So β., Cx.; *Ector*, MS., here and below.

<sup>2</sup> So α., Cx.; *Yda*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *slept*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *dremed*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Added from Cx. (only); *wyt and wysdom and the fayreste wyf*, γ.

<sup>6</sup> So α. and Cx.; *yf*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *Grece*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Added from α. and Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *Anthenore*, MS., but *Antenor* above.

<sup>10</sup> *and Paris with Anthenore were sente*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *tho men came*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Added from α. β. γ., Cx.; MSS. sometimes have *Paris*.

<sup>13</sup> *and toke hir with hym in to Troy*, Cx. (omitting the rest.)

Græci  
classem  
parant,

per hoc recuperaturus. Igitur Menelao rege Lacedæ-  
moniaë fratri suo Agamemnoni regi Mycenarum  
de raptu uxoris suæ<sup>2</sup> gravius<sup>3</sup> conquerenti adu-  
nantur<sup>4</sup> robusti<sup>5</sup> quinque ;<sup>6</sup> Achilles, Patroclus, Ulixes,  
Ajax, Nestor, cum cæteris validis numero quadra-  
ginta septem, habentes naves paratas in portu Athe-  
narum<sup>7</sup> numero mille ducentas. Deinde responso<sup>8</sup>  
accepto ab Apolline Delphico, quod in decimo anno

et Phry-  
giam vas-  
tant.

Ilium foret subvertendum, Græci mare sulcant, classem  
navium<sup>9</sup> solvunt, in Phrygia prædas agunt, et re-

Agamem-  
non ad  
Priamum  
legatos  
mittit.

deunt. Interea mittit Agammenon legatos Ulixem et  
Diomedem ad regem Priamum, si vellet Helenam  
reddere. Priamus illico commemorat Argonautarum

Bellum  
indicitur.

injuriam, patris interitum, sororis raptum,<sup>10</sup> Antenoris  
legati sui contemptum ; idcirco<sup>11</sup> pacem repudiat, et<sup>12</sup>  
bellum indicit.<sup>13</sup> Igitur exercitu hinc inde congregato  
Hector occidit Protesilaum, Patroclum et Merionem,<sup>14</sup>  
multosque sauciat ; usque dum Ajax Telamonius, con-

<sup>1</sup> *Meccnorum*, MSS.

<sup>2</sup> *de . . . suæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *graviter*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *congregantur*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *fortes*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *quique*, MSS. See Harl. trans-  
lation.

<sup>7</sup> *Atheniensi*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Responsoque*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *navium*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *et*, ins. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *ideoque*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> So A.B. ; *inducit*, E.

<sup>14</sup> *Menonem*, E.

as þey he schulde rekke neuere and haue aȝen his suster Hesionona.<sup>1</sup> Þan Menelaus kyng of Lacedemonia made a greuous<sup>2</sup> playnt to his broþer Agamemnon,<sup>3</sup> kyng of Messenes,<sup>4</sup> of þe rauyschinge of his wif, and gadrede passyng strong men, Achille, Patroclus, Vlixes,<sup>5</sup> Ajax, Nestor, wip oþere stalworþe men, seuen and forty; and hadde schippes redy in þe hauene of Athene<sup>6</sup> in nombre of a þowsand and two hondred, and hadde answeere of Appolyn Delphicus, þat Ilium, þat is Troye, schulde be destroyed in þe tenþe ȝere. Þe Grees took vp here ancre and seilled on þe see, and took grete prayes, and tornede home aȝe. In þe mene tyme Agamemnon sende messangers Vlixes and Diomedes to kyng Priamus, ȝif he wolde ȝelde vp Helene, and sende hir home aȝen. Þanne Priamus bypouȝt hym, and hadde anon in mynde þe wrong of þe Argonautes,<sup>7</sup> þe deth of his fader, þe rauyschyng of his suster, þe displesyng of his messenger Antenor. Perfore he forsook pees, and heet array<sup>8</sup> for þe werre. Þan whan þe oost was i-gadred in eiper side, Hector slow Protesilaus<sup>9</sup> and Menon,<sup>10</sup> and slow and felde to þe<sup>11</sup> grounde meny men

TREVISA.

thenkenge to recure Hesionona his sustyr by that. Wherefore Menelaus, kyng of Lacedemonia, makenge compleynte to Agamemnon,<sup>3</sup> kyng of Mecedonia, v. myȝhty men condescende to there helpe, whiche were Achilles, Patroclus, Vlixes, Ajax, and Nestor, with many other stronge men, xlviij. m<sup>l</sup> in nowmbre, hauenge a m<sup>l</sup> and cc. schippes redy at Athenes in the haven or porte. After that Apollo Delphicus ȝafe an answeere to theyme that Troye scholde be destroyede after the x<sup>the</sup> yere; wherefore the Grekes goenge to the see londede in Frigia, and robbenge there, returnede after that thei hade taken þeire pray. Then Agamemnon<sup>3</sup> sende Vlixes and Diomedes as messyngeres to kyng Priamus that he scholde delyuere Helena. Then Priamus remembrede the iniurye doen to hym by the Argonautes, the dethe of his fader, and the takenge away of his sustyr, and the contempte off Antenor his messyngere, refusethe peace, desirenge batelle. Wherefore an<sup>12</sup> grete hoste gedrede and metenge to gedre, Hector did sle Protesilaus<sup>9</sup> and Menon, and woundedede soore many other, vn til that Ajax, son of

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> as þey . . . Hesionona] wenyng therby recouer his sister Hesionona, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> greet and greuous, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Agamenon and Agamynnon, MSS., and so below.

<sup>4</sup> Mescenes, β. γ.

<sup>5</sup> So β. γ., Cx.; Flixes, MS., α., and so below.

<sup>6</sup> of Athene] om. Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Argonautes, MS.

<sup>8</sup> heet array] ordeyned, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Prothesilaus, MS.; Prothesalaus, Harl. MS.

<sup>10</sup> So MSS. here and below. The translators had *Menonem* (i.e. *Memnon*) in their text.

<sup>11</sup> þe] om. α. β.

<sup>12</sup> So the MS.

sobrinus ejus de Hesiona natus, recognita<sup>1</sup> inter eos consanguinitate, eum impediret. Interim<sup>2</sup> conceduntur induciæ biennales, ut quisque<sup>3</sup> mortuum suum<sup>4</sup> sepeliat; sed<sup>5</sup> post biennium bellum repetitur, in quo Hector decem fortes duces occidit. Econtra Achilles quatuor illustres viros interimit; ac<sup>6</sup> per octoginta dies acriter pugnatum est continue. Et post dantur induciæ triennales.<sup>7</sup> Post quas, inito certamine, plures utriusque<sup>8</sup> corruunt. Et quamvis Hector per somnium Andromachæ uxoris suæ, ne in bellum prodiret eo die admonitus fuisset,<sup>9</sup> in bellum tamen properat et ab Achille occiditur.<sup>10</sup> Quo sepulto induciæ dantur ad<sup>11</sup> annum. Dumque dies anniversarius<sup>12</sup> Hectoris ageretur, adest Achilles amore Polyxenæ filiæ Priami nimium<sup>13</sup> succensus, cujus nuptias dum petit et consequitur<sup>14</sup> a bello se<sup>15</sup> subtrahit, asserens iniquum fore propter raptum Helenæ totam Europam conturbari.

Post inducias biennales bellum repetitur.

Hectoris mors.

<sup>1</sup> *cognita*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Ideo*, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *quilibet*, C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> *mortuos suos*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *sed*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *ac*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> Altered verbally and slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *utrimque*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *eo . . . fuisset*] moveretur, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *interficitur*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *per*, A.D.

<sup>12</sup> So B.; *anniversaria*, A.C.D.E.

<sup>13</sup> *nimium*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *et consequitur*] quibus concessis, C.D., with other slight variations.

<sup>15</sup> *se*] om. B.

forto<sup>1</sup> þat his cosyn Hesiona sone, Ajax Telamoni<sup>2</sup> TREVISA.  
 knowleched kynrede bytwene hem, and so lette hym of his  
 rees. Þe mene tyme were truyse i-take for two zere, þat  
 þey myz<sup>3</sup>te burye hir men þat were i-slawe.<sup>3</sup> But after two  
 zere þey fenge in a strong bataille. Hector slowz<sup>4</sup> ten stal-  
 worpe dukes, and Achilles in þe oper side slow foure stalworpe  
 men and noble; and þe bataile durede foure score dayes  
 contynueliche in harde fyztinge and stronge. And after  
 þat were<sup>4</sup> trewes i-take for þre zere, and after þe trewes þey  
 fenge on forto fize and slowz<sup>5</sup> ful meny men in eiper side,<sup>5</sup>  
 and Andromach, Hector his wif, warnede Hector by here  
 sweuene<sup>6</sup> þat he schulde<sup>7</sup> þat day nouzt<sup>8</sup> wende in to batayle.<sup>9</sup>  
 Nopeles Hector wente in to bataile and was i-slawe of Achilles.  
 And whan Hector was i-buried, were trewes i-take for a zere.  
 Whan Hector his mynde day was i-holde, Achilles was  
 perat, and loued hugeliche Polyxena,<sup>10</sup> kyng Priamus his  
 douzter, and axede and had<sup>11</sup> hir to his wif, and wipdrowe  
 hym from þe bataille, and seide þat it was euel i-doo<sup>12</sup> forto  
 destourbe<sup>13</sup> al Europa for þe raueschyng of Helen. But at

Hesiona, sustir to Priamus, did lette hym knowenge con- MS. HARL.  
 sanguinite betwene theyme. After that batelle doen, respite 2261.  
 of ij. yere was grawntede, that men sleyn myzhte be beryede.  
 But that space a-paste, the batelle began, contynunge by  
 lxxx. daies, in whiche batelle Hector did sle x. nowble  
 dukes, and Achilles did sle iiij. stronge men. After whiche  
 batelle doen, space and respite of ij. yere were grawntede.  
 The batelle begunne ageyne, mony nowble men were sleyn,  
 where Hector, warnede by Andromacha his wife, that he  
 scholde not goe to batelle in that day, was sleyn by  
 Achilles, whiche beryede, respite was ziffen by a yere.  
 And at the ende of the yere, in the anniuersary day of  
 Hector, Achilles, movede to the luffe of Polixena, dozhter  
 of kyng Priamus, wente to theyme. Whiche desirenge of  
 Priamus to haue Polyxena,<sup>10</sup> his dozhter, to his wif, and  
 hauenge grawnte, come not to þe batelle, seyenge that hit  
 was a wickede thyng alle Europe to be trowblede for  
 takenge aweye of Helena. Whiche, goenge to batelle at

<sup>1</sup> *forto*] til, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *Thelamoni<sup>us</sup>*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *slayn*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *was*, Cx.; but *were* (*trewes*) just below.

<sup>5</sup> Sentence slightly varied in Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *dreame*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *not þat*, a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *nouzt*] om. a. and Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *þe batayle*, a., here and below.

<sup>10</sup> *Polixena*, MSS.; *Policena*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *and had*] to have, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *done*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *destrouble*, Cx.

Tandem rogatu Græcorum procedens, a Troilo, qui multos Græcos<sup>1</sup> occiderat, vulneratur.<sup>2</sup> Quo jam<sup>3</sup> exasperatus ipsum Troilum et Memnonem occidit. Exinde amaricata Hecuba, uxor Priami, dolum cogitat,<sup>4</sup> diem Achilli statuit,<sup>5</sup> qua filiam suam Polyxenam<sup>6</sup> ducat; qua tandem adveniente Alexander, qui et Paris, Achillem dolose occidit. Inde responso a diis accepto quod per progeniem Achillis Græci forent victuri, Neoptolemus, filius Achillis, in bellum prodit; in quo Ajax et Alexander alter ab altero letaliter vulnerantur.<sup>7</sup> Septimo igitur certaminis anno supervenit<sup>8</sup> Penthesilea,<sup>9</sup> regina Amazonum, in auxilium Trojanorum; quæ Græcorum obsidionem dissolvit, et multas de navibus Græcorum cremavit; veruntamen a Neoptolemo, quem vulneraverat, occiditur.<sup>10</sup> Post hoc exhortantibus Antenore et Ænea, ut Helena redderetur et pax peteretur, indignatur

Achillis mors.

Ajax et Paris alter alterum trucidant.

Amazones Trojanos adjuvant.

<sup>1</sup> *jam*, ins. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *vulnerat*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Quo jam*] qui jam, B.; unde, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *excogitat*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *constituit*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *Polyxenam*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *vulneratur*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *venit*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Pentaseila*, MSS.

<sup>10</sup> Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

pe laste he wente forþ at þe prayere of þe Grees, and was i-wounded of Troilus,<sup>1</sup> þat hadde i-slawe meny Grees. Perfore he was angri and wrooþ, and slow Troilus and Menon also. Þan was Hecuba wonder wrooþ, Priamus his wif, and by pouz̄te [here of gyle],<sup>2</sup> and sette Achilles a day whan he schulde come and fecche home his wyf Polyxena, þat was hir owne douz̄ter. And whanne þe day was i-come,<sup>3</sup> Alisaundre, þat het Paris, slow Achilles gilefulliche. Perfore þey hadde answeere of goddes, þat þe Grees schulde haue þe victorie by Achilles his lynage. Neoptolemus,<sup>4</sup> Achilles his sone, wente forþ into bataille; in þe whiche bataile Alisaundre<sup>5</sup> and Aiax were i-wounded to þe deth eiper of oper. Þanne þe seuenþe zere of þe bataille<sup>6</sup> come Penthesilea,<sup>7</sup> queene of Amazones,<sup>8</sup> in help and socour of þe Troians, and brak þe sege of þe Grees, and brende meny of hir schippes. Nopeles sche was i-slawe of Neoptolemus þat sche hade i-wounded. After þat Antenor<sup>9</sup> and Eneas counsailede forto delyuere hoom Eleyne, and forto axe<sup>10</sup> pees. Priamus took grete indignacioun [of here

TREVISA.

the laste thro the supplication of the Grekes, was wounded soore of Troilus, whiche hade sleyne and woundede mony Grekes. Achilles seenge that, and vexede soore, did sle Troilus and Meno. Then Hecuba, the wife of Priamus, hauenge hym in despecte, intendede decepcion, thenkenge to ordeyne a day to Achilles in whom he scholde wedde Polyxena here doz̄hter. Achilles, comenge to theyme that tyme assignede, was sleyne by disseite of Paris other Alexander. Where off an answeere was ziffen of goddes that men of Grece scholde be victores thro the bloode of Achilles. Then Neoptolemus,<sup>4</sup> the son of Achilles, wente furthe to batelle, in whom Aiax and Alexander woundede either other dedely. Penthesilea,<sup>7</sup> the qwene of the Amazones, come to helpe the Troianes in the vij<sup>the</sup> yere of their batelles and fiȝhte, whiche dissoluede the sege of the Grekes and brente mony of their schippes. Neuerthelesse that qwene Penthesilea<sup>7</sup> was sleyne of the son of Achilles, Neoptolemus<sup>4</sup> by name, whom sche hade woundede soore. After that, Antenor<sup>9</sup> and Eneas movenge Priamus that Helena, wife to Menelaus, scholde be restorede, he hade indignacion,

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Troilus*, MS. and Cx.<sup>2</sup> Added from *α. β.* and Cx.<sup>3</sup> *comen*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *Neopholomus*, MSS., and so below; *Neopholomeus*, Harl. MS.<sup>5</sup> *Paris*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *siege*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *Pentasilia*, or *Pentisilia*, MSS.<sup>8</sup> *Amosons*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; *Anthenore*, MS., as often; *Anthenor*, Harl. MS.‡<sup>10</sup> *desire*, Cx.

Priamus; mortem eis intentans, si ultra id persuaderent.<sup>1</sup> Quamobrem ipsi indignati<sup>2</sup> mittunt Polydamantem ad Græcos, urbis traditionem pro salute sua<sup>3</sup> offerentes. Concessa<sup>4</sup> igitur pace illis tribus et omnibus suis, scilicet Antenori, Æneæ, et<sup>5</sup> Polydamanti, urbs de nocte hostibus aperitur; ubi Priamus a Neoptolemo etiam ad aras deorum confugiens occiditur.<sup>6</sup> Æneas Polyxenam apud patrem suum Anchisen<sup>7</sup> abscondit ad instantiam Helenæ; libertas Andromachæ conceditur. Polyxena diu quæsita et tandem inventa a Neoptolemo ad patris sui<sup>8</sup> tumulum jugulatur. Æneas propter absconsionem Polyxenæ discedere jubetur; Antenori terra illa relinquitur; Helena cum suo Menelao domum redit.<sup>9</sup> Igitur pugnatum fuerat<sup>10</sup> apud Trojam decem annis sex mensibus, ceciderunt ex Trojanis ante urbem proditam cclxxvi.,<sup>11</sup> sed urbe prodata cclxxviiij.<sup>12</sup> Æneas ergo cum viginti quatuor navibus a patria discessit, comitantibus eum tribus

Troja traditur.

Mors Priami,

et Polyxenæ.

Finis belli Trojani.

<sup>1</sup> *si . . . persuaderent*] om. C.D.<sup>2</sup> *indignati*] om. C.D.<sup>3</sup> *sua*] om. B.<sup>4</sup> *Promissa*, C.D.<sup>5</sup> So B.D.; om. A.E.<sup>6</sup> Altered verbally in C.D.<sup>7</sup> *Enchisen*, B.<sup>8</sup> *sui*] om. A.D.<sup>9</sup> *redit*, C.D.; with other slight variations.<sup>10</sup> *fuit*, B.; *pugnatum est itaque*, D.<sup>11</sup> *milia*, ins. B.C.D.<sup>12</sup> *milia*, ins. B.C.D. (D. has 296.)



counsail, and seide he schulde dey ȝif euere he were so wood to counsail þat eftsones. Þerfore þey took greet indignacioun,] <sup>1</sup> and sente Polydamas to þe Grees forto betraye þe citee for hire owne sauacioun. The Grees grauntede pees to þese þre, [to] <sup>2</sup> Antenor, to Eneas, to Polydamas, and to alle hires, <sup>3</sup> and þe citee was i-oponed by nyȝte to þe enemyes. <sup>4</sup> Þanne Priamus fliȝ to auters of goddes, and Neoptolemus pursued hym and slow hym stan deed. <sup>5</sup> Eneas hidde Polyxena at his fader Anchises at þe prayer of Helene. Andromache hadde fredom i-graunted. Polyxena was longe i-souȝt, and at þe laste i-founde and i-slawe of Neoptolemus at here fader tombe. Eneas, for he hadde hidde Polyxena, was i-hote be agoo. Þe londe was i-lefte to Antenor. Helen wente home aȝen wiþ Menelaus. Me hadde i-fouȝte at Troye ten ȝere and sixe monþes, and were i-slawe of þe Troians, or þe citee was bytrayed, sixe hondred þousand þre skore and sixtene; and whan þe citee was betrayed, þre score þowsand and eiȝten þowsand. <sup>6</sup> Þanne Eneas wente out of þe contray wiþ foure and twenty schippes, and wiþ hym þre þowsend men and þre

TREVISA.

seyenge þei scholde loose theire lyfes, if thei movede to hym eny more of þat mater. Wherefore thei, hauenge indignacion, sende Polydamas to þe Grekes, offerenge to theym the delyueraunce of the cite, the lifes of theym grauntede and of theire men. Whiche grauntenge to theyme peace, and to alle theire men, that is to saye, vn to Antenor, Eneas, and to Polydamas, and to alle theire men, the ȝates of the cite were sette open to the Grekes in þe nyȝhte. Where Priamus was sleyne of Neoptolomus. Eneas takenge Polyxena, hidde here at a place of Anchisen his fader, in the temple of goddes. Also liberte was grauntede to Andromacha at the instaunce of Helena. Polyxena, doȝhter to Priamus, founde at the laste, was throtelede at the beryalle of here fader. Wherefore Eneas was commaundede to departe from that cuntre, for the hidenge off Polyxena. That londe was lefte to Antenor, and Helena was restorede to Menelaus her howsebonde, kyng of Athenes. Where thei did fiȝhte by x. yere and vj. monethes, and there were sleyne of the Troianes, afore the treason of hit, vj<sup>c</sup>. lxxvj. m<sup>l</sup>, and after the treason of that cite cc. lxxviiij. m<sup>l</sup>. Eneas departede from that cuntre, takenge with hym xx<sup>iiiiij</sup> schippes, with iij. m<sup>l</sup>. men and ccc.;

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.* (*β.* has *þei* for *he* twice.)

<sup>2</sup> Added from *a.* *β.* and *Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> to *alle theyr retinue*, *Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *Grekes*, *Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *stan deed*] om. *Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> Sentence recast by *Cx.*

milibus et trecentis, Antenorem quoque<sup>1</sup> secuti sunt duo milia, Andromacham et Helenum<sup>2</sup> duo milia.<sup>3</sup>

## CAP. XXV.

*De Aylon et Abdon, iudicibus Israel. Græci post Trojam eversam domum redeunt; socii Diomedis in aves conversi. De hujusmodi transmutationibus quid judicandum.*<sup>4</sup>

Aylon. <sup>5</sup>AYLON de tribu Zabulon iudicavit Israel decem Anno Abr. 832.  
Anno Aylon 1. annis; quos<sup>6</sup> tamen Septuaginta interpretes non annumerant, et ideo Eusebius annumerat ejus annos temporibus Josuæ, Samuelis, et Saulis, quorum annos Scriptura tacet, plus annorum ponens quam in Josepho reperitur. Ita ut ab egressu de Ægypto usque ad templum<sup>7</sup> Salomonis sunt anni quadringenti octoginta.<sup>8</sup>

Abdon. Abdon sive Labdon<sup>9</sup> iudicavit Israel octo annis, cujus Anno Abr. 862.  
Anno Abdon 1. anno tertio capta est Troja, anno scilicet a nativitate Abrahamæ octingentesimo xliij<sup>o</sup>,<sup>10</sup> ab egressu<sup>11</sup> Israel de Ægypto cccxl<sup>o</sup>,<sup>12</sup> anno regni regis Latini in Italia xxv<sup>o</sup>, anno ante urbem Romam conditam circiter quadringentesimo xxxii<sup>o</sup>.<sup>13</sup> *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.*<sup>14</sup> Post Trojam eversam,<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> vero, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> Helenam, B., badly. See *Dar. Phryg.* § 44.

<sup>3</sup> Andromacham . . . milia] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>5</sup> Post Abessam, ins. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> So D.; quem, A.E.

<sup>7</sup> tempus, B.

<sup>8</sup> Paragraph slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> Lapdon, B.

<sup>10</sup> lxxiii., A.

<sup>11</sup> ingressu, B.

<sup>12</sup> anno, ins. E.; it would be better before *ab*.

<sup>13</sup> Numbers slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>14</sup> C.D. omit reference.

<sup>15</sup> Troja eversa, C.D.

hondred, and wip Antenor two<sup>1</sup> powsand, wip Andromache<sup>2</sup> TREVISIA.  
and Helenus two powsand.

*Capitulum vicesimum quintum. Aylon. Abdon.*

AYLON, of þe lynage of Zabulon, was iuge of Israel ten zere. Nopeles þe Seuenty acounteþ hem nouzt, and perfore Eusebius acounteþ his zeres of Iosue, of Samuel, and of Saul; for þe Scripture spekeþ nouzt of here zeres. Nopeles þey setteþ moo zeres þan beþ i-founde by Iosephus. So þat from þe goynge out of Egipte anon to Salaman his temple were foure hondred zere and foure score. Abdon, þat heet Lapdon, was also iuge of Israel eihte zere. In his pridde zere Troye was i-take, eihte hondred zere and foure and fourty after Abraham his burpe, þre hondred zere and fourty after þe goynge out of Egipt, þe zere of kyng Latyn in Italy fyue and twenty, to fore þe buldyng of Rome aboute an<sup>3</sup> foure hondred zere and two and pritty.<sup>4</sup> *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sexto-decimo.* After þat Troye was destroyed, zit while kyng Latyn regned in Itali, þe Grees þat tornede azen and<sup>5</sup> hadde in þe

and also ij. m<sup>l</sup>. folowede Antenor, and ij. m<sup>l</sup>. Helena and MS. HARL.  
Andromacha. 2261.

*Capitulum vicesimum quintum.*

AYLON, of the tribe of Zabulon, was gouernoure in Israel x. yere, whom the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores do not annumerate; perfore Eusebius ziffethe that tyme to the yeres of Iosue, Samuel, and of Saul, the yeres of whom Scripture dothe not rehearse. Abdon, other Labdon, was gouernoure in Israel xl<sup>iiij</sup>. yere, in the ccc. and fowrty yere of the egression of the childer of Israel from Egipte, in the xx<sup>v</sup>. yere off the reigne of kyng Latinus in Ytaly, and ccc. xxx<sup>iiij</sup>. yere afore the edifienge of the cite of Rome. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo sexto.* After the destruction of Troye, Latinus the kyng reingenge that tyme in Ytaly, the Grekes were afflicte and trowblede soore in

<sup>1</sup> *thre*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *Adromache*, MS. A few similar trivial errors of orthography have been tacitly corrected in this chapter.

<sup>3</sup> *an*] So MS., *a. β. γ.*; om. Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *twenty*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> This word should be cancelled apparently, though found in all the four MSS.

Græci post regnante adhuc in Italia rege Latino, reversi Græci  
Trojam  
eversam  
domum  
revertun-  
tur. multipliciter in itinere sunt afflicti. Nam, teste Var-  
rone libro tertio de historiis, socii Diomedes in volu-

Diomedis cres sunt conversi, ipseque Diomedes in itinere dispa-  
templum ;  
ejus socii  
in volucres  
conversi. ruit, ita ut pro deo sit habitus, templumque ejus<sup>1</sup>  
celebre sit apud insulam Diomediam non longe a monte  
Gargano in Apulia ; et hoc templum circumvolare  
atque incolere aves perhibentur tam mirabili obsequio  
ut aquam rostris<sup>2</sup> spargant. Ubi si venerint Græci  
aut Græcorum stirpe nati<sup>3</sup> eis adulantur ;<sup>4</sup> si autem  
alienigenas viderint, grandibus rostris eos vulnerant.<sup>5</sup>

Similia de Et ad id astruendum narrat Varro non fabuloso men-  
sociis Ulys-  
sis et de dacio sed historica veritate de illa maga famosissima  
Arcadibus Circe, quæ socios Ulixis mutavit in bestias ; et de  
in lupos Arcadibus qui sorte ducti transnatabant quoddam stag-  
mutatis num atque ibi convertebantur<sup>6</sup> in lupos, et cum feris<sup>7</sup>  
narrat vivebant. Si autem non vescerentur ibi<sup>8</sup> carne hu-  
Varro. mana, rursus post novem annos renatato<sup>9</sup> stagno re-  
formabantur in homines. Dicit etiam<sup>10</sup> Demænetum

<sup>1</sup> *ejus*] om. E

<sup>2</sup> *rostris*, om. A B.

<sup>3</sup> *progeniti*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> So D., which has *et illic si* above ;  
*adulentur*, A.E.

<sup>5</sup> *verberant*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *vertebantur*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *ibidem*, ins. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *ibi*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *denatato*, C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *denique*, C.D.

weie many myshappes. For Varro,<sup>1</sup> libro tertio de historia, seip̄ pat Diomed his felawes were i-torned in to foules, and Diomedes hym self was na more i-seie ; so pat he was i-holde a god. His temple is solempne in þe ilond Diomedia, nouȝt fer from Mont Gargan in Apulia.<sup>2</sup> Me seip̄ pat foules woneþ and fleep̄ about þis temple, and serueþ wonderliche, and springeþ water. Ȝif þe Grees or<sup>3</sup> eny oþer of þe kynde of [þe]<sup>4</sup> Grees comeþ peder, þe bryddes makeþ<sup>5</sup> hem good semblaunce; and Ȝif eny oþer comeþ, þey woundeþ hem wip hire grete beeles. And forto conferme þe same Varro<sup>7</sup> telleþ nouȝt a fable lesynge, but soþenesse of storie of þat famous wicche<sup>8</sup> Circe, pat torneþ<sup>9</sup> and chaungede Vlixes his felawes into bestes ; and of þe Arcades<sup>10</sup> pat by lot swam ouer a pool and þan were i-torned into wolfes and leuede wip wylde bestes, and Ȝif he<sup>11</sup> ete þere no manis flesche, þey schulde after nyne ȝere swymme home ouer þe pool and torne aȝen in to schap of mankynde. [He sayth also that Demenetus, whan he had

TREVISA.

theire returnenge home. For as the poete Varro rehersethe, libro iij<sup>o</sup>, de Historia, the felowes of Diomedes were turnede in to bryddes, and the same Diomedes euaneschede away sodenly in that journey, in so moche that he is worscheppede for a god, whose temple is an yle callede Diomedia, not ferre from the hille callede Garganus, in that londe callede Apulia. In whiche temple bryddes be of so grete diligence that thei caste water with their billes, and if men of Greece comme thider, other elles eny of the kynde of theyme, thei schewe pleasure to theym. And if thei fynde other straungeours there, thei hurte theyme with their grete billes. To the whiche affirmacion Varro rehersethe, not as in fabulose lesynge, but as in a trawthe historicalle, of the moste famos Circes, whiche chaungede the felowes of Vlixes in to bestes ; and of men of Arcadia, or of Arcades,<sup>10</sup> whiche after chaunce did swymme ouer a water, and were turnede in to wulfes, lyvenge in deserte amonge wilde bestes ; and if thei did not eite the flesche of man, thei scholde returne after ix. yere y-paste vn to their propre similitude and kynde, that water y-swymmede ouer ageyne. Also he seythe, that when Demenetus hade tastede

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> So β. γ., Cx. ; *Farro*, MS., *a.*<sup>2</sup> So *a.* and Cx. ; *Ampula*, MS.<sup>3</sup> So also Cx. ; *oþer*, *a.* (*or* is very frequently *oþer* in *a.*)<sup>4</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>5</sup> *make*, *a.*<sup>6</sup> *semblaunt*, *a.*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> So *a.* and Cx. ; *Farro*, MS.<sup>8</sup> *dyuyneresse*, *sorceresse*, and *wytche*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *transfourmede*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *Archades*, MSS. and Cx.<sup>11</sup> *they*, Cx. (a frequent variation.)

cum gustasset de sacrificio Arcadis, in lupum fuisse conversum; et post novem annos in propriam<sup>1</sup> formam restitutum; pugillatu quoque sese exercuisse, et Olympico postmodum vicisse<sup>2</sup> certamine. *Plinius, libro xvij<sup>o</sup>,<sup>3</sup> capitulo xxij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>4</sup> Homines in lupos verti rursusque<sup>5</sup> restitui falsum existimamus.<sup>6</sup> Auctores tamen Græciæ tradunt Arcades ad stagnum quoddam ejusdem regionis duci, ac vestitu eorundem in quercu suspenso tranare,<sup>7</sup> et in deserto in lupos transfigurari,<sup>8</sup> et cum eisdem lupis per novem annos conversari. Quo in tempore, si humana carne abstinerint, rursus renatato stagno ad proprium habitum et effigiem redire, addito tamen novem<sup>9</sup> annorum senio; sed nullum est tam impudens mendacium quod omnino teste careat.<sup>10</sup>

Similia etiam narrat Augustinus,

*Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.*<sup>11</sup>

Quid igitur ad hæc dicemus? Certe cum nos in Italia constituti essemus, satis audiebamus de quibusdam

<sup>1</sup> *pristinam*, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *vixisse*, B.

<sup>3</sup> 18<sup>o</sup>, C.D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 34. (c. 22 of some.)

<sup>4</sup> 2<sup>o</sup>, A.

<sup>5</sup> *rursusque*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *existimamus*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *transnatare*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *transformari*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *novem*] om. E.

<sup>10</sup> *careat*] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 18.

tasted of the sacrifice of Archad,<sup>1</sup> was torned in to a wolf; and after nyne yere he was restored ayene to his owne shappe of mankynde,<sup>2</sup> and vsede afterward geauntes dedes, and hadde þe maistrye in a tornement<sup>3</sup> of Olympus.<sup>4</sup> *Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo.* Þat men torneþ in to<sup>5</sup> wolfes and eft<sup>6</sup> in to hire owne schap, we troweþ it be false. Nopeles auctoures of Grees telleþ þat<sup>7</sup> Arcades were i-lad to a pool in þe same lond, and heng hire clopes on an ook, and swam ouer þe pool, and in wildernesse tornede into wolues, and nyne ȝere wonede among wolfes; and ȝif þey kepte hem al þat tyme and ete no manis flesche, þey schulde swymme home aȝe, and take here owne clopes and hire owne schap, and be nyne ȝere eldere<sup>8</sup> þan þey were whan they wente out: but þere is no lesynges so grete þat is wip oute witesse.<sup>9</sup> *Augustinus, libro 18<sup>o</sup>, capitulo 16.*<sup>11</sup> Þan what schal we saye to alle þese sawes? <sup>12</sup> Certeynliche whanne we were in Italy we herde i-now of wommen hostelers of þat lond, þat vsede to ȝeue chese þat was bywicched to men þat

TREVISA.

of the sacrifice of Archades<sup>1</sup> he was turnede in to a wulfe, and restorede in to his proprur forme after ix. yere y-paste, and to haue hade the victorye after that at the actes Olimpicalle. *Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitulo 22<sup>o</sup>.* We suppose, in oure estimacion, that thynges to be false, as men to be chaungede in to wulfes, and to be restorede to theirre propre forme ageyn. Neuerthelesse, auctores of the londe of Grece rehearse that men of Arcadia be ledde to a certeyne watere in that cuntre, levenge theirre vesture in an holo oke, swymme ouer that water, and be transfigurate in deserte in to wulfes, and to be conuersaunte with wulfes by ix. yere. And if they absteyne from the flesche of man by this season, that tyme y-paste, and þe water passede ouer, thei schalle be returnede in to theirre propre forme. But truly there is noo lesenge, thauȝhe hit be of euidente apparicion of falsehenes, but hit hathe somme testimony and wittenesse. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo 16<sup>o</sup>.* What schalle we saye to these thynges? Truly when we were in Ytaly we herde of diuerse women of that cuntre whiche were wonte

MS. HARL. 2261.

<sup>1</sup> Read *Arcas*; but the error may safely be ascribed to the translators themselves.

<sup>2</sup> Added from β. γ., Cx. (γ. omits of *mankynde*).

<sup>3</sup> *tornyng*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Olymp*, α. β.

<sup>5</sup> *be transformed into*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *oft*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *þat þe*, α. (not Cx.)

<sup>8</sup> *older*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *þat ... wittesse*] but it may be confermed, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> So α. and Cx.; 16, MS.

<sup>11</sup> So α. and Cx.; 22, MS.

<sup>12</sup> *sayngys*, Cx.

illarum partium mulieribus stabulariis, quæ dare solebant caseum veneficum viatoribus; unde et<sup>1</sup> in jumenta illico verterentur, et onera portarent, manente in eis mente rationali; iterumque perfuncto<sup>2</sup> officio<sup>3</sup> ad se redire. Sic quoque de se fatetur Apuleius in libro suo sibi contigisse, quod veneno hujusmodi<sup>4</sup> sumpto,<sup>5</sup> et humano manente animo,<sup>6</sup> asinus fieret. *Ranulphus.*<sup>7</sup>

et Apuleius,

et Willelmus Malmesburiensis.

Simile narrat Willelmus de Regibus libro secundo de duabus incantatricibus, quæ in strata publica Romam ducente<sup>8</sup> habitantes, hospitem, si quando solus veniebat, in aliquod animal vertebant. Unde et quemdam<sup>9</sup> histrionem sic hospitatum in asinum verterunt mirabilibus gesticulationibus insignitum, quem et pro<sup>10</sup> ingenti summa pecuniæ cuidam diviti<sup>11</sup> vendiderunt; sub tali tamen admonitione, quod aquam nunquam transiret.<sup>12</sup> Custos itaque illi appositus aliquandiu mandatum rigide observabat, veruntamen temporis lapsu sub laxiori custodia asinus evadens<sup>13</sup> in proximum lacum se projecit, et sic pristinam formam humanam recepit. Custos insequens de asino amisso a quocumque occurrente<sup>14</sup> sciscitatur. Refert ille sic reformatus se asinum fuisse,

<sup>1</sup> *et*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *perfinito*, A.; *perfecto*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *officio*] om. A.

<sup>4</sup> *hujusmodi*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *in eo*] ins. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *animo*] om. E.

<sup>7</sup> *Ranulphus . . . xvj.*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> So A.B.; *ducentes*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *quemdam*] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *si*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *diviti*] om. A.

<sup>12</sup> *quod non in aquam transiret*, A.; *nunquam solus ad aquam*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *evadens*, B.

<sup>14</sup> Transposed in B.



trauailled by þe weie, and anon<sup>1</sup> þe men tornede into bestes and bar heuy charges, and hadde kyndeliche witte and resoun ; and whan þey hadde i-doo hir seruice þey tornede aʒen into<sup>2</sup> hir owne schap. Also Apule[i]us in his booke knowlechede<sup>3</sup> þat so hit happed hym self, þat he toke suche venym, and hadde his witte and resoun, and was i-made an asse.<sup>4</sup> R. Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo, telleþ suche<sup>5</sup> doynge of tweyne wicches þat wonede in þe hiʒe weye þat ledeþ to Rome ;<sup>6</sup> and ʒif eny gest come allone, þey torneþ<sup>7</sup> hym in to a beest ; and so come by ham a mynstral þat coupe moche merþe, and þey tornede hem in to an asse, and solde hym to a riche man for a grete somme of monay. Nopeles wiþ suche warnynge þat he schulde neuere passe water, and his wardeyn kepte hym besiliche longe tyme. Nopeles in passynge of tyme he took lasse hede to his asse ; and þe asse scaped to water, and torned aʒen in to þe schappe of mankynde. Þe wardeyn of þe asse folowede after, and asked<sup>8</sup> his asse of euerich man þat he mette ; and he, þat hadde ben an asse [and]<sup>9</sup> was torned to

TREVISA.

to ʒiffe chese to trauellenge men thro the whiche thei were chaungede in to other similitudes and did bere burthones, the mynde of man remanente in theyme. And to returne to theirre propre forme, that office and labore doen. Also Apule[i]us rehersethe in his boke that same thyng to haue happede to hym thro the recepcion of suche venome, and to haue been made an asse, hauenge the mynde of a man. R. Willelmus, de Regibus et Pontificibus, libro 2<sup>o</sup>, rehersethe, acordenge to the confirmacion of this mater, of ij. wicches dwellenge at Rome, wonte to chaunge a man in to an other similitude, if that he come to theirre place sole. Whiche women turnede in a season a iocular other mynstrelle in to the similitude of a ryalle asse, whom thei solde for a grete summe of money, vnder this condicion and monicion to the byer, that the asse scholde not goe ouer the water in eny wise. The byer kepede that commaundemente streytely a longe season, neuerthelesse he hade more liberte in kepenge by processe of tyme, whiche goenge ouer a water was restorede in to his propre forme. The byer of the asse folowenge, inquirede of euery man with whom he did mete of his asse. That man restorede to his propre forme seide that he was that asse, and to be restorede to

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> to þe, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>2</sup> to, a.<sup>3</sup> knowlecheþ, a. β.; sayth, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Some words crroneously repeated in MS. (which omits R.), and a.; (text as β. γ. and Cx.)<sup>5</sup> þat suche, MS. (not Cx.)<sup>6</sup> wey to Romeward, Cx.<sup>7</sup> torned, a. β.<sup>8</sup> aʒed after, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

et modo hominem induisse. Famulus custos ad dominum suum hunc adducit. Dominus autem ad Leonem papam utrumque ducit.<sup>1</sup> Incantatrices aniculæ coram papa convictæ id idem fatentur. Dubitantem papam super hac re confirmat Petrus Damianus, litteraturæ peritus, exemplo Simonis Magi, qui Faustinianum in Simonis figura videri et<sup>2</sup> a filiis propriis horreri fecerat. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.* Tenendum est igitur dæmones, nisi Deo permittente, nihil<sup>3</sup> posse; nec etiam naturam aliquam creare, neque animum neque<sup>4</sup> corpus mutare.<sup>5</sup> Quæ tamen a vero Deo conditore creata<sup>6</sup> sunt specie tenus videntur<sup>7</sup> aliquando commutare, ita videlicet ut illud hominis fantasticum, quod cogitando sive somniando variat,<sup>8</sup> per rerum genera, etiam cum corpus non sit, corporum<sup>9</sup> tamen similes formas mira<sup>10</sup> celeritate capit, sopitis corporeis sensibus;<sup>11</sup> fantasticum autem illud velut corporatum in alicujus animalis effigie appareat sensibus<sup>12</sup> alienis, talisque homo sibi videatur esse, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et portare onera.<sup>13</sup> Quæ si vera

Talia per  
dæmonum  
præstigias  
feri cre-  
dibile est.

<sup>1</sup> adducit, B.

<sup>2</sup> So A.; om. E.

<sup>3</sup> nec, A.

<sup>4</sup> aliquod, ins. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> permutare, B.

<sup>6</sup> creatore condita, C. (not D.)

<sup>7</sup> demones, ins. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> variatur, A.D.

<sup>9</sup> corporium, A.

<sup>10</sup> inita, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> fantasticum . . . sensibus] om. A.B.

<sup>12</sup> Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

man aȝen, seide þat he hadde ben an asse and was by come a man. And his wardeyn ladde<sup>1</sup> hym to his lorde, and þe lorde ladde hem bope to Leon þe pope, and þe olde wicches were conuycte tofore þe pope, and knowleched þe dede. Þe pope dowted<sup>2</sup> of þis þing, and Petrus Damianus,<sup>3</sup> a connyng man of lettrure,<sup>4</sup> confermede þe manere doynge by ensample of Simon Magus, þat tornede Faustinus in to his owne schappe, and made his owne children<sup>5</sup> drede hym ful sore. *Augustinus ubi supra.* Hit is to trowynge,<sup>6</sup> þat fendes mowe nouȝt doo but at Goddis suffraunce; and so þei mowe make no manere kynde, noþer body chaunge.<sup>7</sup> Noþeles it semep somtyme þat þey chaungeþ liknes and schappe of þinges, þat God made and wrouȝte; so þat þe ffantasie of man<sup>8</sup> þat chaungeþ in pouȝt and in metynge of sweuenes by dyuers manere þinges, and takeþ þe lyknesse of bodyes wip a wonder swiftnesse, þey no body be present. Whan þe wittes of þe body beþ absent<sup>9</sup> and i-lette<sup>10</sup> of here worchyng, and þe ymage and<sup>11</sup> liknesse, þat is in pouȝt and in fantasie, is as it were i-peynted<sup>12</sup> in þe liknesse of som beest, and semep to<sup>13</sup> oper men wittes in þe<sup>14</sup> same liknesse. And so a man may seme to hym self suche as he semep in metynge of sweuenes; and so

TREVISA.

his propre similitude. The seruaunte and keper of that asse brouȝhte the man to his lorde. Then the lorde and byer of that asse brouȝhte bothe the wicches to Leo the pope, whiche conuicte afore the pope grauntede that thyng. The pope dowtenge of that thyng, Damianus, a man excellent in sapiencie, affermede Faustinianus to be seen in the similitude of Simon Magus, and to be dredde soore of his awne childer. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* Hit is to be holden that the deuelles may not do eny thyng but by the permission and suffraunce of God, neither to create eny nature, neither to chaunge the body or sawle of those thynges which be create of Allemyȝhty God. Neuerthelesse thei appere to chaunge thynges to the siȝhte, as the vertu fantasticalle, when a man is in slepe, causethe a man as to apparence to be chaungede in to an other similitude, and soe that thyng fantasticalle apperethe to theyme

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> led, a., Cx.<sup>2</sup> doute, a.<sup>3</sup> *Damyanus*, MS.; also *Symon* and *Fastinus* below. Other MSS. read as in text, but *Faustinus* is the mistake of Trevisa.<sup>4</sup> *lettur*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *childer*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *It is to be bilcuyd*. Cx.<sup>7</sup> *ne chaunge bodyes*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *a man*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *astent*, a. (not Cx.)<sup>10</sup> *i-sette*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>11</sup> So a. and Cx.; *in*, MS.<sup>12</sup> *i-prented*, a. β. γ. and Cx.<sup>13</sup> *to*] þat, MS. (not a.)<sup>14</sup> *in þe*] so β. γ., Cx.; þe, MS., a.

Mira de  
Præstantio.

sunt<sup>1</sup> onera, portantur a dæmonibus; ut sic illusio fiat<sup>2</sup> hominibus. Nam quidam nomine Præstantius patri suo hoc<sup>3</sup> contigisse narravit, ut venenum illud<sup>4</sup> per caseum in domo sua sumeret, et jaceret in lecto quasi dormiens, nec posset aliquatenus excitari. Post aliquot vero<sup>5</sup> dies evigilans quasi somnia narrabat, quæ passus fuerat; se videlicet caballum effectum, et annonam inter alia animalia militibus apud Rhæticiam bajulasse; quod ita ut narravit factum fuisse comper- tum est. Dixit etiam se domi per noctem vidisse quendam philosophum sibi notum, sibique<sup>6</sup> exposuisse nonnulla Platonica, quæ antea rogatus exponere noluerat.<sup>7</sup> Et cum ab eodem philosopho quæsitum fuisset cur in domo ejus fecerit quod in domo propria petenti<sup>8</sup> negaverat, “Nec feci,” inquit, “sed me sic<sup>9</sup> fecisse somniavi.”<sup>10</sup> Ac per hoc alteri<sup>11</sup> per imaginem fantasticam exhibitum est vigilanti, quod alter vidit in somnis. Proinde quod Arcades vertuntur in lupos; quod carminibus Circes<sup>12</sup> socii Ulixidis vertuntur in volucres<sup>13</sup> secundum istum modum videtur mihi posse fieri, si tamen factum est. Socii vero Diomedis, quia cito disparuerunt et nusquam comparuerunt, perdentibus<sup>14</sup> eos ultoribus<sup>15</sup> angelis malis, creduntur in alias aves conversi; quæ arte dæ-

<sup>1</sup> *sint*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *fit*, C.D. (having *et* for *ut*.)

<sup>3</sup> *hoc*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *illud*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *vero*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *que*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *nolebat*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *petenti*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *sic*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *somniavi*] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> *aliquando*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Circe* (for *Circæ*), MSS.

<sup>13</sup> *bestias*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *portantibus*, C.D. (not Aug.)

<sup>15</sup> *ulterioribus*, C.D. (not Aug.)

hym may seme pat he bereþ burþenes and charges ; [but if þey beþ verrey burþens and charges],<sup>1</sup> fendes bereþ hem, pat men mowe so be bygiled. For oon Prestantius tolde pat suche an happe byfel his owne fader, pat he took suche venym by chese in his owne hous, and lay in a bed, as he were slepyng ; and no man myȝte hym awake, but after many dayes he wook,<sup>2</sup> and tolde as it were a sweuene how hym was byfalle ; for hym pouȝte pat he was i-made an hors, and bare corne among oper bestes to knyȝtes pat were at Retica ;<sup>3</sup> and it was i-founde, pat riȝt as he tolde it was i-doo in dede. He seide also pat he say a filosofre at home in his hous ; þe whiche filosofre<sup>4</sup> expowned hym<sup>5</sup> many þinges<sup>6</sup> of Plato his bookes, þe whiche þinges he hadde i-bede hym expowne to fore honde, and he wolde not. And whan me axed of þe filosofre, why he wolde expowne in anoper manis hous pat [he]<sup>7</sup> hadde denied in his owne, "Nay," quod he, "I dede nouȝt so, but I "mette pat I dede." And in pat manere by þe ymage and liknes of fantasie it was schewed to pat oon waking what pat oper mette in his slepe. Perfore pat þe Arcades torned in to wolfes by wiccheecraft of Circa,<sup>8</sup> me semep it myȝte bee in pis manere, nopeles yf it were soop. But for Diomedes his felawes vanschede sodeynliche away, and were neuere after i-founde, me trowep pat wicked aungels took wreche of hem, and torned hem in to anoper foules liknesse,<sup>9</sup> pat were i-made and i-brouȝt

TREVISA.

as thyng corporealle in a straunge similitude, and to bere burdones, whiche be borne of deuelles and if the trawthe myȝhte be knowen. A nowble man, Prestantius by name, rehersethe suche a thyng to haue happede to his fader by the eytenge of chese, lyenge in his bedde that he myȝhte not move. Whiche man awakede rehersedē meruellous thynges whiche he hade suffrede, and how that he was made in the similitude of an horse, and how he bare corne amonge other bestes to Retica,<sup>3</sup> whiche thyng was provede to haue bene after his narracion. Also that men of Arcadia be chaungede in to wulfes, and that þe felawes of Vlives were chaungede in to bryddes thro Circe,<sup>8</sup> y thenke that hit may be doen by this maner rehersedē afore. The felawes of Diomedes be supposede to haue bene chaungede in to bryddes, whiche were pereschede as sodenly of myȝhty bryddes, callede Gripes, but to be trawede raper that thei were denelles, whiche bryddes were brouȝhte thro the

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Added from *a. β.* and *Cx.*<sup>2</sup> So *a.* ; *awoke*, *Cx.* ; *toke*, *MS.*<sup>3</sup> *Rethica*, *MSS.*<sup>4</sup> Words erroneously repeated in *MS.* and *a.* ; text as *β. γ.*, *Cx.*<sup>5</sup> to him, *Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *secretēs*, *Cx.*<sup>7</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.*<sup>8</sup> So *MSS.* and *Cx.*, for *Circe* ; but correctly above ; *Sirces*, *Harl. MS.*<sup>9</sup> *torned hem in to oper foules*, *a. β. γ.*

monum aliunde deductæ<sup>1</sup> sunt, et in loco illorum hominum subrogatæ, sicut cerva pro<sup>2</sup> Iphigenia Agamemnonis<sup>3</sup> filia supposita fuisse cognoscitur. Quod autem Diomedis templo aves rostratæ aquam spargunt et Græcigenis blandiuntur, dæmonum<sup>4</sup> fit instinctu; quorum interest persuadere hominibus Diomedem deum factum esse, ut sic decipiantur homines in cultura deorum<sup>5</sup> falsorum.<sup>6</sup> *Ranulphus*. De ista materia vide plus supra, primo libro, capitulo<sup>7</sup> *Hibernia*.<sup>8</sup> *Giraldus in Topographia*. Dæmones seu<sup>9</sup> mali homines naturas mutare non possunt;<sup>10</sup> sed species, Deo permittente, transmutant seu transfigurant. Ita ut sensibus humanis illusionem sopitis res non videantur sicut sunt, sed vi phantasmatis aut magicæ artis<sup>11</sup> fictitiæ formæ appareant; sed Deum<sup>12</sup> sicut res creare ita et eas<sup>13</sup> invicem commutare se vindicando aut potentiam suam seu<sup>14</sup> misericordiam declarando non absurdum<sup>15</sup> credimus; sicut uxorem Loth in statuam salis, et aquam in vinum, vel, interiore manente natura,<sup>16</sup> extra<sup>17</sup> solum transformare.<sup>18</sup>

Species tantum, non naturas, possunt dæmones mutare.

<sup>1</sup> *adductæ*, A.B.D.

<sup>2</sup> *et*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *regis*, ins. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *demonis*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *deorum*] om. E.

<sup>6</sup> C.D. introduce the following passage here: “*Isidorus, Etymologiarum xi<sup>o</sup>, capitulo ultimo*. Fiunt quandoque monstruosæ transformationes hominum in bestias, quod fit magicis carminibus aut herbarum veneficiis. Quidam enim recipiunt mutationem per ipsam naturam; quidam vero per corruptionem transeunt in alias species, ut de putridis vitulis apes, de equis scarabæi; unde Ovidius: “*Concava litorei si demas brachia caneri, Scorpius exhibit caudaque*

“*minabitur unca.*” For *quidam* D. has *quædam* twice. See p. 208.

<sup>7</sup> *de*, ins. A.

<sup>8</sup> Abbreviated in C.D. See vol. i. p. 358.

<sup>9</sup> *ac*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *non mutant*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *magicis artibus*, C. (not D.)

<sup>12</sup> *Deum vero*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *et eas*] so A.D.; ut *eas*, E.; et *ea*, B.; *eas et*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *vel*, A.; *sive*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *absurde*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *materia*, C. (not D.)

<sup>17</sup> *exterius*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *sicut in predictis patet exemplis*, C.D. (D. has various clerical errors and omissions in this citation).

pider by craft of fendes in stede of þe men,<sup>1</sup> as hit is i-knowe TREVISA.  
 pat an hynde was i-brouzt and i-put in stede of Iphigenia,<sup>2</sup>  
 Agamemnon<sup>3</sup> his douzter; and sche was i-lad away. Þat  
 foules at Diomedes temple springeþ water, and flatereth wiþ  
 þe Grees, þat is by excitynge of þe deuel for to brynge men  
 in witte for to trowe<sup>4</sup> þat Dyomede is i-made a god, þat  
 men be so begiled in worschippyng of false goddes. R.  
 Loke more of þis mattere in þe firste book, capitulo *Hibernia*.  
*Giraldus in Topographia*. Fendes and wicked men mowe  
 not chaunge kynde but by suffraunce of God; þei mowe  
 chaunge liknesse and schappe and lette manis wittes and  
 bygile men, so þat þinges semeþ nouzt as þey beep. But  
 by strengþe of fantasie and of wiccheecraft men haueþ semyng  
 by feyned schappes; but it is nouzt vnsittyng<sup>5</sup> þat we trowe  
 þat God as he makeþ þinges of nouzt, so he chaungeþ hem  
 oon into anoper,<sup>6</sup> forto take rihtful wreche oper forto schewe  
 his myzt oper mercie. So he tornede Loth is wyf in to an  
 ymage of salt, and water in to wyn; oper chaunge þe liknesse  
 wiþ oute and leue þe kynde vnchaunged wiþ ynne.

illusion of the deuelle, and subrogate in þe places of those MS. HARL.  
 men. Lyke as a herte was knowen to haue bene putte in 2261.  
 the place of Iphigenia<sup>2</sup> dozter of Agamemnon.<sup>3</sup> And that  
 grete bryddes caste water with their bylles in the temple of  
 Diomedes, and schewe as a glosenge chere to men of Grece,  
 is causede by the illusion of the deuelle, causenge men to  
 beleve that Diomedes was a godde, that men scholde be  
 deceyvede in the worschippenge of false goddes. R. Be-  
 holde more of this matere afore, libro primo, capitulo 34<sup>o</sup>.  
*Giraldus in Topographia*. Deuelles or ylle men may not  
 chaunge nature of eny thyng, but thei may chaunge simi-  
 litudes thro the permission of God, so that the trawthe  
 of the thyng dothe not appere, the wyttes oppressede with  
 the illusion of the deuelle; but after a similitude fantasti-  
 calle made and causede by wyccheecraft. But we beleve  
 Godde, that made nature, to chaunge theym, lyke as he  
 chaungede the wife of Loth in to a grete parte and quantite  
 of salte, and water in to wyne.

<sup>1</sup> Clauses varied in Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *Ephigenia*, MSS. and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Agamenon*, MSS. and Harl. MS.

<sup>4</sup> *for to trowe, &c.*] to believe Dio-  
 mede to be made a god, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Sic MS.; and so *α. β. γ.*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *oper, α. β. γ.*

## CAP. XXVI.

*De Ænea et Didone, et de regibus Latinis. Quæ in Græcia acciderunt tempore Sampson.*<sup>1</sup>

Æneas in  
Italiam  
venit.

Utrum  
Didonem  
viderit  
Æneas,  
necne.

*Martinus.* Post Trojæ excidium Æneas<sup>2</sup> cum Anchise patre suo<sup>3</sup> Ascanioque<sup>4</sup> filio in<sup>5</sup> navibus duodecim venerunt in<sup>6</sup> Siciliam, ubi Anchise mortuo, cum vellet Æneas navigare Italiam, tempestate pulsus<sup>7</sup> venit<sup>8</sup> in Africam; ubi a Didone regina<sup>9</sup> nimium est adamatus. Sed post aliquantulæ moræ spatium relicta Didone devenit<sup>10</sup> Italiam. *Ranulphus.* Sed si verum est quod Trogus et Papias et alii docti dicunt Carthaginem fuisse fundatam a Didone septuagesimo secundo anno ante conditionem urbis Romæ, quæ condita est anno quarto Achaz regis Judæ, constabit<sup>11</sup> quod Æneas nunquam vidit Didonem reginam Carthaginis, quia Æneas præcessit Didonem,<sup>12</sup> et obiit ante foundationem Carthaginis plusquam trecentis annis. Et hoc<sup>13</sup> innuit Augustinus primo libro Confessionum in fine,<sup>14</sup> dicens quod docti negant<sup>15</sup> Æneam vidisse Carthaginem.<sup>16</sup> *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* Hæc Dido vocata est Elissa, id est virago, ab eventu subsecuto; quia viriliter

Anno Abr. 804.  
Anno Abdon 3.

<sup>1</sup> No title in MSS.

<sup>2</sup> Æneas] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> et, ins. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> So A.B.; E. omits *que*.

<sup>5</sup> in] suo cum, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> in] om. A.B.

<sup>7</sup> repulsus, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> devenit, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> regina] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> So A.B.D.; venit, E.

<sup>11</sup> constat, A.B.

<sup>12</sup> Didonem] om. A.B.

<sup>13</sup> Et hoc] ut, B.

<sup>14</sup> in fine] so A.B.; om. E.

<sup>15</sup> negabant, A.B.

<sup>16</sup> Ranulphus . . . Carthaginem]  
om. C.D.



*Capitulum vicesimum sextum.*

TREVISA.

AFTER þe destroyenge<sup>1</sup> of Troye, Eneas wiþ his fader Anchises and his sone Ascanius wiþ twelue schippes come to Sicil. Þere<sup>2</sup> Anchises deide. And whanne Eneas wolde seille into Itali, tempest drof hym in to Affrica.<sup>3</sup> Þere he was hugeliche<sup>4</sup> i-loued of Dido þe queene; but after a schort tyme he lefte Dido and come in to Italy. R. Yf it is soop þat Trogus and Papy and oþer wise men telleþ, þat Dido bulde Cartage pre score þere and twelue to fore þe byldyng of þe citee of Rome, þat was i-bulde þe fourþe þere of Achaz, kyng of Iuda, þanne it is soop þat Eneas sygþ<sup>5</sup> neuere Dido þe quene of Cartage; for Eneas was to forehonde,<sup>6</sup> and deide þre hondred þere and more to fore þe buldyng of Cartage. And þat meneþ Seint Austyn primo libro Confessionum in fine, and seiþ þat wise men denyeþ þat Eneas sey Cartage.<sup>7</sup> *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* Þis Dido heet Elissa, þat is Virago, a manliche womman; for hap þat fel afterward, for sche

*Capitulum vicesimum sextum.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Martinus.* Eneas, with Anchisen his fader, and Ascanius his son, come to Sicille with xij. schippes, after the batelle of Troy, where Anchisen diede, whiche dedde, Eneas willenge to sayle to Ytaly, was brouzhte thro tempestes in the see vn to Affrike, where he was luffede moche of Dido the qwene. Whiche, levenge Dido the qwene, wente in to Ytaly. R. And if that be trawthe that Trogus and Papias reherse, seyenge that cite of Carthago to haue bene made by Dido in the lxxij. yere afore the makenge of the cite of Rome, whiche was edifiede in the iiij<sup>th</sup> yere of Achaz kyng of Iuda; then hit may be concludede that Eneas see neuer Dido qwene of Carthago, for Eneas was before the fundacion of Carthago more than ccc. yere. To the whiche confirmation Seynte Austyn seythe, primo libro Confessionum, in the ende, that men discrete denye Eneas to have seen Carthago.<sup>7</sup> *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* That Dido was callede Elissa, that is to say, virago, of a chaunce folowenge, for

<sup>1</sup> destruction, Cx.<sup>2</sup> and there, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.<sup>4</sup> hugeliche] right wel, Cx.<sup>5</sup> So *a.*; sawe, Cx.; seiþ, MS. (probably clerical error for seiþ).<sup>6</sup> was bifore, Cx., who varies the sentence.<sup>7</sup> So *a. β. γ.*; *Cartago*, MS. and Harl. MS.

Æneas et  
Evander  
contra  
Latinum  
et Turnum  
pugnant.

se occidit. *Trogus, libro octavodecimo.* Ipsa denique Elissa, soror Pygmaleonis, cum ad<sup>1</sup> accipiendum maritum a populo quasi urgeretur, ascendit super pyram quam ipsa<sup>2</sup> sibi<sup>3</sup> construxerat, et<sup>4</sup> seipsam occidit, ac pro dea diu culta est. *Martinus.* Æneas igitur Italiam veniens confœderatus est regi Evandro, qui in septem montibus tunc regnabat. Hi duo pugnaverunt contra Latinum, regem Latinorum, et contra Turnum, regem Tusciæ,<sup>5</sup> generum scilicet regis Latini. In quo bello Pallas filius Evandri et Turnus occiduntur.<sup>6</sup> *Ranulphus.*<sup>7</sup> Vult tamen Trogus,<sup>8</sup> libro xliij.<sup>9</sup> quod Æneas in primo adventu suo tantam gratiam coram rege Latino invenerit,<sup>10</sup> quod in partem regni intraverit, et quod filiam ejusdem Latini, Laviniam, sponsam Turni, in uxorem acceperit.<sup>11</sup> Unde et ambo sic confœderati, Æneas et Latinus,<sup>12</sup> bellum contra<sup>13</sup> Turnum<sup>14</sup> propter fraudatas Laviniaë nuptias susceperunt.<sup>15</sup> In quo<sup>16</sup> bello Turnus et Latinus ceciderunt.<sup>17</sup> Igitur Æneas post hanc victoriam utroque regno potitus, scilicet Latinorum et Tuscorum,<sup>18</sup> urbem nomine uxoris vocatam Lavinium condidit, et<sup>9</sup> bellum deinde contra regem<sup>20 21</sup>

Æneas  
eorum  
regnis  
potitur.  
Lavinium  
condit ;

<sup>1</sup> *ad*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *ipsa*] om. D.

<sup>3</sup> *sibi*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> *et*] om. B.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Thussia*, A.

<sup>6</sup> Citation slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.

<sup>8</sup> *Pompeius*, ins. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> 93°, C.D. wrongly. See lib. xliii.

c. 1.

<sup>10</sup> *Latini meruit*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Æneas et Latinus*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *adversus*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *regem Tuscorum*, ins. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *susceperint*, A. ; *protulerunt*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *quidem*, ins. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *occubuerunt*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *scilicet . . . Tuscorum*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *urbem . . . regem*] om. A.B.

<sup>21</sup> *Tuscorum*, ins. C.D.

slow<sup>3</sup> hir self manliche. *Trogus, libro octavo decimo.*<sup>1</sup> At pe laste pis Elissa, Pygmalion<sup>2</sup> his douzter, whan he<sup>3</sup> schulde be<sup>4</sup> compelled of pe peple forto take an housbonde, sche wente in to a greet fuyre pat sche haddè i-made ; and so sche slow hir self manliche, and was longe after i-worschipped as a goddes. *Martinus.* Pan Eneas com in to Itali, and was confedered and i-swore to kyng Euander, pat þoo regnede in seuene hilles. Þese tweyne fau<sup>3</sup>te a<sup>3</sup>enst Latyn, kyng of Latyns, and a<sup>3</sup>enst Turnus,<sup>5</sup> kyng [of Tuscan, kyng]<sup>6</sup> Latyn his douzter housbonde. In pat batayle Pallas Euander his sone and Turnus were i-slawe. R. Noþeles Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio, wil mene pat Eneas in his firste comyng fond so grete grace wip kyng Latyn, pat he entrede into a partye of pe kyngdom, and wedded Lauyn,<sup>7</sup> kyng Latyn his douzter, pat was Turnus his spouse ; and so boþe Latyn and Eneas i-confedered to gidres toke batayle a<sup>3</sup>enst Turnus for pe gileful mariage of Lauyn, and Latyn and Turnus were boþe dede in pat bataile. And Eneas afterward was kyng of eiper kyngdom of Latyns and of Tuscans, and bulde a citee and cleped pe citee Lauinium by pe name of his wif, and werred afterward a<sup>3</sup>enst pe

TREVISA.

sche did sle here selfe manly. *Trogus, libro decimo octavo.* MS. HARL. That Elissa, dozhter vn to Pygmalion, compellede by the 2261. peple to take an howsebonde, wente in to a place that sche hade made, and did sle here selfe, whiche was worschippede longe for a godesse. *Martinus.* Eneas, commenge to Ytaly, was confederate with Euander kyng, whiche reignede in vij. mowntes. Whiche ij. so confederate <sup>z</sup>afe batelle ageyne Latinus, kyng off Latynes, and ageyne Turnus, kyng of Tuscia, son in lawe to kyng Latinus, in whiche batelle Pallas, the son of Euander, and Turnus were sleyne. R. But Trogus rehersethe, libro xliij<sup>o</sup>, that Eneas in his firste commenge to Ytaly founde suche grace of kyng Latinus, that he admittede hym in to parte of his realme ; whiche toke Lauina, pe wife of Turnus and dozhter of kyng Latinus, in to his wife. Wherefore thei, so confederate as Eneas and Latinus, <sup>z</sup>afe batelle ageyne Turnus for the fraude and delay of the weddyng of Lauina his dozhter. In whiche batelle Turnus and Latinus were sleyne. That batelle doen, Eneas reioycede bothe the realmes, of Latynes and of Tuscia, and made a cite, calenge hit Lauinium, after the name of his wife, whiche

<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.* ; *octavo*, MS., wrongly. See lib. xviii. c. 6.

<sup>2</sup> *Pigmaleon*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> So also *a.* ; *she*, *Cx.* ; *leo*, *β.* ; *a. γ.*

<sup>4</sup> *haue be*, *Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *Tornus*, MS., *a.* (not *β.*, *Cx.*)

<sup>6</sup> Added from *a. β.* and *Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.* ; *Lamyn*, MS., and so below.

In bello  
contra Me-  
zentium  
occiditur.

De Iulo,  
qui et As-  
canius  
vocatur.

Mesentium<sup>1</sup> egit; <sup>2</sup> in quo et<sup>3</sup> Æneas<sup>4</sup> occubuit, relicto post se Ascanio filio<sup>5</sup> quem ex Creüsa genuerat apud Trojam.<sup>6</sup> *Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro quarto.*<sup>7</sup> Iulus<sup>8</sup> fuit filius Æneæ, qui primo loco dictus<sup>9</sup> est Ascanius, ab Ascanio fluvio Phrygiæ, et postmodum<sup>10</sup> dictus est Iulus<sup>11</sup> ab Ilo<sup>12</sup> rege Trojano. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.*<sup>13</sup> Postmodum<sup>14</sup> occiso Mesentio<sup>15</sup> Tuscorum<sup>16</sup> rege certamine singulari, Ascanius<sup>17</sup> vocatus est Iulus,<sup>18</sup> a prima lanugine barbæ tunc primum<sup>19</sup> in ea<sup>20</sup> apparente, quæ proprie dicitur Iulus; <sup>21</sup> et est nomen disyllabum, licet quandoque metricè ponatur trisyllabum.<sup>22</sup> *Ranulphus.* Hic notandum est quod<sup>23</sup> nisi tres<sup>24</sup> anni regni<sup>25</sup> Æneæ computentur infra annos regis<sup>26</sup> Latini vacillabit historiæ calculatio, quæ dicit Latinum regnasse xxxij. annis; præsertim cum anno xxv°. regis Latini<sup>27</sup> secundum omnes historicos Æneas, capta Troja,<sup>28</sup> Italiam venerit.

Ascanius  
Albam  
Longam  
condit.

<sup>29</sup> Ascanius filius Æneæ cœpit regnare apud Latinos, et regnavit triginta octo<sup>30</sup> annis. Qui relicto oppido Lavinio, quod pater suus<sup>31</sup> construxerat, Albam Lon-

<sup>1</sup> So A.D.E.; *Mecentium*, B. Commonly written *Mezentius*, but text agrees with Greek form.

<sup>2</sup> *gessit*, C.D., and *genuit* below.

<sup>3</sup> *et*] om. A.

<sup>4</sup> *et Æneas*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *filio*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *apud Trojam*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *libro quarto*] om. B.D.; *quarto*, om. A.

<sup>8</sup> *Ylus*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *vocatus*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *et postmodum*] postea, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> So D.E. (second hand); *Ilus*, A.; *Ylus*, B.C.

<sup>12</sup> *Ylo*, B.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Julius*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Postea*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Mecencio*, B.

<sup>16</sup> So D.; *Ruscorum*, A.E., placing *rege* before *Mesentio*.

<sup>17</sup> *Ascanius*] om. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *Ylus*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *tunc primum*] primo, B.; *populum*, E.

<sup>20</sup> *eo*, B.D.

<sup>21</sup> *Yulus*, B.

<sup>22</sup> *licet . . . trisyllabum*] om. C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *Hic . . . quod*] Et, C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *tres*] added from C.D.

<sup>25</sup> Added from A.B.C.D.

<sup>26</sup> *regni*, C.D., with other slight variations.

<sup>27</sup> *xxxij. . . . Latini*] small blank left in B.

<sup>28</sup> Here and elsewhere MSS. frequently have *Troja*.

<sup>29</sup> *Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio*, ins. A.B.

<sup>30</sup> *septem*, C.D.

<sup>31</sup> *Æneas*, ins. A.B.

TREVISA.

kyng of Messene in Tuscan. And in þat bataile Eneas was dede,<sup>1</sup> and lefte after hym his sone Ascanius, þat he hadde i-gete on<sup>2</sup> Creusa at Troye. *Isidorus, Etymolog.* Iulus was Eneas his sone, and heet firste Ascanius by þe name of a ryuer of Frigia þat so hatte,<sup>3</sup> and was afterwarde i-cleped Ilus, by þe name of Ilus kyng of Troye. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.* Afterward, whan þe kyng of Mesens was i-slawe in a singuler batayle of stalworþe men, þanne Ascanius was i-cleped Iulus for his firste spryngyng of berd [þat þo was first i-sene; for þe firste spring of berd]<sup>4</sup> is properliche i-cleped Iulus in Latyn [and is]<sup>5</sup> a name of tweie silables, [þey hit be operwhiles i-sette in þre sylables]<sup>6</sup> by cause of metre. R. Here take hede þat but þe ʒeres of Eneas his regnyng be acounted wiþ ynn þe ʒeres of kyng Latyn, þe acountyng of þe storie schal faille. For þe storie seiþ þat kyng Latyn reignede two and þritty ʒere; and specialliche while Eneas, whan Troye was i-take, come in to Itali, þe fyue and twenty ʒere of kyng Latyn, as alle stories telleþ. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio.* Ascanius, Eneas his sone, bygan to regne among þe Latyns; and regnede eiʒte and þritty ʒere, and lefte<sup>7</sup> þe citee Lauinium, þat his fader Eneas hadde somtyme i-bulde, and bulde þe citee Alban along vpon þe ryuer

ʒafe batelle after that vn. to Mese[n]tius kyng of Tuscia, MS. HARL. 2261.  
 in whom Eneas was sleyn, levenge after hym Ascanius his son, whom he gate of Creusa, at Troye. *Isidorus, Ethym.* Iulus was the son of Eneas; callede afore Ascanius; callede after Iulus, by Iulus kyng of the Troianes. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.* Whiche ʒiffenge batelle to Messentius, and sleenge hym, was callede Iulus; for in that tyme he began to haue a berde. R. Also hit is to be attendede but if the yeres of Eneas be acomptede with in þe yeres of kyng Latinus, the calculacion of the story schalle fayle, whiche scythe kyng Latinus to haue reignede xxxiiij. yere; and after alle storyes after the takenge of Troy, Eneas come to Ytaly in the xxv. yere of the reigne of kyng Latinus. *Trogus, libro 43.* Ascanius, the son of Eneas, began to reigne amonge the Latynes, contynuenge his reigne by xxxviiij. yere; whiche levenge the cite callede Lauinium, whiche his fader made, edifiede a cite, callenge hit Alba, on the water of Tibere,

<sup>1</sup> *slayne*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *in*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *heet*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>5</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>6</sup> Added from *a. β. γ.*; wanting in Cx.<sup>7</sup> *specialliche lefte*, MS. (not *a. β.* or Cx.)

gam super ripam Tiberis construxit, quæ trecentis annis caput regni illius fuit; a qua urbe Latini reges dicti sunt Albani.<sup>1</sup> *Trogus, libro xliij.*<sup>2</sup> Hic Ascanius<sup>3</sup> fratrem suum<sup>4</sup> Silvium Posthumum ex<sup>5</sup> Lavinia noverca sua, post mortem patris<sup>6</sup> natum, summa pietate educavit. Qui ideo dictus est Posthumus, quia post humationem patris natus. Et Silvius dictus est, quia in silva nutritus. A quo postmodum Latinorum<sup>7</sup> reges dicti sunt Silvii.<sup>8</sup> Huic quoque<sup>9</sup> Silvio Posthumo Ascanius postquam regnasset triginta octo annis regnum reliquit, eo quod filius suus Iulus,<sup>10</sup> a quo familia Juliorum<sup>11</sup> orta est, adhuc tenellæ erat ætatis, sicut dicit Marianus libro primo.<sup>12</sup>

Silvius  
Posthumus  
succedit.

Quæ in  
tempore  
Sampson  
acciderunt.

Sampson<sup>13</sup> judicavit Israel xx. annis; cujus tempore<sup>14</sup> ea contigerunt<sup>15</sup> de Græco Ulixæ, quæ fabulæ tradunt; quomodo videlicet Scyllam<sup>16</sup> fugerit et Sirenas. De quo dicit Palæphatus,<sup>17</sup> libro primo Incredibilium, quod Scylla fuit mulier hospites suos spoliare<sup>18</sup> consueta, et Sirenas<sup>19</sup> dicit esse meretrices,<sup>20</sup> quæ deceperunt<sup>21</sup> navigantes.<sup>22</sup> Eoque tempore<sup>23</sup> Ægyptiorum<sup>24</sup> Pyrrhus ab Oreste in templo Delphici Apollinis occiditur.<sup>25</sup> Quo etiam<sup>26</sup> tempore quidam tradunt Homerum floruisse.<sup>27</sup>

Anno Abr. 850.  
Anno Sampsoni.

<sup>1</sup> Sentence abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> C.D. omit all reference, probably rightly; A.B. have *Eutropius* only. The reference to Eutropius is certainly false; and although Trogus, *i.e.* Justin (lib. xliii. c. 1), is properly quoted for the preceding sentence, the information here given does not occur there.

<sup>3</sup> *Aschanius*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *suum*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *a*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *sui*, ins. B.

<sup>7</sup> *Latini*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Hic . . . Silvii*] slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *etiam*, C.D.; *quo*, A., by error for *quoque*.

<sup>10</sup> *Iulus*] *Ilus*, A.E.; om. B.

.E.; *Yliorum*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *eo . . . primo*] om. C.D.; *sicut*

. . . *primo*, om. A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *filius Manue*, ins. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *cujus tempore*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *contiguerunt*, E.

<sup>16</sup> *Scillam* or *Cillam*, MSS.

<sup>17</sup> *Palefatus*, MSS.

<sup>18</sup> *scilicet*, ins. A.

<sup>19</sup> *Sirenes*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *esse*] om. B.

<sup>21</sup> *decipiunt*, B.

<sup>22</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *Eoque tempore*] om. C.D.

<sup>24</sup> So MSS., but corruptly. Probably we should read *Epirotarum rex*.

<sup>25</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>26</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>27</sup> *fuisse*, C.D.

Tibre. Þat cite was hede of þat kyngdom þre hondred zere; by þe name of þat citee kynges Latyns were i-cleped kynges Albans, Reges Albani. *Eutropius*. Þis Ascanius norsched vp ful myldeliche his broþer Siluius Posthumus<sup>1</sup> þat was i-bore of his stepdame Lauinia<sup>2</sup> after his fader dep, and was i-cleped Posthumus, for he was i-bore after þat his fader was i-buried; and was i-cleped Siluius, for he was i-norsched in a woode.<sup>3</sup> A woode is *silva* in Latyn. By his name þe kynges of Latyns were i-cleped Siluies. Ascanius, whanne he hadde i-regned eiȝte and þretty zere, he lefte þe kyngdom to<sup>4</sup> Siluius Posthumus; for his owne sone Ilus was zet of tender age, so seiþ Marianus, libro primo. Of þis Ilus þe mayny<sup>5</sup> þat is i-cleped Familia Iliorum hadde þat name. Sampson was iuge in Israel twenty zere. In his tyme byfel þat þe fables telleth of Vlixes<sup>6</sup> of Grecia, how he fleigh Scylla and Sirenes. Þerof spekeþ Palephatus<sup>7</sup> libro primo Incredibilum, and seiþ þat Scylla was a womman þat vsede to robbe hir gestic, and seiþ þat Sirenes were hoores þat bygiled men þat seilled on þe sec. Also þat tyme Orestes slow Pyrrhus<sup>8</sup> of Egipt in Appolyn Delphicus his temple. Also som telleþ þat Homerus was þat

TREVISA.

whiche was aduente to the realme off Latynes by ccc. yere, of whom the kynges of Latynes were callede Albani. *Eutropius*. This Ascanius norischede for pite his broþer Siluius Posthumus, geten of Lauinia<sup>2</sup> his stappemoder after the dethe of his fader, whiche was callede Posthumus, in that he was borne after the dethe of his fader. He was callede Siluius, for he was noryschede in a woode; of whom kynges of Latynes were namede Siluii afterwarde. To whom Ascanius, after that he hade reignede xxx<sup>iiij</sup>. [yere], lefte that realme, in that Iulus his son was but of tendre age, as Marianus rehersethe, libro primo. Sampson was gouernoure in Israel xx<sup>i</sup> yere; in whose tyme those thynges happede of Vlixes the Greke, after the fables, that he causede Scylla and Sirenes to flee, of whom Palephatus,<sup>6</sup> libro primo Incredibilium, rehersethe, seyenge that Scilla was a woman wonte to spoyle here gestic, and Sirenes to be commune women whiche deceyvede men saylunge, in that Pyrrhus was sleyn of Orestes in the temple of Apollo Delphicus in the tymes of men of Egipte. In whiche tyme somme men saye Omerus the poete to haue bene, of the tyme of whom greet

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> *Postumus*, MS., here and usually (not always) below. A few very slight errors in spelling proper names below have been tacitly corrected.

<sup>2</sup> *Lavinia*, MSS. and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Sentence varied in Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; *of*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *meyne*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> So Cx.; *Flixes*, MS., as before.

<sup>7</sup> *Palefatus*, MS.; *Polefatus*, Harl. MS.

<sup>8</sup> *Pirus*, MS.; *Pirrus*, Cx., Harl. MS.

De Homeri De cujus tempore apud veteres magna dissonantia est ;  
 etate. nam quidam centesimo anno, alii centesimo<sup>1</sup> quadra-  
 gesimo anno, nonnulli centesimo octogesimo anno, alii  
 ducentesimo quadragesimo<sup>2</sup> anno post eversam Trojam  
 fuisse perhibent ; quidam<sup>3</sup> ante Trojam eversam<sup>4</sup>  
 fuisse putant. Huc usque liber Judicum annos tre-  
 centos<sup>5</sup> sub duodecim iudicibus numerat.

## CAP. XXVII.

*Hely, [etiam de Bruto, et de rerum Britannicarum  
 primordiis].*<sup>6</sup>

Heli. HELY sacerdos iudicavit Israel post Sampsonem  
 quadraginta annis, secundum Isidorum libro quinto, et Anno Abr. 870.  
 secundum Josephum libro sexto ; sed secundum Sep- Anno Hely 1.  
 tuaginta interpretes Hely præsedit populo<sup>7</sup> viginti annis.  
 In cujus diebus facta fame in terra Israel contigit historia  
 Ruth<sup>8</sup> Moabitidis. Hectoris filii receperunt<sup>9</sup> Ilium,  
 id est Trojam,<sup>10</sup> expulsis posteris Antenoris, opitulante  
 Heleno filio Priami.<sup>11</sup> Latinorum<sup>12</sup> tertius Silvius Post- Anno Abr. 888.  
 humus, filius Æneæ et frater<sup>13</sup> Ascanii, ex Lavinia no- Anno Hely 18.  
 verca progenitus,<sup>14</sup> cœpit regnare ; et regnavit triginta

Hectoris  
 filii Tro-  
 jam recu-  
 perant.

<sup>1</sup> anno . . . centesimo] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> 200°, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> diu, ins. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> captam, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> 200, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> MSS. have *Hely* only, for title.

<sup>7</sup> *Hely præsedit populo*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Ruth*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *receperunt*] So A.B.C.D.; *cepe-  
 runt*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *id est Trojam*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Latinus*, Gale.

<sup>13</sup> *frater*] om. Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *progenitus*] om. C.D.



tyme. But to speke of his tyme, olde men discordeþ. For som menep<sup>1</sup> þat he was an hondred ʒere, some an hondred ʒere and fourty, some an hondred ʒere and foure score, som two hondred ʒere and fourty after þat Troye was destroyed, and some trowep þat he was to fore þat Troye was destroyed.<sup>2</sup> Hyderto þe book of Iuges, liber Iudicum, acountep þre hondred ʒere vnder twelue iuges. TREVISA.

*Capitulum vicesimum septimum. Hely.*

HELY þe preost after Sampson was iuge in Israel fourty ʒere; so seiþ Isidorus libro quinto, and Iosephus libro sexto; but þe Seuenty telleþ þat Hely was ouer þe peple twenty ʒere. In his dayes fil a greet<sup>3</sup> longer in þe lond of Israel; and þe storie of Ruth, þat was of Moab, fil in his tyme. Hector his children took Ilium, þat is Troye, and putte out Antenor his ofspringe by helpe of Helenus, Priamus his sone. Siluius Posthumus, Eneas his sone, and Ascanius his broþer, i-gete of his stepdame Lauinia, was þe pridde kyng of Latyns, and bygan to reigne and reigned nyne and þritty ʒere; in þe

---

dissonaunce is hade amonge olde men, for somme men say that he was in the c. yere, other in the cxl<sup>ti</sup> yere, and mony men in the clxxx., after the takege of Troye. And mony men suppose that Omerus was a fore the takege of Troye. The booke of Iudicum nowmbrethe ccc. yere vn to thys tyme, vnder xij. dukes and gouernoures. MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Capitulum vicesimum septimum.*

ELY the preste was gouernoure in Israel, after Sampson, xl<sup>ti</sup> yere, after Ysidor, libro quinto, and after Iosephus, libro sexto; but after the lxx<sup>ti</sup> interpretatores, Hely was gouernoure by xx<sup>ti</sup> yere. In the tyme of whom the story of Ruth Moabitidis happede, a grete hungre beenge that tyme in Israel. The sonnes of Hector recurede and toke þe cite of Troye, expellenge the succession of Antenor, thro helpe off Helenus son off Priamus. Siluius Posthumus, son of Eneas, geten of Lauinia, brother to Ascanius, the thrydde kyng of Latynes, began to reigne; whiche reignede xxx<sup>ti</sup> yeres þer. In whiche yere Brutus, son of Siluius,

<sup>1</sup> *saye*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> The text of this sentence as in *a. β. γ.* The numbers are confused in MS.

<sup>3</sup> So *a.* and Cx. (who has *felle*); *fil g' cet*, MS.

Brutus,  
filius Silvii  
Postumi,  
Britanniam  
occupat.

novem<sup>1</sup> annis. Quo<sup>2</sup> anno Brutus, filius Silvii, filii Ascanii, secundum historicos<sup>3</sup> Britanniam occupavit. *Ranulphus*.<sup>4</sup> De patre istius<sup>5</sup> Bruti historiae videntur dissonare. Nam Britonum historia dicit istum Brutum fuisse filium Silvii, filii<sup>6</sup> Ascanii; sed historia<sup>7</sup> Romana dicit Ascanium genuisse Iulum,<sup>8</sup> a quo familia Juliorum<sup>9</sup> exorta est, nullam penitus<sup>10</sup> de Silvio faciens mentionem. Nisi ergo<sup>11</sup> iste Iulus<sup>12</sup> fuerit binomius, et dictus Silvius, altera dictarum<sup>13</sup> historiarum vacillat.<sup>14</sup> Nam cum Brutus iste asseratur patrem suum venando quindennis<sup>15</sup> occidisse, et Silvius Posthumus secundum omnes historicos sit<sup>16</sup> filius Æneæ, non filius Ascanii, diuque post<sup>17</sup> non occisus vixerit et<sup>18</sup> regnaverit: liquet profecto quod iste Silvius Posthumus non sit pater Bruti; nisi forsitan<sup>19</sup> quia historia Romana dicit Ascanium post mortem Æneæ Silvium Posthumum summa pietate educasse, ob hoc<sup>20</sup> patrem ejus<sup>21</sup> putandum fore. Quod quidem<sup>22</sup> indubitanter admitterem, si Silvius Posthumus a Bruto filio occisus minime legeretur.

Historia  
Bruti  
narratur.

*Gaufridus et Alfridus.* Hic igitur Brutus, quia matrem in puerperio et patrem postmodum<sup>23</sup> quindennis occidit,<sup>24</sup> idcirco de Italia pulsus Græciam adiit;

<sup>1</sup> *quinque*, Gale.

<sup>2</sup> *Hoc*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *secundum historicos*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *illius*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *filii*] om. Gale.

<sup>7</sup> *historia quoque*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Julium*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Iulorum*, E. (not A.B.D.)

<sup>10</sup> *penitus*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *igitur*, A.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Julius*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *istarum*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *multum nutat*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *quindennis venando*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *sit*] om. C.D. (having *Ascanii fuerit*.)

<sup>17</sup> *Ascanium*, ins. C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *vixerit et*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *forte*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *ob hoc*] ideo, C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *suum*, B.

<sup>22</sup> *quidem*] om. C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *venatu*, ins. A.B.; *venatu ut fertur*, ins. C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *occiderat*, B.

whiche 3ere Brut, Siluius his sone, þat was Ascanius his sone, occupied Britayne, as stories telleþ. *R.*<sup>1</sup> Hit semeþ þat stories discordeþ, þat telleþ of þis Brute his fader; for þe storie of Britouns seiþ þat þis Brut was Siluius his sone, [þe whiche Siluius was Ascanius his sone].<sup>2</sup> But þe storie of Rome seiþ þat Ascanius gat Iulus, of þe whiche come the mayny, Familia Iuliorum, and makeþ noon mencion of Siluius. Ðan bot<sup>3</sup> þis Iulus hadde tweie names, and were i-cleped Siluius also, þat<sup>4</sup> oon of þe stories failleþ. For me seiþ þat þis Brute, whan he was fiftene 3ere olde, slou3 his fader at hontynge; and alle stories telleþ þat Siluius Posthumus was Eneas his sone, and nou3t Ascanius sone, and leued long age<sup>5</sup> afterward vnslawe, and regned also. Ðanne hit is soop þat þis Siluius Posthumus was nou3t Brute his fader, bote vppon caas for þe storie of Rome seiþ þat Ascanius after Eneas his deth norsched vp tenderliche Siluius Posthumus, þefore he is accounted his fader. Herto I wolde assente wiþ oute doute, ner þat me redeþ þat Siluius was i-slawe of his sone Brute. *Gaufridus.* Ðis Brute slowh his moder in his burþe, and his fader afterward an<sup>6</sup> hontynge, whan he was fifteuene 3ere olde. Þefore he was i-putte out of Italy, and went into Grees, and

TREVISA.

son of Ascanius, after storyes, began to occupye Briteyne. *MS. HARL. R.* Storyes seme to discorde moche of the fader of Brute. 2261.  
For the storie of Britones seythe Brute to haue bene the son of Siluius, son to Ascanius. But the story of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to haue geten Iulus, makenge no mencion of Siluius: with owte þis Iulus hade ij. names, and [was] callede Siluius, the oon story faylethe. For hit ys seide that this Brute, of xv. yere in age, did sle his fader in huntenge, and Siluius Posthumus, after alle storyes, was the son of Eneas, and not the son of Ascanius, reignenge and lyvenge longe after that; but perauenture that the storie of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to haue noryschede pro pite Siluius Posthumus after the dethe of Eneas, and for that to haue bene trawede his fader. Whiche thyng y wolde admitte, if hit were not redde that Siluius Posthumus was sleyne of Brute his son. *Giraldus.* This Brute, whiche did sle his moder in the childenge, and also when he was of xv. yere in age, he did slee his fader in huntenge; wherefore Brute, putte from Ytaly, wente to the londe

<sup>1</sup> *R.*] added from *a. β. γ.* (not in *Cx.*)

<sup>2</sup> Added from *a. β. γ.*

<sup>3</sup> *if*, *Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *þe*, *a. γ.* (not *β.* or *Cx.*)

<sup>5</sup> *longe after*, *a. β. γ.*, *Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *at*, *Cx.*

ubi<sup>1</sup> ope Trojanorum Pandrasum<sup>2</sup> regem Græcorum devicit, filiamque regis Pandrasi Innogen desponsavit, Trojanos liberavit; deinde enavigans,<sup>3</sup> responso Dianæ accepto, Africam appulit.<sup>4</sup> Inde aris Philænorum,<sup>5</sup> lacu salinarum, flumine Maluæ, columnisque Herculis pertransitis, Tyrrhenum æquor apprehendit; ac<sup>6</sup> reperto ibidem Corineo<sup>7</sup>. ad Acquitanniam pervenit; ubi Gophario<sup>8</sup> Pictavorum duce devicto, (sed Turno, Bruti nepote, apud urbem Turnip<sup>9</sup> seu Turonensem,<sup>10</sup> de nomine suo dictam, occiso,) prosperis velis insulam Britannia apud Totonesium<sup>11</sup> litus in Cornubia tenuit. In qua primus monarcha<sup>12</sup> effectus<sup>13</sup> gigantes incolas<sup>14</sup> destruxit. Insulam a nomine suo Britanniam, sociosque suos Britones vocavit, Cornubiam Corineo tradidit, urbem Trinovantum, quasi Novam Trojam, quæ nunc Londonia,<sup>15</sup> super Thamisim fluvium construxit. Tres filios, Locrinum, Cambrum, et Albanactum, progenuit; et, postquam viginti quatuor annis insulam rexisset, decessit. Sicyoniorum<sup>16</sup> reges defecerunt, qui<sup>17</sup> centum lxxij. annis regnaverant.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ubi*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> So A.D.; *Pandrasum*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *enavigans*] so A.B.; *navigans*, D.E.

<sup>4</sup> Slightly varied and abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Philencorum*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *ac*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Corneo*, B.; *Corrinco*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Sophario*, A.; *Goffurio*, D.; *Gaphurio*, Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *Turnei*, B.; *Turnew*, Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *Tureñ*, A.; *Turonis*, D.; *Turon*, Gale.

<sup>11</sup> *Tostenestium*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *monarchiu*, C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *effectus*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *inhabitantes*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *London*, Gale.

<sup>16</sup> *Schicioniorum*, B.; *Scicionorum*, E.

<sup>17</sup> *postquam*, E.

<sup>18</sup> *post quos sacerdotes constituit sunt*, ins. C.D.

pere by help of þe Troians he ouercome Pandrasus þe kyng of Grees, and wedded Pandrasus þe kynges douzter Innoges. Sche<sup>1</sup> delyuered þe Troians, and seilled pennes, and hadde answere of þe goddes, and londede in Affrica. Þan he passede þe aunteres<sup>2</sup> of Philenes, þe lake þat hatte Lacus Salinarum, þe salt lake, þe ryuer þat hatte<sup>3</sup> Malue, and Hercules his pilers, and com in to þe see Tyren, and fonde pere Corinius,<sup>4</sup> and wente into Gyan, and ouercome pere Gopharnys,<sup>5</sup> duke of Peytow. And Turnus, Brute his neuwe, was i-slawe at a citee þat heet Turnupt<sup>6</sup> oper Taroun<sup>7</sup> by his owne name. And þanne Brute hadde good wynde, and seilled into Britayne, and helde Bretayne at þe clif of Totenes in Cornewayle, and was first kyng of Bretayne al hoole, and destroyed þe geantes þat wonede perynne; and cleped þe ilond Bretayne by his owne name, and cleped his felawes Britouns, and bytake<sup>8</sup> Cornewayle to Cor[i]neus, and bulde a citee, and cleped hit Trinouantum, as it were Newe Troye. Þat citee nowe hatte Londoun, and is vppon Themise.<sup>9</sup> Brut gat þre sones, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanaetus; and deyde whan he hadde i-regned foure and twenty zere in þe ilond. Þe kynges of Scicions<sup>10</sup> faillede whan þey hadde i-reigned an hondred zere

TREVISA.

of Grece, ouercommenge Pandrasus, kyng of hit, thro the helpe of the Troianes, and did wedde Ymogen his dozhter, and delyuerede the Troianes; whiche sayleng from that cuntre, hauenge an answere of Diana, londede at Affrike. After that he entrede in to the see of Tirus, whiche fyndenge there Corineus, brouzhte hym in his companye to Aquitannye; whiche ouercommenge Gepharyus, the duke of Pictaues, and Turnus, the son of the suster to Brute, dedde, at Turnip, or elles Tiroune, callede after his name, come to Briteyne, to Totenese in Cornewaile. In whom he, occupieng the monarchye, destroyed gigante that inhabite that cuntre, namenge that yle Briteyne, and his felawes Britones; ziffenge to Corineus Cornewaile; made a cite on the water of Thamys, callenge hit Urbs Trinouantum, as Newe Troye, callede now London. Whiche gate iij. childer, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanaetus, dienge after that he hade gouernede that yle xxiiij. yere. The kynges of Scitia faylede, whiche hade reignede a clxij. yere; after that prestes

MS. HARL.  
2261.The cite of  
London was  
edified by  
Brute.<sup>1</sup> *He*, a. β., Cx., correctly.<sup>2</sup> *auenters*, Cx.; but *auters* (*altars*) is doubtless the true reading, and so β. γ.<sup>3</sup> [pat hatte] om. a. β. γ.<sup>4</sup> *Corneus*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *Gopharyns*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Turnip*, a. β. γ.<sup>7</sup> *Turon*, a. (Cx. has *Turon* o<sup>u</sup>ther *Turon*).<sup>8</sup> *bytook*, a.<sup>9</sup> *Temse*, a.<sup>10</sup> Read *Sicyon*.

De Samuel  
propheta.<sup>1</sup>

Samuel post mortem Hely judicavit Israel annis duodecim, secundum Josephum libro octavo; cum tamen Scriptura de hoc taceat. A quo tempora prophetarum incipiunt; cujus anno tertio David natus est.<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> Iste Samuel judex et propheta<sup>3</sup> primus<sup>4</sup> instituit cuneos et<sup>5</sup> conventus psallentium religiosorum; qui etiam dicebantur psallere,<sup>6</sup> id est, jugiter Deum laudare.<sup>7</sup> Postmodum<sup>8</sup> sub Saule judicavit annis octodecim.

Anno Abr. 910.  
Anno Samuel 1.

Loctrinus,  
filius Bruti,  
in Britan-  
nia regnat.

Loctrinus, filius<sup>9</sup> Bruti,<sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup> cepit regnare quasi super tertiam partem insulæ Britannicæ; a meridiano scilicet<sup>12</sup> freto usque ad Humbrum fluvium,<sup>13</sup> quam partem<sup>14</sup> Loegriam<sup>15</sup> nomine suo nuncupavit,<sup>16</sup> sicut<sup>17</sup> supra libro primo de Britannia dictum est. Sed, Albanacto fratre suo occiso, et Cambro tertio fratre defuncto, Loctrinus post vicesimum annum regni sui occisus est in bello, quod ei uxor sua Guendolena propter pellicem Estrildam intulerat. Guendolena post maritum regnavit quindecim annis.<sup>17</sup>

Anno Abr. 911.  
Anno Samuel 2.

<sup>1</sup> nascitur, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> Petrus, ins. A.B.D.

<sup>3</sup> judex et propheta] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> primo, B.

<sup>5</sup> cuneos et] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>6</sup> prophetare, A.B.C.D.

<sup>7</sup> Deum laudare] laudabant, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> Post hoc. This sentence transposed before the preceding one in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> filius] primogenitus, A.C.D.

<sup>10</sup> Loctrinus primogenitus Bruti, B., Gale.

<sup>11</sup> hoc anno, ins. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> scilicet] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> Humbram, Gale; usque flumen Humbrum, B.

<sup>14</sup> insulæ, ins. A.B.

<sup>15</sup> a, ins. C.D., Gale.

<sup>16</sup> appellavit, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> sicut . . . annis] Camber vero illam partem tenuit quæ est ultra Sabrinam usque ad occidentalem oceanum; quam a nomine suo Cambriam vocavit.\* At Albanactus transhumbranas partes ad boream adiit, terramque ex nomine suo Albaniam vocavit. Quo tandem a rege Hunorum Humbro superveniente interfecto, Cambroque postmodum defuncto, Loctrinus solus regnum tenuit, ac post decem regni annos occisus est in bello, quod ei uxor sua Guendolena propter pellicem Estrildem superinductam intulerat, C.D. After which, Guendolena post eum quindecim annis regnum tenuit, C. (only).

\* appellavit Cambriam, D.

pre score and tweyne. Samuel after Hely was iuge in Israel twelfe zere ; so seip Iosephus, libro octavo, noþeles þe Skripture spekeþ nouzt þerof. From his tyme bygan þe tymes of prophetes, tempora prophetarum. [And]<sup>1</sup> in his pridde zere Daudid was i-bore. *Petrus.* Þis Samuel ordeyned first companye of clerkes and queres forto synge ; and þan me seide þat þey prophecied, þat is to menyng, þei worschipped God bysiliche. Afterward Samuel was iuge in Israel vnder Saul eiʒtene zere. Locrinus, Brute his eldest sone, bygan to reigne as it were vppon þe souþ see to þe ryuer of Humber,<sup>2</sup> and cleped þat partye of þe ilond Loegria, þat is Engelond, as it is i-seide in þe firste book in þe chapitre of Briteyne. But Albanactus was i-slawe, and Camber deide ; and Locrinus, after þat þey<sup>3</sup> hadde i-regned twenty zere, was i-slawe also in [a]<sup>4</sup> batayle þat his wif Guendolena ʒaf hym, by cause of a strompet þat heet Estrilda. And Guendolena reigned aftir hire housbonde fiftene zere.

TREVISA.

were made iugges and gouernoures. Samuel was gouernoure in Israel xij. yere after the dethe of Ely, after Iosephus libro octavo ; but the story dothe not expresse that from whom the tymes of prophetes began, in the thrydde yere of whom kynge Daudid was borne. *Petrus.* This Samuel ordeynede conuentes of religious men, whiche were seide also to prophecy, that is, to lawde Godde. Locrinus, the firste son of Brute, began to reigne as on the thrydde parte of Briteyne, from the sowthe see of hit vn to the water of Humbre, whiche parte he callede Loegria, after his name. Albanactus his brother sleyne, and Camber the thrydde brother dedde, Locrinus was sleyne in batelle after the xx<sup>ti</sup> yere of his reigne, whiche batelle Guendolena his wife movede for an hoore callede Estrilda, whiche reignede after her howsebonde xv. yere.

MS. HARL.  
2261.Religion  
began.<sup>1</sup> Added from *α. β. γ.* and Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Humber, α.*<sup>3</sup> *he, α.*<sup>4</sup> Added from *α. β. γ.* (not in Cx.)

## CAP. XXVIII.

*Saul.* [*Plura de Græcia, item de Britannia. Ætas mundi tertia terminatur.*]<sup>1</sup>

Saul primus rex Israel.

SAUL de tribu Benjamin, primus rex Hebræorum, secundum Josephum regnavit viginti annis; de quibus Sacra<sup>2</sup> Scriptura tacet. *Petrus, capitulo quinto.*<sup>3</sup> Nam Saul, vivente Samuele,<sup>4</sup> regnavit octodecim annis, et post mortem ejus<sup>5</sup> duobus annis. <sup>6</sup>Latinorum quartus Æneas Silvius, filius Posthumi, cœpit regnare; et regnavit xxxi.<sup>7</sup> annis. *Ranulphus.* Secundum aliquas historias frater Posthumi Latinus Silvius ponitur quartus, et iste Æneas Silvius ponitur quintus; sed hoc in<sup>8</sup> loco iste Æneas ponitur quartus.<sup>9</sup>

Anno Abr. 922.  
Anno Saul 1.

Anno Abr. 927.  
Anno Saul 6.

Codrus Athenis regnat.

Atheniensium dux septimusdecimus Codrus, Melanthis filius, cœpit regnare, et regnavit xxi. annis; post cujus mortem defecerunt reges Atheniensium<sup>10</sup> *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo.*<sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup>Rebellantibus Peloponnesensibus<sup>13</sup> contra Athenienses responsum est per oraculum, quod illi forent victores quorum dux occideretur; unde<sup>14</sup> militibus ante omnia indicta est Codri<sup>15</sup> regis custodia. Rex tamen Codrus, assumpto pauperis habitu, sarmenta<sup>16</sup> collo gerens castra hostium ingreditur; ubi in turba, jurgio provocato a milite quem falce vulneraverat, occiditur.<sup>17</sup> Quo cognito Dorienses<sup>18</sup> absque bello discedunt,<sup>19</sup> Athenienses

<sup>1</sup> MSS. have *Saul* only, for title.

<sup>2</sup> *Sacra*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> C.D. omit reference; A.B. omit *capitulo quinto*.

<sup>4</sup> *Samuel, vivente Saul*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *mortem ejus*] eum, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Petrus*, ins. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *xiii.*, Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *in*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *sed . . . . quartus*] om. C.D., which insert: Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18, capitulo 9.

<sup>10</sup> *Athenienses*, D.

<sup>11</sup> C.D. transpose reference as above.

<sup>12</sup> *De isto Codro legitur quod*, ins. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Peloponensibus*, MSS., as usual.

<sup>14</sup> *et*, ins. A.B.

<sup>15</sup> *Codri*] om. B.

<sup>16</sup> *armamenta*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *interficitur*, D. The latter part slightly abbreviated in C. (not D.)

<sup>18</sup> *Peloponenses*, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *descendunt*, A.



*Capitulum vicesimum octavum. Saul.*

TREVISA.

SAUL of þe lynage of Beniamyn was þe firste kyng of Hebrewes, and regned twenty þere ; so seip Iosephus. Of þe whiche þeres þe Scripture spekep not. *Petrus.* For Saul regnede eiztene þere while Samuel lyuede, and two þere after his deth. Þe fourþe kyng of Latyns, Eneas Siluius, was Posthumus his sone, and bygan to regne and regned oon and pritty þere. In som stories Posthumus his brother, Latinus Siluius,<sup>1</sup> is i-sette þe fourþe, and<sup>2</sup> þis Eneas is i-sette þe fifte. But in þis place þis Eneas schal be sette þe fourþe. Þe seuenteþe duke of Athene, Codrus, Melanthus<sup>3</sup> his sone, bygan to reigne, and regnede oon and twenty þere. After his deth kynges of Athene faillede. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo.* Þe Peloponens, men of Thessalia, weren rebel aʒenst men of Athene. Þanne was answeere i-ʒeue of<sup>4</sup> þe goddes, þat in wheþer side þe duke were i-slawe, þat side schulde haue þe maistrye. Perfore þe knyʒtes were i-charged ouer al þing to take good kepe of kyng Codrus. Nopeles Codrus took a pore manis cloþinge and a burþen of fagettes on his nekke, and entrede in to þe strengþe of his enemyes. And þere was strif arered amonge þe peple ; and a knyʒt slow hym, þat he hadde raper i-wounded wip an hook. Whan þat was i-knowe þe Doreyns<sup>5</sup> wente away wip oute

*Capitulum vicesimum octavum.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

SAUL, of the tribe of Beniamyn, firste kyng off men of Hebrewes, reignede xx<sup>ti</sup> yere, after Iosephus, whom Holy Scripture expressethe not. *Petrus.* For, Samuel lyvenge, Saul reignede xvij. yere, and ij. yere after his dethe. Eneas Siluius, the son of Siluius Posthumus, the iiij<sup>the</sup> kyng of Latynes, began to reigne, whiche reignede xxxi<sup>ti</sup> yere. Codrus, the son of Melanthus,<sup>3</sup> the xvij<sup>the</sup> duke of Athenes, began to reigne, whiche reignede xxxj<sup>ti</sup> yere, after the dethe of whom kynges of Athenes faylede. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo 14<sup>o</sup>.* Men of Peloponense beyng rebellous ageyne men of Athenes, an answeere was ʒifen that theke parte scholde haue þe victory, the gouernoure of whom scholde be sleyne ; wherefore the knyʒhtes were commaundede that thei scholde not slee kyng Codrus in eny wyse. Neuertheles kyng Codrus, cloþenge hym in a vile habite, berenge as kyttenges of trees in his necke, come amonge the companyes of his enmyes, where, a stryfe movede, Codrus was sleyne of a knyʒhte whom he hade woundede with a sythe. Whiche thyng y-knowen, men callede Dorienses wente from batelle, and men off Athenes

<sup>1</sup> *Siluius*, MS. (not Cx.)<sup>2</sup> So *a.* and Cx. ; *in*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *Melantus*, MSS.<sup>4</sup> So *a. β. γ.* ; *to*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *that corcus*, Cx.

Post mortem Codri res publica mutatur.

liberantur. Maluit enim Codrus mori dummodo<sup>1</sup> vincerent sui, quam vivere suis superatis. Post cujus mortem apud Athenas<sup>2</sup> respublica per magistratus diu administrata est; solaque libido dominantium pro lege erat; quousque<sup>3</sup> Solon,<sup>4</sup> insignis legum conditor, in ducem<sup>5</sup> eligeretur.

Maddan rex Britannicæ.

Maddan,<sup>6</sup> filius Locrini et Guendolenæ,<sup>7</sup> regnavit apud Britannos<sup>8</sup> quadraginta annis, genuitque Memprium et Maulum. Anno Abr. 936.  
Anno Saul 15.

Amazones invadunt Asiam.

Saul cum filiis suis<sup>9</sup> occiditur in Monte Gelboe.

Ætas mundi tertia terminatur.

Et sic terminatur tertia ætas seculi ab ortu Abrahamæ usque ad regnum David; habens annos, secundum Isidororum,<sup>10</sup> nongentos quadraginta octo, per generationes quatuordecim; sed<sup>11</sup> secundum utramque editionem,<sup>12</sup> habet<sup>13</sup> annos nongentos quadraginta duos. *Ranulphus.* Hæc diversitas<sup>14</sup> emergit ex hoc,<sup>15</sup> quod Isidorus dicit Samuelem et Saulem præfuisse populo Israel quadraginta annis; cum tamen Josephus, libro octavo, et Magister in historiis dicant Samuelem præfuisse<sup>16</sup> duodecim annis solum,<sup>17</sup> et post illum<sup>18</sup> Saulem regnasse viginti annis.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *dum*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *apud Athenas*] om. C,D.

<sup>3</sup> *usque*, B.

<sup>4</sup> So B.; *Salon*, A.C.D.E.

<sup>5</sup> *judicem*, B.

<sup>6</sup> So A,B,D., Gale; *Maudan*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *Gvedalene*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *apud Britones*, A.; *in Britanniam*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *suis*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *quinto libro*, ins. A.B.D.

<sup>11</sup> *sed*] om. A.

<sup>12</sup> *sed . . . editionem*] secundum vulgarem editionem, B.

<sup>13</sup> *habens*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Ista autem varietas*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *eo*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *populo . . . præfuisse*] om. B.

<sup>17</sup> *solus*, A.D.E.; *se solo*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *post illum*] postmodum, D.

<sup>19</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

bataile, and þe Athenes were delyuered. Codrus were leuere deye and his men haue þe maistrie, þan lyue and his men be ouercome. After his deef þe commounalte of Athene was gouerned by maistres. For þere was no lawe bot likyng of lordeschippe, forto þat Solon<sup>1</sup> þe noble makere of lawes was i-chose to iuge.<sup>2</sup> Maddan, Locrinus his sone, on Guendolena<sup>3</sup> i-gete, regnede fourty ȝere among þe Britouns, and gat Mempricius and Maulus. Þe Amazones werreþ in Asia. Saul and his children beþ i-slawe in þe hille, Mont Gelboe. And so endep þe pridde age of þe world from þe burpe of Abraham to þe kyngdom of Dauid. Isidorus libro quinto seiþ þat the pridde age of þe worlde conteynep nyne hondred ȝere and two<sup>4</sup> and fourty by fourtene generaciouns. But eiper translacioun seiþ þat þe pridde age of þe world conteynep nyne hondred ȝere and two and fourty. R. Þis dyuersite bifalleþ for Isidorus seiþ þat Samuel and Saul rulede þe peple fourty ȝere; nopeles Iosephus, libro octavo, and þe Maister of Stories telleþ<sup>5</sup> þat Samuel rulede þe peple allone twelue ȝere, and after hym Saul regnede twenty ȝere.

TREVISIA.

were delyuerede. For Codrus wyllede rather to dye, than his subiectes myȝhte be victores, then for to lyve his subiectes oppressede. After the dethe of whom eny man reignede there after his pleasure, vn tille that Solon,<sup>1</sup> the nowble man and maker of theire lawes, was electe in to theire gouernoure. Maddan, the son of Locrinus, reignede on the Britones xl<sup>ti</sup> yere, whiche gate Mempricius and Maulus. The Amazones entrede in to Asia. Saul was sleyne with his sonnes in the hilles of Gelboe. And so the thrydde age off the worlde is terminate, for<sup>6</sup> the byrthe of Abraham vn to the reigne of kyng Dauid, hauenge after Ysidor, libro 5<sup>o</sup>, ix<sup>c</sup> yere and xlviij., by xiiij. generaciones, and after oper ix<sup>c</sup>. xliij. yere. R. This diuersite of yeres may be causede of that thyng, that Ysidorus seythe Samuel and Saul to haue rewlede the peple of Israel xl<sup>ti</sup> yere. But Iosephus seythe, libro octavo, and the Maister of storyes, Samuel to haue ben gouernoure in Israel oonly xij. yere, and Saul to haue reignede after hym xx<sup>ti</sup> yere.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Salon*, MSS. and Cx.<sup>2</sup> So *a.*; *iuges*, MS.; *was chosen iugge*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; *Guendelona*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *eyzte*, *a.*, Cx..<sup>5</sup> *acorden*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> So Harl. MS.; probably a clerical error for *fro*.

LONDON:

Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,  
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.  
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

[ —750.—4/69.]

⑦

466-2



